A HANDBOOK OF MANAGEMENT TECHNIQUES

Corporate Management • Marketing • Operations Management • Finance • Human Resources • Information Technology • Management Science • Planning and Resource Allocation • Efficiency and Effectivencess

Michael Armstrong

Management techniques are the systematic and analytical methods used by managers to assist in decision making and to improve efficiency and effectiveness. In particular, they are used in planning and control. This fully revised comprehensive edition lists and describes over 130 separate management techniques within the main areas of:

Corporate management
Marketing management
Operations management
Financial management
Information technology
Human resource management
Management science
Planning and resource allocation
Efficiency and effectiveness

Management techniques used in all these areas provide a foundation for improved managerial performance.

Each technique is described in a clear accessible style, and the book is illustrated with over 120 line drawings. Ideal as a reference source for those involved in all management disciplines, it is also recommended reading for business courses and is suitable for use as a student textbook.

C//

A HANDBOOK OF MANAGEMENT TECHNIQUES

A HANDBOOK OF MANAGEMENT TECHNIQUES

Michael Armstrong

EXCEL BOOKS

Library
Calcutta

658
ARM

S.C.E.R.T. W.B. LIBRARY
Date 11. 2. 2000
Accn. No. 9925

ISBN: 81-7446-025-x

First Indian Edition: New Delhi, 1995

© Michael Armstrong 1986, 1993
All rights reserved. This publication may only be
reproduced, stored or transmitted, in any form
or by any means, with the prior permission
in writing of the publishers.
First published by Kogan Page Limited, London.

For sale in India only

EXCEL BOOKS
A-45 Naraina, Phase I
New Delhi 110 028

PRINTED AT

SHRI JAINENDRA PRESS
NEW DELHI 110 028

Contents

Preface to the Second Edition 11

Part 1 Introduction 13

Management Techniques *15*

Part 2 Corporate Management 19

1 General Management *21*
2 Strategic Management *24*
3 Portfolio Planning *31*
4 Organization Management *34*

Part 3 Marketing Management 43

5 Marketing Management: An Overview *45*
6 Marketing Planning *51*
7 Product Planning *59*
8 Sales Planning *64*
9 Media Planning *67*
10 Marketing Research *70*
11 Desk Research *73*
12 Field Research *75*
13 Qualitative Research *79*
14 Sales Forecasting *81*
15 Product Life-Cycle Analysis *88*
16 Target Marketing *93*
17 The Marketing Mix *96*
18 Pricing *98*
19 Relationship Marketing *105*
20 Database Marketing *108*
21 Marketing Control *111*
22 Field Sales Control *115*

Part 4 Operations Management 119

23 Operations Management: An Overview *121*
24 Manufacturing Systems *129*
25 Computer-Aided Design (CAD) *131*

26 Computer-Aided Manufacturing (CAM) *134*
27 Production Planning and Control Systems (PPCS) *137*
28 Materials Requirement Planning (MRPI) *142*
29 Manufacturing Resource Planning (MRPII) *144*
30 Optimized Production Technology (OPT) *147*
31 Just-in-Time *150*
32 Process Control *158*
33 Layout Planning *162*
34 Job, Batch and Flow Production *166*
35 Numerically Controlled Machine Tools *169*
36 Flexible Manufacturing Systems *172*
37 Group Technology *176*
38 Cellular Manufacturing *179*
39 Robotics *184*
40 Computer-Integrated Manufacturing *187*
41 Quality Systems and Processes *192*
42 Total Quality Management *199*
43 Planned Maintenance *205*
44 Inventory Control *209*
45 Make or Buy Decisions *215*
46 Physical Distribution Management *217*
47 Distribution Planning *221*
48 Project Management *229*

Part 5 Financial Management **239**

49 Financial Management: An Overview *241*
50 Financial Planning *243*
51 Financial Accounting *244*
52 Balance Sheet Analysis *250*
53 Profitability Analysis *254*
54 Value Added Statement *259*
55 Cash Management *261*
56 Depreciation *267*
57 Inflation Accounting *269*
58 Raising Finance *273*
59 Creative Accounting *278*
60 Management Accounting *283*
61 Cost Accounting *286*
62 Absorption Costing *295*
63 Activity-Based Costing *299*
64 Marginal Costing *303*
65 Standard Costing *307*
66 Variance Analysis *310*
67 Cost-Volume-Profit Analysis *314*
68 Profit-Volume Charts *317*
69 Break-even Analysis *320*
70 Sales Mix Analysis *323*
71 Financial Budgeting *326*
72 Flexible Budgets *331*
73 Zero-Base Budgeting *334*
74 Budgetary Control *336*

75 Overhead Accounting *338*
76 Responsibility Accounting *340*
77 Capital Budgeting *344*
78 Payback Method of Capital Appraisal *348*
79 Accounting Rate of Return *350*
80 Discounted Cash Flow *352*
81 Risk Analysis *356*
82 Programme Budgeting *358*
83 Cost-Benefit Analysis *364*
84 Cost-Effectiveness Analysis *367*

Part 6 Human Resource Management **369**

85 Human Resource Management: An Overview *371*
86 Human Resource Planning *375*
87 Job Enrichment *379*
88 Job Design *381*
89 Selection Testing *383*
90 Performance Management *386*
91 Assessment Centres *389*
92 Reward Management Systems *390*
93 Job Analysis *393*
94 Job Evaluation *397*
95 Salary Surveys *401*
96 Salary Structure Design *403*
97 Salary Control Systems *410*
98 Performance-Related Pay *415*
99 Payment by Results *418*
100 Systematic Training *421*
101 Identifying Training Needs *424*
102 Skills Analysis *426*
103 Training Techniques *430*
104 Group Dynamics *432*
105 Management Development *435*
106 Quality Circles *438*
107 Team Briefing *440*
108 Total Loss Control *442*

Part 7 Information Technology **445**

109 Information Technology: An Overview *447*
110 Data Processing *452*
111 Distributed Data-Processing Systems *458*
112 Systems Analysis *460*
113 Systems Design *467*
114 Programming *469*
115 Data Management *474*
116 Artificial Intelligence *478*
117 Expert Systems *481*
118 Natural Language Processing *486*
119 Office Automation *489*

Part 8 Management Science 495

120 Operational Research *497*
121 Decision Theory *502*
122 Modelling *510*
123 Simulation *514*
124 Linear Programming *519*
125 Queuing Theory *522*
126 ABC Analysis *527*
127 Sensitivity Analysis *530*
128 Cybernetics *532*

Part 9 Planning and Resource Allocation 535

129 Network Analysis *537*
130 Line of Balance *545*

Part 10 Efficiency and Effectiveness 551

131 Business Process Re-engineering *553*
132 Ratio Analysis *557*
133 Profit Improvement *565*
134 Cost Reduction *569*
135 Productivity Planning *572*
136 Method Study *575*
137 Work Measurement *581*
138 Clerical Work Measurement *586*
139 Value Analysis *590*
140 Variety Reduction *592*

Index 595

List of Illustrations

1.1. The process of managing *21*
1.2. The functions of general management *22*
2.1. Michael Porter's value chain *26*
2.2. Strategic planning *28*
3.1. The Boston Consulting Group growth/share matrix *32*
5.1. The marketing process *47*
6.1. The marketing planning process *52*
6.2. Threat and opportunity grids *54*
14.1. Projection from a trend *82*
14.2. An exponential trend *83*
14.3. A typical S-shaped curve *83*
14.4. An alternative version of the S-shaped curve *83*
15.1. A typical S-shaped product life-cycle *88*
15.2. Recycle pattern *90*
15.3. The humpback cycle *90*
15.4. The plateau cycle *90*
18.1. Break-even chart *99*
18.2. Hypothetical demand curve *100*
21.1. Z chart used for marketing control *113*
22.1. The field sales control process *116*
23.1. An integrated operations system *122*
24.1. A manufacturing system *129*
27.1. A basic production planning and control system *138*
29.1. An MRPII system *145*
32.1. A fishbone diagram *159*
33.1. Cross chart showing the movement of items between departments *164*
33.2. A relationship chart *165*
34.1. Ideal material flow in a functional layout *167*
34.2. Actual material flow in a functional layout *168*
36.1. A conceptual layout for an FMS *174*
40.1. A computer-integrated manufacturing system *188*
43.1. Relationship between the different types of maintenance *206*
43.2. Breakdown time distributions *207*
44.1. Buffer stock - normal distribution *212*
47.1. The process of distribution planning *222*
47.2. Distribution planning model: general arrangement *224*
47.3. Distribution planning model - main reports *225*

47.4. Transportation tableau *226*
47.5. Network representation of transport problem *228*
48.1. The project management sequence *230*
48.2. The Gantt chart *233*
48.3. Part of a basic network *234*
48.4. Resource allocation network *235*
48.5. Project plan and progress chart *236*
48.6. Time review chart *237*
48.7. Cumulative cost control chart *238*
51.1. Relationship between balance sheet and profit and loss account *245*
55.1. Working capital cycle – manufacturing company *262*
55.2. Working capital cycle – retailing company *262*
61.1. The make-up of total costs *288*
61.2. Fixed costs *288*
61.3. Variable costs *288*
61.4. Total costs *289*
61.5. The relevant range for fixed costs *290*
61.6. Product and period costs *292*
66.1. Classification of variances *310*
66.2. Interrelationship between variances *312*
68.1. Profit-volume chart *317*
69.1. A break-even chart *320*
69.2. Break-even chart showing contribution *321*
70.1. Sales mix shown on a P/V chart *324*
71.1. The budgeting process *327*
72.1. Relationship of total costs to output *331*
74.1. The process of budgetary control *337*
76.1. Organizational assignment of responsibilities *341*
77.1. Capital investment cash flows *344*
82.1. The process of programme budgeting *360*
82.2. Possible educational objectives for an education authority *362*
86.1. The process of human resource planning *376*
89.1. A normal IQ curve *384*
94.1. Job evaluation programme *399*
95.1. Salary survey data presented graphically *402*
96.1. A broad-banded overlapping salary structure *403*
96.2. Trend line through scattergraph to produce salary practice line *406*
96.3. Salary policy line *407*
96.4. A points scheme grade structure *407*
96.5. Ranking salary practice line *408*
96.6. Benchmark job range widths 408
97.1. Analysis of salary structure policy and practice in relation to market rates *412*
98.1. Variable salary progression *415*
100.1. The components of systematic training *422*
101.1. The training gap *424*
101.2. Training needs – areas and methods *425*
105.1. The process of management development *436*
110.1. The data-processing sequence *452*
110.2. The basic configuration of a computer *453*
112.1. Data flow diagramming symbols *461*
112.2. A simplified data flow diagram showing a materials management system *461*

112.3. Computer system flow chart symbols *462*
112.4. Example of a system flow chart (holiday booking procedure) *463*
112.5. A visual table of contents for a materials management system *465*
112.6. A HIPO overview diagram *465*
114.1. A modular hierarchy *470*
114.2. Basic logical structures *471*
114.3. Functional decomposition: a first-level structure for a typical program *472*
116.1. The feedback loop process of AI computer modelling *479*
117.1. Components of an expert system *482*
117.2. The five stages of expert system development *483*
119.1. Information flow in an automated office *491*
121.1. A means-ends chain *505*
121.2. Decision matrix *505*
121.3. Decision tree structure *506*
121.4. Example of a decision tree *506*
121.5. Part of an instructional algorithm *508*
121.6. An algorithm used for fault analysis *508*
122.1. A cause-effect model of a stock control process *512*
123.1. Flow chart describing the procedural logic involved in simulating stock behaviour *515*
123.2. Simplified flow chart *518*
125.1. Histogram showing number of calls of a given length at half-minute intervals *524*
125.2. Total servicing costs as a function of average service time *525*
126.1. ABC analysis for a Pareto distribution *528*
129.1. Basic network sequence *537*
129.2. A dangling activity *538*
129.3. A dummy activity introduced to avoid a dangling activity *538*
129.4. A dummy activity introduced to show the dependence of activity 3 to 6 on the completion of activity 1 to 4 *538*
129.5. Incorrectly drawn parallel activities *539*
129.6. A dummy activity introduced to avoid parallel activities having the same start and end events *539*
129.7. An incorrect closed loop *539*
129.8. Completion of preceding and succeeding activities *540*
129.9. Use of a dummy activity to clarify the sequence of events between preceding and succeeding activities *540*
129.10. A complete network *540*
129.11. Network showing critical path *541*
129.12. Activity-on-node network *544*
130.1. Operation programme *546*
130.2. Completion schedule (graphical version) *547*
130.3. Construction of a line of balance *547*
130.4. Programme progress chart *548*
132.1. Relationship between ratios *560*
136.1. Life policy - underwriting flow chart *576*
136.2. Therblig symbols *577*
136.3. Multiple activity chart *578*
136.4. Questioning approach *579*

List of Tables

21.1. Marketing control data *112*
41.1. Approaches to quality management *197*
47.1. Solution to transportation problem using the 'least-cost first' rule *227*
53.1. Trading account *255*
53.2. Profit and loss account *256*
55.1. Operating cash budget *263*
55.2. Finance budget *264*
55.3. Comparison of direct and indirect methods *265*
64.1. Comparison of full and marginal costing *304*
65.1. Standard cost profile *309*
72.1. Weekly flexible budget for assembly shop *332*
72.2. Departmental operating statement *333*
76.1. Responsibility accounting for controllable costs *342*
80.1. Extract from present value table *353*
80.2. Calculation of net present value (NPV) *354*
81.1. Expected value calculation *357*
94.1. An example of points rating *398*
97.1. Salary cost return *411*
127.1. Example of sensitivity analysis *531*
130.1. Completion schedule *546*

Preface to the Second Edition

This edition revises and extends the management techniques described in the first edition to take account of the considerable developments which have taken place over the last seven years.

The main changes and additions incorporated in this edition are:

- *Strategic and organizational management* - a complete revision of this section to reflect the much broader and flexible approach to these areas of management that has had to be developed in the late 1980s and early 1990s in response to changes in the economic and competitive environment which includes the management of diversity, even chaos. A chapter on portfolio analysis has also been added.
- *Relationship marketing* - a new chapter covering an important new perspective on marketing which emphasizes the importance of relationships with customers (the delivery of quality and high levels of service).
- *Database marketing* - a new chapter describing how customer databases can be exploited for mail order and other forms of marketing.
- *Operating management* - a number of new chapters describing the latest developments in techniques such as just-in-time systems and total quality management, and covering new approaches to computerized manufacturing systems, namely:

  - cellular manufacturing
  - flexible manufacturing systems (FMS)
  - computer-integrated manufacturing (CIM)
  - process control.
- *Financial management* - new chapters on financial management, financial planning and creative accounting.
- *Human resource management* - new chapters to reflect the growing interest in the human resource management (HRM) approach to personnel management. These include:

  - performance management

  - reward management
  - performance-related pay.
- *Information technology* – a completely rewritten and greatly extended section covering all aspects of information technology including:
  - data processing
  - distributed data processing
  - systems analysis
  - systems design
  - programming
  - data management
  - artificial intelligence
  - expert systems
  - natural language processing
  - office automation.

PART 1

Introduction

Management Techniques

DEFINITION

Management techniques are the systematic and analytical methods used by managers to assist in decision-making, the improvement of efficiency and effectiveness and, in particular, the conduct of the two key managerial activities of planning and control. Areas of management such as corporate planning, marketing, management accounting or operation research which make considerable use of related techniques may be termed disciplines.

Techniques, used singly or grouped into disciplines, should be distinguished from:

- *managerial skills*, such as coordinating, delegating, communicating, negotiating or interviewing, which rely on personal expertise developed by experience and training;
- *procedures*, which consist of the various administrative tasks, systems and guidelines needed to get work done – the way in which sales orders are processed is a procedure;
- *activities or functions*, in which various administrative tasks are carried out and skills and procedures used in order to achieve a desired result; for example, advertising, recruitment and selection or purchasing.

In each of these areas of skills, procedures and activities, however, management techniques play an important part, either generally in helping to solve problems, or particularly by enabling things to be done more effectively. For example, the technique of media planning is used in advertising, selection testing in recruitment and make or buy analysis in purchasing.

CHARACTERISTICS OF MANAGEMENT TECHNIQUES

All management techniques are systematic and, in one sense or another, analytical. Quantification plays an important part in many techniques, and all techniques attempt to be objective or at least try to minimize the amount of subjectivity in decision-making. These characteristics are discussed below.

Systematic

All techniques are systematic in that they consist of specified and often sequential methods of tackling a problem, providing information for decision-making or improving operational efficiency. Because they are systematic, techniques ensure that each step required to deal with a situation is carried out in a prescribed manner. The systematic approach encouraged by the use of management techniques provides a framework within which managers can exercise their skills in a more orderly and purposeful manner.

Analytical

Techniques are analytical in two senses. First, the techniques themselves have been developed by considering what systematic and possibly quantitative methods are required to deal with every aspect of a situation and to achieve an end result.

Second, and most importantly, techniques are usually analytical in the sense that they subject complex situations to close and systematic examination, and resolve them into their key elements. This process of identification and dissection facilitates the orderly arrangement of a mass of data, which may be present in a confused state, into logical patterns, thus promoting understanding and pointing the way to an appropriate decision.

Analysis concentrates on facts rather than opinions and provides a precise structure and terminology which serves as a means of communication, enabling managers to make their judgements within a clearly defined framework and in a concrete context.

Quantitative

Wherever relevant, management techniques measure in numerical or financial terms what is happening, and quantify forecasts of future trends. Most management decisions involve financial considerations, so management techniques place monetary values on performance reports, forecasts, plans and the control information needed to assess results against budgets or targets.

Statistical and mathematical methods are used to analyse data, evaluate alternative courses of action and indicate the optimum decision — ie the decision which will produce the best results for the organization, bearing in mind any limiting factors or constraints arising from a lack of resources.

Mathematical models are created which provide a simplified representation of the real world which abstracts the features of the situation relevant to the questions being studied. Such models, and simulations of operational situations, assist managers to deal with uncertainty. The right or optimum choice is seldom obvious. Quantitative techniques help managers to understand the probable consequences in financial and numerical terms of taking alternative courses of action. They therefore focus attention on what is likely to be the best course of action among the competing alternatives which are available.

Objective

By concentrating on facts, by subjecting these facts to systematic analysis, and by quantifying this analysis wherever possible, management techniques help managers to be objective. Techniques such as market research, forecasting, and job evaluation will use subjective methods to a degree. But subjectivity will be exercised within these bounds. The analytical framework provided by techniques in these areas will at least ensure that any subjective element in the decision-making process is channelled and subjected to the rigorous analysis which is characteristic of any properly administered technique.

APPLICATIONS

Management techniques have applications in all aspects of planning, organizing, directing and controlling the affairs of an enterprise or a public sector organization. The particular areas in which they are applied, as described in this handbook are:

1. *General management*, which covers the overall planning and control of the organization. General management as such is not a technique, but it is a discipline which largely relies on management techniques to ensure its success. The particular techniques or disciplines most relevant to general management are corporate and organization planning.
2. *Marketing management*, which as the crucial business generation function in any company, relies heavily on techniques such as market research, forecasting, product analysis and planning, pricing, and marketing and sales planning and control.
3. *Operations management*, which, with the help of computers, uses planning, scheduling and production control techniques extensively and ensures that resources are allocated and used effectively by means of resource allocation and inventory control systems.
4. *Financial management*, where analytical, planning, budgeting and control techniques play a vital part in ensuring that the organization has the resources it needs and can afford, and that it uses them effectively.
5. *Human resource management*, which uses various techniques such as human resource planning, salary administration, performance appraisal, training and management development to ensure that the organization has the number of qualified, competent and motivated people it needs.

6. *Information technology*, which provides for computers and telecommunication systems to give the information, data-processing capacities and facilities required in complex and fast-moving organizations.
7. *Management science*, which makes available the quantitative techniques used in operation research to provide guidance on planning, problem-solving and decision-making.
8. *Planning and resource allocation*, where the analytical techniques of network planning and line of balance are used to plan projects and calculate the resources required.
9. *Efficiency and effectiveness*, where investigation techniques such as the management audit are used to monitor the performance of the organization in association with ratio analysis, and remedial techniques such as cost reduction, profit improvement, productivity planning and work study are available to improve performance and results.

BENEFITS

Management techniques provide a foundation for improved managerial performance. Their main strengths lie in their systematic, analytical and, in many cases, quantified base. They operate by means of a continuous cycle of gathering and analysing factual data, formulating problems, selecting objectives, identifying alternative courses of action, building new models, weighing costs against performance and benefits, and monitoring performance to point the way to corrective action and improvements.

Their value in all these respects is undeniable, but a word of caution is necessary. Techniques are only as good as the people who use them. Quantification is fine, but if it is based on doubtful assumptions, it can result in ponderous edifices being built on sand and collapsing when the sand shifts and can no longer bear their weight. Techniques such as investment appraisal and risk analysis will put executives into the best position possible to determine where they are going, but judgement is still required. Management techniques can help managers to make better decisions, but can never replace good judgement, which is the hallmark of the successful executive.

PART 2

Corporate Management

S.C.E.R.T. W.B. LIBRARY
Date 11.2.2000
Accn. No. 9925
S.C.E.R.T. W.B. Library Calcutta

1. General Management

DEFINITION

General management plans, organizes, directs and controls a number of interrelated operations and supporting services in order to achieve defined objectives.

General management is a discipline requiring the use of a number of managerial skills rather than a technique in itself. But the skills of general management and the effectiveness with which the activities are directed and controlled to achieve the desired result are dependent on the understanding and use of a wide range of management techniques.

GENERAL MANAGEMENT PROCESSES

The four processes of general management are as follows:

1. ***Planning*. Deciding where the organization should be going and how it should get there. This requires the appraisal of external and internal changes and constraints, forecasting, setting objectives, developing strategies and policies and preparing action plans.**
2. ***Organizing*. Deciding who does what. This requires the definition and grouping of activities, defining responsibilities, and establishing means of communication, coordination and control.**
3. ***Directing*. Ensuring that people know what to do and when to do it, and exercising leadership to get individuals to work to the best of their ability as part of a team.**
4. ***Controlling*. Measuring and monitoring results, comparing results with plans**

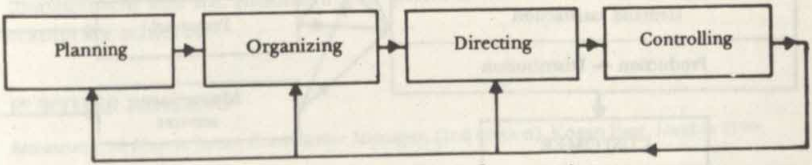


Figure 1.1 ***The process of managing***

and taking corrective action when required. These processes and the continuous feedback that takes place as a result of control mechanisms and the planning, organizing and directing activities are illustrated in Figure 1.1.

FUNCTIONS FOR WHICH GENERAL MANAGEMENT IS RESPONSIBLE

General management controls two main functions:

1. *Line activities*, which is what the organization exists to do. In a commercial enterprise these comprise:
    - *business generation* – innovation (new product development), marketing and selling; and
    - *demand satisfaction* – manufacturing the product to meet demand and distributing it to the customer. Feedback from the customer in the form of new orders and reactions to the product will affect the business generation activities.
2. *Staff or service activities*, which ensure that the line activities can take place by:
    - giving a sense of direction through planning and budgeting;
    - providing finance and the means of planning and controlling expenditure;
    - providing manpower in the quantities and qualities required; and
    - providing management services and management support activities which

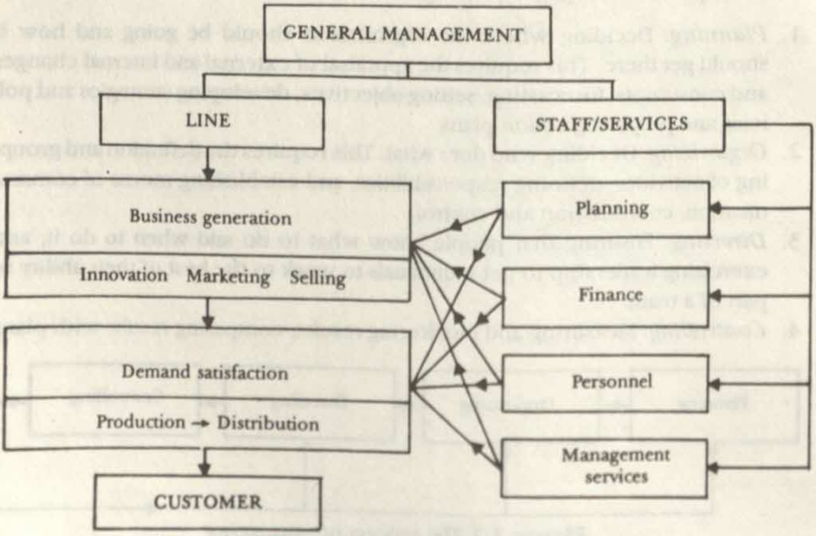


Figure 1.2. *The functions of general management*

include information technology, operation research, work study and other activities designed to improve the efficiency and effectiveness of the organization.

The relationships between these functions are shown in Figure 1.2.

TECHNIQUES

The techniques used in general management are those described in this handbook, although the level of detail at which understanding of the techniques themselves is necessary rather than the help that they can provide, will vary considerably in different situations.

Overall, the function of management techniques is to assist in the process of decision-making. Essentially, however, they are there to support, not supplant, the exercise of business judgement which is the key attribute of effective general management. Some, such as operation research, are specifically designed for this purpose. Others are associated with the main processes of general management and provide guidance on the application of those processes and in solving problems relating to them.

The main areas in which techniques are deployed in general management are as follows:

1. *Planning* in the fields of corporate planning, organization, marketing, sales, production, project management, distribution, finance and manpower.
2. *Control* in the fields of finance (especially costs), marketing, sales, production and salary administration.
3. *Resource allocation* in the fields of capital, cash, manpower and facilities.
4. *Resource development*, especially in the fields of people, the use of information technology and the extension of automation, mechanization and improved techniques of manufacturing and distribution.
5. *Management science*, especially operation research, to assist in planning, resource allocation, problem-solving and decision-making.
6. *Corporate effectiveness* - improving the efficiency and effectiveness of corporate operations.

Of the above, the two key areas in which management techniques help general management are planning and control - the initiation of the process of general management and the monitoring of performance to ensure that the planned results are achieved.

FURTHER READING

Armstrong, M, *How to be an Even Better Manager*, (2nd edition), Kogan Page, London 1990.

2. Strategic Management

DEFINITIONS

Strategy

Strategy defines where the organization wants to go to fulfil its purpose and achieve its mission. It provides the framework for guiding choices which determine the organization's nature and direction. These choices relate to the organization's products or services, markets, key capabilities, growth, return on capital and allocation of resources.

A strategy is therefore a declaration of intent; it defines what the organization wants to become in the longer term. The overall aim of strategy at corporate level will be to match or fit the organization to its environment in the most advantageous way possible. Strategies form the basis for strategic management and the formulation of strategic plans.

Strategic management

Strategic management is the process of formulating strategies and strategic plans and managing the organization to achieve them. Organizations and managers who think and act strategically are looking ahead and defining the direction in which they want to go in the middle and longer term. Although they are aware of the fact that businesses, like managers, must perform well in the present to succeed in the future, they are concerned with the broader issues which they are facing and the general direction in which they must go to deal with these issues.

Strategic management takes place within the context of the mission of the organization, and a fundamental task of strategic management will be to ensure that the mission is defined and relevant to the basic purpose of the organization within its changing environment. Strategic management is concerned with both ends and means. As an end, it describes a vision of what the organization will look like in a few years' time; as a means, it shows how it is expected that the vision will be realized. Strategic management is therefore visionary management, concerned with creating and conceptualizing ideas of where the organization is going. But it must be translatable into empirical management, which decides how, in practice, it is going to get there.

Strategic management creates a perspective which people can share and which guides their decisions and actions. The focus will be on identifying the organization's mission and goals, but attention is also concentrated on the resource base required to make it succeed. It is always necessary to remember that strategy is the means to create value. Managers who think strategically will have a broad and long-term view of where they are going. But they will also be aware that they are responsible first for planning how to allocate resources to opportunities which contribute to the implementation of strategy and, second, managing these opportunities in ways which will significantly add value to the results achieved by the organization.

Strategic planning

Strategic planning is a systematic, analytical approach which reviews the business as a whole in relation to its environment with the object of:

- developing an integrated, coordinated and consistent view of the route the company wishes to follow; and
- facilitating the adaption of the organization to environmental change.

The aim of strategic planning is to create a viable link between the organization's objectives and resources and its environmental opportunities.

KEY CONCEPTS IN STRATEGIC MANAGEMENT

The key concepts used in strategic management are as follows:

- *Distinctive competence* - working out what the organization is best at, and what its special or unique capabilities are.
- *Focus* - identifying and concentrating on the key strategic issues.
- *Sustainable competitive advantage* - as formulated by Michael Porter,[1] this concept states that to achieve competitive advantage, firms should create value for their customers, select markets where they can excel and present a moving target to their competitors by continually improving their position. Three of the most important factors are innovation, quality and cost reduction.
- *The value chain* - this concept, as illustrated in Figure 2.1, was also formulated by Michael Porter. The value chain consists of five generic categories of primary activities:

  1. *Inbound logistics*. The reception, storage and internal transport of inputs to the product.

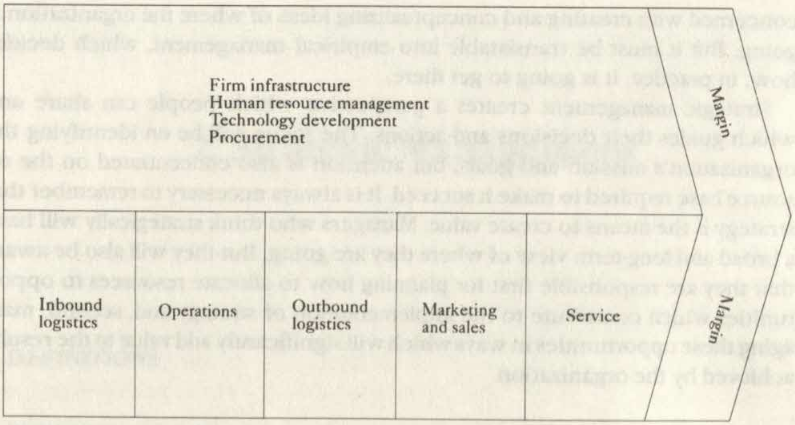


Figure 2.1 *Michael Porter's value chain*
(Reproduced, with permission, from: Moore, J.I. *Writers on Strategy and Strategic Management*, Penguin Books 1992)

2. *Operations*. The transformation of those inputs into the final product form.
3. *Outbound logistics*. The collection, storage and distribution of the produce to buyers.
4. *Marketing and sales*. Persuading buyers to purchase the product and making it possible for them to do so.
5. *Service*. The provision of service to enhance or maintain the value of the product.

There are four generic categories of support activities to these primary activities:

- *Procurement* - the act of purchasing inputs.
- *Technology development* - product and process.
- *Human resource management* - recruitment, training, development and pay of personnel.
- *Firm infrastructure* - functions such as general and quality management, planning and finance which support the whole value chain.

The successful management of these primary and support activities leads to margin - the difference between the value of the products or services sold by the firm and the cost of their creation:

- *Synergy* - developing a product-market posture with a combined performance which is greater than the sum of its parts.
- *Environmental scanning* - scanning the internal and external environment

of the firm to ensure that its management is fully aware of its strengths and weaknesses and the threats and opportunities it faces (SWOT analysis).

- *Resource allocation* - understanding the human, financial and material resource requirements of the strategy, and ensuring that the resources are made available and their use is optimized.

FORMULATING STRATEGIES

As Henry Mintzberg[2] has pointed out, strategy formulation is not necessarily a rational and continuous process. He believes that, while most of the time management pursues a given strategic orientation, changes in strategies, when they do occur, happen in brief quantum loops. In practice, 'a realized strategy can emerge in response to an evolving situation.'

Lester Dignam[3] also believes that strategy making is not always a rational step-by-step process. He suggests that most strategic decisions are event driven, not programmed. They are expressed as preferences rather than as exercises in applied logic. Strategy formulation, according to Dignam, is about correct decision-making, not about the formulation of detailed plans. The most effective strategists are usually creative, intuitive people, employing an adaptive and flexible process.

There is a great deal of truth in what Dignam says but there are still strong arguments for adopting a systematic approach to the formulation of strategic plans, as described below.

FORMULATING STRATEGIC PLANS

A systematic approach to formalizing strategic plans consists of the following steps:

1. *Define the organization's mission* - its overall purpose.
2. *Set objectives* - definitions of what the organization must achieve to fulfil its mission.
3. *Conduct environmental scans* - internal appraisals of the strengths and weaknesses of the organization and external appraisals of the opportunities and threats which face it (a SWOT analysis).
4. *Analyse existing strategies* - determining their relevance in the light of the environmental scan. This may include gap analysis to establish the extent to which environmental factors might lead to gaps between what is being achieved and what could be achieved if changes in existing strategies were made. In a corporation with a number of distinct businesses, an analysis of this portfolio of businesses can take place to establish strategies for the future of each business (see Chapter 3).
5. *Define strategic issues* in the light of the environmental scan, the gap

analysis and, where appropriate, the portfolio analysis. This may include such questions as the following:

- How are we going to maintain growth in a declining market for our most profitable product?
- In the face of aggressive competition, how are we going to maintain our competitive advantage and market leadership?
- What action are we going to take as a result of the portfolio analysis of our strategic business units?
- To what extent do we need to diversify into new products and markets and in which directions should we go?

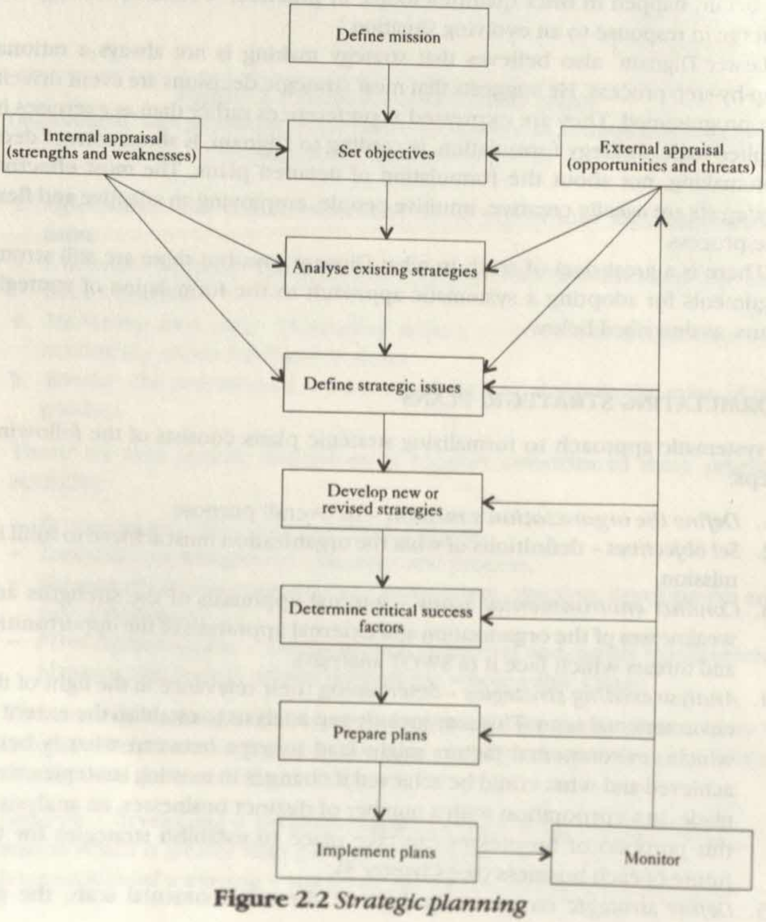

Define mission
Internal appraisal (strengths and weaknesses)
Set objectives
External appraisal (opportunities and threats)
Analyse existing strategies
Define strategic issues
Develop new or revised strategies
Determine critical success factors
Prepare plans
Implement plans
Monitor

Figure 2.2 *Strategic planning*

- What proportion of our resources should be allocated to research and development?
- What are we going to do about our ageing machine tools?
- What can we do about our overheads?
- How are we going to finance our projected growth?
- How are we going to ensure that we have the skilled workforce we need in the future?

6. *Develop new or revised strategies* and amend objectives in the light of the analysis of strategic issues.
7. *Decide on the critical success factors* related to the achievement of objectives and the implementation of strategy.
8. *Prepare operational, resource and project plans* designed to achieve the strategies and meet the critical success factor criteria.
9. *Implement* the plans.
10. *Monitor results* against the plans and feed back information which can be used to modify strategies and plans.

These steps are illustrated in Figure 2.2.

THE PLANNING PROCESS

It is important to operate a planning process which will not only produce realistic and potentially rewarding plans but will also secure the support of all those involved in implementing them. There are three approaches that can be adopted to strategic planning:

- *A top-down process*, in which managers are given targets to achieve which they pass on down the line.
- *A bottom-up process*, in which functional and line managers in conjunction with their staff submit plans, targets and budgets for approval by higher authority.
- *An iterative process*, which involves both the top-down and bottom-up setting of targets. There is a to-and-from movement between different levels until agreement is reached. However, this agreement will have to be consistent with the overall mission, objectives and priorities and will have to be made within the context of the financial resources available to the organization.

The iterative approach, which involves the maximum number of people, is the one most likely to deliver worthwhile and acceptable strategic plans.

BENEFITS OF STRATEGIC MANAGEMENT

The benefits of strategic planning are that it can:

- provide an integrated, coordinated and accepted view of the route the organization wishes to follow; and
- facilitate the adaptation of the organization to environmental change.

FURTHER READING

Dignam, L, *Strategic Management: Concepts, Decisions, Cases*, Irwin, New York 1990.

Mintzberg, H, 'Crafting strategy'. *The Harvard Business Review*, July–August 1987.

Porter, M, *Competitive Advantage: Creating and Sustaining Superior Performance*, Free Press, New York 1985.

3. Portfolio Planning

DEFINITION

Portfolio planning is a method of analysis used by corporations with a number of distinct businesses to help them decide which of these businesses they need to build, maintain, phase down or phase out.

OBJECTIVE

The objective of portfolio management is to help managements to view their companies as portfolios of businesses to be managed strategically in order to create shareholder value, maximize return on investment and achieve sustainable competitive advantage.

PORTFOLIO MANAGEMENT TECHNIQUES

Portfolio management involves the analysis of each business to assess its unique competitive opportunity and problems and its future capacity for contributing to organizational objectives. Resources are then allocated or withdrawn from the business as appropriate.

Portfolio management is conducted by:

- identifying the distinctive businesses or 'strategic business units' (SBUs); and
- analysing the growth and market share profile of each SBU using the Boston Consulting Group portfolio matrix, and taking appropriate action.

Identifying strategic business units

The distinctive businesses of the corporation are classified as strategic business units (SBUs). An SBU should exhibit the following characteristics:

- It is a single business or collection of related businesses.
- It has a distinct mission.
- It has its own competitors.

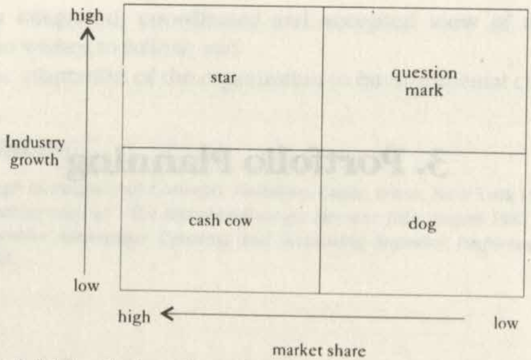


Figure 3.1 *The Boston Consulting Group growth/share matrix*

- It has a fully accountable chief executive.
- It can benefit from strategic planning.
- It can be planned independently of the other businesses.

The identification of SBUs, however, should not be done at the expense of detracting from any synergy that can be achieved, ie, linking activities so that the results achieved by the whole are greater than the sum of the parts.

Boston Consulting Group growth/share matrix

The Boston Consulting Group growth/share matrix as illustrated in Figure 3.1 analyses each business according to its:

- *market growth rate* – the annual growth rate of the market in which the business operates; and
- *relative market share* – the SBU's market share relative to its largest competitors.

The growth/share matrix is divided into four cells, each indicating a different type of business:

- *Stars* – market leaders in high-growth markets. Stars may require considerable cash support to maintain their competitive position.
- *Question marks* – businesses which operate in high-growth markets where there is already a market leader. Question marks require a great deal of cash for investment in plant, equipment and personnel to keep up with the fast-growing market, and the company has to decide on how much investment it wants to keep on making. Question marks can become stars but may have to be phased out if they fail to perform.
- *Cash cows* – businesses with a low growth rate but a large relative market share which produce a great deal of cash for the company and do not need

much support in the shape of investment as long as they maintain market share. But it may be decided that they should be phased down, even out, if it is thought that the return in investment is likely to decline.
- *Dogs* – businesses which have weak market shares in low-growth markets. They typically generate low profits or losses. Dog businesses often take up more management time than they are worth and need to be phased down further or phased out.

On the basis of this analysis, decisions can be made on the strategies for each SBU. There are four choices:

- *Build*. Increase the SBU's market share, even forgoing short-term earnings to achieve this goal. Building is appropriate for question marks where shares have to grow if they are to become stars.
- *Hold*. Preserve the SBU's market share. This strategy is appropriate for strong cash cows if they are to continue to yield a large positive cash flow.
- *Harvest*. Increase the SBU's short-term cash flow irrespective of the long-term effect. This strategy is appropriate for weak cash cows with an uncertain future. Harvesting can also be used for question marks and dogs.
- *Divest*. Sell or liquidate the business because resources can be better used elsewhere. This strategy is appropriate for dogs and question marks which are acting as a drag on the company's profits.

It should be noted that SBUs have a life-cycle. They can start as question marks, then become stars, next become cash cows and finally turn into dogs towards the end of their life-cycle. Portfolio planning therefore requires companies to analyse trends and project possible future trajectories of the SBU through its life-cycle. Strategies can then be developed to prolong the stay of SBUs in a profitable part of their life-cycle. The aim may be to make them stay in their role as stars or cash cows permanently – all businesses do not inevitably proceed through their life-cycle to become dogs. But there are two dangers to be avoided: first, that of being complacent and neglecting competition, falling demand or obsolescence; and second, that of investing too much in a business which is in terminal decline.

BENEFITS

Portfolio planning enables a company to consider and develop strategies for each of their SBUs on the basis of an analysis of their relative position in the growth/share matrix. It is a relatively simple concept which is well proven as an instrument for converting analysis into action.

4. Organization Management

DEFINITION

Organization management is the process of developing and operating organizations to ensure that they function effectively. It is concerned with the structure of the organization and the ways in which the best results can be obtained from the members of the organization who work within that structure.

OBJECTIVE

The objective of organizational management is to increase organizational effectiveness. An effective organization can be defined as one which successfully achieves its objectives and meets its responsibilities to its stakeholders: its shareholders, employees, customers, suppliers and the community at large.

FACTORS CONTRIBUTING TO ORGANIZATIONAL EFFECTIVENESS

The 12 factors contributing to organizational effectiveness are as follows:

1. Strong visionary leadership from the top.
2. A powerful management team.
3. A well-motivated, committed, skilled and flexible workforce.
4. A structure which is appropriate to the operations and culture of the organization and the environment in which it functions.
5. Effective teamwork throughout the organization with conflict kept well under control.
6. Clearly defined goals and strategies to operate them.
7. A continuous pressure to innovate and make the best use of new technology, coupled with the ability to manage and thrive on change, to manage diversity and to achieve a reasonable degree of order in conditions of uncertainty, even chaos.
8. A positive corporate culture encompassing a value system which emphasizes performance and quality. The management style which is part of that

culture should be one which provides leadership while promoting a 'culture of consent' in which the involvement of employees in developing and improving the organization is encouraged.

9. The operation of the organization as a 'learning organization', ie, one which facilitates the learning of all its members and one which continually transforms itself.
10. An ability to operate flexibly and respond quickly to change, coupled with the capacity to get into action fast and make things happen.
11. A strong marketing orientation which concentrates on maximizing profitable sales by developing products or services which will satisfy consumer needs and wants. The marketing philosophy of the organization will emphasize the importance of communicating to existing and potential customers the benefits of the products or services on offer to them. It will aim to ensure that demands are fulfilled to the satisfaction of both the customers (because they get what they want) and the business (because it achieves its financial and growth objectives).
12. A sound financial base and good systems for management accounting and cost control with an emphasis on measurement and the achievement of cost effectiveness.

ORGANIZATION MANAGEMENT ACTIVITIES

Organization management is concerned with:

- organization design
- culture management
- team management
- flexibility management
- change management.

ORGANIZATION DESIGN

Definitions

- *Organization structure*. The structure of an organization consists of positions and units between which there are relationships involving the exercise of authority and exchange of information. The structure must be appropriate to the organizational purpose and to the situation in which it exists.
- *Organization design*. Organization design is the process of dividing the overall management task into a variety of activities and then establishing means of coordinating those activities. Organization design deals with the structural aspects of the organization. It aims to analyse roles and relationships so that collective effort can be organized explicitly to achieve specific ends.

Organization design guidelines

The classical theorists developed a set of principles of organization, but the suggestion that they were universally applicable is no longer tenable. The principles were in any case often inconsistent. There are, however, a number of guidelines which should be taken into account when designing or modifying organization structures, although their application will depend on the circumstances. They are described below:

- *Allocation of work*. The work that needs to be done has to be defined and allocated to the appropriate job-holders or departments. Related activities should be grouped together to avoid unnecessary overlap and duplication of work. Matters requiring a decision should be dealt with as near to the point of action as possible. Managers should not try to do too much themselves. Neither should they exercise too close supervision.
- *Levels in the structure*. Too many levels of management and supervision inhibit communication and create extra work (and jobs). The aim should be to reduce the number of levels to a minimum. Reducing the number of levels to create flatter structures does, however, impose a much more stringent requirement to improve teamwork, delegation and methods of integrating activities when spans of control are much wider and middle managers with a coordinating role no longer exist. The process of reducing the number of layers is facilitated by the use of information technology to speed up information flows and help decision-making.
- *Span of control*. There are limits to the number of people anyone can manage or supervise well, but these vary considerably between different jobs. Most people can work with a far greater span of control than they think they can, as long as they are prepared to delegate more effectively, to avoid getting involved in too much detail and to develop good teamwork among the individuals reporting to them. In fact, wide spans of control are beneficial in that they can enforce delegation and better teamwork and free the higher-level manager to spend more time on policy-making and planning. Limited spans of control encourage managers to interfere too much with the work going on beneath them and therefore constrain the scope that should be given to their subordinates to grow with their jobs.
- *One person, one boss*. Generally speaking, individuals should report only to one boss. This avoids conflicting orders being given to one person. If managers bypass immediate subordinates when issuing instructions, it can cause confusion and undermines authority.
- *Decentralization*. Authority to make decisions should be delegated as close to the action as possible.
- *Optimize the structure*. Design the ideal organization by all means, but also remember that it may have to be modified to fit in the particular skills and abilities of key individuals.

- *Relevance to organizational needs*. The organization structure has to be developed or amended to meet the needs of its situation. In today's conditions of turbulence and change this inevitably means a tendency towards more decentralized and flexible structures, with greater responsibility given to individuals and an extension of the use of taskforces and project teams to deal with opportunities or threats. This implies an informal, non-bureaucratic, organic approach to organization design (ie, the form of the organization will follow its function, not the other way around).

Basic approach to organization design

The basic approach to organization design is to:

- define what the organization exists to do - its purpose and objectives;
- analyse and identify the activities or tasks required to do it;
- allocate related activities to individual job-holders;
- group-related activities carried out by job-holders logically into organizational units;
- provide for the management and coordination of the activities at each level of responsibility; and
- establish reporting and communicating relationships.

CULTURE MANAGEMENT

The culture of an organization can be defined broadly as the pattern of shared beliefs, attitudes, assumptions and values in an organization which shape the way people act and interact and influence strongly the way in which things get done. Cultures are functional if they positively support the achievement of the objectives of the organization, or dysfunctional if they prevent the organization operating effectively.

Definition of culture management

Culture management is about reinforcing or embedding an existing functional culture or changing a dysfunctional culture. The approach will be affected by certain overall considerations as discussed below. With these in mind, culture management is a matter of analysis and diagnosis followed by the application of appropriate reinforcement or change levers.

Overall considerations

Because cultures have evolved over the years and are usually deeply rooted, they are difficult to change. It is very hard to get people to alter long-held attitudes and beliefs, and attempts to do so often fail. All you can do is to get them to alter their behaviour in ways which will reduce dysfunctional elements in the culture and support the introduction of functional elements.

But changing behaviour is not always easy, although it will happen in traumatic circumstances such as a crisis, a change in ownership or the arrival of a powerful, autocratic, charismatic and visionary leader.

Analysis and diagnosis

The analysis of culture and the diagnosis of what management action needs to be taken can be carried out on a continuous basis by observation and noting behaviours which indicate the values and norms prevalent in the organization. A more searching analysis would use instruments such as interviews, questionnaires, focus groups (representative groups of employees whose views are sought on organizational or work issues), attitude surveys and workshops.

Culture management techniques

One or more of the following approaches can be used to help in managing culture:

- The issue of mission and value statements which explicitly state where the organization is going and the values it adopts in getting there - but these statements must represent reality and must be followed up by workshops, training and discussions which translate the words into deeds.
- Workshops to get people involved in discussing new values and ways of behaviour and practising their application.
- Education and training programmes to extend knowledge and to teach people new skills.
- Performance management programmes which ensure through the mechanisms of objective setting and performance appraisal that the values, norms and behaviours which the cultural change programme is developing are absorbed and acted upon as part of the normal process of management.
- Reward management systems which reward people for behaviour which is in accord with the values built into the culture change programme.

Such programmes can be used not only to change but also to reinforce a culture. Ideally, they should be conducted on an organization-wide basis but it may have to be recognized that different parts of the organization may legitimately have different cultures and that it could be counter-productive to impose an alien culture upon them.

TEAM MANAGEMENT

Organization management is largely about making the best use of people. It has to be recognized that organizations are cooperative systems which consist of groups of people working together. They may be working in formal groups set up to achieve a defined purpose or they may be working informally.

Team management is the process of improving the quality of teamworking throughout the organization. Teamworking becomes more significant when the technology or operating processes require 'cellular' working or considerable interaction between people carrying out different functions but with a common purpose. Effective teamworking is more important during periods of rapid change or crisis. An organization which has to adapt quickly to its changing competitive, economic or social environment will rely upon good teamwork so that it can pool resources and respond quickly to the new opportunities or threats.

The tendency for organizations to become flatter as layers of management or supervision are stripped out creates the need for better teamwork. In these circumstances managers will have larger spans of control and will have to delegate more responsibility to their teams, who will be forced to coordinate their own work rather than rely on their boss to do it for them. Interdisciplinary project teams become more important. The instant availability of management information and the communication facilities provided by information technology assist informal teams to operate more efficiently.

Techniques for improving teamwork

- Pick people who will fit the culture and work well with others but who are still capable of taking their own line when necessary.
- Keep on emphasizing that constructive teamwork is a key core value in the organization.
- Set overlapping or interlocking objectives for people who have to work together. These will take the form of targets to be achieved or projects to be completed by joint action.
- At office or shopfloor level set up autonomous work groups which are responsible for all aspects of their operation and may not have an appointed leader.
- Assess people's performance not only on the results they achieve but also on the degree to which they uphold the value of teamwork.
- Encourage people to build networks – things get done in organizations, as in the outside world, on the basis of whom you know as well as what you know. It is no good being right if you cannot carry other people along with you. And this is best done through informal channels rather than relying on reports, memoranda or committees. This, incidentally, is an approach which people without a strong power base in the organization can use to good effect.
- Set up interdepartmental project teams with a brief to get on with it.
- Clamp down on unproductive politics.
- Describe and think of the organization as a system of interlocking teams united by a common purpose. Don't emphasize hierarchies. Abolish depart-

mental boundaries if they are getting in the way, but do not be alarmed if there is disagreement – remember the value of *constructive* conflict.

- Devise and implement commitment and communications strategies which develop mutuality and identification.
- Hold 'away days' and conferences for work teams so they can get together and explore some of the real issues without the pressures of their day-to-day jobs.
- Recognize and reward people who have worked well in teams.
- Introduce team bonus systems – rewarding teams for achieving targets.
- Use training programmes to build relationships. This can often be a far more beneficial result of a course than the increase in skills or knowledge which was its ostensible purpose.
- Use team-building and interactive skills training to supplement the other approaches. But do not rely upon them to have any effect unless the messages they convey are in line with the organization's culture and values.

FLEXIBILITY MANAGEMENT

The need for flexibility management

A flexible approach to organization management is necessary to ensure that the organization will be able to adapt to change, respond quickly to new threats and opportunities and manage diverse and decentralized operations. Flexibility management is the process of applying the various techniques for achieving flexibility to organizations in order to improve their overall effectiveness.

Techniques for achieving flexibility

Flexibility arrangements as a means of achieving the most efficient use of human resources can take a number of forms, as described below.

Contract-based flexibility

Contract-based flexibility refers to employee contracts which specify flexibility as a key aspect of terms and conditions. Job descriptions are written in terms which emphasize the overall purpose of the job and its principal accountabilities. Contract-based flexibility is also achieved by employing contract workers who are required to work on any task or in any area appropriate to their range of skills.

Time-based flexibility

Time-based flexibility can be achieved by the use of flexible hours on a daily (flexitime), weekly or annual basis.

Job-based flexibility (functional flexibility)

Job-based flexibility means that workers can be moved from task to task and may be expected to use a wider range of skills within their capability (multiskilling). Firms may want to introduce this type of flexibility following the implementation of new operational approaches such as flexible manufacturing systems, cellular manufacturing and just-in-time systems.

Functional flexibility is particularly important where organizations are increasing their use of sophisticated equipment and systems which must be properly maintained if they are to produce at their optimum level. Functional or job-based flexibility also means that where workloads in different parts of a factory fluctuate widely, people can be moved in quickly to handle the extra demands.

Skill-based flexibility (multiskilling)

Functional flexibility is only possible when employees have the range of skills required to perform different tasks; for example, machine operators having the necessary skills not only to operate their machinery but also to carry out basic maintenance and deal with minor faults and breakdowns.

Organization-based flexibility

Organization-based approaches to flexibility include making more use of part-time and temporary staff or contract workers and relying on a nucleus of permanent employees (the core) to carry out the key functions of the organization.

CHANGE MANAGEMENT

Definition

Change management is the process of helping organizations to introduce change successfully.

Guidelines for managing change

The following are the main guidelines for managing change:

- The achievement of sustainable change requires strong commitment and leadership from the top.
- Understanding is necessary of the culture of the organization and the levers for change which are most likely to be effective in that culture.
- Those concerned with managing change at all levels should have the temperament and leadership skills appropriate to the circumstances of the organization and its change strategies.
- It is important to build a working environment which is conducive to change. This means developing the firm as a 'learning organization'.
- Although there may be an overall strategy for change, it is best tackled incre-

mentally (except in crisis conditions). The change programme should be broken down into actionable segments for which people can be held accountable.

- The reward system should encourage innovation and recognize success in achieving change.
- Change will always involve failure as well as success. The failures must be expected and learned from.
- Hard evidence and data on the need for change are the most powerful tools for its achievement, but establishing the need for change is easier than deciding how to satisfy it.
- It is easier to change behaviour by changing process, structure and systems than to change attitudes or the corporate culture.
- There are always people in organizations who welcome the challenges and opportunities that change can provide. They are the ones to be chosen as change agents.
- Resistance to change is inevitable if the individuals concerned feel they are going to be worse off – implicitly or explicitly. The inept management of change will produce that reaction.
- In an age of global competition, technological innovation, turbulence, discontinuity, even chaos, change is inevitable and necessary. The organization must do all it can to explain why change is essential and how it will affect everyone. Moreover, every effort must be made to protect the interests of those affected by change.

PART 3

Marketing Management

5. Marketing Management: An Overview

DEFINITION

Marketing is 'the management process responsible for identifying, anticipating and satisfying customer requirements profitably' (Institute of Marketing).

OBJECTIVES

The overall object of marketing is to ensure that the company obtains the revenues it needs to achieve its profit targets.

As defined by Kotler,[1] marketing management is: 'The analysis, planning, implementation, and control of programs designed to create, build, and maintain beneficial exchanges and relationships with target markets for the purpose of achieving organizational objectives.' According to Theodore Levitt: 'The purpose of a business is to get and keep a customer.'[2] Marketing aims to decide what companies should do to achieve that purpose and then to ensure that it is done.

MARKETING IN CONTEXT

Needs, wants and demands

According to Kotler, 'The starting point for the discipline of marketing lies in human needs and wants...A human need is defined as a state of felt deprivation of some basic satisfaction. Human wants are desires for specific satisfiers of these deeper needs...Marketers do not create needs, needs pre-exist marketers. Marketers, along with other influentials in the society, influence wants.'[1]

Needs and wants are translated into demands for products from people who can and will pay for them, in the belief that they will provide satisfaction and value.

Marketing is about developing products or services which will satisfy wants, communicating to existing and potential customers the benefits of the products or services on offer to them, and ensuring that demands are fulfilled to the satisfaction of both the customers (because they get what they want) and the business (because it achieves its financial and growth objectives).

The environment

The process of marketing takes place within an economic, social and political environment which will affect what the business does and what it achieves. Marketing presents an entirely new set of problems if conducted in a turbulent rather than placid environment.

Industrial and consumer markets

Although basic marketing techniques may well be relevant in all types of markets, distinctions need to be made between industrial marketing (where there are fewer and larger and more professional buyers) and consumer markets (which are much more heterogeneous and unpredictable). The techniques described in later chapters of Part 3 are orientated more towards consumer marketing.

THE MARKETING CONCEPT

'The marketing concept holds that the key to achieving organizational goals consists in determining the needs and wants of target markets and delivering the desired satisfactions more effectively and efficiently than competitors' (Kotler).[1] The target market is defined as the set of actual and potential buyers of a product.

The marketing concept is distinguished by Kotler from the following:

1. *The production concept*, which holds that consumers will favour those products that are available and highly affordable, and therefore management should concentrate on improving production and distribution efficiency.
2. *The product concept*, which holds that consumers will favour those products that offer the most quality, performance and features, and therefore the organization should devote its energy to making continuous product improvements.
3. *The selling concept*, which holds that consumers will not buy enough of the organization's products unless the organization undertakes a substantial selling and promotional effort.

The limitations of these concepts are obvious. While not dismissing the importance of production quality and product innovation, the danger of being production orientated is that products are handed over to the sales force to sell without any consideration being given to these fundamental truths:

- Consumption is the sole end purpose of all production; and the interest of the producer ought to be attended to only in so far as it may be necessary for promoting that of the consumer (Adam Smith, *The Wealth of Nations*, 1776).

- The customer is the only arbiter of quality - and an improvement the customer cannot understand or doesn't want is no kind of improvement at all (Ray Willsmer).[3]
- However desirable the merits of the product, they are never desirable at any price (Robert Heller).[4]

The danger of being sales orientated is the pursuit of volume rather than profit. And, as Theodore Levitt wrote:

> Selling focuses on the needs of the seller: marketing on the needs of the buyer. Selling is preoccupied with the seller's need to convert his product into cash: marketing with the idea of satisfying the needs of the customer by means of the product and the whole cluster of things associated with creating, delivering and finally consuming it.[5]

The marketing concept expresses the company's commitment to consumer sovereignty. The company produces what its consumers want, and in this way maximizes consumer satisfaction and earns its profits.

Levitt summed up the marketing concept when he wrote 'The organization must learn to think of itself not as producing goods or services but as *buying customers*, as doing the things that will make people *want* to do business with it.'[2]

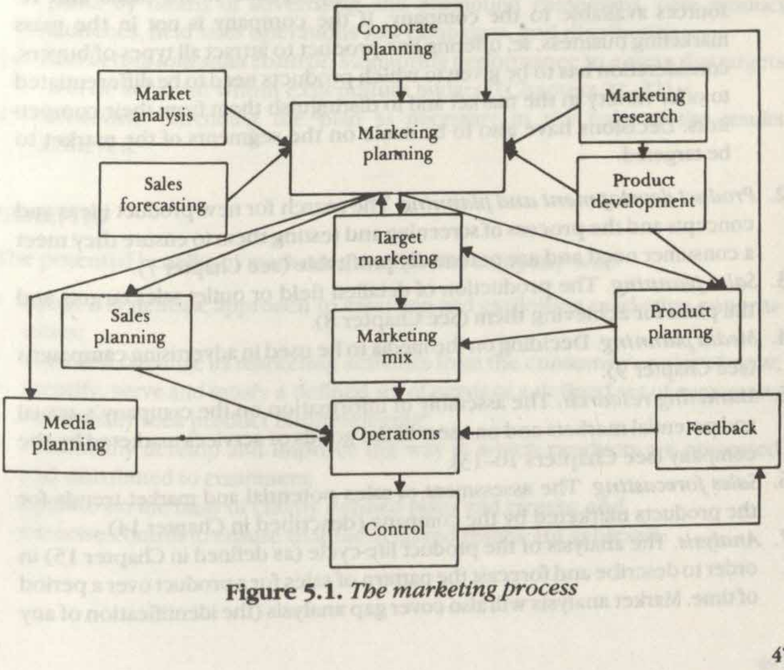


Figure 5.1. *The marketing process*

THE MARKETING PROCESS

The marketing process is based upon the company's objectives and strategies as set out in its corporate plan. Marketing is very largely a planning and analytical process with a considerable input from research and development activities. The plans lead to action which is monitored to ensure that it produces the desired results.

The relationships between the main marketing activities are illustrated in Figure 5.1. These are described in later sections but can be summarized as follows:

1. *Marketing planning*. This is the central marketing process, described in more detail in Chapter 6. It ensures that corporate objectives are achieved by setting sales targets and budgets and preparing action plans for achieving results. The plans use the outputs of market research, sales forecasts and market analyses, which include product life-cycle analysis, gap analysis and the analysis of competitors' activities (these terms are defined below). This data enables the company to focus on the following:
   - *Analysing market opportunities* to identify where the company would have a competitive advantage for introducing new products, improving existing products and/or entering new markets.
   - *Selecting target markets* which are appropriate to the skills and resources available to the company. If the company is not in the mass marketing business, ie, offering one product to attract all types of buyers, consideration has to be given to which products need to be differentiated to offer variety in the market and to distinguish them from their competitors. Decisions have also to be made on the segments of the market to be targeted.
2. *Product development and planning*. The search for new product ideas and concepts and the process of screening and testing them to ensure they meet a consumer need and are potentially profitable (see Chapter 7).
3. *Sales planning*. The production of detailed field or outlet sales targets and the plans for achieving them (See Chapter 8).
4. *Media planning*. Deciding on the media to be used in advertising campaigns (see Chapter 9).
5. *Marketing research*. The assembly of information on the company's actual and potential markets and on users of the goods or services marketed by the company (see Chapters 10-13).
6. *Sales forecasting*. The assessment of sales potential and market trends for the products marketed by the company (described in Chapter 14).
7. *Analysis*. The analysis of the product life-cycle (as defined in Chapter 15) in order to describe and forecast the pattern of sales for a product over a period of time. Market analysis will also cover gap analysis (the identification of any

areas in the market which are not filled by competitors' products and could be exploited by the company) and the analysis of competitors' activities generally.

8. *Target marketing*. This is the more detailed definition of the different groups that make up a market (segmentation), followed by decisions on where marketing effort should be targeted (ie, which segments should be penetrated). These decisions lead to further decisions on the market position the company wishes to establish in the target market in relation to its competitors. Target marketing is described in Chapter 16.
9. *Developing the marketing mix*. This is the set of controllable variables that the company blends to produce the response it wants in the target market. The mix, as described in Chapter 17, comprises the following elements:
    - product
    - price
    - place
    - promotion.
10. *Pricing*. Setting competitive and profitable price levels (Chapter 18).
11. *Relationship marketing*. Building good customer relations (Chapter 19).
12. *Database marketing*. Using customer databases effectively (Chapter 20).
13. *Marketing and sales operations*. The implementation of the marketing plans by means of advertising and promotion campaigns, new product launches, field sales operations and campaigns, and distribution.
14. *Marketing and sales control*. Monitoring performance to ensure that targets will be achieved within expenditure budgets (Chapters 21–22).
15. *Feedback*. Amending the plan as necessary in the light of the results achieved.

BENEFITS

The potential benefits of marketing are that the company will:

- adopt a systematic approach to assessing and exploiting marketing opportunities;
- view and organize its marketing activities from the consumer's point of view;
- identify, serve and satisfy a defined set of needs of a defined set of customers;
- continually seek product improvements;
- continually develop and improve the way in which products are presented and distributed to customers;
- operate on the basis of clearly defined plans and targets; and
- exercise control to ensure that the required results are achieved.

REFERENCES

1. Kotler, P, *Marketing Management*, (7th edition), Prentice-Hall, Englewood Cliffs, NJ 1991.
2. Levitt, T, *The Marketing Imagination*, Free Press, New York 1983.
3. Willsmer, R L, *The Basic Arts of Marketing*, Business Books, London 1984.
4. Heller, R, *The Naked Market*, Sidgwick & Jackson, London 1984.
5. Levitt, T, 'Marketing myopia', *Harvard Business Review*, July–August 1960.
6. Lancaster, G and Massingham, L, *Essentials of Marketing*, McGraw-Hill, London 1988.

6. Marketing Planning

DEFINITION

Marketing planning decides on the basis of marketing analysis and assessment in the context of the overall company plan:

1. The marketing objectives, policies and strategies of the company in terms of its product range, market position and penetration, pricing and distribution systems.
2. The action plans required to implement strategies in terms of research, product development, promotion, advertising, selling and distribution.
3. The results to be achieved in terms of sales revenue and profit targets, and budgeted marketing and selling expenditure.

THE MARKETING PLANNING PROCESS

Marketing planning involves the following:

- *Diagnosis* - where is the company now and why?
- *Prognosis* - where is the company heading?
- *Objectives* - where should the company be heading?
- *Strategy* - what is the best way to get there?
- *Tactics* - what specific actions should be undertaken, by whom and when?
- *Control* - what measures should be watched to indicate whether the company is succeeding?

The process of marketing planning is also described in a model called APACS (Adaptive Planning and Control Sequence) developed by the Marketing Science Institute which sets out the following stages:

Step 1. Define problem and set objectives

Step 2. Appraisal using SWOT analysis (see Chapter 2).

Step 3. Determine the tasks to be accomplished and identify the means to achieve these aims.

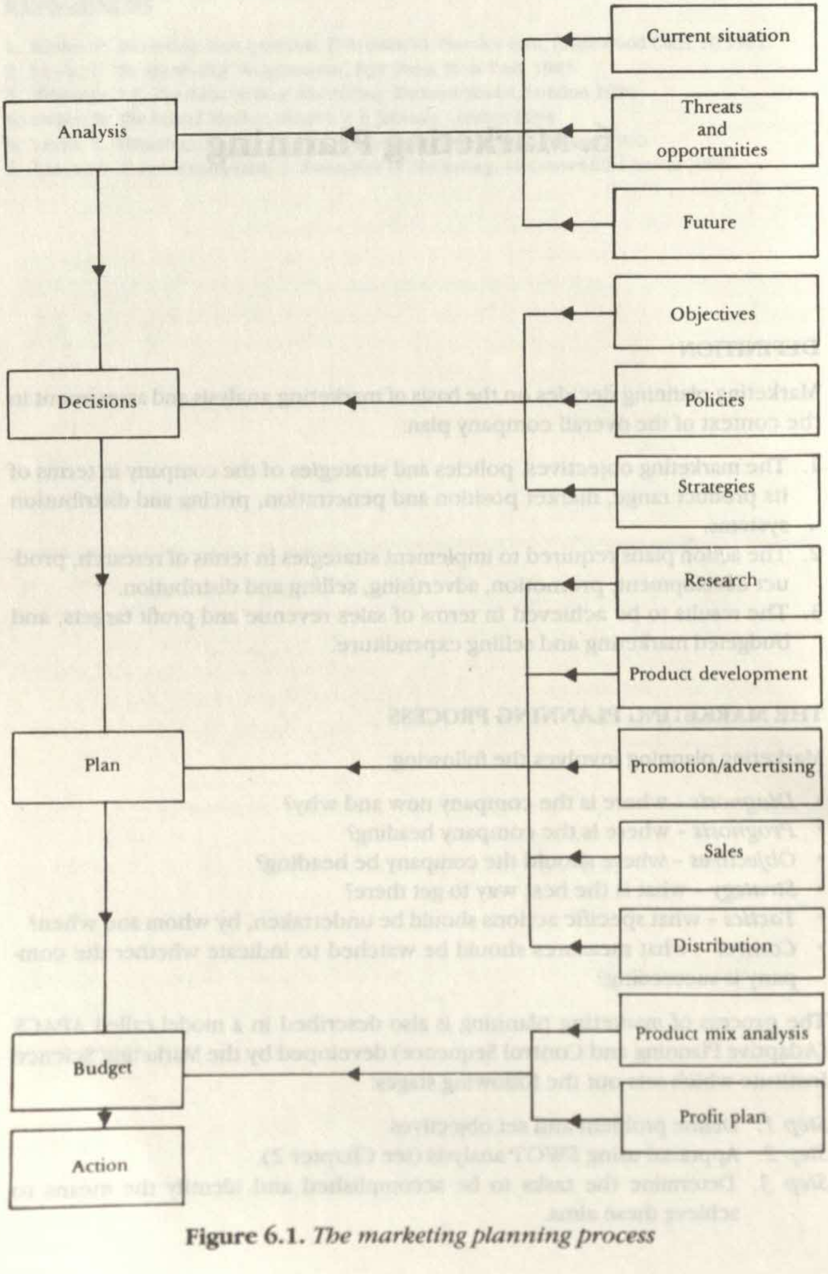


Figure 6.1. *The marketing planning process*

Step 4. Identify alternative plans and mixes.
Step 5. Estimate the expected results arising from implementation of the alternative plans.
Step 6. Managerial review and decision.
Step 7. Feedback of results and post audit.
Step 8. Adapt programme if required.

The sequence of activities required by these processes is illustrated in Figure 6.1.

ANALYSIS

The analytical stage of marketing planning requires an appraisal of:

1. the current situation: strengths and weaknesses;
2. marketing threats and opportunities; and
3. future trends.

The current situation

This is analysed under the following headings:

1. *Corporate position:*
   - The business the company is in and the salient features of that business.
   - The company's overall objectives, explicit or implied.
   - The company's resources – productive, technical, financial, marketing and their strengths and weaknesses.
   - The policies of that company, explicit or otherwise, with regard to the use and development of these resources.
   - The special skills or competences possessed by the company.
2. *Marketing description*:
   - Definition of the market and each of its segments.
   - Current size of the market in units and sales revenue for the whole market and each segment.
   - Sales trends over the past few years for the whole market and each segment.
   - Environmental factors in the market that may affect customer purchasing.
3. *Product review*:
   - The sales, prices and gross margins for each product in the product line.
4. *Competition*:
   - Market shares held by the company and each competitor.

- Description of the strategies adopted by major competitors in terms of product range and quality, promotion, pricing and distribution.

5. *Distribution*:

- Analysis of sales trends and developments in the major distribution channels.

Marketing threats and opportunities

An assessment of existing *and* potential threats and opportunities is made. As defined by Kotler,[1]

- *a marketing threat* is a challenge posed by an unfavourable trend or specific event that would lead, in the absence of purposeful marketing action, to product stagnation or demise;
- *a marketing opportunity* is an attractive arena for company marketing action in which the particular company would enjoy a competitive advantage. The assessment of marketing opportunities includes gap analysis, ie, the identification of gaps in the product range or segments of the market not covered by the company or its competitors and which can profitably be developed or penetrated by the company using its existing or potential resources.

Threats and opportunities can be categorized by using the grids in Figure 6.2. Immediate actions are required for any threat or opportunity which is placed in the top left-hand high/high cell. No immediate action is needed for those placed in the low/low cells. Any threats or opportunities put into the high/low category will need to be monitored and outline longer-term or contingency plans will have to be prepared.

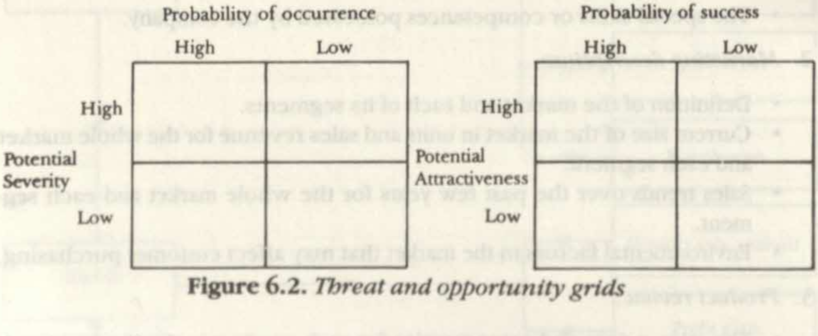


Figure 6.2. *Threat and opportunity grids*

Future trends

The analysis of future trends takes the form of a summary of the results of market and sales forecasts and market research activity under the following headings:

- Economic data and forecasts.

- Industry data and forecasts.
- Competitor data - trends in market share.
- Factors influencing purchasing/using decisions such as quality, price, design, image, perceived market position, after-sales service.
- Objective forecasts of sales in the market generally, for product groups and for specific products.
- Subjective forecasts of likely trends in the market giving most optimistic, pessimistic and best estimate values.

MARKETING PLAN DECISIONS

The decisions incorporated into the marketing plan cover:

1. objectives
2. policies
3. strategies.

Marketing objectives

Marketing objectives are set out under the following headings:

- Market share - the degree to which the market is saturated.
- Market penetration - increase in sales to existing customers.
- Sales revenue for period of the plan.
- Contribution or profit on sales for the period of the plan. (Contribution is the difference between the sales revenue for a product and the marginal or variable costs directly attributed to it, which include variable manufacturing, selling and administrative costs. It thus indicates the contribution made by the product to profit and to covering fixed costs.)

Marketing policies

Marketing policies provide guidelines on the approach the company will adopt to market its products. The headings to be covered are as follows:

- *Market position*. Does the company want to maintain its position as market leader? Or does it want to become market leader?
- *Product development*. Is the company interested in achieving technological breakthroughs and introducing radically different products to the market or is it content to maintain and develop the present product range without making substantial changes?
- *Product quality*. What is the level of quality of the product or service that the company wishes to provide and what image does it want to present to its customers?
- *Pricing*. What price levels should be adopted for each product?

- *Promotional/advertising*. How much promotional or advertising effort will be put behind the product?
- *Packaging*. To what extent is the company going to rely on improved packaging to increase sales?

Marketing strategies

Marketing strategies are the broad approaches the company intends to adopt in the longer term to achieve its marketing objectives in accordance with its marketing policies. Strategies are developed for the following:

- *Target markets*. The market segments in which the company will concentrate and the marketing position it proposes to adopt in each segment (ie, the extent to which it positions itself close to a competitor but establishes differentiation through product features and price/quality difference, or the extent to which it attacks holes in the market established by gap analysis).
- *Marketing mix*. The blend of controllable marketing variables required to produce the response wanted in the target market. The mix includes new products, prices, promotion, packaging, advertising, field sales and distribution.
- *Marketing expenditure*. How much will have to be spent to implement the various marketing strategies.

PLANS

Plans deal with the specific areas, as set out below, where action has to be taken to implement strategies and thus achieve objectives. They specify not only what has to be done but also who does it and when it has to be accomplished:

1. *Research*. Programmes of marketing research to obtain data on consumer behaviour and reactions.
2. *Product development*. Plans to develop and launch new products or to reposition existing products.
3. *Sales promotion and advertising*. Details of the promotional and advertising campaigns required to assist product launches or to increase market penetration.
4. *Sales*. Plans for redeploying or expanding the sales force and for increasing its effectiveness.
5. *Distribution*. Plans for improving the effectiveness of existing distribution channels or for opening up new channels.

MARKETING BUDGET

The market budget sets out for the whole company and each product group and product:

1. the targets for sales volume, sales revenue, gross margin (the amount by which sales revenue exceeds the factory cost of goods sold) or contribution (sales revenue less variable costs), and net profit; and
2. the marketing expenditure budgets for advertising promotion, research, field sales, distribution and the costs of the marketing department itself.

The budget will be strongly influenced by the processes of product-mix analysis and profit planning.

Product-mix analysis

Product-mix analysis aims to optimize profits by selling products in the most profitable ratio to one another.

Profit planning

Profit planning is carried out as follows:

1. Preliminary profit targets are set in line with corporate planning objectives.
2. Projections are made of sales revenue on the basis of the sales plans and the pricing policies which it is believed will achieve the desired profit target.
3. Estimates are made of fixed and variable costs in relation to projected activity levels.
4. The projected contribution to profits and fixed costs (sales revenue minus variable costs) is calculated.
5. Estimated fixed costs are deducted from the contribution to show the residual profit level.
6. Adjustments are then made as required and as possible either:
    - to sales plans, pricing policies or cost budgets to achieve the profit target – these adjustments may increase marketing expenditure if it is felt that the consequential increase in the 'bottom line' profit figure would provide an acceptable return on that expenditure; or
    - to the profit target, on the basis of the assessment of what can realistically be achieved in terms of an increase in sales revenue or a reduction in costs.

REFERENCE

1. Kotler, P, *Marketing Management*, (7th edition), Prentice-Hall, Englewood Cliffs, NJ 1991.

FURTHER READING

Baker, M, *Marketing Strategic Management*, (2nd edition), Macmillan, London 1992.
McDonald, M, *Strategic Marketing Planning*, Kogan Page, London 1992.
Westwood, J, *The Marketing Plan*, Kogan Page, London 1992.

7. Product Planning

DEFINITION

Product planning is the process of developing and maintaining a portfolio of products which will satisfy defined customer needs and wants, maximize profitability and make the best use of the skills and resources of the company.

REASONS FOR PRODUCT PLANNING

- The best consumer marketers have long known that safety lies not in products but in portfolios of products (Robert Heller).[1]
- A truly marketing-minded firm tries to create value-satisfying goods and services that customers will want to buy. What it offers for sale includes not only the genetic product or service but also how it is made available to the customer, in what form, when, under what conditions and what terms of trade. Most important, what it offers for sale is determined not by the seller but by the buyer. The seller takes his or her cues from the buyer in such a way that the product becomes a consequent of the marketing effort, not vice versa (Theodore Levitt).[2]
- (1)The form of a product is a variable, not given in developing market strategy. Products are planned and developed to serve markets. (2)The 'product' is what the product does; it is the total package of benefits the customer receives where he or she buys...Even though a product might, in its narrow sense, be indifferentiable, an individual supplier may differentiate his or her product from competitive offerings through service, product availability, and brand image, and differentiation in one respect or another is the basis for developing a market franchise (E Raymond Corey).[3]
- The main job of distribution is not to get rid of what production makes, it is to tell production what it ought to make (Lyndall F Urwick).[4]
- A product is, to the potential buyer, a complex cluster of value satisfactions...a product has meaning only from the viewpoint of the buyer or the ultimate user. Only the buyer or user can assign value, because value can reside only in the benefits he or she wants or perceives (Theodore Levitt).[5]

THE COMPONENTS OF PRODUCT PLANNING

Product planning requires decisions followed by action on:

1. the product line
2. the product mix
3. branding
4. packaging
5. new product development.

PRODUCT LINE ANALYSIS

A product line is a group of products that are closely related, either because they have similar characteristics or because they are sold to the same type of customer. Cars would be one product line in a vehicle manufacturing company.

Product line analysis involves looking at, first, the viability of each individual product using *product life-cycle analysis* techniques. Second, product line analysis considers the length of the line. The line is too short if profits can be increased by lengthening it; too long if profits can be increased by shortening it.

Product line analysis will lead to decisions on the extent to which the company wants to:

- extend the product line into the higher or lower end of the market; or
- concentrate in the higher, middle or lower end of the market.

It will also determine policy on the extent to which it is necessary to increase the differentiation of products in the line to increase or maintain sales.

PRODUCT-MIX ANALYSIS

The product mix is the set of all product lines and the numbers of models, sizes and other significant product variations within each line that a company offers for sale.

Product-mix analysis leads to decisions on whether the company should add new product lines to the mix or remove existing ones. The decisions will be affected by market research on potential demand, gap analysis (see Chapter 10) and by obtaining answers to the basic corporate planning questions, namely:

1. What business is the company in?
2. What are the strengths and weaknesses of the company?
3. What are the opportunities and threats facing the company?

The product mix will be widened if the analysis shows that the new line is potentially profitable, not only because it meets consumer needs but also because it capitalizes on the company's reputation in its other lines and uses the skills and resources available to the company.

Decisions to remove non-profitable lines will be influenced by variety reduction techniques, as described in Chapter 140.

BRANDING

A brand is the name or design which identifies the products or services of a manufacturer and distinguishes them from those of competitors. Brand names may be given to individual products or to a complete product line. Branding is the process of deciding what brands the company should offer.

Branding differentiates the product, thus bringing it to the attention of buyers. It provides information on quality and can be used to attract a loyal and profitable set of customers, thus creating brand loyalty. Branding also helps to segment the market – a basic product can be differentiated into several brands, each appealing to a different group of buyers.

Branding decisions are based on market assessment and research. They will be affected by the answers obtained to such questions as the following:

1. Is a brand name necessary?
2. How much quality should be built into the brand?
3. Should products be individually or family branded?
4. Should other products be given the same brand name?
5. To what extent can or should the market be segmented?
6. Should additional brands be developed in existing product categories to exploit different market segments?
7. Should the brand be repositioned to increase market share or to re-establish itself?

PACKAGING

Packaging is the process of designing the container or wrapper for a product and is an essential element in product and brand development. The packaging concept is what the package should basically be or do for a product. The basic purposes of the package are to protect the goods in storage or in transit and to help the customer use the product. But packages also sell the product by conveying brand image – ie, the benefits promised by the brand to the consumer – and by facilitating the instant recognition of the brand in shops and advertisements.

NEW PRODUCT DEVELOPMENT

New product development is the process of:

1. identifying and evaluating new product opportunities and developing them to meet market and consumer wants and needs; and

2. testing the marketability of new products.

Identifying new product opportunities

The process of identifying new product opportunities starts by establishing search criteria. These are as follows:

- The special skills or competences of the company.
- Its experience in particular fields of development, marketing and selling.
- The experience available to it in the shape of research, development and manufacturing facilities, finance for development, the availability of means of access to customers through retail outlets, wholesalers, distributors or dealer networks, agents, mailing lists, and the number or quality of people required in each of the areas of research and development, manufacturing, marketing, sales and distribution.

Ideas for new products are generated from research and development projects, market research activities and *technological forecasting* (see Chapter 14).

Evaluation and screening

New product ideas are evaluated and screened by obtaining answers to the following questions:

1. Does it meet a well-defined consumer need?
2. In which segment(s) of the market can this product be sold?
3. Can it be differentiated adequately from alternative products in the appropriate segment(s)?
4. How well does it fit in with the existing product range?
5. Does it exploit the company's existing skills and resources?
6. What investment is required in developing and introducing the new product?
7. What is the likely return on that investment?

Concept development and testing

Following screening, new product ideas are developed into product concepts which define the potential market for the product, the benefits the product will provide to consumers and its positioning ie, how it stands in relation to alternatives and how its distinctiveness can be established and maintained in the minds of purchasers.

Concepts are tested by means of consumer research, for example, by presenting members of the public with a prototype and answering questions which will assess their reactions to what is being offered.

Test marketing

New products can be tested by launching them on a limited scale in a representative market. The aims are to obtain information on consumer reaction, to provide a basis for forecasting future sales and to pre-test advertising, promotional and merchandising approaches.

In a typical market test, the company selects a small number of representative towns in which the sales force will persuade shops to carry the product and give it good shelf exposure. An advertising and promotional campaign will be mounted in these markets similar to the one planned for use in national marketing.

REFERENCES

1. Heller, R, *The Naked Market*, Sidgwick & Jackson, London 1984.
2. Levitt, T, 'Marketing Myopia', *Harvard Business Review*, July–August 1960.
3. Corey, E R, *Industrial Marketing: Cases and Concepts*, Prentice-Hall, Englewood Cliffs, NJ 1976.
4. Urwick, L, *The Elements of Administration*, Pitman, London 1947.
5. Levitt, T, *The Marketing Imagination*, Free Press, New York 1983.

8. Sales Planning

DEFINITION

Sales planning decides how sales targets are to be reached and sets standards for their achievement. It ensures that the objectives set in the marketing planning process are achieved.

THE SALES PLANNING PROCESS

Sales planning is related to the marketing plans and uses research and control data on potential and actual sales. It is carried out in the following stages:

1. Set overall sales targets – for the year and for each sales period or month.
2. Decide on an acceptable level of selling costs in relation to sales, prepare cost budgets and set an overall target for the ratio of selling costs to sales. Sales costs include not only the cost of the sales force but also the cost of price concessions, service to accounts and the adjustment of complaints.
3. Evaluate existing sales resources by region and area to establish from recent performance what sales results can be achieved, given effective training and motivation.
4. Analyse the sales results achieved in each region and area to decide whether additional sales resources or effort will produce better results.
5. Analyse product profitability so that effort can be directed through call planning or incentives to where the best return will be obtained on selling costs, thus achieving a more profitable product mix.
6. Analyse the sales obtained from individual accounts to establish where the best results can be obtained in relation to sales effort.
7. On the basis of the evaluation and analysis carried out by stages (2) to (5) above:
    - decide how many sales staff are ideally required;
    - calculate the total cost of the field sales force and assume that these costs are within budget and that the target ratio of costs to sales will be

  achieved, if necessary modifying the number of sales staff and, therefore, sales costs to the required level;
  - decide how the field sales force is to be deployed by region and area; and
  - ensure through sales management that call schedules are prepared for each sales representative so that the best use is made of his or her time and important accounts are handled properly.

8. Set sales targets for each region, area and territory.
9. Set targets for the acquisition of new accounts and the sales to be achieved from those accounts.
10. Set quantitative standards for:

    - call rates - the number of calls made by a sales representative per day, week or month;
    - the proportion of calls that result in an order; and
    - the average sales per call - these targets will be varied according to the classification of accounts within the sales representative's territory into, say, large, medium or small.

11. Set qualitative standards for sales calls in terms of:

    - the information content of the call - the extent to which the sales representative is aware of the qualities of the products sold and of the customer's needs;
    - the effectiveness of the call as an act of communication - the extent to which the message is delivered in an understandable and convincing manner; and
    - the interpersonal aspects of the call - the extent to which the sales representative establishes and maintains a good relationship with the customer.

12. Devise training programmes for sales management and sales representatives to improve performance.
13. Design incentive schemes which will channel greater effort in the right direction.
14. Set up programmes for communicating to the sales force through sales management in order to inspire greater effort and to ensure that everyone is aware of the targets and standards they have to meet and how they are expected to achieve them.

BENEFITS

Sales planning along the lines described above ensures that:

- the resources needed are deployed properly;

- **the targets and standards required at all levels are set and communicated clearly;**
- **sales effort is directed where it will achieve the most profitable results;**
- **the return on sales effort and the costs thereof are maximized; and**
- **a sound basis is provided for the control of sales performance.**

9. Media Planning

DEFINITION

Media planning determines how the advertiser's media budget should be distributed in order to reach the target market most effectively.

FACTORS

In deciding on the optimum media schedule four factors are considered:

1. *Coverage (or reach)*. The percentage of the target market that will see the campaign at least once.
2. *Frequency*. The number of times each person will have an opportunity to see (OTS) or hear (OTH).
3. *Cost per thousand (CTH)*. The cost of reaching 1,000 of the target audience, whether men, housewives with children or, in the case of some TV campaigns, not people at all but homes.
4. *Television rating points (TVRs)* or, in the United States, *gross rating points*. The percentage of the target audience viewing (or at least having the set on) during a particular spot.

When considering these factors the aim is usually to get as high a coverage as the media budget allows. This aim could be modified using the 80/20 rule. It may be considered as a result of market research that 20 per cent of the audience are likely to contribute 80 per cent of the sales of the product. In which case 80 per cent of the budget might be directed at this segment of heavy buyers.

BUDGETING

Budgets for media plans are prepared on the basis of next year's expectations of sales turnover as a result of the implementation of the marketing plan. The budget is expressed as a percentage of sales and the amount allocated will clearly depend on the market position and the results of *product life-cycle analysis* (eg, developing a new product or boosting a declining one).

The *IPC Marketing Manual* gives the following approximate ratios of advertising to sales for 85 consumer products and services in differing market conditions:

Market conditions	*Percentage of sales turnover*
No competition	0.0 to 0.9
Light competition	0.1 to 2.9
Medium competition	3.0 to 7.9
Heavy competition	8.0 to 14.0

Budgeting procedures and ratios will, of course, be very different in the case of direct response advertising, where sales of the product depend entirely on a response directly from the consumer to advertisements ('off-the-page') or direct mail shots. The key ratio in these circumstances will be cost per order (CPO).

THE MEDIA PLANNING PROCESS

The media planning process consists of the following steps:

1. *Appraisal of:*
   - sales trend data;
   - brand share data;
   - market seasonality;
   - competitive advertising patterns;
   - purchasing or usage profile by demographic group; and
   - results achieved from other campaigns.
2. *Budgeting*. This will take into account the appraisal and other factors mentioned earlier.
3. *Planning*. This may follow the budgeting process and simply be concerned with deciding on the best method of allocating funds. But the planning process may indicate changes in direction or emphasis which could result in modifications to the budget. The plan will take into account the answers to these questions:
   - Is national coverage required or can a regional policy be adopted?
   - Does advertising need to be more or less continuous, or can a burst strategy be effective within the peak sales seasons?
   - Which target group or groups need to be covered?
   - Is heavyweight activity required at the beginning of the campaign to either launch or relaunch the product or the advertising idea?
   - Which medium or media mix is required to ensure optimum communication of the advertising?
   - What is the weight of advertising required in each medium from both a communication and a competitive point of view?

4. *Buying*. Using negotiating skill, research back-up and 'muscle' to negotiate the best terms with media.
5. *Evaluating*. There is no simple method of measuring the effectiveness of an advertising campaign except, of course, in direct response where coupons and orders can be counted. In this field, 'split-run' tests can be run in certain media where different offers or styles are tested in alternate (A or B) copies and the results can be compared directly.

In more conventional advertising the most commonly used methods are as follows:

- *Market research*. General research into consumer attitudes and responses, or particular research into the reaction to an advertisement (reactions to proposed campaigns can be pre-tested by qualitative research).
- *Sales analysis*. Especially when area tests are conducted for new products or new advertising treatments. The problem is to isolate those factors other than advertising which have affected sales. The area marketing test evaluation system (AMTES) developed by Beecham attempts to do this by isolating the measurable factors that affect sales.

The media planner's task is to assess the results of the evaluations and, in so far as he or she considers them valid and reliable, adjust the media mix.

BENEFITS

For an individual advertiser, some 90 per cent of total advertising budget is likely to be spent in the media. Advertising agencies will claim that good media planning can improve effectiveness by a factor of three or four times, while forceful media buying can reduce advertising rates by up to 50 per cent. These claims, like others made in advertising, may be exaggerated, but it seems obvious that an analytical approach to media planning, as described above, is essential in view of the costs of advertising.

FURTHER READING

Douglas, T, *The Complete Guide to Advertising*, Macmillan, London 1984.
Ogilvy, D, *The New Ogilvy on Advertising*, Pan, London 1983.
Roman, K, and Maas, J, *How to Advertise*, Kogan Page, London 1992.

10. Marketing Research

DEFINITION

Marketing research provides (1) information for management about the company's actual or potential markets and (2) information on the existing or potential users of the goods or services marketed by the company. This information assists in marketing, product and sales planning, and in the planning of advertising and promotional campaigns.

Marketing research provides answers to the following typical questions put by manufacturers, distributors, wholesalers or retailers:

- How many people buy my product?
- How much do they buy?
- Who are my competitors?
- How strong are they?
- Are we/they gaining or losing?
- What sort of people buy our/their products?
- How responsive is my/their brand to promotion?
- Has my product any particular strengths or weaknesses in different regions or outlets or for different socio-economic groups?

This information is used to formulate plans and measure performances.

WHAT IS INVOLVED?

Marketing research deals with the following areas:

Market research

- The size and nature of the market – in terms of the age, sex, income, occupation and social status of consumers (consumer market research).
- The nature, distribution and requirements of the industrial, commercial, government or local government users of the goods, equipment or services markets by the company (industrial market research).

- The geographical location of actual or potential customers and users.
- The market shares of major competitors.
- The nature of the distributive channels serving the market.
- The nature of economic and other environmental trends affecting the market.

Product research

- Product concept testing.
- Product testing.
- Analysis of the competitive strengths or weaknesses of the company's products *vis-à-vis* those marketed by competitors.
- Investigation of alternative uses for existing products.
- Gap analysis - the identification of any areas in the market which the company can exploit.

Motivational research

- Attitudes and reactions to product attributes.
- The consumer values that influence and motivate customers.

Advertising research

- Media research.
- Measurement of advertising effectiveness.

MARKETING RESEARCH TECHNIQUES

The basic techniques used in marketing research are:

1. desk research
2. field research
3. qualitative research.

A marketing research study will normally contain two or more of these elements.

BENEFITS

Marketing research produces the data essential for strategic and product planning. It will identify opportunities and gaps, reveal weaknesses and provide the basis for effective segmentation and differentiation. It will provide guidelines on where the company should be going and a means of evaluating whether or not the right methods are being used to get there.

FURTHER READING

Birn, R, *The Effective Use of Market Research*, (2nd edition), Kogan Page 1992.

Birn, R, Hague, P and Vangelder, P (eds), *A Handbook of Market Research Techniques*. Kogan Page, London 1990.

Hague, P and Jackson, P *How to do Market Research*, Kogan Page, London 1990.

11. Desk Research

DEFINITION

Desk research is the assembly, collation and analysis of marketing information which is already published or in existence.

APPLICATIONS

According to Newson-Smith,[1] research has three clear applications:

1. To provide a background for a field study or other marketing activity.
2. As a substitute for a field study.
3. As a technique in its own right.

Background research

Desk research can provide the basic information about a market on which further field studies or a product or market development plan can be based. It will indicate whether it is worth while proceeding with a project and, if it is, the broad direction in which it should go. Desk research will also provide the information necessary to decide on the size of the market, rates of growth or decline, the types of product being supplied, who the customers are and where they may be found.

Substitute for a field study

It may seem essential to get in direct touch with consumers to find out about buying motivations and to obtain their reactions to the company's products, but a detailed desk study coupled, perhaps, with re-analysis of existing research data, can provide valid conclusions about the market.

Desk analysis of, for example, the results of a retail audit (ie, analysis of samples of retail outlets to measure the sales of different product brands) or a product test (ie, tests of consumer reactions to sample products) can reveal much of what a marketing planner needs to know about the consuming public's reaction to a product.

As a technique in its own right

Desk research can be used without recourse to any fieldwork where the two key questions to be answered are: 'How big is the market?' and 'At what rate is it growing?' This applies particularly in industrial research.

But desk research on its own can also be relevant in consumer marketing where the market is diffuse and difficult to define and an unacceptable level of sampling error may occur in the results obtained from consumer surveys and test panels as in the food market.

'Hard' data about market dimensions and trends can be retrieved from government or trade association statistics, trade periodicals and published market research results.

Input and output analysis can be used to set out purchases and sales between industries so that management can more easily identify markets to be attacked. Input–output tables (as published in the UK by HM Stationery Office) present a picture of multi-trading between industries which enables the market analyst to trace indirect demand for a product as well as the more straightforward direct demand.

BENEFITS

Desk research is:

1. a fast and relatively inexpensive method of obtaining basic data about the size of a market and market trends;
2. an essential tool in industrial marketing, where good statistics are usually available and the scope for field research is more limited; and
3. usually a necessary complement to field research in that it can obtain a comprehensive picture of the market, free of sampling error (although desk research will, of course, provide no information on consumer motivation or reactions to the company's products).

REFERENCE

1. Newson-Smith, N, 'Desk Research', in *Consumer Research Handbook*, Worcester, R M, and Downham, J, (eds), Van Nostrand Reinhold, Wokingham 1978.

12. Field Research

DEFINITION

Field research is the conducting of investigations by direct contact or observation to collect fresh information about the attitudes and behaviour of consumers and industrial buyers. It deals especially with:

1. **the factors underlying choice and preference;**
2. **reactions to new product concepts and offerings; and**
3. **user and nonuser profiles.**

It also assists in evaluating the effectiveness of alternative channels of distribution. It is to be distinguished from desk research which simply uses published or otherwise available information.

TECHNIQUES

The principal techniques used in field research are:

1. sampling
2. observation
3. questionnaires
4. interviewing
5. panels
6. attitude scaling.

Sampling

Sampling involves the collection of attitudes, opinions and facts from a representative number of people in the total population. It is used in consumer market research because it is impracticable to get information from all existing or potential customers and, even if it were, it would be too costly.

The basic technique is random sampling, which means picking the people from whom information is to be obtained on the basis that every individual has an equal chance of being selected.

But sampling investigations are subject to experimental error and the outcome of a study has to be expressed in terms of probability and the confidence with which its findings can be treated by management in planning a launch or repositioning a product. Confidence limits can be stated in percentage terms, eg, a 90-per-cent confidence limit indicates a range of values within which there is 90-per-cent confidence that the true population lies.

Bias can also creep in if the sampling method does not allow each member of the population an equal chance of contributing to the sample.

Error can be reduced by increasing the size of the random sample but this could be expensive. The technique most commonly used to overcome the costs of a very large random sample is quota sampling, in which interviewers are given a quota of informants in particular classes, such as socio-economic status (a classification of heads of households into social grades A, B, C, D, and E), age or sex.

Observation

Data on customer buying habits and reactions can be collected by observing their behaviour when shopping or looking at promotional displays. Behaviour patterns can be established as a guide to the best way to present or package a product. But the results of observational studies can be difficult to interpret accurately.

Interviewing

Interviewing is the key field-research technique because it establishes direct contact with users or potential users.

The basic approach is the face-to-face interview, usually structured (ie, the interviewer has to cover predetermined areas), which collects information on behaviour, attitudes or opinions. Unstructured or depth interviews are sometimes used to obtain impressions of feelings or attitudes.

Other techniques include:

- group interviewing – in which the attitudes and beliefs of a group of people are explored, usually in a fairly unstructured manner;
- telephone interviewing;
- postal interviewing; and
- shop audits to measure sales volume and purchasing rates.

Research based on interviewing has to ensure by planning and control that a representative sample of respondents is seen and that, where a structured interview is used, the subject areas are covered comprehensively.

When questionnaires are used, the questions must be clear and unambiguous. They should not 'lead' respondents by, in effect, answering themselves. And the questionnaire design should facilitate interpretation and data processing.

Panels

Panels measure the consumer behaviour of a representative sample of individuals or households over extended periods. The two basic methods are:

1. *the home audit* - panel members allow an auditor into their homes to check levels of household stocks in a product field; and
2. *diaries* - panel members record in a preprinted diary all purchases made in a product field.

Attitude scaling

Besides measuring behaviour - what consumers actually do - market research also attempts to assess attitudes to the product. Consumer attitudes are clearly important when assessing the likely impact of a new product or the reasons for the success or failure of an existing product.

To measure attitudes it is necessary to have a scale. The most frequently used scales are as follows:

1. *Thurstone's comparative judgement technique*. A scale is drawn up of a number of statements about a subject which range from very favourable to very unfavourable expressions of attitude towards it. Respondents are asked to select the statement which most accurately reflects their attitude. A score is given to each statement to produce an overall summary.
2. *Likert scales*. These present respondents with a series of statements and ask them to indicate their degree of agreement/disagreement with each. Respondents are often offered five categories: strongly agree, agree, uncertain, disagree, strongly disagree.
3. *The semantic differential technique*. A concept about a brand or product is set out. Respondents are then asked to rate it by ticking a point on a five-point scale on which end points are defined by pairs of adjectives, eg, strong–weak, good–bad. Numerical values are then assigned to the scale positions so that comparisons can be made between various brands or between users and nonusers of a brand. This is one of the most popular methods because the scale is fairly easy to construct and analyse.

BENEFITS

The benefits of a properly conducted field survey are:

1. specific information is obtained about the dynamics of consumer behaviour;
2. attitudes to new and existing products can be measured; and
3. from this factual information on behaviour and attitudes conclusions can be reached on shaping marketing strategies or solving marketing problems.

FURTHER READING

Hague, P, *The Industrial Marketing Research Handbook*, (3rd edition), Kogan Page, London 1992.

13. Qualitative Research

DEFINITION

Qualitative research obtains information about attitudes by impressionistic means.

USES

Typical examples of the uses of qualitative research are to:

1. identify relevant or 'salient' (ie, significant) consumer behaviour patterns, beliefs, opinions and attitudes;
2. explore consumer motivation ie, the broad consumer values that influence buying habits;
3. obtain background information about consumer attitudes or behaviour patterns;
4. explore attitudes to product or marketing concepts; and
5. conduct post-research investigations to amplify or explain points emerging from a major desk or field study.

TECHNIQUES

The three most commonly used qualitative research techniques are as follows:

1. *The individual interview*, which may take the form of a 'depth' or non-directive interview which is largely unstructured and attempts to get to the heart of an individual's motivation. This approach may be modified a little to allow more structure in the form of a checklist of points to be covered, although respondents will be allowed to reply freely about each topic.
2. *Group discussions*, in which a reference group, ie, a group of people with certain common characteristics is gathered together. The group leader guides the discussion, encouraging members to express their views and exchange them with one another. This interaction between group members is an important feature of the technique.

3. *The Kelly repertory grid*, which obtains the opinions of respondents on competing products and their brand images. The interviewer presents informants with the names of products in groups of three for them to select the product that is different from the other two and to describe how it is different. There is then a final sifting through all the products in the test to check out the characteristics attributed to them.

BENEFITS

Qualitative market research provides information on consumer tastes, preference, attitudes and buying habits which, although subjective, can yield significant insights which complement the more factual data obtained from desk and field research.

14. Sales Forecasting

DEFINITION

Sales forecasting assesses the sales potential and market trends for individual products and product groups.

USES

Sales forecasting is used for setting sales targets and makes a major contribution to the corporate plans and shorter-term budgets of a company where activity levels in manufacturing or service departments are related to the projected demands made upon them.

TECHNIQUES

Sales forecasts use the following techniques:

1. Derived demand techniques.
2. Time-series analysis.
3. Statistical demand analysis.
4. Qualitative methods.
5. Technological forecasting.

DERIVED DEMAND TECHNIQUES

There are two main varieties of derived demand techniques:

1. *The lead-lag method*, in which an analysis is made of trends or economics indicators that are known to be related to the data being forecast and tend to vary upwards and downwards in advance of this data.
2. *The tied indicator method*, in which, because the sales performance of one product is known to be related to the future performance of another product, movements in the former can be used to predict movements in the latter.

TIME-SERIES ANALYSIS

Time-series analysis is based on extrapolation, which is the process of projecting a past trend or relationship into the future in the belief that history will repeat itself. Unfortunately, this is not always the case, especially in the longer term. Hence the importance of making assumptions about future events which may disturb previous patterns. Hence also the relevance of qualitative forecasting as described below, which attempts to predict the future without relying on statistical analyses of past events.

Components of time-series analysis

The components of time-series analysis are:

1. *trend*, which is found by fitting a straight or curved line through past sales – this process is known as trend fitting;
2. *cycle*, which comprises the wave-like movement of sales which react to periodic events or swings in economic activity;
3. *season*, which is the consistent pattern of sales movement during the year, for example, Christmas for the retail trade; and
4. *erratic events*, which include strikes or any major disaster that is unpredictable and needs to be removed from past data.

All these components are taken into account in time-series analysis using the techniques of trend fitting, smoothing and decomposition.

Trend fitting

A projection is best made from a reasonably long series of data as shown in Figure 14.1. There are three basic shapes of trend lines:

1. *Linear trends*, which are straight lines (as in Figure 14.1.) increasing by about the same amount each period.

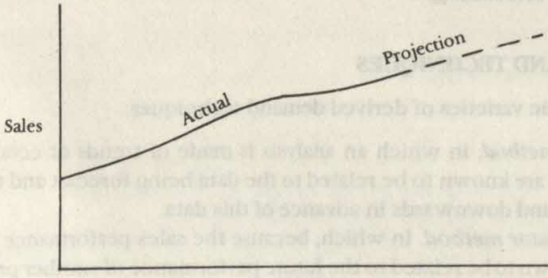


Figure 14.1. *Projection from a trend*

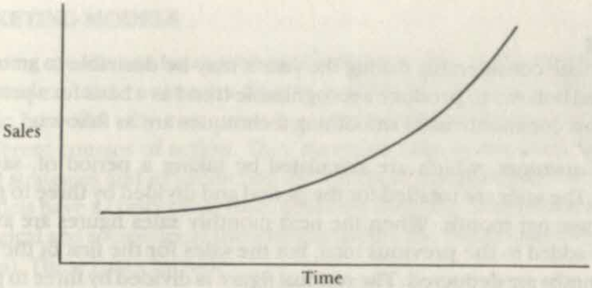


Figure 14.2. *An exponential trend*

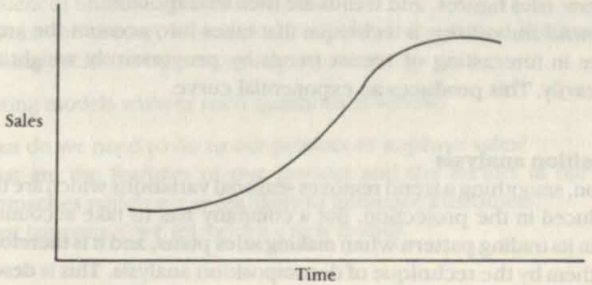


Figure 14.3. *A typical S-shaped curve*

2. *Exponential trends*, which increase by the same percentage each year. Unless plotted on semi-log paper they form a curve as shown in Figure 14.2.
3. *S-shaped curves*, where typically, as illustrated in Figure 14.3, sales build up slowly after a product launch, accelerate as the product takes off and then ease off as maturity is achieved. This pattern corresponds broadly with the initial stages of the ***product life-cycle***. The S-shaped curve can take other forms, for example, a heavily promoted product may start very rapidly before easing off and finally declining, as illustrated in Figure 14.4.

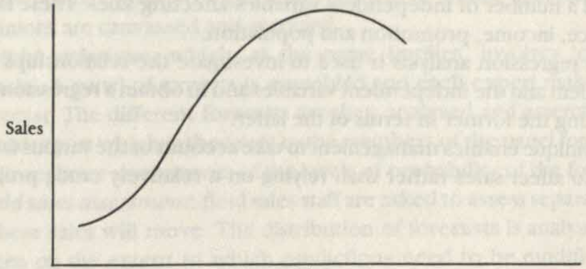


Figure 14.4. *An alternative version of the S-shaped curve*

Smoothing

If sales fluctuate considerably during the year it may be desirable to smooth out the peaks and hollows to produce a recognizable trend as a basis for a projection. The two most commonly used smoothing techniques are as follows:

1. *Moving averages*, which are calculated by taking a period of, say, three months. The sales are totalled for the period and divided by three to produce the average per month. When the next monthly sales figures are available, they are added to the previous total, but the sales for the first of the original three months are deducted. The residual figure is divided by three to produce the moving average. Moving averages can be plotted on to a chart in the same way as raw sales figures, and trends are then extrapolated.
2. *Exponential smoothing*, a technique that takes into account the greater significance in forecasting of recent trends by progressively weighting them more heavily. This produces an exponential curve.

Decomposition analysis

By definition, smoothing a trend removes seasonal variations which are therefore not reproduced in the projection. But a company has to take account of such variations in its trading pattern when making sales plans, and it is therefore useful to restore them by the technique of decomposition analysis. This is described in detail by Bolt,[1] but essentially involves:

1. taking the seasonal element out of past trends;
2. projecting the deseasonalized trends for the period of the forecast;
3. projecting the seasonal variations for the same period; and
4. adjusting the deseasonalized projection to take account of forecast seasonal movements.

STATISTICAL DEMAND ANALYSIS

Statistical demand analysis treats sales as a dependent variable and therefore as a function of a number of independent variables affecting sales. These factors are usually price, income, promotion and population.

Multiple regression analysis is used to investigate the relationships between the dependent and the independent variables and to obtain a regression equation for predicting the former in terms of the latter.

This technique enables management to take account of the various factors that are likely to affect sales rather than relying on a relatively crude projection of past sales.

MARKETING MODELS

Marketing models can be constructed which provide abstract representations of how markets and consumers behave in different situations. They are used to explain how and why customers buy, and to gain understanding of the effects of different courses of action. They therefore help in the development of marketing strategies and in predicting the effects of marketing decisions.

Models have a conceptual base, generally from the behavioural sciences (psychological and sociological theories explaining the behaviour of individuals and groups). These bases include:

- consumer motivation;
- influences on buying intentions; and
- information theory, which deals with how consumers think and make purchasing decisions by processing information.

Marketing models answer such questions as follow:

- What do we need to do to our product to improve sales?
- What are the features of our product and the factors in our promotional approaches which are most likely to influence customers?
- What happens if we introduce a new brand?

SUBJECTIVE METHODS

Objective or qualitative methods of forecasting are used either when hard statistical data on which predictions can be based is not available, or when it is considered that purely statistical methods will not by themselves provide an adequate answer.

Subjective techniques depend on judgement and intuition. The main methods are as follows:

1. *Subjective probability assessment*, which gets managers to rate the likelihood of something happening or not happening in percentage terms, eg, 'This product has a 75 per cent chance of being successful.' Different opinions are canvassed and averaged.
2. *Delphi technique*, which, as the name implies, involves 'consulting the oracle'. A panel of experts is assembled and each expert makes an intuitive forecast. The different forecasts are then analysed and assembled in a combined report which is then sent to the members of the panel for them to make their separate assessments of the levels of probability of the forecasts.
3. *Field sales assessment*: field sales staff are asked to assess separately how they believe sales will move. The distribution of forecasts is analysed and a view taken on the extent to which predictions need to be modified because of over-optimism or (less likely) undue pessimism.

Subjective methods of forecasting are not normally used exclusively. The usual approach is to combine objective and subjective predictions. They can each then serve as a check on the validity of the forecasts made by the other method. If serious discrepancies emerge, further investigations can be initiated to amend or refine the forecast.

TECHNOLOGICAL FORECASTING

Technological forecasting assesses future changes in technology and predicts developments or trends in the introduction of new or modified products or services as a result of technological advances.

Approaches

There are two basic approaches adopted in technological forecasting:

1. *Exploratory*. This is based on present knowledge of science potentialities and technical trends for projection purposes.
2. *Normative*. This works backwards from the future to the present. A systematic review of future needs takes place which helps to define socio-economic objectives from which purely technical research objectives can be derived.

Techniques

The more important techniques are as below:

1. *The Delphi approach*, described above.
2. *Morphological research*, which refers to the process of analysing forms and structures. A detailed analytical study is made of the various parameters (constants) of a product's design, materials and function. This leads to an evaluation of alternative approaches to the future development of the product.
3. *Technological trend extrapolation*, an approach that collects data on trends in technological development in, for example, efficiency of performance, and projects them into the future.
4. *Normative relevance tree*, which starts by defining a specific goal for the development of a technology and then identifying it (this is the trunk of the tree). It then calculates the various inputs in order of importance needed to achieve the objective (these are the branches).
5. *Scenario writing*, an intuitive approach which starts from an analysis of the current situation in a technology and then attempts to picture what is likely to happen to it in the future.

BENEFITS

Forecasting is usually based on the assumption that present trends will continue.

And that assumption could be false. It can also be founded on the subjective views of experts. And they can be wrong. But it is at least based on a systematic analysis of trends and the existing situation.

Forecasting gives an indication of the future and where the company should go. The process of analysis and evaluation facilitates a clearer understanding of objectives and of the strategies that can be developed to achieve them. It does this by providing answers to the following key questions:

- What are the short-, medium- and long-term prospects for sales?
- What are the potential profit levels?
- How big is the potential market for a product?
- How many products can be sold and at what prices?
- What are the trends in market share of the company and its competitors?
- What are the sales implications of product tests and test markets?
- What sales targets should be set - company, region, area, individual sales representative?

REFERENCE

1. Bolt, G, *Market and Sales Forecasting*, (2nd edition), Kogan Page, London 1993.

15. Product Life-Cycle Analysis

DEFINITION

The product life-cycle is the sales pattern of growth and decline of a product over a period of time. This period may be the whole life of the product from its launch until it is withdrawn because it is no longer profitable or because it has been replaced.

Product life-cycle analysis is the process of describing and forecasting the pattern of sales for a product for a period of time or the whole of its life.

THE PRODUCT LIFE-CYCLE CONCEPT

The typical cycle

The typical product life-cycle is S-shaped (Figure 15.1) and consists of four distinct stages:

Stage 1: Introduction. This is the period immediately following the launch when, if all goes according to plan, sales will grow slowly but steadily as the

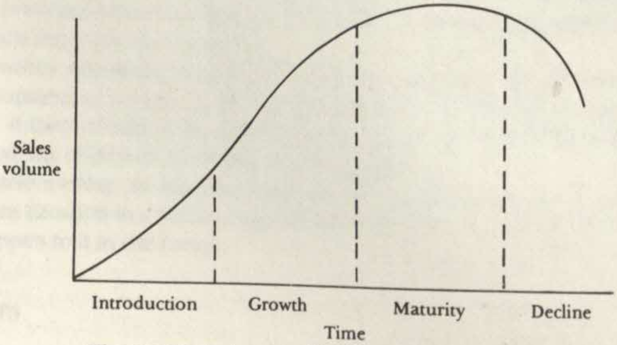


Figure 15.1. *A typical S-shaped product life-cycle*

product is progressively introduced to the market. Profits are probably nonexistent during this stage because of the costs of introducing the product; promotional costs are high in proportion to sales, and costs per unit of output are high because of low volume.

Stage 2: Growth. This is the period when market penetration increases rapidly. If the new product is successful, the rate of sales growth gains momentum as consumer/user demand expands following increased knowledge and acceptance of the product because of advertising, sales promotion and field sales effort. This growth in customer awareness and satisfaction is exploited progressively during this period by segmentation and differentiation and by expanding into new markets. Profits increase steadily during this period.

Stage 3: Maturity. When this stage is reached, the basic product concept has gained considerable consumer acceptance. However, although the demand for it may continue to rise slightly, the rate of increase has diminished considerably and may eventually 'plateau out' or even decline. The reduced rate of growth is partly caused by increased competition from other companies either entering the market with new versions of the product or attacking the market share achieved by the product through more aggressive advertising, promotion, selling or pricing policies. The slowdown in sales growth may also be caused by the market becoming saturated for the product as it exists. During this stage profits stabilize or decline because of increased marketing outlays to defend the product against competition.

Stage 4: Decline. The sales of most product forms and brands eventually dip because of consumer shifts in tastes, increased competition, technological advances and the availability of substitute products. The market may be saturated and, unless action is taken, sales and profits will decline to zero or petrify at a low level. Purchases will tend to be of the replacement type, but brand loyalties will progressively diminish if nothing is done about it.

Other forms of product life-cycle

1. *The recycle* (Figure 15.2). Sales begin to fall off, as in the typical cycle, but are then regenerated as new applications, new product characteristics or new users emerge. This process can be repeated resulting in a succession of life-cycles.
2. *The humpback* (Figure 15.3). After the product life-cycle apparently enters the decline stage, sales recover again. This may occur when buyers take some time to test and evaluate the product after their initial purchase. When they approve, they place repeat orders.
3. *The plateau* (Figure 15.4). Sales may plateau out when there is no better alternative available. The product is still in demand until a substitute appears, when sales may decline dramatically. The plateau may incline slightly upwards, however, if sales increase at a rate in line with growth in the economy.

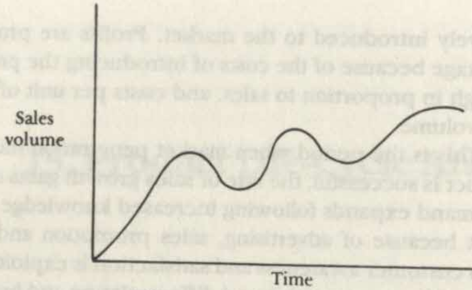


Figure 15.2. *Recycle pattern*

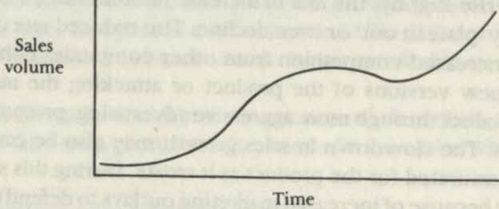


Figure 15.3. *The bumpback cycle*

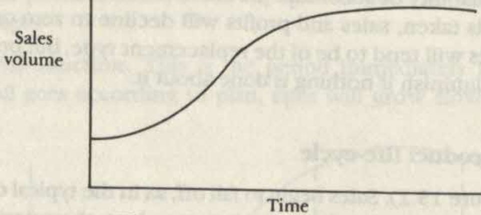


Figure 15.4. *The plateau cycle*

PRODUCT LIFE-CYCLE ANALYSIS

Product life-cycle analysis is the process of assessing the type of life-cycle which is applicable to the product, the point in the life-cycle where the product is, and the reasons why it is in this position. For existing company products, the analysis provides a basis for forecasts of future sales and for deciding on recycling actions. But the analysis of the stage in the life-cycle which products already marketed by other companies have reached helps in decisions on whether to develop and launch new or substitute products.

The analysis of the company's own products covers:

- trends in sales volume;
- trends in profit;
- trends in market share - rate of market penetration;
- economic trends (which may explain a growth or decline in sales);
- the pattern of sales - who buys, where they buy, to what extent they are first-time or repeat buyers;
- consumer opinions about the product derived from consumer surveys, media comment or test-marketing; and
- the features of the product compared with what is available elsewhere or is becoming available.

The analysis of competitive products also measures sales volume, market share and the pattern of sales. In addition, it assesses the reasons why the products are more or less competitive: price, advertising, promotion, sales, distribution and servicing effectiveness, product features which are uniquely attractive or increase the perceived value of the product.

ACTION

As a result of the analysis the following are actions that can be taken to ensure that a favourable trend continues or to arrest a decline by recycling.

Introduction stage

- Increase advertising and promotional expenditure to accelerate growth.
- Adjust prices to increase penetration.
- Adjust promotional message and sales approaches in response to analysis of consumer reactions.
- Improve product features in response to initial consumer reaction.

Growth stage

- Improve quality
- Modify product characteristics.
- Extend market into new segments.
- Develop new distribution channels.
- Reduce prices to attract the next layer of price-sensitive buyers.

Maturity stage

- Find new market segments and customers.
- Reposition brand to appeal to a larger or faster-growing segment.

- Encourage increased usage among existing customers.
- Modify product characteristics – new features, style improvements.
- Modify marketing mix, eg, cut prices, advertise or promote more aggressively, move into higher-volume market channels.

Decline stage

- Maintain brand in the hope that competitors will withdraw their products.
- Harvest brand, ie, maximize profits by reducing costs but keeping up sales pressure.
- Terminate – withdraw the product.

BENEFITS

The main benefit of product life-cycle analysis is that it forces the company to recognize what is happening to its product in the marketplace over time. Forecasts can be made of future trends and the likely impact of competition. The strengths and weaknesses of the company's product are identified so that the former can be exploited and the latter overcome. Life-cycle analysis is a continuous process which enables the company to review its marketing mix on the basis of a better understanding of the performance of its product.

16. Target Marketing

DEFINITION

Target marketing is the process of distinguishing the different groups that make up a market and developing appropriate products and marketing mixes for each target market involved:

1. market segmentation
2. market targeting
3. product positioning.

Target marketing is a primary means of implementing a marketing plan but the process involved in targeting will provide feedback information which will affect the plan.

MARKET SEGMENTATION

Definition

A market segment is a group of customers sharing particular wants or needs. Market segmentation divides the total market available to the company into segments which can be targeted with specially developed and marketed products and which can form the basis for positioning the product in the market.

Bases for segmentation

The main bases for segmentation are as follows:

1. *Consumer preferences*. For specific product attributes.
2. *Benefits sought by customers*. For example, quality, prestige, durability, economy.
3. *Demographic variables*. The market can be segmented according to demographic variables such as age, sex or social class. The following socio-economic group classification system is often used:

A Upper middle class - higher managerial, administrative or professional people.
B Middle class - intermediate managerial, administrative or professional people.
C1 Lower middle class - supervising, clerical and lower managerial administrative or professional people.
C2 Skilled working class - skilled manual workers.
D Working class - service and unskilled manual workers.
E Pensioners, widows and casual or lowest-grade workers.

4. *Buying behaviour*. Where people buy, their readiness to buy (degree of awareness of the product), the amount they buy (light, medium and heavy users) and their loyalty to the brand (hard core, shifting, switchers).
5. *Geographic*. By country, region or town.
6. *Life-style*. A person's life-style is his or her pattern of living in the world. Life-styles are assessed by psychographics which list variables under three dimensions of activities, interests and opinions. These are analysed to reveal life-style groups.

MARKET TARGETING

Definition

Market targeting is the process of formulating market coverage policies, ie, which segments of the market provide the best opportunities for the company.

Method

A decision is required on which of the following market coverage strategies will produce the best results:

- Undifferentiated marketing - ignoring segments and attacking the whole market, aiming to satisfy the common needs of customers.
- Differentiated marketing - operating in several segments of the market and designing separate offers for each.
- Concentrated marketing - aiming for a large share in one or a few segments.

The decision will be influenced by the following factors:

- Company resources, which will determine the extent of coverage which is achievable.
- Product and market homogeneity - the more homogeneous the product or market the greater the pressure for undifferentiated targeting.
- Product stage in the life-style - it may be appropriate to go for wide coverage in the initial stages and target for specific segments as the product matures.

- Competitors' segmentation strategies – the company may wish to target market segments neglected by competitors.

PRODUCT POSITIONING

Definition

Positioning is the process of distinguishing a brand from its competitors so that it becomes the preferred brand in defined segments of the market. Ries and Trout, who developed the concept of positioning, defined it as follows:

> Positioning starts with a product. A piece of merchandise, a service, a company, an institution, or even a person...But positioning is not what you do to a product. Positioning is what you do to the mind of the prospect. That is, you position the product in the mind of the prospect.[1]

Method

Product positioning is determined by:

- carrying out a competitive analysis to identify the position taken by competitors in the market;
- deciding whether to fight for market share by offering a directly competitive product or to open up new opportunities for sales by offering a substantially different one (differentiation); and
- deciding on the marketing mix (product, price, promotion and place).

BENEFITS

Target marketing concentrates the minds of those responsible for marketing policies and plans on looking for specific marketing opportunities and developing an appropriate marketing mix which fits in with the requirements of identified market segments and the resources and skills of the company.

REFERENCE

1. Ries, A, and Trout, J, *Positioning. The Battle for Your Mind*, Warner Books, New York 1982.

17. The Marketing Mix

DEFINITION

The marketing mix consists of the way in which the various component parts and techniques of the marketing effort are combined and varied in order to achieve marketing objectives.

BASIC INGREDIENTS

The basic ingredients of the marketing mix are as follows:

1. *Product*. The development, design, packaging, naming and launching of new products and the repositioning, improvement or repackaging of existing products. This might require, in Robert Heller's words, 'keeping a broad identity and concept intact while radically changing the product as it leads and responds to the market'.[1] It also requires product differentiation – ensuring that the product has distinctive features which promise results or values different from those of competitors.
2. *Price*. This has to be commensurate with the perceived value of the product to customers.
3. *Place*. Where and how the product is to be sold, ie, the channels of distribution such as retail outlets, wholesalers or direct selling.
4. *Promotion*. The methods used, such as advertising, merchandising, sales promotion and publicity, to present the product in an attractive light to customers.

FACTORS AFFECTING THE MARKETING MIX

The way in which the components of the marketing mix are combined depends primarily on the marketing environment in which the company operates. The constituents of the market environment are listed below:

1. *The company*. Its strengths and weaknesses in the areas of product

development, manufacturing ability, the availability of finance and the quality of management in general and the marketing and sales forces in particular.
2. *The product mix*. What types of products the company sells, eg, fast-moving consumer goods (FMCG) or industrial products.
3. *Competitors*. The strength of competition and the threats of new entrants.
4. *Customers*. Who buys, why they buy, and how and when they buy and can be reached.
5. *The external environment generally*. In other words, economic trends, the impact of international events, legal requirements and consumer attitudes.
6. *Product life-cycle*. The current stage of the product life-cycle (see Chapter 15).

For example, sales channels are of particular importance in FMCG operations. Personal selling is significant when sales are direct from manufacturer to customer. Product development and promotion are more important in highly competitive fields where new products appear continually.

SIGNIFICANCE

The significance of the marketing mix is that it is the main instrument through which marketing strategies are implemented. Marketing management continually reviews the elements of the mix in order to adjust them in the light of changes in the marketing environment, eg, challenges from competitors and economic up- or down-turns, the implication of product life-cycle analysis (Chapter 15), the introduction of new products, or revised segmentation, targeting and positioning plans (see Chapter 16 on target marketing).

REFERENCE

1. Heller, R, *The Naked Market*, Sidgwick & Jackson, London 1984.

18. Pricing

DEFINITION

Pricing is the method used by a company to fix or change its prices with regard to costs, profit targets, the activities of competitors and the perceived value of the product by customers.

As described by Winkler,[1] the three types of pricing system in use are:

1. **cost-related**
2. **market-related**
3. **competitor-related.**

COST-RELATED PRICING SYSTEMS

The four cost-related pricing systems are:

1. **standard-cost pricing**
2. **cost-plus-profit**
3. **break-even analysis (target profit pricing)**
4. **marginal pricing.**

Standard cost pricing

Standard cost pricing is based on the cost standards developed in management accounting systems.

The standard variable cost per unit is calculated by adding the total variable costs of production, namely the cost of materials and direct labour, and the cost of bought-in-components, and dividing this sum by the number of units produced.

The steps taken to establish a standard cost price are as follows:

1. **Calculate the standard variable cost per unit.**
2. **Calculate the fixed cost per unit (the running expenses, including administration and selling expenses of the business over a period of time divided by the number of units to be sold in that period).**

3. Determine the profit required per unit during the same period.
4. Add (1), (2) and (3) together (variable costs, fixed costs and profit per unit) to give the provisional price.
5. Analyse market prices for competitive products.
6. Adjust provisional prices as necessary to take account of market price levels.

Cost-plus-profit pricing

Cost-plus-profit pricing means adding a standard mark-up to the total cost of the product. Thus, if a retailer pays a manufacturer £10 for a product and marks it up to sell at £15, there is a 50-per-cent mark-up on the product and the retailer's gross margin is £5. If the operating costs of the store are £4 per unit sold, the retailer's profit margin will be £1, or 10 per cent.

Break-even analysis

Break-even analysis uses the concept of a break-even chart to develop a system of target profit pricing in which the company tries to determine the price that will produce the profit it is seeking. Although profit-related, this form of pricing is based on an analysis of total costs, upon which is superimposed an assessment of total revenue. Break-even analysis also takes into account the significance of demand.

Break-even analysis determines fixed and variable costs and enables the price-setter to investigate the profit implications of alternative price-volume strategies.

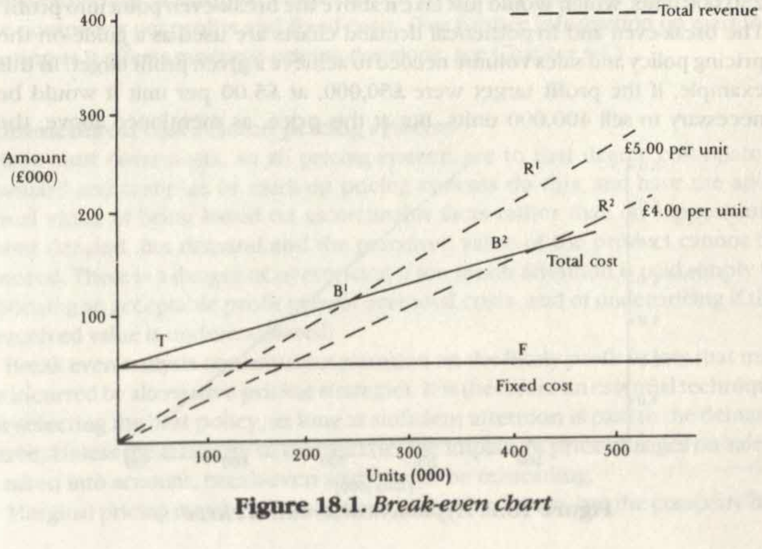


Figure 18.1. *Break-even chart*

The following are the steps required to produce a break-even chart as illustrated in Figure 18.1:

1. Calculate fixed cost (curve F).
2. Calculate variable cost per unit.
3. Add variable costs to the fixed costs for the range of units which may be sold to produce the total cost (T).
4. Produce total revenue curves on the basis of a given price per unit sold. In the example in Figure 18.1, two curves, R1 and R2, have been drawn, one for a unit price of £5.00 and one for £4.00.
5. The break-even point is where the total revenue curve intersects with the total cost curve at B1 and B2. Sales above this point will be profitable, below this point a loss will be incurred.

A target profit-pricing system is operated as follows:

1. The demand at different price levels is estimated to produce a hypothetical demand curve as illustrated in Figure 18.2.
2. Total revenue curves at alternative price levels are drawn as shown in Figure 18.1. (R1 and R2 at £4.00 and £5.00 respectively.)
3. The profit implications of setting different price levels are considered by reference to the break-even chart and the demand curve. In this example, setting price levels at £4.00 per unit would result in a break-even position, according to the break-even chart, at a sales volume of 400,000 units. But the demand curve shows that at £4.00 only 300,000 units would be sold, resulting in a loss. If, however, prices were fixed at £5.00 per unit, the firm could sell 250,000 units, which would just take it above the break-even point into profit.
4. The break-even and hypothetical demand charts are used as a guide on the pricing policy and sales volume needed to achieve a given profit target. In this example, if the profit target were £50,000, at £5.00 per unit it would be necessary to sell 400,000 units. But at this price, as mentioned above, the

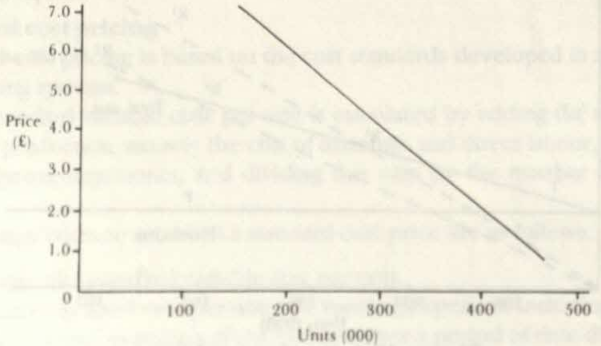


Figure 18.2. *Hypothetical demand curve*

demand chart shows that only 250,000 units would be sold, resulting in a minute profit. In this situation the choice of action is between:

- altering the price to increase sales revenue sufficiently, bearing in mind that higher prices are easier to sustain if demand is inelastic;
- taking steps to increase demand at the proposed price;
- cutting costs; and
- accepting a lower level of profits.

5. The final decision on price levels and profit targets is made by considering the profit implications of different price strategies in relation to the volumes that would be sold and selecting the optimum alternative. This process ensures that pricing decisions are considered from the point of view of the revenues produced at different levels of output in relation to costs (see also Chapter 67 cost-volume-profit analysis).

Marginal pricing

Marginal pricing fixes the selling price of additional units by reference to the marginal cost of manufacturing each unit.

The theory of marginal pricing is that, after a company's total fixed and variable costs have been covered by the existing volume of production, the cost of producing an extra unit, ie, marginal production, will only be the total variable cost of producing and selling it. In such circumstances, the selling prices of additional goods can be reduced, if necessary, to match the total variable cost without any loss to the company. Any amount by which the selling price exceeds the variable cost of marginal output is then an extra or marginal contribution to the company's net profits and fixed costs. (For further information on marginal costing as it affects marginal pricing decisions, see Chapter 64.)

Comments on cost-related pricing systems

Prices must cover costs, so all pricing systems are to that degree cost-related. Standard and cost-plus or mark-up pricing systems do this, and have the additional virtue of being based on ascertainable facts rather than on suppositions about demand. But demand and the perceived value of the product cannot be ignored. There is a danger of overpricing if too much attention is paid simply to obtaining an acceptable profit margin over total costs, and of underpricing if the perceived value is underestimated.

Break-even analysis concentrates attention on the likely profit or loss that may be incurred by alternative pricing strategies. It is therefore an essential technique for selecting the best policy, as long as sufficient attention is paid to the demand curve. Unless the elasticity of demand (ie, the impact of price changes on sales) is taken into account, break-even analysis can be misleading.

Marginal pricing may be advantageous in the short term, but the company has eventually to ensure that total revenue exceeds total costs. Over-dependence on marginal pricing can reduce total revenue below total costs in the longer term because fixed costs are not absorbed, or because competitors respond with price cuts, or because sales to existing customers are reduced when they discover that they are paying more than new customers. In the long term, companies must plan on the basis that the contribution made by all products will cover fixed costs *and* achieve profit on sales targets.

MARKET-RELATED PRICING SYSTEMS

Market-related pricing systems adopt one or more of the following approaches:

1. perceived value pricing
2. psychological pricing
3. promotional pricing
4. skimming.

Perceived value pricing

Perceived value pricing determines prices from assumptions made about the beliefs consumers have of the value of the product to them. These assumptions may be founded on market research aimed at establishing the values in buyers' minds about the basic product and the various special features in the product that appeal to them.

If the company charges more than the buyer-recognized value, sales will suffer. Revenue may also fall below attainable levels if prices are lower than the perceived value.

Psychological pricing

Many consumers use price as an indicator of quality. Prestige pricing uses higher prices to promote the idea of value and status.

Price levels can be set just below a round figure, eg, £9.99 rather than £10.00. These pricing points, as they are called, persuade people to think that the price is in a lower range than they expected.

Value for money can be emphasized by the effective presentation of discounts and free offers. The perceived value of offering one item free if four items are purchased may have a greater impact than a 20-per-cent discount offered over the whole five purchases.

Promotional pricing

Promotional pricing is a method of clearing excess stocks or generating high-volume sales by offering large discounts. Retailers buy in special stocks to benefit from extra sales over limited periods.

Skimming

A skimming strategy adopts a high-price approach to 'skim the cream' off the market. This policy is particularly attractive to a company with a new and unique product. When the cream has been skimmed, prices can be progressively reduced.

COMPETITOR-RELATED PRICING SYSTEMS

Competitor-related pricing systems fix prices by reference to the going rate – the level of competitors' prices. Less attention is paid to demand and, while the aim will be to cover costs, they are not the main determinant of prices.

The market is divided according to the levels of quality, service or prestige provided by suppliers of the product or service. Each sector has a price leader who determines the going rate. The price leader is the market leader with usually, but not always, the highest sales in the sector. The market leader makes the first move on prices, up or down, and his or her competitors tend to follow.

When using this approach, the company has to decide on its pricing policy. It may go for market leadership, bearing in mind John Winkler's advice that 'Market leaders make most money. On average their price is better, their volume is greater and their unit costs are lower... [If] you want to outsell everyone then get your price about 7 per cent above the average.'[1] Or the company may decide to maintain its prices in line with the average or broadly in the middle segment of the range. It may then follow a policy of parallel pricing by aligning its price increases with those of its competitors. If oligopolistic conditions prevail, ie, if the market consists of a few powerful suppliers, prices may be closely aligned throughout the market and parallel pricing will be the general rule.

Competitive pricing

Competitive pricing means tackling the price leader in the market segment in which the company is operating. Where possible, the aim would be to set a slightly higher price than the price leader's (say 7 per cent) and then launch a marketing campaign to demonstrate that what Winkler calls a 'discernible product difference' exists. This means demonstrating that the company's product offers a distinct improvement over its competitor's which the market wants.

If the firm cannot compete on quality it may have to set slightly lower prices or offer higher discounts of at least 10 per cent but not more than 15 per cent or so.

Discount pricing

Discount pricing is a technique which sets artificially high prices but then offers large discounts to attract customers. It is advisable not to offer discounts on a permanent basis. Flexibility is important.

Penetration pricing

If the company really wants to step up its market share and has nothing special to offer in the form of a superior or well-differentiated product, it may adopt a penetration pricing policy. This means undercutting competitors significantly to produce a massive increase in sales volume. A significant decrease may have to be a cut of 40 per cent or more and this can only be a temporary expedient unless a product which is much less costly to produce can be marketed at this price.

SUMMARY

Considerations affecting pricing strategy

Product costs set a floor to the price but are not the only consideration. A ceiling may be set by the unique features the company offers although this level will also be influenced by the company's strength and prestige in the marketplace. Competitors' prices and the prices of substitutes provide an intermediate point that the company has to consider in setting its price. Finally demand has to be taken into account. The relative elasticity of demand will influence the extent to which the company can maintain the volume of unit sales after a price increase, or can increase sales by means of a cut in prices.

Pricing strategies

Alternative pricing strategies consist of:

- *high price*, for a market leader, or in a mature, saturated market which is well segmented, or for a specialized high-quality product;
- *prestige pricing*, giving prestige to the product by pricing high;
- *skimming the market*, with a highly priced unique product;
- *pricing the market*, ie, pricing at the going rate often on a cost-plus basis, on the assumption that there is a marked inelasticity of demand away from the current market price or in the belief that a damaging price war might result from a reduction below the going rate; and
- *penetration pricing*, undercutting the market with low prices.

REFERENCE

1. Winkler, J, *Pricing for Results*, Heinemann, London 1983.

FURTHER READING

Hague, D C, *Pricing in Business*, Allen & Unwin, London 1971.

19. Relationship Marketing

DEFINITION

Relationship marketing is an approach to marketing which emphasizes the continuing relationships which should exist between the organization and its customers, with the emphasis on customer service and quality. Relationship marketing is therefore primarily a concept which adds customer service and quality to the traditional marketing mix of product, price, promotion and place.

DEFINITION OF THE CONCEPT

The term relationship management was first formulated by Theodore Levitt in *The Marketing Imagination*.[1] He suggested that the relationship between a seller and a buyer seldom ends when the sale is made: 'In a great and increasing proportion of transactions, the relationship actually intensifies subsequent to the sale. This becomes the central factor in the buyer's choice of the seller the next time around.' According to Levitt the relationship between the buyer and the seller is 'inextricable, inescapable and profound'.

OBJECTIVES

The objectives of relationship marketing are to:

- achieve competitive advantage by creating value for the firm's customers;
- ensure that enough value is created in the sale to bring customers back for more; and
- build and maintain mutually satisfying relationships with customers.

ESSENCE OF RELATIONSHIP MARKETING

The essence of relationship marketing is contained within the concepts of:

- the value chain;
- the basic dimensions of quality and service support;

- specific quality solutions; and
- service support activities.

The value chain

The concept of the value chain (see Chapter 3) was developed by Michael Porter[2] as a tool to identify those of the firm's activities which are strategically relevant. Service and the value provided to the customer are integral and key parts of this chain, leading to competitive advantage.

Quality solutions

The basic dimensions for the provision of quality solutions in relationship marketing as set out by Berry *et al.*[3] are as follows:

- *Reliability.* The ability to perform the promised service dependably, accurately and consistently. This means doing it right, over a period of time.
- *Responsiveness.* Prompt service and willingness to help customers, which requires both speed and flexibility.
- *Assurance.* Knowledge and courtesy of staff and their ability to inspire trust and confidence.
- *Empathy.* Caring and individualized attention to customers.
- *Tangibles.* Physical facilities, equipment and staff appearance.

Service support activities

Service support activities as defined by Christopher *et al.*[4] are designed to be perceived by customers as being of unique value, thus extending the offer beyond the customer's expectations and contributing to a shift in the customer's perceptions of the firm and its products. Service support includes such activities as pre-sale information, objective advice, care and attention during the sales negotiation, financing options, and after-sales support in the form of warranties, accessories and repair services.

DEVELOPING A RELATIONSHIP MARKETING APPROACH

The development of a relationship marketing approach requires the alignment of the three functions of marketing, customer service and quality. This involves the following:

- Charting the service delivery system and setting standards for each part of the system, especially the 'encounter points' – the critical events in the system when the customer comes face to face with the service process.
- Identifying critical service issues by research and analysis of customer needs and reactions.

- Setting service standards for all aspects of service delivery.
- Developing customer communication systems which define service standards and how the company is achieving them.
- Developing programmes for contacting and maintaining good and continuing relationships with customers with the aim of retaining their loyalty.
- Instituting intensive training courses for staff on their responsibility for building and maintaining good relationships with customers.
- Monitoring service standards and rewarding staff for exceeding service levels while taking corrective action if service levels are persistently substandard.
- Ensuring that all staff in all functions (operations, distribution and support services as well as sales and marketing) are fully aware at all times that customer service and qualities are key elements in the marketing mix, and that it is their responsibility to achieve the high levels of performance required.

BENEFITS

The benefits of relationship marketing are:

- focus on providing value to customers;
- emphasis on customer retention;
- the integrated approach to marketing, service and quality provides a firmer basis for achieving sustainable competitive advantage; and
- the importance of quality and service support is made absolutely clear to *all* staff.

REFERENCES

1. Levitt, T, *The Marketing Imagination*, Free Press, New York 1983.
2. Porter, M E, *Competitive Advantage*, Free Press, New York 1984.
3. Berry, L, Shostack, G, and Upah, G, *Emerging Perspectives in Services Marketing*, American Marketing Association, Chicago 1983.
4. Christopher, M, Payne, A and Ballantyne, D, *Relationship Marketing*, Butterworth-Heinemann, Oxford 1991.

20. Database Marketing

DEFINITION

Database marketing uses information held on a computer database about existing or potential customers in such a way as to improve the effectiveness of the marketing and selling activities of the business.

A database is a set of data entries which is held on a computer and organized by a software package. It enables users to relate, collate, summarize and reproduce the data entries in accordance with defined parameters and criteria.

OBJECTIVE

The objective of database marketing is to exploit information held about customers in a way which maximizes the value of such information as a means of targeting them in accordance with their needs and buying habits.

APPLICATIONS

Database marketing is associated primarily with direct mail, which is a method of selling goods or services by means of communication to individuals through the post. Database techniques also offer a means of defining and refining markets.

More specifically, database marketing enables business to:

- target advertising and mail shots on the basis of a better understanding of the buying habits and wants of individual customers;
- plan the deployment of sales representatives to concentrate their efforts on more likely prospects;
- manage telesales by providing the telesales team with immediate access to customer information;
- plan the location of retail outlets in accordance with an understanding of potential demand;

- handle queries and complaints more easily, especially if an online database exists (ie, if information from the database is instantly available);
- enhance loyalty by providing personalized service; and
- obtain direct customer feedback on the degree to which they are satisfied and why.

DEVELOPING A DATABASE

The steps required to set up a database are to:

1. decide on the information required;
2. decide on the sources of that information; and
3. set up the software systems required to operate the database.

Information requirements

Information requirements will depend entirely on the type of business, its marketing strategies, how it carries out marketing and selling activities and the target population of existing customers or prospects (the 'audience' in mail-order operations). The headings under which information may be gathered or stored comprise the following:

- *Customer data*. Names and addresses and information on all sales transactions: products bought, number of purchases, total and average value of payments, date of last order, response to promotions, method of payment and speed of payment.
- *Demographic data*. Statistical information about population groups covering such areas as numbers by age and marital status, type of housing and socio-economic conditions such as numbers in certain types of occupation, levels of car ownership, etc. The aim is to obtain information which describes groups of people so that it is possible to differentiate one group from another. The assumption is then made that differences in the demographic make-up of groups will be reflected in differences in purchasing behaviour. The demographic profile is then attached to individual households in the district and sales can be targeted to those who, on the balance of probabilities, are potentially the most responsive customers.
- *Psychographic data*. Information about the personal characteristics of customers covering such items as their household, their possessions, their interests and their buying behaviour.

Information sources

The main information sources are as follows:

- *Customers*. Obviously, this is collected from records of sales transactions.

When designing the database it will be necessary to specify precisely what data is required and modify the data-processing systems accordingly. It will be essential to provide precise postcodes (this can be done through a specialized computer bureau).

- *Demographic data*. This can be obtained from the census. It is necessary to analyse each enumeration district (the smallest available building block of census data) to establish its demographic profile – the characteristics of residents in the district. This profile will not accurately describe every household but will probably apply to a sufficiently large proportion of them to justify targeting sales to all residents in accordance with the overall profile. Organizations such as Acorn can provide demographic profiles of their clients' customers.
- *Psychographic data*. This can be provided by organizations such as Behaviour Bank and Lifestyle Selector. They obtain their information through surveys which involve the completion of questionnaires by people and their subsequent analysis.

Setting up software systems

A database marketing system is often founded on some form of DBMS (database management system) upon which is built whatever application software is required. This software can be obtained from a software house as a package, or it can be custom built by a software consultancy.

BENEFITS

The benefits of database marketing are:

- the ability to generate business at a lower cost per order;
- an increase in the productivity of sales representatives and assistants; and
- the capacity to respond more accurately to customer needs and wants.

FURTHER READING

Fairlie, R. *The Marketing Person's Guide to Database Marketing*, Exley Publications, Watford 1990.

21. Marketing Control

DEFINITION

Marketing control measures performance against plans so that swift action can be taken to correct adverse variances and amendments can be made as required to marketing plans.

THE CONTROL PROCESS

The basis of control is measurement, so that what has been achieved can be compared with what should have been achieved. The control process consists of:

1. planning what is to be achieved;
2. measuring regularly what has been achieved;
3. comparing actual achievements with the plan; and
4. taking action to exploit opportunities revealed by this information or to correct deviations from the plan.

THE ELEMENTS OF MARKETING CONTROL

The headings under which marketing control is exercised are the same as those used for setting targets and budgets in the marketing plan:

- sales volume and revenue
- gross margin or contribution
- net profits
- market share
- marketing expense.

Under each heading, any variances between the plan and performance are identified. The reasons for the variance are then established, which should indicate the corrective action to be taken.

SALES ANALYSIS

Performance data

Total sales and sales by product or product group are measured in unit and revenue terms for each month or four-week period. These results are compared with the forecast and the positive or negative variance recorded.

Sales are also measured on a cumulative year-to-date basis and compared with the forecast. Information is recorded for comparative purposes on the sales achieved in the corresponding period in the previous year and for the corresponding year-to-date figure for the previous year. An example of this type of analysis is given in Table 21.1.

Table 21.1. *Marketing control data*

	This month			**Year-to-date**		
	Actual	*Forecast*	*Previous year*	*Actual*	*Forecast*	*Previous year*
Sales £000	2,856	2,888	2,710	18,414	17,310	16,500

Charting sales data

Actual sales are displayed and compared with forecast by use of the Z chart (see Figure 21.1) The name arises because the pattern on such a graph forms a rough letter Z. The chart records four items of information:

1. Actual sales for the month or period.
2. Cumulative total actual sales for the year to date.
3. The moving annual average of actual sales.
4. The forecast cumulative sales.

Variance analysis

Variances are analysed to find out why they have happened. Corrective action should follow where necessary. Variances can be caused by one or a combination of any of the following three factors and should be assessed accordingly:

1. *Sales price variance*. Differences between the budget price and actual price.
2. *Sales volume variance*. Differences between forecast and actual sales.
3. *Product mix variance*. Variations in the mix of products where the pattern of products actually sold differs from the pattern upon which the forecast was based.

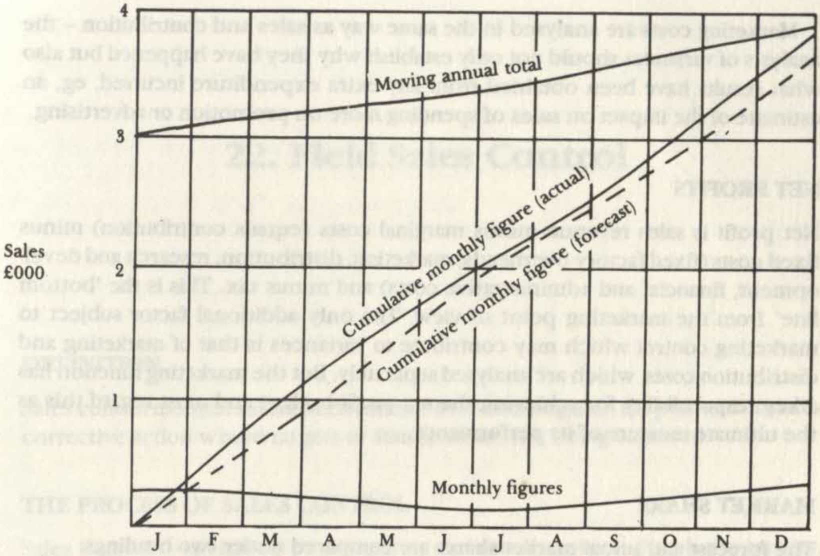


Figure 21.1. *Z chart used for marketing control*

Variance analysis may reveal inadequacies in performance but it could indicate unrealistic targets or budgets, ie, over-optimistic or unduly pessimistic.

CONTRIBUTION ANALYSIS

The analysis of contribution is made on the same lines as for sales, ie, actuals are compared with budget and with the previous year on a monthly or period and year-to-date basis.

Variances in contribution are attributable to differences between forecast and actual sales or between budgeted and actual variable costs. As sales variances will have been separately analysed the assessment of contribution variances concentrates on variable costs, ie, the unit cost of the product sold plus the variable selling costs specifically incurred in selling more of the product. Variances can be caused by differences between actual and budgeted costs or by variations in the product mix.

MARKETING COSTS

Marketing costs are those directly incurred by the marketing and sales departments, ie, market research, sales promotion, advertising, distribution and the costs of running the marketing department and the field sales organization.

Marketing costs are analysed in the same way as sales and contribution - the analysis of variances should not only establish why they have happened but also what results have been obtained from any extra expenditure incurred, eg, an estimate of the impact on sales of spending more on promotion or advertising.

NET PROFITS

Net profit is sales revenue minus marginal costs (equals contribution) minus fixed costs (fixed factory overheads, marketing, distribution, research and development, financial and administrative costs) and minus tax. This is the 'bottom line' from the marketing point of view. The only additional factor subject to marketing control which may contribute to variances is that of marketing and distribution costs, which are analysed separately. But the marketing function has a key responsibility for achieving the net profit budget and must regard this as the ultimate measure of its performance.

MARKET SHARE

The forecast and actual market shares are compared under two headings:

1. *Market saturation*. The relationship between actual market volume of sales and market potential. A market segment is saturated when actual volume equals market potential (100 per cent) and degrees of saturation are expressed as percentages. The degree of saturation achieved against budget indicates the extent to which marketing opportunities have been seized or are still available for further exploitation.
2. *Market penetration*. The relationship between actual market share in terms of sales to the actual market volume. Degrees of market penetration are expressed as percentages, and the overall effectiveness of marketing strategies and plans are assessed by comparing targets for increasing market penetration with the results achieved.

BENEFITS

Monitoring control information is the best way to ensure that what was intended has been done. More importantly, the analysis of variances points the way to future action. In addition, this analysis highlights any faults in the forecasting and budgeting process which can be corrected in the future.

22. Field Sales Control

DEFINITION

Sales control monitors sales performance in the field against the plan and initiates corrective action where targets or standards are not being achieved.

THE PROCESS OF SALES CONTROL

Sales control is exercised by comparing the results achieved with the targets, standards and budgets contained in the plan. It is directed towards the inputs and outputs of the sales force (field or internal) and the overall result they achieved.

This section concentrates on field sales control as the most important element in most companies. The process of field sales control is illustrated in Figure 22.1.

CONTROLLING SALES EFFORT IN THE FIELD

The control of sales effort in the field is effected by measuring achievements under the three input variables shown in Figure 22.1:

1. The number of calls made by representatives against targets.
2. The quality of those calls against the quantitative targets for success and sales per call and the qualitative standards for the effectiveness of the sales representative during the calls.
3. The allocation of sales effort by sales management to achieve economy and effectiveness in the deployment of sales representatives. The objective is to obtain the optimum frequency of calls on large, medium and small customers, and on large, medium and small prospects, that will maximize the profit return per unit of sales effort expanded.

The quantitative information is obtained by returns and reports originally from the individual sales representatives for their territories and analysed by area and region. The qualitative information is obtained by regular performance reports on sales representatives from sales management.

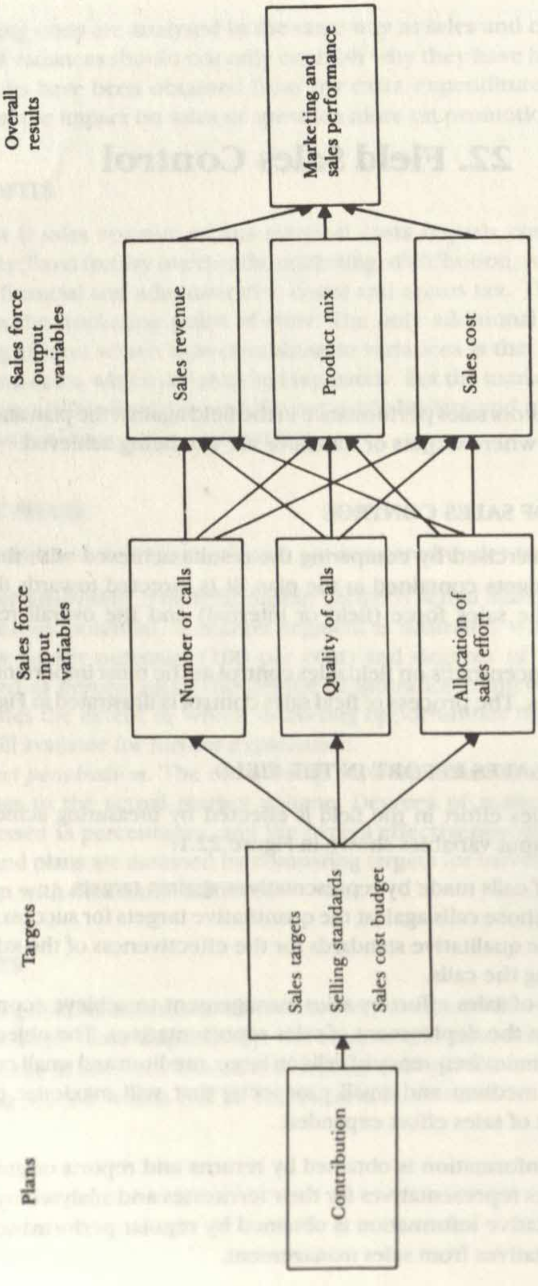


Figure 22.1. *The field sales control process*

CONTROLLING SALES PERFORMANCE IN THE FIELD

Sales performance in the field is controlled under three headings:

1. Sales revenue against targets, for the company as a whole, for each region, area, territory and major outlet, and for each product line.
2. Product mix - the extent to which sales effort is being directed to the products producing higher profits, so that a more profitable product mix is achieved (the tendency for sales representatives to sell volume rather than optimize profitability must be controlled).
3. Selling costs expressed as actual against budget and as an actual ratio of costs to sales against the target ratio.

OVERALL CONTROL

The best overall measure of sales performance in the field is the contribution. The sales force sells the products at a margin, and this margin, minus all costs of the selling operation - sales representatives' salaries and commission, sales management and supervision costs, travel expenses, special discounts and interest on accounts receivable - represents the contribution of the sales department to corporate net profits and fixed costs.

BENEFITS

Managing a sales force consisting of independent-minded people scattered far and wide is never easy. It becomes impossible if the systems for monitoring sales performance are inadequate. Information not only on sales but also on what the sales force is actually doing and how well they are doing it is essential to maintain a sense of direction towards achieving corporate sales targets.

FURTHER READING

Henry, P, 'Manage your sales force as a system', *Harvard Business Review*, March-April 1975.

PART 4

Operations Management

23. Operations Management: An Overview

DEFINITION

Operations management is concerned with the production, distribution and project management activities carried out in an organization.

AIMS

The overall aims of operations management are to create added value for the organization and help to achieve sustainable competitive advantage by satisfying the demands and needs of customers for the company's products.

These overall aims are achieved by:

- the systematic planning and control of all production management activities;
- setting and attaining high levels of throughput, quality, and customer service in terms of meeting needs (conforming to specification), delivery on schedule and after-sales service;
- maximizing productivity;
- optimizing the use of resources - people, plant, equipment, tools, inventory, premises and information systems;
- managing projects in accordance with a planned timetable to deliver required results;
- minimizing manufacturing, inventory, maintenance and distribution costs;
- taking whatever steps are necessary to increase the levels of skill, motivation and commitment in the workforce;
- making the best use of computers to achieve maximum efficiency, especially in the planning and control of operations.

INTEGRATED OPERATIONS MANAGEMENT

Operations management can be described as part of an integrated process which is involved with all the other aspects of the business: namely, business planning, marketing and sales, finance, human resource management, purchasing, re-

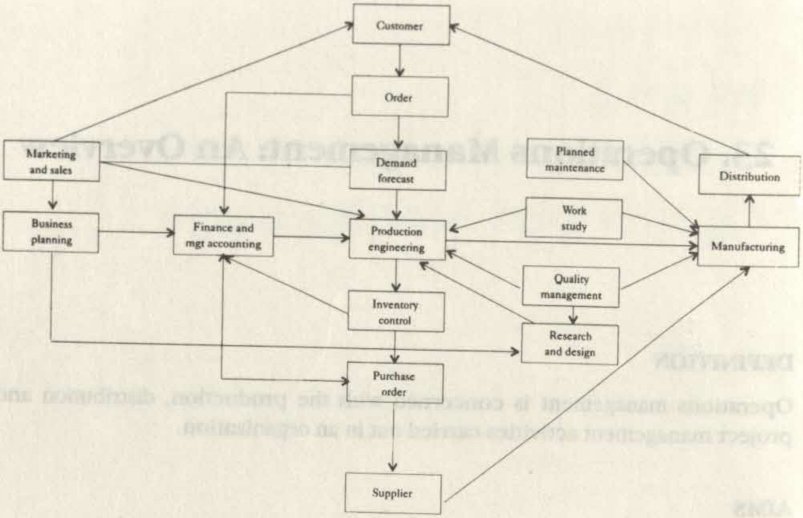


Figure 23.1. *An integrated operations system*

search and development and distribution. This process necessarily involves both the all-important customer, and the supplier upon whom the organization will be heavily dependent, especially in a just-in-time operation. The relationships between the different parts of the process are illustrated in Figure 23.1.

ACTIVITIES

The basic operations management activities can be grouped into the following areas:

- The overall manufacturing system.
- Production engineering.
- Computerized design, process planning, production planning and control and manufacturing systems – these make use of information technology to improve the efficiency and effectiveness of production engineering and manufacturing methods which in many high-technology and large-scale mass-production or processing plants have largely replaced traditional and mainly manual techniques.
- Manufacturing.
- Quality management.
- Planned maintenance.
- Inventory control.
- Distribution.

THE OVERALL MANAGEMENT SYSTEM

The overall manufacturing system as described in Chapter 24 is the process of transforming materials and information into goods for the satisfaction of human needs.

PRODUCTION ENGINEERING

Production engineering is the generic term which covers all activities concerned with specifying, planning and controlling manufacturing processes. The main production engineering activities are described below.

Process planning

Process planning determines how the product or part should be manufactured by referring to component and assembly drawings and manufacturing reference data, and specifications produced at the design stage. The process plan then incorporates operations sequences for each component, and determines the routing of operations through part manufacture to final assembly. The plan also specifies the machines, tools, fixtures, fittings and type of labour to be used.

Production planning

Production planning analyses sales forecasts and orders and decides on the manufacturing resources (capacity, materials and labour) required to meet current and anticipated demand. Production planning involves capacity and aggregate planning, which aim to match the level of production to the level of demand.

Aggregate planning aims to ensure that capacity is available to meet demand at minimum cost. The means to achieve this without maintaining excess capacity include the following:

- *Chasing demand*. Adjusting capacity rapidly in response to changes in demand.
- *Smoothing out production*. Manipulating inventory levels by building up excess stock in slack periods to meet future higher demands, but this can increase inventory costs to an unacceptable level.
- *Accommodating capacity to demand*. Making short-term adjustments to capacity by, for example, using labour flexibly (this may require a multiskilled workforce), subcontracting work in periods of high demand or calling in subcontracted work in periods of low demand.

More sophisticated computerized production planning and control (CPPC) techniques, as described in Chapters 27 to 30, are designed to overcome problems of balancing capacity and demand. Another important method of avoiding these problems is provided by using the just-in-time approach (see Chapter 31).

Production control

Production control schedules production, loads the shops and monitors progress to ensure that production programmes are achieved.

Scheduling

Scheduling involves:

- sequencing – determining the order in which jobs will be completed at each stage in the programme;
- allocating the start and finishing time for each order; and
- resource allocation – assessing labour and material requirements and their availability.

The approach adopted will be influenced by the extent to which the company is making to order (responding to customer orders) or making to stock (anticipating future orders).

Scheduling is more straightforward when sales are stable or can be forecast accurately, and when there is a dependent relationship between the demand for the product and the quantities of parts, components or subassemblies needed to manufacture it. This is known as a dependent-activity demand situation.

When, however, there is uncertainty about future customer orders, or where there is no clear relationship between the final product and the activities required to make it, scheduling becomes more difficult. This is known as an independent-activity demand situation.

Scheduling techniques include the following:

- *Materials requirement planning*, in which the known customer requirement for the final product is 'exploded' to produce lists of the parts and components required to make it. These known requirements are compared with available inventories to determine net requirements, which are then scheduled within available capacity. Computerized methods of materials requirement planning (MRPI and MRPII) are described in Chapters 28 and 29 respectively.
- *Forward scheduling*, which involves setting out activity timings from a given start date to achieve a defined completion date. This is usually computerized, although bar or Gantt charts as described in Chapter 48 are still maintained manually in some organizations.
- *Reverse scheduling*, as used in make-to-order situations, involves subtracting activity timings from the due date for delivery and representing them on computerized schedules or Gantt charts.
- *Network analysis*, which is used in complex projects to schedule various interrelated and interdependent activities (see Chapter 129).
- *Line of balance*, a technique used in batch production to calculate the quantities of the parts or components of the final product which must be

completed by an intermediate date to ensure the final delivery schedule is met (see Chapter 130).

The output of the scheduling process is a master production schedule which sets out when the major operations required for each expected item of demand are to be undertaken. Master production scheduling aims to balance production possibilities with sales requirements.

Shop loading

Shop loading takes the master schedule and verifies labour availability, prepares detailed programmes and assigns the work to a machine or an operator. Shop loading will be related to the capacity available.

Progress control

Progress control monitors the progress of orders through the shops against the master production schedule and delivery requirements so that corrective action can be taken to overcome delays, shortages and bottlenecks.

Material control

Material control works from the master production schedule and, using materials requirement (MRP) and inventory control techniques, it:

- verifies material requirements;
- requisitions materials from buying and stores;
- receives and stores materials and bought-in parts; and
- identifies surplus stock and takes action to reduce it.

All these aspects of production engineering can be computerized, and the main design, process planning and planning and control techniques are discussed below.

COMPUTERIZED DESIGN, PROCESS PLANNING, PRODUCTION PLANNING AND CONTROL, AND MANUFACTURING SYSTEMS

Computer-aided design (CAD)

Computer-aided design (CAD), as described in Chapter 25, uses computers to assist in the production of designs, drawings and data for use in manufacture.

Computer-aided manufacture (CAM)

Computer-aided manufacture, as described in Chapter 26, uses computers to support manufacturing processes, especially those consisting of computer numerically controlled (CNC) machines, robots and automated material handling systems.

CADCAM

CADCAM, also known as computer-aided engineering (CAE), links product design and manufacturing through integrated CAD and CAM computer systems. For example, a CADCAM system in the electronics industry, where it is most often found, might consist of CAD work stations, in which integrated circuits and printed circuit boards are designed, which are linked to a processor with a database that provides output to drive computer numerically controlled (CNC) machines.

Computer-integrated manufacture (CIM)

Computer-integrated manufacture (CIM), as described in Chapter 40, uses information technology to integrate the various processes which together comprise the total manufacturing process. The computerized systems used in a full CIM system will include CAD and CAM as described above. A CADCAM system is sometimes regarded as being synonymous with CIM. A full CIM system, however, will also incorporate computer-aided process planning (CAPP) and computerized production planning and control (CPPC) as described below.

Computer-aided process planning (CAPP)

CAPP uses computers to produce process plans for products or parts. It can automatically develop these and routings from the outputs of CAD. It leans heavily on the parts classification and coding aspects of group technology (GT) - see Chapter 37.

There are two approaches to CAPP:

- *Variant process planning*, in which process plans are stored in digital form thus allowing the planner to select and modify appropriate plans as needed.
- *Generative process planning*, in which descriptions of the parts, the manufacturing process, the machine tools and the tooling are entered into the computing system which then develops a new process plan. It makes no reference to prior plans and therefore requires more complex decision sequences than variant process planning.

The full computerization of process planning requires the use of generative process planning but this is a complex and demanding approach.

Computerized planning and production control systems (CPPC)

These comprise the following:

1. The overall production planning and control system (PPCS) - see Chapter 27.
2. A choice of planning and scheduling systems, namely:
    - materials requirement planning (MRPI), see Chapter 28;
    - manufacturing resource planning (MRPII), see Chapter 29;
    - optimized production technology (OPT), see Chapter 30; and
    - just-in-time systems (JIT), see Chapter 31.
3. Process control systems, see Chapter 32.
4. Layout planning (see Chapter 33) which determines the physical disposition of departments and sections on a site and the location of plant, machinery and equipment in each area. Much of the work of planning layouts can be computerized although techniques such as cross charts and relationship charts are also used manually.

MANUFACTURING SYSTEMS

These comprise:

- job, batch and flow production systems, see Chapter 34;
- the use of computer numerically controlled machine tools, see Chapter 35;
- flexible manufacturing systems (FMS), see Chapter 36;
- the use of group technology (see Chapter 37), also used in production engineering;
- cellular manufacturing, see Chapter 38;
- the use of robots, see Chapter 39; and
- computer-integrated manufacturing as described briefly above and in more detail in Chapter 40.

QUALITY MANAGEMENT

Quality management activities aim to ensure that the high standards of product quality and service expected by customers are created and maintained. Quality management activities comprise:

- quality control, quality assurance and total quality control systems, see Chapter 41; and
- total quality management (TQM) systems, see Chapter 42.

INVENTORY CONTROL ACTIVITIES

Inventory control activities aim to ensure that the optimum amount of inventory or stock is held by a company so that its internal and external demand requirements are met economically. They comprise:

- overall approaches to inventory control as described in Chapter 44;

- the use of materials requirement planning (MRPI) and manufacturing resource planning (MRPII) systems as described, respectively, in Chapters 28 and 29; and
- make or buy decisions as described in Chapter 45.

Planned maintenance activities

Planned maintenance draws up in advance and implements plant, equipment and building maintenance programmes to ensure that they operate or remain trouble free for a predetermined period. Planned maintenance activities are described in Chapter 43.

Distribution activities

Distribution activities are concerned with storing completed products in warehouses, depots and stores and the despatching and delivery of products to customers. Those concerned with physical distribution management and distribution planning are described in Chapters 46 and 47 respectively.

Project management activities

Project management activities are concerned with the planning, supervision and control of large-scale engineering or construction projects. They are described in Chapter 48.

FURTHER READING

Adam, E E, and Ebert, R, ***Production and Operations Management: Concepts, Models and Behavior***, Prentice-Hall, Englewood Cliffs, NJ 1992.

Bennet, D, Lewis, C, and Oakley, M, ***Operations Management***, Philip Allen, Oxford 1988.

Wild, R, (ed), ***International Handbook of Production and Operations Management***, Cassell, London 1989.

24. Manufacturing Systems

DEFINITION

A manufacturing system, as shown in Figure 24.1, starts with an assessment of customer wants and needs and continues with manufacturing planning and control. This leads to the actual processes of manufacturing and the delivery of finished products to customers. Feedback loops are built into the system to modify designs in response to measurements of customer satisfaction and to modify designs and plans in accordance with measurements of manufacturing performance.

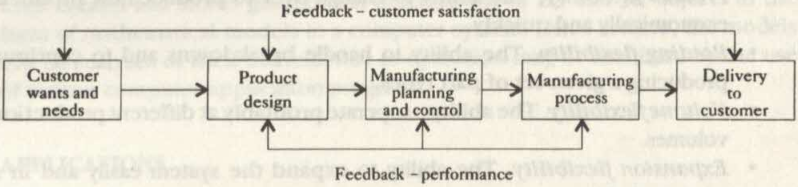


Figure 24.1 *A manufacturing system*

MANUFACTURING AS A PROCESS

Manufacturing, as defined by Chryssolouris,[1] is the process of transforming materials and information into goods for the satisfaction of human needs. Manufacturing can be subdivided into:

- *manufacturing processes*, which alter the form, shape and/or physical properties of a given material;
- *manufacturing equipment*, which is used to perform manufacturing processes;
- *manufacturing systems*, which are combinations of manufacturing equipment and humans bound by a common material and information flow;

- *design and manufacturing interfaces*, which are the links between the drawing, sketch, computer-assisted design (CAD) file or other ways of communicating the features and characteristics of the product or sub-assembly to be manufactured.

MANUFACTURING DECISIONS

Manufacturing decisions, as analysed by Chryssolouris,[1] are concerned with the following four attributes:

1. *Cost* - of equipment, materials, labour, energy, maintenance, training, overhead and capital.
2. *Time* - the speed with which a manufacturing system can respond to change and how quickly a product can be produced by the system (the production rate).
3. *Flexibility* - the ability to meet the demands of a diversified and changing customer base in a global market. Flexibility is required in the following areas:
    - *Machine flexibility*. The ease of making changes required to produce a given set of part types.
    - *Process flexibility*. The ability to produce a given set of part types, possibly using different materials in different ways.
    - *Product flexibility*. The ability to change over to produce new products economically and quickly.
    - *Routing flexibility*. The ability to handle breakdowns and to continue producing a given set of part types.
    - *Volume flexibility*. The ability to operate profitably at different production volumes.
    - *Expansion flexibility*. The ability to expand the system easily and in a modular fashion.
    - *Operation flexibility*. The ability to interchange ordering of several operations for each part type.
    - *Production flexibility*. The universe of part types the manufacturing system can produce.
4. *Quality* - how well the production process meets the design specifications related to the different features and properties of the product.

REFERENCE

1. Chryssolouris, G, *Manufacturing Systems: Theory and Practice*, Springer-Verlag, New York 1992.

25. Computer-Aided Design (CAD)

DEFINITION

Computer-aided design (CAD) uses computers to assist in the production of designs, drawings and data for use in manufacture. It provides input for computer-assisted drafting to produce engineering drawings and the basis for producing CNC (computer numerical control) tapes for fabricating parts.

OPERATION OF CAD

CAD creates and stores geometrical descriptions of 2D and 3D objects in the form of mathematical models in a computer system. Once created, the models can be analysed or their manufacture or operation may be simulated by the use of various computer application programs.

APPLICATIONS

CAD enables designers to manipulate diagrams, simulate operations, infer complete designs from a few specifications and draw on libraries of designs.

Drawings

The types of drawings produced by CAD drafting systems include:

- engineering drawings
- mechanical components
- manufacturing layouts
- circuit diagrams
- wiring and piping layouts.

A CAD system can make use of existing designs held on the computer file. New designs and working drawings or amendments to existing designs or drawings can be produced quickly and easily with the aid of a graph plotter (a device which draws on paper or film with pens under computer control).

Computer graphics

Computer graphics use the computer to generate and display pictorial images by means of a graphic device input such as a light pen or a graphics tablet – a tablet of semi-conducting material on which a special stylus is used to draw and manipulate forms.

Modelling and simulations

Using computer graphics, a designer can construct three-dimensional models graphically on the screen, thus allowing designs to be selected from an operational aspect without the expense of producing working models. Advance solid-modelling systems allow the design to be 'built' on the display screen and modifications made to one view of the design are automatically reflected throughout the design. Individual models can be expanded into complete systems models kinetics.

Computer kinetics can be used to study the effects of moving parts on other parts of the design and can analyse more complex mechanisms.

Engineering analysis

The CAD system can be used to calculate such things as weight, volume, surface area, moment of inertia or centre of gravity of a part.

Manufacturing data and instructions

CAD systems can produce data for production planning, materials requirement planning, etc., and instructions for computer numerically controlled machine tools.

INTEGRATED CAD SYSTEMS

CAD opens up the scope for integrating the design process across the whole company, for example:

- CADCAM systems permit the generation of designs and the relevant information necessary for controlling manufacturing operations – machinery, assembly, etc. CAD designs can be sent directly through telecommunications links to the computer-controlled machinery which makes the parts.
- CAD linkages with a computer-aided production management system permit more rapid and accurate generation of data such as bills of materials in material requirements planning (MRP) systems.
- CAD links with marketing permit rapid responses to customer requirements. Required changes or features can be quickly added to an existing design and the instructions passed on to manufacturing through a direct CADCAM linkage.

- CAD links with testing and quality management allow for the development of test procedures and equipment. These provide for rapid feedback to enable quality problems to be picked up quickly and diagnosed so that design changes can be incorporated with a minimum of delay.

Integrated CAD or CADCAM systems can be developed into full computer-integrated manufacturing (CIM) systems (see Chapter 40).

BENEFITS

The benefits of CAD include:

- greater design flexibility;
- increased productivity in design groups; and
- the scope for developing integrated design and manufacturing systems.

26. Computer-Aided Manufacturing (CAM)

DEFINITION

Computer-aided manufacturing (CAM) uses computer systems to monitor, control and support manufacturing operations.

COMPUTER PROCESS MONITORING

In computer process monitoring, computers are used to collect and record operational data and, when appropriate, indicate to operators that corrective action is required.

Monitoring covers the following:

- *Process variables*. Deviations in operational performance from desired values which require corrective action.
- *Machine tool and equipment data*. The status of machine tools and equipment to identify or diagnose the likelihood and cause of breakdowns, to monitor utilization and to determine optimum tool-change schedules.
- *Product data*. Piece counts, production yield and product quality attributes.

DIRECT COMPUTER CONTROL

Direct computer control involves controlling machine tools with pre-recorded control information. Control takes the following three forms:

- *Basic numerical control (NC)*, in which instructions are stored on punched paper tape.
- *Computer numerical control (CNC)*, in which machines are operated and controlled through a dedicated computer – the numerical control instructions are stored in the computer's memory.
- *Direct numerical control (DNC)*, in which machine control is distributed through a network of computers.

Direct computer control takes place in two areas:

1. *Continuous processing*. The operation of valves, motors and other controls in response to measured variables such as temperature, pressure and flow rates.
2. *Discrete parts manufacturing*. Positioning machine elements for fabrication purposes such as metal-cutting or metal-forming operations. Computers are used to position the cutting edge and to control machine motions as well as to transfer parts and materials among work stations.

MANUFACTURING SUPPORT

Manufacturing support can be provided by CAM in the following areas:

- *Computer-automated process planning*. The computer prepares a listing of the operation system required to process a part or component.
- *Computer-generated work standards*. The computer determines the time standard for production operations.
- *Production scheduling*. The computer draws up schedules for meeting production requirements.
- *Materials requirement planning*. The computer is used to determine when to order raw materials and purchased components and how many should be ordered to achieve the production schedule.
- *Shopfloor data collection*. The computer is used to collect data from the factory showing how production-shop orders are progressing.

CADCAM

CADCAM (sometimes called computer-aided engineering – CAE) links CAD and CAM to provide for greater integration of design and manufacture. A design is created and the manufacturing process is controlled and executed with a single computer system.

A CADCAM system therefore provides for the computer integration of the following processes:

- design engineering (CAD)
- drafting
- creating a database for manufacturing (CAD)
- computer process monitoring (CAM)
- direct computer control (CAM)
- manufacturing support (CAM).

CADCAM can be further developed into a full computer-integrated manufacturing (CIM) system as described in Chapter 40.

BENEFITS OF CAM

1. The direct and flexible control through computers of families of machine tools.
2. Increased productivity through the better utilization of machines.
3. Improved quality and reliability as a result of precisely formulated and transmitted instructions and a structured control system.
4. Economies in operation through the continuous use of production equipment, absence of bottlenecks and minimum inventory.
5. Better coordination of all factory operations including the flow of parts and materials.

FURTHER READING

Hordeski, M, *CAD/CAM Techniques*, Reston Publishing, Reston, VA 1986.

27. Production Planning and Control Systems (PPCS)

DEFINITION

Production planning and control systems (PPCS) use computers to determine the optimum levels of manufacturing resources required to meet demand forecasts, prepare production programmes, schedule production to meet those programmes and monitor operational activities to ensure that customer demand is satisfied while resources are used effectively.

THE BASIC PPCS MODEL

The basic PPCS model is illustrated in Figure 27.1. It starts at the 'front end' with demand forecasts which form the basis of production plans and, together with broad estimates of capacity (rough-cut capacity planning), lead to the production of the master production schedule (MPS). This is followed in the 'engine' by the detailed planning of the material flows and capacity needed to meet the MPS. This includes detailed capacity planning and material requirements planning (MRP) to produce material and capacity plans. Finally, in the 'back end', shopfloor control processes and the operation of purchasing systems take place to achieve the production plan.

INTEGRATED PRODUCTION PLANNING AND CONTROL SYSTEM

An integrated PPCS is a fully computerized development of the classic model with the following features:

- It operates in *real time* – manufacturing control programs are constantly active in the computer which is always ready to receive inputs from the shopfloor. As these events occur they are recorded in the computer and provide immediate information for action.
- It is *integrated* in the sense that many computers are interconnected. This may take the form of a large host computer which works with the master files

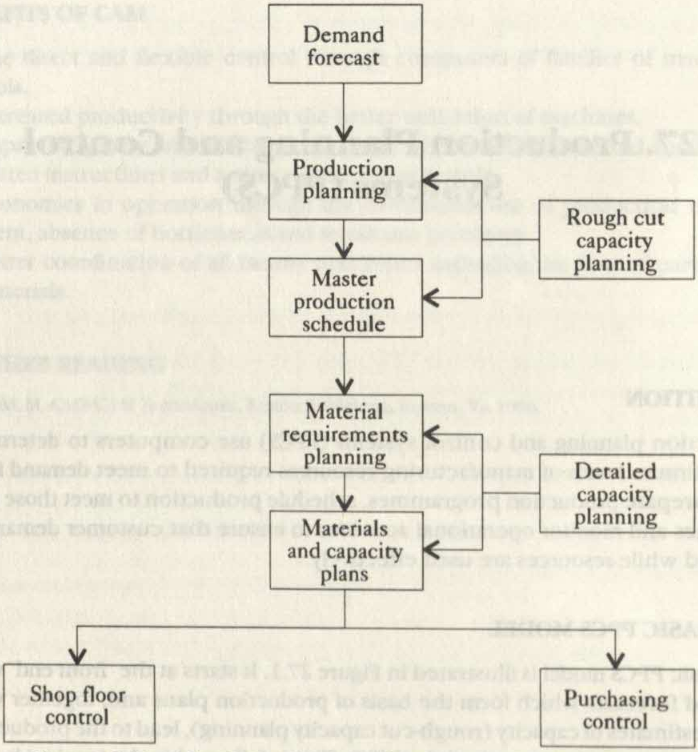

Demand forecast
Production planning
Rough cut capacity planning
Master production schedule
Material requirements planning
Detailed capacity planning
Materials and capacity plans
Shop floor control
Purchasing control

Figure 27.1. *A basic production planning and control system*

of all data and is connected with a variety of smaller computers which are limited to specific tasks. Initially, integrated systems were run by a host computer (a mainframe) which contained the database and controlled minicomputers for different operations. Increasingly, however, open systems are being used on a network basis with microcomputers in work stations superseding minicomputers although, if there is a very large database, a large mainframe computer may still be necessary.

- It is *database orientated* – there is a large database containing all the data required for planning and control purposes.

PPCS ACTIVITIES

The basic PPCS activities are:

- process planning
- demand forecasting

- aggregate planning, which includes capacity planning
- master production scheduling
- scheduling
- monitoring and central.

Process planning

Process planning establishes the sequence of the manufacturing processes to be used in order to convert a part from an initial to a final form.

Process planning is used to determine:

- the manufacturing processes involved;
- the machine tools required to execute these processes;
- the tools and fixture required at each stage of processing;
- the number and depth of passes in a machining operation;
- the feeds and speeds appropriate to each operation; and
- the type of finishing processes necessary to achieve the specified tolerances and surface quality.

Process planning can be computerized using one or other of the following approaches:

- *The variant approach*, which explores the similarities among components and searches through a database to retrieve the standard process plan for the part family to which the component belongs.
- *The generative approach*, which synthesizes manufacturing information, particularly regarding the capabilities of different manufacturing processes, and creates process plans for new components.

Demand forecasting

Demand forecasting leads to the planning of demand for a particular product. The planning is done in terms of specific modes, styles and sizes of the product range. It further requires the analysis of customer orders in relation to the existing workload and available capacity. A variety of forecasting methods are used and the result is input into the medium-term planning stage known as aggregate planning.

Aggregate planning

Aggregate planning involves the development of a medium- to long-term statement of capacity requirements in aggregate terms, ie, a plan indicating the facilities required to satisfy total expected demand. Aggregate planning is therefore largely concerned with *capacity planning* – deciding the capacity required in the system and developing and implementing a strategy for the use of given resources to meet demand fluctuations. Capacity planning, especially in MRPII systems (see Chapter 29) may involve using a technique called rough-cut capacity planning (RCCP) which involves analysing for key or aggregate work centres the feasibility of fulfilling a particular production programme as required by the demand forecast. RCCP provides a basis for producing the master production schedule. Detailed capacity planning (CRP) will evaluate more thoroughly all the operation capacity requirements.

The aim of aggregate planning is to achieve the productive utilization of both human and equipment resources. The word *aggregate* means that planning is conducted at a gross level to meet the total demand from all the products which share the same limited resources.

Master production scheduling

Master production scheduling is the process of producing a master publication schedule (MPS – sometimes known as a master operations schedule) from the aggregate capacity plan. It is a breakdown of the aggregate plan showing when the major operations required for each expected item of demand are to be undertaken. Master production scheduling aims to balance production possibilities with sales requirements. The MPS provides the basis for the more detailed scheduling of materials and manufacturing resources.

Scheduling

The detailed scheduling of work and the allocation of labour and material requirements is carried out by one or other of the following computer-based techniques:

- *Material requirement planning (MRPI)*, which takes the forward schedule of final product requirements and translates it progressively into the numbers of sub-assemblies, components and raw materials required at each stage of the manufacturing cycle. The breakdown of the components required is known as a bill of material. (See also Chapter 28.)
- *Manufacturing resource planning (MRPII)*, which is designed to produce a realistic master production schedule which takes full account of how much capacity is required to execute the plan. MRPII is a refined development of the MRPI approach which evaluates the entire production environment to allow master schedules to be adjusted based on feedback from current production and purchase conditions. (See also Chapter 29.)
- *Optimized production technology (OPT)*, which is based on the belief that in any plant there are a small number of resources which limit capacity. OPT schedules the output of these resources (known as bottlenecks) to give the best match of production plan to any given set of priorities. The bottleneck schedule is then used to derive the final master schedule from which all other material requirements can be generated, as in MRP systems. This process also implies the use of variable rather than fixed lead times. (See also Chapter 30.)

- *Just-in-time (JIT)*, which links production at all stages to a rate determined by the final product-assembly schedule. Each stage of the manufacturing process must be triggered by a requirement for more material at the succeeding stage. Essentially, JIT is a *pull* system in that material is only worked on as determined by the requirements of the succeeding operation. The ultimate objective of JIT is to move towards a lot size of one. JIT is not as dependent on computerization as the other scheduling systems. (See also Chapter 31.)

Monitoring and control

Shopfloor data collection (SFDC) and job reporting systems are used to obtain information on such transactions as set-up start, job start, job interrupted and reason, job completion and end-of-shift count. This is done by means of shopfloor terminals located at each work centre and linked directly to the computer. The terminals will include visual display screens which display job status and which can be used by team leaders to assign work. Printers can be used to notify operators of their next task.

Production monitoring can be carried out by means of computer control systems, the aim being to keep machines as fully utilized as possible.

BENEFITS

The benefits of production planning and control are:

- better planning of shop and purchase orders resulting in on-time deliveries, reduced manufacturing lead times and fewer shortages;
- improved control of shop orders resulting in shorter queues, reduced work-in-progress, less idle time and fewer bottlenecks; and
- monitoring and control of machine tools and production processes resulting in better utilization, improved quality and reduced costs.

FURTHER READING

Bedworth, D, and Bailey, J, *Integrated Production Control Systems*, Wiley, New York 1987.

Bertrand, J, Wortmann, J, and Wijngaard, J, *Production Control: A Structural and Design Orientated Approach*, Elsevier, Amsterdam 1990.

Biemans, F, *Manufacturing Planning and Control*, Elsevier, Amsterdam 1990.

28. Materials Requirement Planning (MRPI)

DEFINITION

Materials requirement planning (MRPI) is a computerized production scheduling system which takes the forward schedule of final product requirements (the master production schedule) and translates it progressively into the numbers of sub-assemblies, components and raw materials required at each stage of the manufacturing cycle.

AIMS

The aims of MRPI are to make use of computers in order to:

- determine for final products what should be produced at what time;
- calculate the required production of sub-assemblies;
- determine the requirement for materials based on an up-to-date bill of materials (BOM);
- calculate inventories, work-in-progress, batch sizes and manufacturing and packaging lead times; and
- generally control inventory by ordering bought-in components and raw materials in relation to the orders received or forecast rather than the more usual practice of ordering from stock-level indicators.

METHOD OF OPERATION

MRPI systems consolidate the firm and predicted production targets. They then calculate what materials are needed assuming a fixed relation of products, raw materials and manufacturing lead times. Finally, they compare the required raw materials and components with the available, ordered and committed raw materials or components to determine what materials and components have to be bought in from suppliers.

The breakdown of materials and components is known as a bill of materials

(BOM) and the net requirement will equal the quantity stated in the BOM less the amount of unallocated stock.

The information provided by a MRPI system includes the following:

- *Gross requirements*. The demand for the components or assembly, comprising firm customer orders and forecasts.
- *Scheduled receipts*. The expected delivery dates and quantities of shop or purchase orders already put in hand.
- *Projected available balance*. The number of items projected to be in inventory at the end of each period (opening balance plus receipts minus issues).
- *Planned order release*. The order quantities required to ensure that the projected available balance does not drop below zero at any pre-set safety level.

BENEFITS

The benefits of MRPI are that a detailed forecast of the inventory position is produced period by period which, together with the planned order release entries, enables future production to be planned more accurately and better control to be maintained of inventory.

29. Manufacturing Resource Planning (MRPII)

DEFINITION

MRPII is a computer-based system designed to manage all the resources of a manufacturing organization. It acts as a planning and scheduling system, linking manufacturing with the sales and finance departments and providing tools for joint decision-making among all three departments. MRPII is sometimes called closed-loop MRP, the feedback loop being to determine whether or not there is sufficient capacity available to meet the demands of the MRP run.

AIM

The aim of MRPII is to maintain and help in implementing the master production schedule by balancing production possibilities and capacities with demand forecasts to ensure that plans are made to provide the material resources required.

EVOLUTION OF MRPII

MRPII is a refined successor to MRPI. The latter approach is limited because it does not take into account how much capacity is required to execute the plan. Hence the significance of the alternative name of closed-loop MRP – the MRP system continually adjusts the detailed planning schedules in accordance with information on available capacity and feeds back to the master production schedule so that overall adjustments can be made to the master plan.

ESSENTIAL ELEMENTS OF MRPII

A typical MRPII flow of information and activities is shown in Figure 29.1. The essential elements of this system are as follows:

- *The demand forecast*, which takes into account firm orders and sales forecasts.

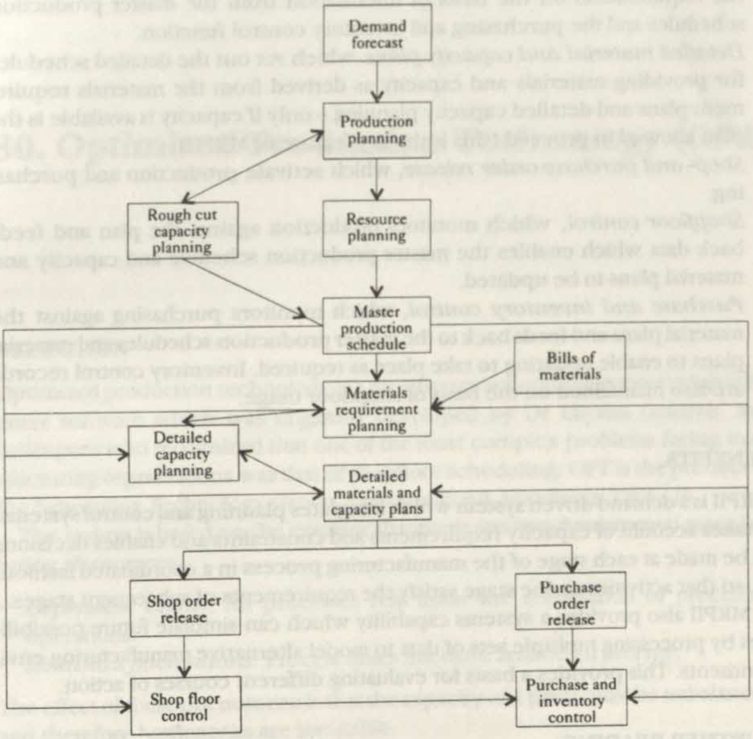

Demand forecast
Production planning
Rough cut capacity planning
Resource planning
Master production schedule
Bills of materials
Materials requirement planning
Detailed capacity planning
Detailed materials and capacity plans
Shop order release
Purchase order release
Shop floor control
Purchase and inventory control

Figure 29.1. *An MRPII system*

- *Production planning*, which converts the demand forecast into a broad statement of output requirements and the necessary production programme.
- *Resource planning*, which determines the manufacturing resources (materials and bought-in components, etc.) required to meet the production programme.
- *Rough-cut capacity planning*, which is used to test the feasibility of meeting the production programme, taking into account the capacity available.
- *The master production schedule*, which is prepared on the basis of the information obtained from the demand forecasting, production planning, resource planning and rough-cut capacity planning processes.
- *Bills of materials*, which maintain the basic data for defining products, ie, lists of the components and materials required to produce an end-product or assembly.
- *Materials requirement planning*, which determines component and mate-

rial requirements on the basis of information from the master production schedules and the purchasing and inventory control function.

- *Detailed material and capacity plans*, which set out the detailed schedules for providing materials and capacity as derived from the materials requirement plans and detailed capacity planning – only if capacity is available is the plan allowed to proceed (this is the key feature of MRPII).
- *Shop- and purchase-order release*, which activate production and purchasing.
- *Shopfloor control*, which monitors production against the plan and feeds back data which enables the master production schedule and capacity and material plans to be updated.
- *Purchase and inventory control*, which monitors purchasing against the material plans and feeds back to the master production schedules and material plans to enable updating to take place as required. Inventory control records are also maintained on the basis of shopfloor usage.

BENEFITS

MRPII is a demand-driven system which integrates planning and control systems. It takes account of capacity requirements and constraints and enables decisions to be made at each stage of the manufacturing process in a coordinated fashion, ie, so that activities at one stage satisfy the requirements of subsequent stages.

MRPII also provides a systems capability which can simulate future possibilities by processing multiple sets of data to model alternative manufacturing environments. This provides a basis for evaluating different courses of action.

FURTHER READING

Wallace, T, *MRP II: Making it Happen*, Oliver Wright, Essex Junction, Mass 1990.
Wright, O, *Manufacturing Resource Planning*, Van Nostrand Reinhold, New York 1984.

30. Optimized Production Technology (OPT)

DEFINITION

Optimized production technology is a proprietary scheduling system using computer software which was originally developed by Dr Eliyahu Goldratt[1] and colleagues who recognized that one of the most complex problems facing manufacturing organizations was that of shopfloor scheduling. OPT is the product of the Scheduling Technology Group, Lampton Road, Middlesex TW3 1JB.

The system is based on the concept that there are two fundamental manufacturing phenomena:

- *Dependent events*. All processes rely upon the completion of preceding operations.
- *Statistical fluctuations*. Process times fluctuate around an average.

The effect of these phenomena is that the capacity of a plant must be unbalanced and therefore bottlenecks are inevitable.

As defined by Johnson,[2] the OPT method of scheduling dictates that material should only be launched on to the shopfloor at the rate at which it is consumed by the bottleneck. Furthermore, the production in the bottleneck should be protected by a time buffer of work. This means, for example, that work scheduled for day three arrives on day one, creating a buffer of two days as protection against disruption in operations before the bottleneck.

AIM OF OPT

The aim of OPT is to schedule bottleneck capacity in an efficient way. This schedule is the master for the demand placed on other capacities.

MAIN FEATURES OF OPT

The main features of OPT are described by Fax[3] as follows:

- Balance flow not capacity.

- The level of utilization of any part of the system which is not a bottleneck is dependent on other constraints in the system, not the potential of the worker.
- The utilization and activation of a resource are not synonymous.
- An hour lost at the bottleneck is an hour lost for the total system.
- An hour saved at a non-bottleneck is just a mirage.
- Bottlenecks govern both throughput and inventories.
- The transfer batch may not, and many times should not, be equal to the process batch.
- The process batch should be variable, not fixed.
- Schedules should be established by looking at all the constraints simultaneously. Lead times are the results of the schedule and cannot be predetermined.

DEVELOPING OPT

The steps used to develop OPT consist of the following:

- *Preparation*. Measuring performance, project planning and identifying hardware and software requirements.
- *Plant analysis*. Analysing the manufacturing processes and how they are managed.
- *Bottleneck analysis*. (A bottleneck is defined as a resource 'where capacity is equal to or less than the demand being placed upon it'.) This is conducted by analysing work in progress and shortages vs. excesses (potential bottlenecks are those resources which appear on the shortage list but not the excess list).
- *Computer modelling*. This is the process of developing the engineering network and instructing the OPT scheduler how to interpret details concerning the manufacture of products such as dependent set-ups, critical material, fixed batch quantities, maximum batch quantities, consumable tools, rework and uninterruptable processes. Data will be fed into the model concerning routines, bills of material and customer demand.
- *Data definition*. Establishing what data is required to be fed into the system.
- *Defining outputs*. The output will be a master production schedule (MPS) which is achieved by constraint capacity planning. This provides the basis for the process of demand management using the OPT software to carry out the scheduling – the OPT identifies the relevant demand and controls the build accordingly.

OPERATING OPT

OPT is operated through OPT software which has been developed to control complex manufacturing processes. The software will model the process and produce the schedules in the shape of material and capacity plans using the OPT bottleneck forward-loading techniques. The shopfloor control system will then monitor progress against the schedule and initiate any action to overcome shortfalls.

BENEFITS

The benefits claimed for OPT are that it will schedule finite resources in order to achieve maximum factory effectiveness. The scheduling system addresses the key problem of bottlenecks and improves profitability by simultaneously increasing throughput while reducing inventory and operating expenses.

REFERENCES

1. Goldratt, E M, 'Computerized shop floor scheduling', *International Journal of Production Research*, Vol. 26, pp. 443–56, 1988.
2. Johnson, K, *Implementing Optimised Production Technology*, IFS Publications, Bedford 1990.
3. Fax, R E, 'OPT(imizing) just in time – leapfrogging the Japanese', *Proceedings APICS Conference*, Las Vegas, NV 1984.

FURTHER READING

Jones, G, and Roberts, M, *Optimised Production Technology*, IFS Publications, Bedford 1990.

31. Just-in-Time

DEFINITION

Just-in-time (JIT) is a programme designed to enable the right quantities to be purchased or manufactured at the right time without waste. It provides for the required flow of production to be maintained with zero inventory (no buffer stocks) at each stage of the supply/manufacturing chain.

The overriding feature of JIT is that materials or parts are generated in the exact quantity required and just at the time they are needed. A classic JIT system consists of a series of manufacturing units each delivering to one another in successive stages of production. The amount delivered by each unit to the next unit is exactly what the latter needs for the next production period (usually one day). There are no safety margins in the form of buffer stocks, live storage or work-in-progress.

AIMS

The aims of JIT are to:

- minimize inventory and its associated costs within the whole manufacturing/supply chain;
- meet the requirements of each internal and external customer immediately on demand (bearing in mind that within an organization, successive links in the manufacturing/supply chains are customers of the previous link in the chain, whether or not this is inside or outside the organization);
- achieve a continuous flow of production to meet demand or supply requirements without delay or waste; and
- ensure total reliability in the delivery of required parts and material on time.

FEATURES OF JIT

The main features of JIT are that it:

- operates as a 'pull' system, producing on demand, ie, 'making to order';
- uses small lot sizes and therefore frequent production runs;
- aims to minimize set-up time;
- takes steps to reduce process time;
- uses a 'kanban' system to drive the usage of parts and control the flow of materials;
- backs up the kanban system with a material handling system designed to ensure the prompt delivery of parts;
- uses paced production systems;
- uses manufacturing cells;
- uses process capability analysis;
- adopts a TQM (total quality management) approach to achieving consistent quality standards; and
- concentrates on ensuring that suppliers' deliveries are planned and controlled to fit the needs of the JIT system.

Each of these features is discussed below.

USE OF PULL RATHER THAN PUSH SYSTEMS

'Push' systems produce to forecasts of demand or make to stock. They have the advantage of increasing the predictability of scheduling and machine loading, which leads to the use of computerized material planning and production scheduling systems. But because forecasts are fallible, a 'push' system can result in excessive stocks.

'Pull' systems produce on demand, ie, 'make to order'. They therefore eliminate the need to manufacture for stock and minimize stock levels in finished goods stores or distribution centres. 'Pull' systems are less dependent on computers (use can be made of the kanban system as described below). But they have to be able to respond to sudden and unexpected demands. They therefore need careful planning and good plant maintenance to work properly. Clearly, a 'pull' system is an appropriate approach in a JIT process but there will be many circumstances in which it is not possible to use it exclusively.

SMALL LOT SIZES

If there is low inventory in a JIT system, any fluctuations in the final stage of production or operation creates variations in the requirements at previous stages. These variations become progressively larger for processes further away from the final stage. To prevent this variation, a minimum lot or batch size, ideally a lot size of one, is used. Small lot sizes help to reduce non-conformities because they ease the rapid detection of problems and therefore the achievement of solutions more quickly, before large quantities are generated.

MINIMIZING SET-UP TIME

JIT calls for small lots and frequent production runs. The operation of JIT helps to control excess materials in the process but it can create the problem of too much time being spent in setting up machines.

The SMED system developed by Shigeo Shingo can be used for this purpose. The steps required are as follows:

- *Identify internal and external set-up tasks*. Internal set-ups occur when the machine is not operating; external set-ups can take place while the machine is still functioning.
- *Change internal set-up tasks into external set-up tasks*. External tasks, unlike internal ones, can be executed while the machine is still operating.
- *Reduce the set-up times of all operations*. Once set-up tasks have been changed from internal to external ones, the third step is work on reducing the time taken to complete all tasks. This might require engineering changes in the tasks or machines and/or the design of new jigs. The aim is to reduce the labour required to complete the task. Techniques of reducing set-up time include improving die-positioning methods, improving material feed methods, improving hose connections, standardizing bolts, improving operational training and preparing teams to deal with problems as they occur.

REDUCING PROCESSING TIME

JIT does not accept processing time as a constant and tries to reduce it as much as any other kind of time. The following are the rules developed by Hernandez[1] for analysing and reducing processing time:

- Establish a processing time goal at the beginning of the design change. Change the design to achieve the goal if necessary.
- Bear in mind that products may have to be disassembled to carry out line repairs. Therefore set disassembly goals.
- Define the process clearly and ensure that its documentation matches the engineering documentation.
- Ensure that the manufacturing engineers have clear procedures to cover the process step by step at each work centre.

KANBAN SYSTEM

Kanban is a Japanese word meaning visible record. A kanban system 'pulls' parts and components through the production processes when and only when they are needed. The movement of materials is therefore controlled entirely by the usage of parts. It is an essential element in a pull system.

Each component or part has its own special container designed to hold a precise, preferably small, quantity. Every container has two kanban cards, a production or P-kanban for the unit producing the part, and a conveyance or C-kanban for the work centre using it. The container travels between the two units and one kanban is exchanged for another along the way. No parts may be made unless there is P-kanban to authorize it, and without this authorization the production unit will come to a halt and engage in other maintenance, quality improvement or cleaning activities. If this happens too frequently action is taken to change flows, batch sizes or production methods. Kanban systems can only operate as part of a JIT process. Small batch sizes are necessary.

It is interesting to note that a complete JIT system incorporating kanban systems as developed originally by Toyota does not rely on computerization, which is the case with systems such as FMS (flexible manufacturing systems), CIM (computer-integrated manufacturing) and MRPI and II (materials requirement planning and manufacturing resources planning).

The basic rules for operating a kanban system are:

- move a kanban only when the lot it represents is consumed;
- no withdrawal of parts without a kanban is allowed;
- the number of parts issued to the subsequent process must be the exact number specified by the kanban;
- a kanban travelling card should always be attached to the physical products;
- the preceding process should always produce its parts in the quantities withdrawn by the subsequent process;
- defective parts should never be conveyed to the subsequent process; and
- the kanbans should be processed on every work centre strictly in the order in which they arrive at the work centre.

MATERIAL HANDLING SYSTEMS

The material handling system in a JIT must ensure the prompt delivery of parts to the work centres in the exact quantities required. The materials handling system must therefore:

- have the capacity needed to handle the volume requirements of the production line;
- be flexible enough to handle different products;
- be able to expand to meet future capacity increases; and
- be reliable and subject to a minimum of downtime.

PACED PRODUCTION SYSTEMS

What is called the 'hard' approach is often adopted in conveyor-time manufacture in a JIT system. In this technique operations are carried out in sequence directly on the track or conveyor, the operator faces the bench, and the product is not removed to an adjacent bench. In the alternative 'soft' approach, the operation is completed off the conveyor and then returned so that a further operator downstream can perform the subsequent operation.

The 'hard' conveyor system requires the design of tasks in such a way as to ensure that their work context is identical. The pace of the conveyor is adjusted to ensure that the normal operator can complete the task easily and comfortably within the time available. Much more attention has to be paid in this system to worker needs and training and to the joint solution of problems. Consideration has also to be given to the psychological and physical problems (eg, repetitive strain injury) which can result from a hard system.

CELLULAR MANUFACTURE

In non-conveyor type operations cellular manufacturing systems as described in Chapter 38 are often used. A characteristic feature of cellular manufacturing, especially in a JIT system, is that batches are extremely small. Thus the amount of idle time between cells is minimized, and as all the quantities are also kept to a minimum, the total work-in-progress is very low.

PROCESS CAPABILITY

Process capability is a statistical technique designed to ensure that the process continues to satisfy design requirements continuously under operating conditions. It provides a basis for continuous process improvement and can be a valuable part of a JIT system.

Process capability studies collect and analyse data obtained by studying a process system such as accuracy of machined parts, stock levels, defects, missing components and delivery times.

On the basis of this data, a statistical analysis can be made to determine the mean (average) value of the occurrences and the standard deviation (a measure of dispersion from the mean). Tolerances are then laid down to define the limits to which variations from the mean are allowed. In a JIT system the aim is to minimize tolerances by improving the process so that performance is almost totally predictable. Parts leaving a machine can then be assembled immediately with other components without the need for any form of checking and they should be *right first time*.

TOTAL QUALITY MANAGEMENT (TQM)

JIT only works effectively if techniques such as process capability studies are used to achieve total quality. A TQM approach as described in Chapter 42 involves intensive and long-term effort directed at the creation and maintenance of the high standards of product and process quality required to operate a JIT system and to satisfy customers (internal and external) at each point in the manufacturing and distribution chain.

SUPPLIERS

A JIT system calls for the steady and frequent delivery of parts and materials from suppliers. It therefore requires a reduction in the lead times of suppliers so that the manufacturer can tune the supplier's material releases to the actual consumption rates in the factory.

The release and scheduling process with suppliers consists of four steps:

1. Make a long-term purchase commitment to suppliers.
2. Give suppliers a monthly forecast for a rolling period of six months.
3. Establish with the supplier a monthly firm release for the next month of production.
4. Make an agreement with the supplier on the policy for changing delivery dates.

Two of the main aims of a JIT supplies programme will be to reduce the number of suppliers contributing parts to a product and, as far as possible, to select suppliers who are reasonably close to the factory. It is often helpful to use clusters of clients and organize common carriers for deliveries.

INTRODUCING JIT

A full JIT system as developed by Japanese firms such as Toyota and Matsushita may take years to introduce. It requires far-reaching changes to production systems and techniques and even more fundamental changes to the attitudes as well as the activities of all concerned. Such a system can only be introduced if the following conditions are satisfied:

- A stable delivery system of parts and materials.
- Small batch sizes are used as far as possible to reduce inventory levels, facilitate problem-solving, and minimize irregularities in the sequence of production.
- The performance of each link in the chain is predictable, with minimal variations from standards.
- A TQM approach is accepted and implemented throughout the organization.

Planning for JIT involves the following:

- Defining the total process, probably using flow diagrams to chart events, sequences of activities and procedures.
- Analysing each functional boundary to assess what needs to be done to minimize boundary problems between one unit or part of the process and the

next, with particular reference to speed of response, delivery on time, achievement of quality standards and the minimization of stock holdings or work-in-progress.

- Studying suppliers of materials or bought-in parts, appraising, rating, entering into collaborative arrangements, agreeing delivery standards and specifications and setting up systems for testing, monitoring and controlling deliveries.
- Studying manufacturing and processing systems to determine the extent to which they need to be changed to meet JIT requirements (eg, speeding up set-up and processing times, introducing paced production systems or cellular manufacturing), evaluating alternatives and assessing the programme of work involved and the costs and benefits of introducing new methods.
- Deciding on the degree to which a 'pull' system can be operated, ie, production on demand (it may have to be recognized that a complete pull system cannot be used, which could mean that although JIT principles might be applied at every link in the manufacturing chain, it could still be necessary to manufacture some items for stock – although the quantities should be minimized.
- Studying assembly, packaging and delivery arrangements with a view to streamlining flows, minimizing delays and maximizing quality.
- Developing a kanban system.
- Developing a quality plan which summarizes the total process and the events and flows therein and describes the systematic actions and processes which will be built into the system to achieve total quality.
- Producing a JIT manual which sets out the total system and the responsibilities of all those involved.
- Engaging in a comprehensive programme of information, consultation, involvement, training and motivation designed to develop the skills required and to achieve commitment to the system.

The importance of involvement, motivation, training and commitment to the successful development and implementation of a JIT system cannot be overstated. A JIT system can only be developed and maintained if there is total commitment at all levels in the organization. It is highly desirable to use project teams and task forces consisting of managers, engineers, technicians and operators to carry out the considerable amount of planning required.

BENEFITS

The benefits of JIT include:

- the right quantities are purchased or produced at the right time;
- the cost-effective production or operation of the correct services, as and when required;
- the achievement of higher-quality standards (right first time) and better levels of customer service both to internal and external customers;

- the minimization of inventory, work-in-progress and waste;
- the systematic identification of operational problems and the development of technology-based tools for correcting identified problems; and
- the production of goods which meet exactly the needs of customers immediately on demand.

REFERENCE

1. Hernandez, A, *Just in Time Manufacturing: A Practical Approach*, Prentice-Hall, Englewood Cliffs, NJ 1989.

FURTHER READING

Hutchins, D, *Just in Time*, Gower, Aldershot 1989.
Lubben, R, *Just in Time Manufacturing*, McGraw-Hill, New York 1988.
Mortimer, J, (ed.), *Just in Time: An Executive Briefing*, IFS Publications, Kempston 1986.

32. Process Control

DEFINITION

Process control uses statistical process control (SPC) and process capability techniques to plan, monitor and improve process manufacturing systems. These systems are capital intensive and operate continuously, as in the production of chemicals. They contain plant designed to fit the technological requirements of the process rather than accommodating a number of successive worker operations and make the maximum use of computers to control process production systems.

OBJECTIVES

The objectives of process control are to:

- establish the extent to which the process is capable of meeting requirements;
- find out how well the process is meeting these requirements; and
- enable corrective action to be taken to ensure that requirements will be met.

TECHNIQUES

The four basic techniques of process control are:

- process definition
- process analysis
- process capability analysis
- statistical process control.

Process definition

The first stage in process control is to specify precisely what the process is, how it operates and what results it is expected to achieve in terms of output levels, speed of production, quality standards and cost.

The process specification defines the process and sets out its inputs and outputs (suppliers and customers). In defining suppliers and customers, attention is given not only to external sources and customers but also to inputs at each stage in the process from within the organization, ie, the internal customers who need outputs from the process. Inputs include equipment, tools, plant, materials, information, methods and procedures, records and people.

Process analysis

Process analysis expands the definition of the process to achieve a fuller understanding of how it operates, any problems that are arising and how they might be tackled. Process analysis techniques include the following:

- *Process flow charting*, which is the diagrammatic representation of the interrelationships between the events, stages and activities of a system with a view to defining its method of operation.
- *Frequency distribution charts*, which are pictorial methods of representing the frequency with which a certain event, value or group of values occurs. The most typical chart is a histogram which records frequency distributions in the shape of bars or columns where the X or vertical axis is used for class intervals, and the Y or horizontal axis for frequencies.
- *Scatter diagrams*, which establish associations between two factors.
- *Pareto analysis*, which aims to distinguish between the critical few and the trivial many on the basis of Pareto's law to the effect that the bulk (80 per cent) of events can usually be attributed to a few of the causes (20 per cent). Pareto's law is also known as the eighty-twenty rule. A Pareto analysis will establish the frequency of incidents, errors or failures to meet quality standards. It will also direct management's attention to the critical causes which have contributed to the bulk of the incidents.

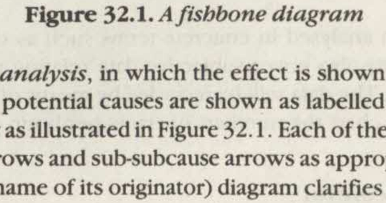


Figure 32.1. *A fishbone diagram*

- *Cause-and-effect analysis*, in which the effect is shown at the end of a horizontal arrow and potential causes are shown as labelled arrows entering the main effect arrow as illustrated in Figure 32.1. Each of these cause arrows may have subcause arrows and sub-subcause arrows as appropriate. This fishbone or Ishikawa (the name of its originator) diagram clarifies the variety of causes contributing to a result and facilitates the identification of solutions to those problems.

- *Brainstorming*, which gets groups of people uninhibitedly to produce ideas on the causes and solutions of problems (brainstorming can be linked to the creation of cause-and-effect diagrams).
- *Paired comparisons*, which is a statistical technique for ranking a number of possible causes or events in order of importance by comparing each event with each of the other events until the rank order is built up right across the range of events.
- *Control charts*, which summarize data about attributes (an attribute is a characteristic of a part of a process which defines its behaviour in such terms as working or not working, right or wrong, happening or not happening) and variables (statistical analyses showing averages of various kinds and measures of spread such as standard deviation or range). Control charts are used to identify when the process should be investigated or corrected, when there are signs that action might need to be taken in the near future and when the process is functioning correctly.

Process capability analysis

This carries process analysis one stage further to establish whether or not the manufacturing process is capable of doing the job correctly and, if not, what needs to be done about it.

Process capability analysis examines variables in the process to establish whether it is stable and in control and the extent of any process variability. Statistical sampling techniques may be used and the analysis will be based on the assumption that the distribution of continuous variables will conform to the normal or bell shape, where the measure of central tendency will be represented by the average or mean and the measure of dispersion will be represented by the standard deviation from the mean. A standard deviation is calculated by adding together all the squares of the differences between the measured values and the mean value, dividing the resultant sum by the number of values, and then calculating the square root of the result. Accuracy is determined by the extent to which the average values obtained for a process equate to a nominal or target value, and precision is measured by the spread of values from the mean. A process specification has to set out requirements for both accuracy and precision.

Attributes are also analysed in concrete terms such as correct or incorrect. Attribute analysis may also cover subjective data relating to the senses – feel, touch, smell or taste. The data will be recorded by means of frequency diagrams which, for example, chart the numbers of errors per hour, day, week, etc.

Statistical process control

Statistical process control (SPC) techniques bring together the results of process definition and analysis and process capability analysis to assemble the information required on standards and tolerances and the data available on the performance of the process. The performance statistics generated by the systems for measurement and monitoring are used as a basis for establishing variances, for identifying the causes of problems, and for establishing the corrective actions required.

BENEFITS

Process control provides the answers to four key questions:

- What needs to be done?
- How well is it being done?
- How well has it been done?
- What do we need to do to improve performance?

33. Layout Planning

DEFINITION

Plant layout techniques determine the physical disposition of the plant and of the various parts of the plant.

TYPES OF LAYOUT

The main types of layout are as follows:

1. *Fixed-position*. The size, complexity and immovability of the product make it impossible to change the layout once it has been built (eg, ship-building).
2. *Process layout*. Facilities and equipment are grouped together according to the functions performed. Used in jobbing and batch processes, different orders follow different paths through the set of processes in accordance with the processing requirements of the wide range of items produced.
3. *Product layout*. Used in line or process operations where high volumes of a small range of items follow the same sequence of operations by the route sheets. The equipment is therefore arranged in this same flow operation.
4. *Group technology*. Families of like products are grouped together and use the same set of processes (group technology is described in more detail in Chapter 37).
5. *Cellular manufacturing*. A manufacturing cell consists of a small group of closely cooperating computer numerically controlled machines (it may also be a group of manual or numerically controlled machines).

CRITERIA FOR A GOOD LAYOUT

The criteria for a good layout, as described by Lockyer,[1] are as follows:

1. *Minimum total movement cost*. To minimize the total cost of moving items and people, all movements should be necessary, direct and over as short a distance as possible.
2. *Maximum utilization of equipment*. The layout should facilitate the

maximum use of equipment by ensuring that it reflects the logical sequence of operations- and group-related activities together.

3. *Minimum handling*. Handling should be reduced to a minimum by the use of conveyors, lifts, chutes, hoists, trucks and other mechanical handling equipment.
4. *Unidirectional flow*. Material and completed work should flow in one direction only. Work lanes and transport lanes must not cross.
5. *Flexibility*. If the type of product permits, the layout should be capable of being modified quickly to meet changing circumstances.
6. *Minimum use of space*. Consistent with production efficiency, safety and comfort requirements, space utilization should be kept to a minimum.
7. *Maximum use of volume*. The height available in buildings should be used as well as the floor space, for example, mezzanines in assembly shops, high racking in warehouses.
8. *Inherent safety*. All layouts should be inherently safe to minimize the risk of accidents or the occurrence of health hazards.
9. *Minimum discomfort*. Poor lighting, heat, noise, vibration, smells and draughts should be minimized.
10. *Maximum security*. Safeguards against theft should be provided in the original layout.
11. *Maximum visibility*. As far as possible, plant and materials should be readily visible.
12. *Maximum accessibility*. Servicing and maintenance points should be easily reached.

LAYOUT TECHNIQUES

Before a layout can be planned it is necessary to have information on:

- the operations to be undertaken – description, sequence and standard times;
- the equipment needed to carry out the work;
- the number of movements of material required from one work centre to another;
- the volume of materials or buffer stocks required at each work station;
- the volume of storage required;
- the lines of communication and fire exits needed;
- the type and quantity of labour required;
- either:
  - (a) details of the space and facilities available into which the requirements listed above have to be fitted; or
  - (b) a specification of the space and facilities for the layout required.

Basic planning methods

Basic layout planning methods start from the data assembled above and represent requirements in scale drawings, models, flow charts and string diagrams to give the routes taken by different materials and products. More sophisticated charting and modelling techniques are described below.

Cross charts

Cross charts show the pattern and amount of movements between the various departments and can be used to determine the most suitable departmental relationships. In the example shown in Figure 33.1, the figures in the matrix are the number of items or loads which in a given period of time move from one department to another. Absence of any figures below the diagonal means that none of the items backtracks between departments.

To → / From	Department number						Total
	1	2	3	4	5	6	
Dept no 1		10		3		1	14
2			6	4			10
3				2	5	3	10
4					4		4
5						6	6
6							
Total		10	6	9	9	10	44

Figure 33.1. *Cross chart showing the movement of items between departments*

Relationship charts

Relationship charts, as illustrated in Figure 33.2, are used to indicate the relative importance of the relationships between the various departments. The information is derived from the cross chart. This type of chart is sometimes called an interaction matrix.

Computer programs

Computer programs have been developed for layout planning. Computer graphics are sometimes used in facilities layouts and these may be linked to computer-aided design (CAD).

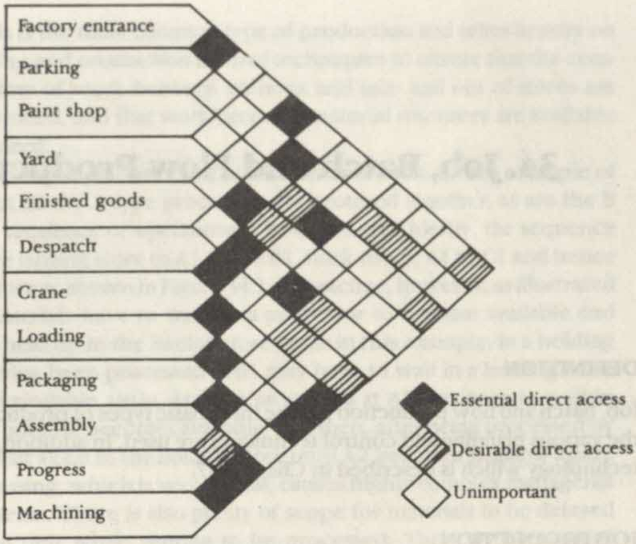


Figure 33.2. *A relationship chart*

BENEFITS

A systematic approach to the planning of plant layouts can make a major contribution to profitability and productivity by ensuring that the most economic relationships and flows of work are devised in the light of an analysis of all the relevant data.

REFERENCE

1. Lockyer, K, *Production Management*, Pitman, London 1983.

FURTHER READING

Muther, R, *Systematic Layout Planning*, Cahners, Boston, MA 1973.

34. Job, Batch and Flow Production

DEFINITION

Job, batch and flow production are the three basic types of production for which the various planning and control techniques are used. In addition, there is group technology which is described in Chapter 37.

JOB PRODUCTION

Job, 'one-off', project or 'make complete' production is the manufacture of a single complete unit by an operator or group of operators. Ship-building, construction projects and the installation of capital plant are examples. As the complexity and the use of technology in job production increases, more management techniques have to be employed. The overall technique is *project management*, which plans and controls the whole project. Within or in association with that technique, the specific techniques used in job production include the following:

1. *Network planning* to provide a basis for the planning and control of interdependent activities in a complex project.
2. *Capacity and aggregate planning* to determine the manufacturing and processing resources required.
3. *Resource allocation* to plan the deployment and use of labour.
4. *Production control*, which uses *scheduling* techniques to plan and time activities and to ensure that the necessary workforce and material resources are available.
5. *Progress control*, which exercises control over the implementation of the programme.

BATCH PRODUCTION

In batch production the work is divided into operations. Each operation is completed for the whole batch of items being produced before the next operation is carried out. This is the most common type of production and relies heavily on *aggregate planning* and *production control* techniques to ensure that the complexities of the flow of work between sections and into and out of stores are planned and controlled, and that workforce and material resources are available as and when required.

Figure 34.1 is a simplified flow chart of a batch operation. In this example of a functional layout all the A-type processors are grouped together, as are the B and C types. The sequence of operations is A→B→A→C. Ideally, the sequence would be from the issuing store to A1, A1 to B1, back to A1, A1 to C1 and hence to the receiving store as shown in Figure 34.1. In practice, however, as illustrated in Figure 34.2, materials have to wait for a processor to become available and may therefore be held up in the issuing store or, as in this example, in a holding store. An item having been processed at B1 may have to wait in a holding store until A1 becomes available again. An item processed at A2 may have to wait in the holding store until B2 becomes available, and then, after being processed by B2, may have to wait again in the holding store until A2 becomes available again. This type of processing, which is very typical, causes highly complex managerial and control problems. There is also plenty of scope for materials to be delayed in the production unit while waiting to be processed. These problems may outweigh the advantages of flexibility and the high utilization of equipment.

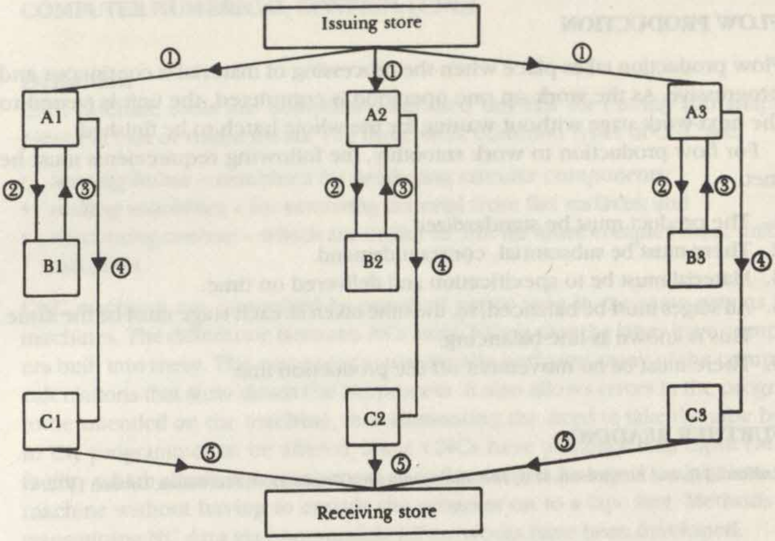


Figure 34.1. *Ideal material flow in a functional layout.*

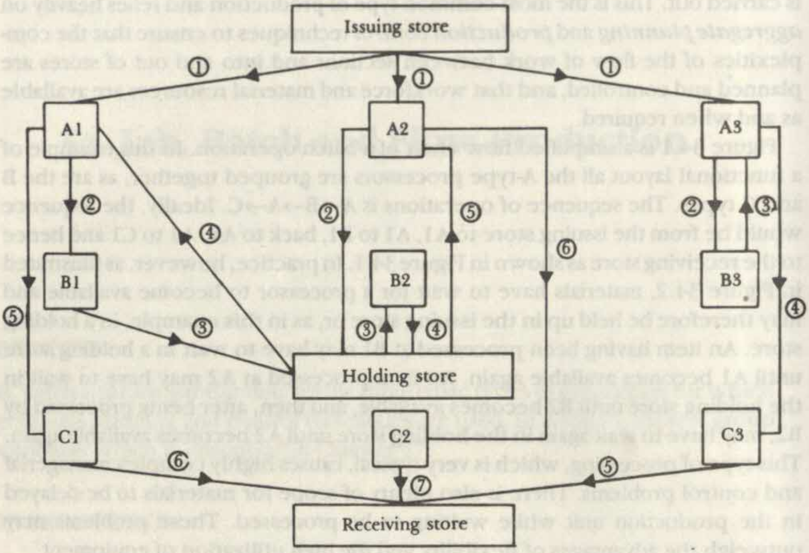


Figure 34.2. *Actual material flow in a functional layout*

FLOW PRODUCTION

Flow production takes place when the processing of material is continuous and progressive. As the work on one operation is completed, the unit is passed to the next work stage without waiting for the whole batch to be finished.

For flow production to work smoothly, the following requirements must be met:

1. The product must be standardized.
2. There must be substantial, constant demand.
3. Material must be to specification and delivered on time.
4. All stages must be balanced, ie, the time taken at each stage must be the same. This is known as line balancing.
5. There must be no movement off the production line.

FURTHER READING

Radford, J D, and Richardson, D B, *The Management of Production*, Macmillan, London 1972.

35. Numerically Controlled Machine Tools

NUMERICAL CONTROL

Numerically controlled (NC) machine tools are controlled by punched paper tape on which instructions are encoded in alphanumeric characters. The parameters to operate the machines are calculated by engineers and it may take several stages of preprocessing to produce these instructions from the design information.

The use of computers to prepare the operational instructions or to control the machine tool directly has led to the development of computer numerical control (CNC) and direct numerical control (DNC).

COMPUTER NUMERICAL CONTROL (CNC)

Definition

CNC machine tools are computer-controlled devices for cutting and shaping pieces of cast or rolled metal. The three most common types of CNC are:

- *turning lathes* - machines for producing circular components;
- *milling machines* - for removing material from flat surfaces; and
- *machining centres* - which are similar to, but far more complex than, milling machines.

CNC machines are controlled by punched paper tape in the same way as NC machines. The difference between NCs and CNCs is that the latter have computers built into them. The computer automatically performs many of the complex calculations that slow down the NC process. It also allows errors in the program to be amended on the machine, thus eliminating the need to take the tape back to the programmer to be altered. Some CNCs have a manual data input (MDI) facility which allows the component specifications to be keyed straight into the machine without having to encode the program on to a tape first. Methods for transmitting NC data via communication networks have been developed.

Uses of computer numerically controlled machine tools

CNCs can be used as independent, stand-alone machines. Increasingly, however, they are linked together by transfer devices and controlled by one central computer to form a flexible manufacturing system (FMS), as described in Chapter 36.

Operation of CNCs

On a CNC machine the cutting cycle is automatic – it is controlled by a computer from the beginning of the cutting process on each component to its completion. Human intervention takes place, however, at five points during the production process:

1. *Programming the machine*. Each batch of components has to have a separate program. Decisions have to be made on methods and tooling, speeds and feeds have to be selected, and the program has to be designed and written.
2. *Setting up the machine*. Positioning the tools and, if necessary, arranging jigs and fixtures.
3. *Proving the program*. Ensuring that it has been written correctly and produces the required results.
4. *Servicing the machine*. Loading new material and removing the finished component.
5. *Machine optimization*. Inspecting the finished components for accuracy and making adjustments during a production run to compensate for machine wear or material variability.

Work organization

As pointed out by *Wall et al.*,[1] there are at least five different models of work organization for CNC:

1. A programmer will prepare the tape, a setter will set up the machine and prove the tape, and an operator will run the machine, basically loading and unloading it.
2. A programmer prepares and proves the tape, leaving the operator a non-programming setting and operating role.
3. A setter prepares and proves the tape and sets up the machine, leaving the operator to load and unload.
4. A programmer prepares the tape and the operator proves it and sets up and operates the machine.
5. An operator prepares and proves the tape, sets up the machine and runs it.

Benefits of CNCs

CNCs are flexible, fast, consistent in quality, quicker to set up than automatic machines, capable of machining complex shapes and rarely need expensive jigs and fixtures. Depending on the way they are organized, they can deskill the work of operators but they do provide the basis for increasing the responsibility of workers and enlarging the range of skills they use (multiskilling).

DIRECT NUMERICAL CONTROL (DNC)

Definition

DNC is a centralized system which uses a single computer to download part programs to a variety of numerically controlled machine tools.

Operation

In their simplest form, DNC systems remove the tape readers from NC machine tools and connect the control units to a single minicomputer which, together with its associated storage devices, acts as the central control and memory for the whole installation. Programs may be loaded into the mini either by a tape reader or directly in software form.

Benefits

DNC systems, like CNC, have the advantage of inputting instructions directly into the controlling computer in order to modify, correct or improve a program that has already been loaded.

The additional advantage of DNC, however, is that it allows a range of programs to be stored so that the machine tools under the command of the computer can be switched from one program to another virtually on demand. DNC is therefore a necessary part of a flexible manufacturing system (FMS, see Chapter 36) where a number of tools are working together but will have to change rapidly from one sequence of operations to another.

REFERENCES

1. Wall, T, *et al.*, 'New technology, old jobs', *Work and People*, Vol. 10, no.2, pp. 15-21, 1984.
2. Barnes, B, *New Technology in Context*, Avebury, Aldershot 1989.

36. Flexible Manufacturing Systems

DEFINITION

A flexible manufacturing system (FMS) is an automated production system which can manufacture, with the minimum of manual intervention, any of a range or family of products. An FMS will consist of a collection of production equipment together with an automatic handling system which is logically organized under a host computer and physically connected by a central transport system.

Computer numerical control (CNC) or direct numerical control (DNC), as described in Chapter 35, are used to provide the individual machine tools with suitable repertories of programs which can be altered if the need arises. Robots can be used (see Chapter 39) for loading and unloading the machine tools. They are computer controlled and can readily be interfaced with the machine tools' control units in order to coordinate their movements.

An FMS is therefore a 'cell' made up of two or more machine tools, plus, perhaps, testing and calibration devices and, possibly, grouped round a robot which services the tools (cellular manufacturing is described in more detail in Chapter 38). The system can provide for the automatic transfer of work pieces from one work station to another, but is also flexible in the sense that it can be switched from one task to another. Human operators may, however, be involved in delivering work pieces in predetermined and consistent positions and orientations.

The main feature of a full FMS is that the machine tools, robots and other equipment used in the system are located in cells and retain a high degree of autonomy. Another characteristic is that the system is not dedicated to a particular mix of parts at any time but is random in nature.

OBJECTIVES OF FMS

The main object of FMS is to manufacture simultaneously a range of parts while being flexible enough to manufacture sequentially mixes of parts without costly and time-consuming changeover requirements between mixes.

FMS aims to achieve five kinds of flexibility:

1. *Instantaneous flexibility*. By means of alternative routings for parts, a high level of immediate flexibility can be achieved to avoid system disturbances such as queuing of parts on to machines and machine breakdowns.
2. *Operational flexibility*. Operators can use their FMS to plan their production and run it automatically or intervene and make immediate operational changes as necessary. During the planning stage, operators have the flexibility to make adjustments for production bottlenecks, modify the process route of a part or reduce the batch quantity size. Rush orders can be managed by switching machine capacity and modes (from direct numerical control to manual and back).
3. *Short-term production flexibility*. This can be achieved by changing production order mixes while ensuring that the number of different parts which can be manufactured simultaneously is maximized. A single batch of one part can be loaded into the FMS or several new batches of varying batch size. Machine utilization is therefore high because there is always work prepared for any of the machines to process.
4. *Long-term flexibility*. An FMS can be designed so that its database is readily modified and updated to cater for new product types, process routines and tool types.
5. *Implementation flexibility*. The CNCs (computer numerical controlled) machines installed in the FMS can be operated flexibly to obviate the need for major computer software changes when new configurations or layouts are required.

COMPONENTS OF AN FMS

A typical FMS will incorporate the following:

- *A host computer*, which uses FMS software for operations such as planning, preparation, direct numerical control (DNC – the control through a computer of the operations of a machine), machine control, material flow, transport and monitoring. There will be a database for the system which will interface direct with machines and, through peripheral equipment, with operators.
- *Work centres*, consisting of DNC or CNC machine tools, often arranged in groups or 'cells'. The centres can include universal machining centres, turning centres, grinding and milling machines, etc. Machine loading can be carried out by robots.
- *Process centres*, which can include robotic or manual work stations.
- *System flows* for materials, tools and data throughout the FMS.
- *Transport systems* for parts, materials, fixtures and tools.
- *Operator interfaces* – operators receive instructions from the host computer through screens or printers on what they must do to set machines and load

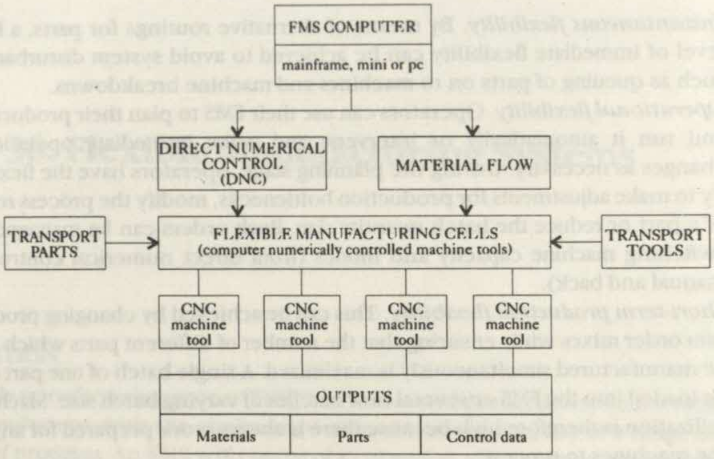


Figure 36.1. *A conceptual layout for an FMS*

machine magazines. Operators inform the computer through their terminal when they have completed their tasks.

A conceptual layout for an FMS is shown in Figure 36.1.

DESIGNING AN FMS

The design of an FMS is carried out in the following steps:

1. *Set targets* for range of parts to be processed, volume, lead times, changeover times, quality, reduction in overhead costs, maximum cost of FMS system.
2. *Analyse part range and mix* - families, shape and size, extent of changes during production of parts and mixes, likely future developments in parts and mixes.
3. *Analyse work-station requirements* - machines, work holding, controls, tooling, setting, loading, monitoring.
4. *Analyze material flow requirements* - material, parts, fixtures and tools.
5. *Plan communication systems* - methods of communicating information and data.
6. *Decide on hardware requirements* - computers, screens, terminals, machines, robots.
7. *Develop software programs* to operate the FMS - computer numerical control, material flow control and peripheral control and such areas as pallet changeover, measurements and wash machinery.

8. *Integrate system* - all aspects of handling, machinery control, loading, quality control and transport.
9. *Develop system manuals* in all aspects of operating the system.
10. *Train* operators, team leaders and systems controllers. It should be remembered that an FMS requires operators to know their machines very well and to be flexible enough to produce a variety of parts in batches of one or more.

Multiskilling may be required where a cellular system is used with a number of machines which each operator in the cell has to be capable of running.

BENEFITS

According to Luggen[1] a full FMS can:

- reduce inventory by as much as 60-80 per cent;
- reduce staffing levels by 30-50 per cent;
- increase asset utilization (continuous operation of machines) by 80-90 per cent;
- reduce floor space by 40-50 per cent.

FMS can shorten lead times and reduce uncertainties in deliveries. This provides potential for increasing sales because shorter delivery times can be quoted, deliveries will be more reliable and the company will be able to respond more quickly to changing market requirements.

REFERENCE

1. Luggen, W W, *Flexible Manufacturing Cells and Systems*, Prentice-Hall, Englewood Cliffs, NJ 1991.

FURTHER READING

Parrish, D, *Flexible Manufacturing*, Butterworth-Heinemann, London 1990.

37. Group Technology

DEFINITION

Group technology (GT) is the logical arrangement and sequence of all facets of company operation in order to bring the benefits of mass production to high-variety, mixed-quantity production. GT can be regarded as a philosophy holding that managers should exploit similarities and achieve efficiencies by grouping like problems.

DEVELOPMENT OF GROUP TECHNOLOGY

GT operates from a computerized database which uses a formal coding system to describe each part from both a design and a manufacturing point of view.

Once the coding has been carried out the parts are classified, ie, parts with similar characteristics are grouped together.

APPLICATION OF GROUP TECHNOLOGY

Process planning

GT can be linked to computer-aided process planning (CAPP) to standardize plans for determining how a part should be made, reduce the number of new plans, and store, exit, retrieve and print them efficiently.

Parts design

GT coding of parts is useful for the retrieval of previous designs as well as for design standardization. These features help speed up the design process and curb design proliferation.

Production planning and control

GT groups parts with similar manufacturing characteristics into families thus reducing the time spent on set-ups of parts and tools. GT can help in production planning and operations by means of the following:

- *Sequencing parts families*. Similar parts are sequenced onto machines or machines can be dedicated to the exclusive processing of families. The advantages of this approach are that (1) there are fewer interfering flows of material at each machine; (2) set-up time is reduced since common tooling and fixtures can be developed to handle all members of each family processed at the work station; and (3) the quality of parts can be improved, since the variety of parts flowing through the work station has been reduced.
- *Cellular production*. GT can help in the creation of manufacturing cells. A cell is a collection of machine tools and materials handling equipment grouped to process one or several part families. Preferably, parts are completed within one cell (see also Chapter 38).

Purchasing

GT can help when there is a proliferation of purchases of different kinds of parts by identifying components that serve the same function. It can also list identical parts for which designers have specified different brands.

IMPLEMENTING GROUP TECHNOLOGY

GT requires considerable effort in the shape of developing coding systems and the subsequent coding of the material and the definition of part families. The development of sequencing systems and manufacturing cells is also a demanding process which can be helped by computer-based modelling and simulations.

BENEFITS OF GROUP TECHNOLOGY

Group technology:

- facilitates the storage and retrieval of existing designs, minimizing duplication of effort;
- identifies and brings together related parts so that both design and manufacturing can take advantage of their similarities;
- provides standardization of design features leading to standardization of production tools and holding fixtures;
- provides for more efficient material handling through cell organization;
- enables work-in-progress and lead times to be decreased due to reduction in set-up and material handling; and
- reduces factory floor-space requirements.

It has been claimed by Arthur Andersen and Company that group technology can result in as much as a 90-per-cent reduction in inventory, 50 per cent more efficient use of factory space, a 25-per-cent reduction in direct and indirect labour, a 90-per-cent reduction in manufacturing lead time and an 80-per-cent improvement in quality.

FURTHER READING

Hyer, N L, (ed.), *Capabilities of Group Technology*, SME Publications, Dearborn, MI 1987.

38. Cellular Manufacturing

DEFINITION

A manufacturing cell consists of a small number of closely cooperating machines. Within a manufacturing system a cell can be regarded as the smallest autonomous unit capable of sustained production.

Cellular manufacturing involves the logical arrangement of numerically controlled equipment into groups or clusters of machines to process families of parts. By definition, processing parts in a manufacturing cell includes completing as much of the workplace processing as possible within the cell before moving it to the next sequential processing, assembly or stock-holding station.

CELLULAR MANUFACTURING AND GROUP TECHNOLOGY (GT)

The cellular concept is associated with the application of group technology (see Chapter 37) which groups different sorts of conventional machines together into 'GT cells'. Each of these cells is designed to produce a 'group' or parts family, a parts family being defined as a set of parts which require similar tooling, machine operations and jigs and fixtures. The parts themselves are handled between machines manually and the machines themselves are controlled by an operator.

Cellular manufacturing in the strictest sense of the word applies group technology to the operation of automated manufacturing cells. The activities carried out within the cell can include automated or programmable processes and automated handling to and from the processes. They can also include automated quality control or inspection of the processes together with rapid feedback of any necessary changes to each process and supervisory control and sensors to monitor and detect the cell condition and to decide the next activity.

An automated cell of this nature will incorporate a degree of autonomy which may be much greater than in a conventional non-automated GT cell. Autonomy means minimally manned manufacture for sustained periods. Cellular manufacturing, however, does not imply unmanned factories. Human operators will always be required for systems patrol and monitoring, maintenance and, where necessary, system recovery.

CELLULAR MANUFACTURING AND FLEXIBLE MANUFACTURING SYSTEMS (FMS)

FMS has been defined by Ranky[1] as:

> A reprogrammable manufacturing system in its broadest sense, dealing with high level distributed data processing and automated material flow, using highly flexible, computer controlled (and in some cases manually operated) material and information processors within an integrated, multi-layered feedback control architecture.

FMS usually involves the use of automated manufacturing cells, but a full FMS has central computer control, highly developed software, complete part, tooling and material handling flexibility and control, and randomness of production scheduling and machining.

The main differences between an automated manufacturing cell and a true flexible manufacturing system are that cells:

- are generally controlled by independent cell controllers – central computer control is not an essential feature. An FMS, however, will invariably be connected to a higher-level computer within the manufacturing operation;
- are typically constrained by the number of tools that can be installed within them. An FMS with automated tool delivery and management can automatically transfer and exchange tools through centralized computer control; and
- generally have less flexibility than an FMS and are restricted to a relatively tight family of parts.

Within a full FMS, as described in Chapter 36, there will be highly automated and programmable cells incorporating powerful controllers and self-diagnostic systems keeping in touch with a computer from where the production plan, the part programs and further necessary data arrive and are fed back. A cell in an FMS can be regarded as a building block within the system.

CELLULAR MANUFACTURE AND JUST-IN-TIME (JIT) SYSTEMS

The installation of a cellular manufacturing system contributes to the successful implementation of JIT by providing the manufacturer with the flexibility to produce parts in lot sizes as small as one. This will take place without the need to carry excessively large inventories or to issue high economic order quantities in an attempt to satisfy anticipated customer demands.

CHARACTERISTICS OF A MANUFACTURING CELL

Manufacturing cells can be divided into four general categories:

1. *Traditional stand-alone numerically controlled (NC) machine tool cells,*

which involve grouping stand-alone NC machine tools together into conventional part-family manufacturing-cell arrangements while still operating on a one-to-one machine-to-operator ratio.

2. *Single machine cells*, which are characterized by automatic work changes with permanently assigned work pallets or a conveyor-robot arm mounted to the front of the machine, plus the availability of bulk tool storage. Single MC machine cells or minicells can operate virtually unattended.
3. *Integrated multimachine cells*, which are made up of a multiplicity of metal-cutting machine tools which have a queue of parts, either at the entry to the cell or in front of each machine. Multimachine cells may be serviced by a material handling robot, or parts are palletized in an inline system which provides progressive movement from one machining station to another. A multimachine cell is typically used for the high-volume production of a small, well-defined, design-stable family of parts. Different machines can be used in a cell of this type and work pieces can be progressively moved, for example from a turning centre to a grinding centre for part completion. In such a cell, people will be deployed flexibly, moving on to different machines as required by the process. In an automated cell, however, their function will be to concentrate on monitoring or 'patrolling' the system rather than operating different machines.
4. *Flexible manufacturing systems (FMS)*, which (as described in Chapter 36) incorporate centralized computer control.

IMPLEMENTING CELLULAR MANUFACTURING SYSTEMS

There is no standard form of cellular manufacturing system, as was indicated by the description above of the different categories of manufacturing cells. The implementation of such a system must therefore depend on the total manufacturing system and its requirements. It is certain, however, that in a fully developed system, a multidisciplinary approach is required consisting of machine tool engineers, systems engineers, production engineers, computer specialists, and human resource specialists.

Human implications

Particular attention will need to be given to the human implications of cellular manufacturing systems. Their introduction, especially in a more advanced form, will reduce the number of operators, inspectors and support staff required. The key areas in which there are human resource implications are as follows:

- *Technical staff* will need training in the use of computing equipment and in how to establish and maintain a sound database of product and manufacturing operational information.
- *Production and stock-control staff* will find that their roles have changed.

Computers may have a much larger part to play, planning periods will be shorter and, because more flexibility is available, staff will have to be able to use the computing facilities to study options and reach optimized solutions. Again staff will need training in new production and stock-control methods.

- *Shopfloor operators* will find that their role is likely to change most. Skill requirements will change drastically. Individual machine operators may no longer be required, tool setting will be removed from machines and occur in tool rooms as presetting operations and maintenance requirements will become more onerous, with emphasis on higher standards. Shopfloor jobs will become more skilled and, more importantly, will require greater skill flexibility. Operators may spend their time supervising the operation of a number of different machines as parts are processed through the various stages contained within the cell. Teamworking will be more important within cells to ensure that work flows properly and that there is flexibility in the way in which operators are deployed on different tasks. The old-time foreman will be replaced by a team leader whose main purpose is to provide technical guidance and support and to coordinate teamwork. In fact in many applications, there may be no need for a supervisor within even a fairly large cell. Process coordinators or controllers can be used to monitor production.

These features yet again emphasize the importance of training to develop new and higher-level skills and to achieve multiskilling (the use of a range of skills within one cell concerned with manufacturing, quality control, preventive maintenance and problem-solving).

The introduction of cellular manufacturing whether or not it is part of a wider FMS may produce massive changes. Great care will have to be taken to manage that change effectively.

BENEFITS OF CELLULAR MANUFACTURING SYSTEMS

The benefits of cellular manufacturing systems are reductions in:

- system mechanical complexity;
- the necessary organizational control to bring materials to a cell;
- handling of parts;
- set-up-time;
- work-in-progress and inventory; and
- the need to expedite (progress chase) between machines.

REFERENCE

1. Ranky, P G, *Flexible Manufacturing Cells and Systems in CIM*, CIMware, Guildford 1990.

FURTHER READING

Luggen, W W, *Flexible Manufacturing Cells and Systems*, Prentice-Hall, Englewood Cliffs, NJ 1991.

Williams, D J, and Rogers, P, *Manufacturing Cells*, Butterworth-Heinemann, Oxford 1991.

39. Robotics

DEFINITION

Robotics are the technologies upon which industrial and other robots are based. A robot is an electromechanical machine that can be programmed to perform manual tasks by duplicating certain functions of the human anatomy.

TYPES OF ROBOTS

The main types of robots are as follows:

- *Nonservo* robots which are controlled by inflexible, mechanical means. They do not contain a servo mechanism, which is a device which can correct their performance. Thus a nonservo robot will use an open-loop technique to move from one location to another. It will proceed in a given direction until it meets a physical restraint. To change the operation of a nonservo robot the physical restraints are moved.
- *Servo* robots which incorporate a programmable servo mechanism. This may take the form of a playback control which involves either programming a series of points through which the robot moves or physically moving through the required trajectory later. Alternatively they may be programmed with a language specially developed for robots such as VAL as developed by Unimation or AML as developed by IBM.
- *Intelligent or sensor-controlled* robots which use artificial intelligence techniques to enable them to take appropriate actions in response to various external situations or stimuli. Intelligent robots plan and monitor their own operation on the basis of contact sensing (physically touching another object), non-contact sensing (using computer or robot vision to recognize items or aspects of the environment to which it is required to respond) or environmental sensing (which enable the robot to respond to external stimuli such as temperature).
- *Mobile* robots which roll on wheels, crawl by being pulled along by manipulation, 'hop' on one leg or even walk on four legs.

PARTS OF A ROBOT

The main parts of a robot are the following:

- *Manipulator*, which, in effect, is the arm of the robot and may be articulated with a sliding or rotating joint to simulate an elbow.
- *End effector*, which is the 'hand' attached to the manipulator, although it does not necessarily resemble a human hand. The design of the end effector depends on the application required. For example, it can be a gripper, a spot-welding gun, a gas-welding torch, a grinder or a tool changer.
- *Actuator*, which is the pneumatic, hydraulic or electric device used to provide the power for moving the robot.

USES OF ROBOTS

Robots can be used for the following:

- *Injection moulding* for producing plastic components.
- *Spot welding* – the most common application of service-controlled industrial robots.
- *Arc welding* – which uses an electric arc to melt the two components, create a welding pool of molten metal and, with the welding tool, follow the seam, moving the weld pod along with it and leaving a cooling solidified font behind.
- *Assembly* – joining components using techniques such as mechanical fastening, soldering and brazing, welding and adhesive bonding.
- *Machine-tool loading* in unmanned machining and flexible manufacturing systems (FMS).
- *Surface coating* – paint spraying.
- *Handling* – palletizing, stacking and loading.
- *Press work and forging* – press work involves using a robot as a press tool to produce components from cold rolled sheets or strips of metal; forging involves 'squeezing' metal into shape in a press by creating high pressures to deform it. Simple cylindrical coordinate robots are used for these purposes.
- *Fettling and deburring* – removing unwanted metal from components.
- *Adhesive application* – using robots as dispensers to deposit a bed of adhesive along a programmed path, or spray guns for coating larger areas. Adhesives are being increasingly used in the production of aircraft, ships, cars and domestic goods and robots can apply adhesives more effectively (at higher temperatures) and at a higher rate than humans.
- *Water-jet cutting* – using water-jet guns to direct a high-pressure jet of water at the material to be cut.

Robotics have been applied extensively in the mass-production motor car and electronics industries but are being used increasingly in all types of manufacturing.

APPLYING ROBOTS

The following are some of the more important situations as suggested by Mair[1] in which robots can be used:

1. Operations that are simple and repetitive.
2. Jobs where cycle times are not too short.
3. Tolerances on parts and tools are such that a robot of average precision will be able to carry out the required operation.
4. Jobs where part sizes and weights will not present particular problems.
5. The operation being considered does not have an integral inspection element needing human intervention.
6. In hazardous environments such as those where toxic or flammable atmospheres may exist.
7. An orderly environment either exists or can be made to exist around where the robot will be installed.
8. Product variety is not too great.
9. Situations where more than one shift can be worked thus making financial justification easier.
10. Areas with quality problems.

BENEFITS

The benefits of using robots are as follows:

- They are capable of producing work of consistent quality, at a steady rate, with a greatly reduced probability of incurring scrap or the need to rework.
- They can work continuously for 24 hours a day, seven days a week, stopping only for maintenance or repair.
- They can work in areas either unsafe or unpleasant for humans.
- Material utilization is improved.
- Better control of the manufacturing process can be achieved.
- Robot costs are increasing at a slower rate than labour costs.
- They are able to lift heavier weights and exert larger forces than humans.
- They can be very precise in their movements.

REFERENCE

1. Mair, G M, *Industrial Robotics*, Prentice-Hall, Hemel Hempstead 1988.

FURTHER READING

Gevarter, W R, *Intelligent Machines*, Prentice-Hall, Englewood Cliffs, NJ 1985.

40. Computer-Integrated Manufacturing

DEFINITION

Computer-integrated manufacturing (CIM), sometimes referred to as computer-integrated engineering (CIE), uses information technology to integrate the various processes which together comprise the total manufacturing process. These subprocesses can include design, production engineering, production planning and control, production scheduling, material requirement planning, manufacturing, material handling, inventory control, purchasing, cost accounting and distribution. CIM provides for the systems which manage and control these processes to exchange information with one another directly. A CIM system consists of a number of subsystems, each of which is used to distribute and share information for planning, operational and control purposes.

CIM is the ultimate development of CADCAM systems (see Chapters 25 and 26), linking them through to manufacturing with computerized production planning and control systems (PPCS - see Chapter 27) and computer-aided process planning (CAPP - see Chapter 23). An ideal CIM system involves the complete automation of the factory with all process planning and control functions under digital control and only digital information tying them together. This 'hard' automation approach is probably only feasible in large-scale and mass-production firms. Medium-sized firms involved in batch production may find it more appropriate to develop a flexible manufacturing system (FMS) as described in Chapter 36.

However, CIM is also about the integration of people and technology and linking manufacturing to other key business functions. It is therefore concerned with the organization of people within the total manufacturing process and the integration of that process with business planning, demand forecasting and total quality management as well as the use of information technology.

AIMS

The aims of CIM are to:

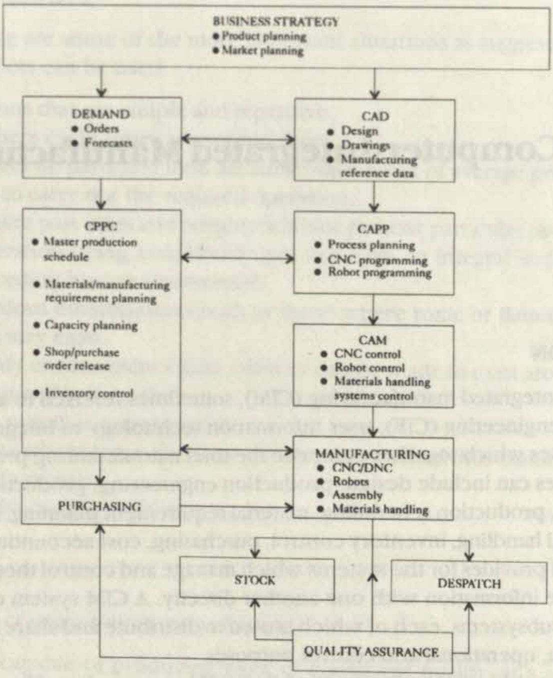


Figure 40.1. *A computer-integrated manufacturing system*

- bring people, technology, products and processes together into a single integrated system;
- ensure that the systems which control the various manufacturing processes will be able to exchange information with one another directly;
- streamline manufacturing processes;
- ensure that exactly the same product description data originally developed by the engineering function will be used by the manufacturing and marketing functions, thus ensuring that products are delivered according to the customer's expectations;
- match the systems to the requirements and abilities of their users;
- make the human and technological components of the organization complement each other as much as possible and make those components amenable to change;
- provide for the maximum amount of operational flexibility within an integrated system. This may involve the development of flexible manufacturing systems (FMS) as described in Chapter 36.

COMPONENTS OF A CIM SYSTEM

The components of a CIM system as illustrated in Figure 40.1 are as follows:

- *The business strategy*, which involves product and market planning and is the basis for demand forecasts and design programmes.
- *The demand forecast*, which is based on actual orders and market plans and governs the production planning and control (PPC) processes.
- *Computer-aided design (CAD)*, which uses computers to assist in the production of designs, drawings and data for use in manufacturing and the production of CNC (computer numerical control) tapes for fabricating parts.
- *Computer-aided process planning (CAPP)*, which uses the computer to produce process plans and prepares programs for CNC machines and robots.
- *Computer-aided manufacturing*, which uses computer systems to monitor, control and support manufacturing operations, involving computer process control, direct computer control and the provision of manufacturing support systems.
- *Computerized production planning and control systems*, which prepare the master production schedule, plan and schedule materials and manufacturing requirements using MRPI or MRPII techniques, plan and monitor capacity requirements and availability, prepare and issue shop and purchase order releases and, with the help of MRP systems, control inventory.
- *Manufacturing*, which is controlled and supported by the CAD, CPP, CAM and CPPS systems and involves the use of computer numerical control (CNC) or direct numerical control (DNC) operations (see Chapter 35), robotics (see Chapter 39), assembly, and materials handling. Manufacturing produces parts, components, assemblies and completed articles for stock or despatch.
- *Quality assurance*, which uses statistical quality control and total quality management processes to ensure that quality standards are achieved in manufacturing, and that completed products in stock or for despatch and purchased items meet quality specifications.
- *Purchasing*, which is governed by the CPCC system and supplies materials and components to manufacturing.

These components will operate within the CIM infrastructure which comprises the communication network, the data storage and retrieval system, the data-processing (hardware and software) system and the user's interface which represents the interaction between the person or machine using the CIM system.

The CIM database and the information flow it generates will provide a decision support system for all its users.

IMPLEMENTATION OF CIM

The implementation of CIM is carried out in three stages:

1. *Systems analysis*. This will establish data flow, the data structure (building blocks for each part of the system) and the needs of users. It will be particularly concerned with the relationships between the various systems and the interfaces with users. It will establish (a) the entities within the system, ie, the tangible objects such as machines, products and customers; (b) the abstract concepts such as product groups; and (c) the events such as purchase orders and despatch notes. Entity life histories may be prepared which identify the different states that an entity may go through during its life and the events and processing functions which cause these states to change.
2. *Systems design*. This is carried out on the basis of the systems analysis. The aim is to specify the CIM system in terms of its subsystems and infrastructures. The control structures of the system will then be designed – this specifies the sequence in which the instructions or statements of the program or programs included are executed. A stepwise refinement process may be used. This develops the programs in small steps which successively decompose the overall requirement or problem into subrequirements or subproblems. Each of these will form a separate block, ie, a function or procedure containing its own data. Computer-based languages will be used to describe and build the system. These include conventional programming languages such as COBOL and FORTRAN or database definition languages and specific languages such as APT for machine-tool programming. The system will be fully documented at this stage.
3. *Implementation*. This will be carried out by a multidisciplinary team which includes both analysts and users.

BENEFITS OF CIM

The benefits of CIM include:

- reducing the amount of redundant and incorrect data;
- obviating the need to reconcile data from different sources;
- responding quickly to engineering change;
- reducing lead times;
- reducing time taken in waiting for parts and information to arrive;
- increasing the manageability of the flow of parts, products and information;
- increasing flexibility in production and the use of labour, machines and materials;
- ensuring that the best use is made of information technology to support people in their daily work; and
- providing comprehensive decision support to managers and planners who are faced with the onerous tasks of responding quickly to customer needs and managing and controlling highly complex just-in-time systems.

Overall, CIM can make a significant impact on productivity by streamlining management processes and eliminating duplicated or unnecessary activities, but it can only be realized in full in fairly exceptional circumstances.

FURTHER READING

Gerelle, E, and Stark, J, *Integrated Manufacturing*, McGraw-Hill, New York 1983.
Ranley, P, *Flexible Manufacturing Cells and Systems in CIM*, CIMware Ltd, Guildford 1990.

41. Quality Systems and Processes

DEFINITION

Quality systems and processes help to create and maintain the high quality of goods and services expected by customers. Quality used to be defined simply as fitness for function. Two distinct but interrelated aspects to quality were often identified:

- *Quality of design*. The degree of achievement of purpose by the design itself.
- *Quality of conformance*. The faithfulness with which the product conforms with the design.

In achieving quality of conformance the aim was to ensure that the final product or service achieved defined standards in terms of meeting the design specification, and that over a period of time the product would function reliably – reliability being defined as the probability of a product performing without failure a specified function under given conditions for a specified period of time.

Nowadays, however, quality is perceived in terms of customer satisfaction. Quality systems and processes are designed to ensure that the business delivers value to the customer by satisfying their needs. Customer satisfaction is obtained by product designs which meet their needs, by achieving quality specifications which have been built into the design and by attaining high standards of reliability.

TYPES OF QUALITY SYSTEMS AND PROCESSES

Quality systems can be categorized under the following headings:

- quality control
- quality assurance
- total quality control.

In addition, there is the process of total quality management (TQM) which is the most significant of all approaches to managing quality.

QUALITY CONTROL

Definition

Quality control is concerned with defect detection. It uses inspection procedures and statistical quality control techniques to ensure that during design, manufacturing and servicing both work and materials are within limits that will produce the desired product performance and reliability.

Inspection

The traditional approach to quality control was inspection. This concentrated originally only on faulty work as an after-the-event process. Increasingly, however, inspection departments were expected to prevent rather than simply to identify rejects. They were concerned not only with finished products but also with raw materials, tools, piece parts and all manufacturing processes. Inspection is still used to a degree in one-off and jobbing factories but it has been largely replaced, especially in large batch production and in mass-production and process industries, by statistical methods or by a more comprehensive approach to quality management.

Statistical quality control

Statistical quality control uses sampling techniques and mathematical analysis to ensure that during design, manufacturing and servicing, work is carried out and material is used within the specified limits required to produce the desired standards of quality, performance and reliability.

The analytical techniques establish optimum levels of control. Optimizing quality control means striking a balance between the risk of losing sales because of poor quality and the expense of maintaining costly quality control procedures. The aim must be to minimize defects, not only for the practical reason that defects lose business but also because, ethically, no self-respecting company can survive on the sale of substandard products. But the approach to the reduction of the incidence of defective products must consider the cost of minimization, and statistical quality control techniques identify not only the scope for improvement but also the cost of achieving the desired result.

The technique of statistical quality control is based on the need to sample. A process under control is subject to chance or random sources of variations. In job or batch manufacture on a small scale it may be possible to submit all products and materials to 100-per-cent inspection. But in large batch, mass or flow production operations, the cost of such an approach would be prohibitive and, therefore, sampling techniques are used. A properly constructed sampling procedure can produce better quality control than an attempt to achieve a 100-per-cent level of inspection where human errors inevitably creep in.

The main techniques involved in statistical quality control are as follows:

- *Acceptance sampling*, which ensures that items do not pass to the next stage in the process if an unacceptably high proportion of the batch is outside the quality limit. Sampling consists of taking a representative number of examples from a population and drawing conclusions about the behaviour of the whole population from the behaviour of the sample. Sampling techniques are based on statistical theory, including probability theory.
- *Control charts*, on which the results of the inspection of samples are compared with the results expected from a stable situation. If they do not agree, then action may be necessary. These comparisons can be recorded graphically on control charts on which warning and action levels are marked. Control charts set out the control limits which either warn that a problem exists or indicate that action needs to be taken (warning and action limits).
- *Control by attributes* – attributes have only two states, ie, whether an article or service is acceptable or not. The information required for control purposes compares the number of defects and/or the number of defects per unit, which are compared with the desired level of quality – the acceptable quality level (AQL)
- *Control by variables* – variables can have any value on a continuous scale. Control by variables therefore takes place when there is a distribution of the features being measured rather than a go or no/go position as in attribute control. Variables are therefore measured, in contrast to attributes, which are counted.

QUALITY ASSURANCE

Definition

Quality assurance emphasizes defect prevention, unlike quality control, which focuses on defect detection through post-production inspection. Quality assurance uses production and operations management methods and other procedural approaches to ensure that quality is built into the system. Quality assurance makes use of statistical process control techniques where applicable but is increasingly based on adherence to the standards and procedures laid down by BS5750 or ISO9000.

Statistical process control

Statistical process control (SPC) techniques detect and help to eliminate non-random (sporadic) variations as the process is operating.

The process is said to be in control when all variations are random, and out of control when some variations are sporadic. The process is monitored periodically by examining sample units of output. If measurement data for the critical characteristics have shifted away from a purely random pattern, the process is stopped until the causes of non-conformance are corrected. Control charts are the primary tool of SPC and the selection of chart depends on the type of characteristics (variable or attribute) being measured.

The starting point of statistical process control is an analysis of what the process is capable of doing (process capability analysis) in order to establish the criteria by which it will be controlled.

Statistical process control addresses the causes of the problem by asking the question, 'What is going wrong with the process?' This is in contrast to statistical quality control, which concentrates on the finished product and asks the question, 'What is wrong with the part?' – rather than dealing with the causes of the problem.

BS5750

BS (British Standard) 5750 provides the national standards which tell suppliers and manufacturers what is required of a quality system. It sets out how an organization can establish, document and maintain an effective quality system which will demonstrate to customers that the organization is committed to quality and is able to meet their quality needs. It therefore provides for quality assurance standards, but these are not ends in themselves. They are only a basis for a total quality control or total quality management (TQM) approach (especially the latter) as described below.

The main provisions of BS5750 are summarized below:

- A senior manager must be accountable for the quality system – ensuring that the requirements of BS5750 are met.
- The organization and procedures for quality must be fully documented.
- The quality system should cover all functions.
- Quality planning must ensure that quality control techniques are up to date, that proper records should be kept and that capable people should be available to implement plans.
- Design and development planning should be fully documented and responsibility assigned to qualified staff with adequate resources.
- A system should exist for providing appropriate planning, design, packaging, manufacturing and inspection documents, and procedures should exist which describe how these functions will be controlled.
- Written control should be provided for purchased products and services and the quality system applied by suppliers.
- Procedures and work instructions, including all customer specifications, should be defined in a simple form which covers every phase of manufacture, assembly and installation.
- Procedures should be set up for inspecting and testing incoming goods.

- Control procedures should be defined to establish whether products have been inspected and approved or rejected.
- Clear statistical procedures for monitoring quality standards should exist.
- Systems for prompt and effective corrective action should be set up where non-conformance has been found.
- Detailed records should be kept showing that quality requirements are met.
- Effective quality audit systems should be set up.
- Comprehensive training in achieving high levels of quality should be carried out.

TOTAL QUALITY CONTROL

Definition

Total quality control or assurance systems aim to organize quality into the product by pursuing policies of assuring quality and through continuous improvements, ie, creating an environment in which all staff can contribute to improving quality as a normal part of their job. Total quality or assurance systems may use statistical and quality control techniques, but the emphasis will be on taking a comprehensive view of all aspects of quality, bearing in mind the principles contained in BS5750.

There are a number of approaches to total quality control, but some of the most typical are 'zero defects' programmes, Taguchi methodology and quality circles.

Zero defects programmes

Zero defects programmes aim to improve product quality beyond the level that might economically be achieved by statistical procedures, the ultimate objective being to eliminate defects as far as that is conceivably possible.

The principal features of such programmes are as follows:

- Reaching agreement with all concerned on the quality goals to be attained and the quality problems which prevent their achievement.
- Organizing the participation of all those involved in establishing and running the quality programme.
- Setting clear targets against which to measure improvements.
- Establishing procedures for providing prompt feedback to workers on their quality achievements.
- Developing and implementing a motivational package aimed at reducing individual operator-controlled defects.
- Creating prevention packages aimed at reducing management-controlled defects – these packages centre around 'error cause removal' suggestions made by employees for subsequent analysis and action by management.

Table 41.1 *Approaches to quality management*

	Quality control	Quality assurance	Total quality control	Total quality management
Philosophy	Inspecting quality in	Building quality in	Organizing quality in	Managing quality in
Goals	Defect detection	Production to design specification/defect prevention	Cost reduction and conformity to specification through continual improvement	Habitually and competitively meeting customer requirements
Starting point	Product 'specification'. Itemized costings	Adoption of procedure manual. Introduction of variance analysis	Calculate cost of quality. Blueprinting operations. Use of problem-solving techniques	Understanding customers. Establishing quality management structure. Culture change
Responsibility for quality	Quality control department through individual inspectors	Quality assurance department, ie, centralized staff function	Systems and operations, through design and installation of controls	Organization-wide responsibility through devoted strategic vision
Benefits	Few, causes more problems than it solves	Improved product quality. Evidence of procedures	Cost reduction (waste, inventory), production to customer specification, fewer suppliers	Guaranteed quality. The ability to manage change. Customer satisfaction. Habitual improvement. Those with 'market leaders' vision, competing on quality first, looking for sustained growth and increased market share
How long to 'install'?	Days (immediate)	Six months to one year	One to three years	Three to five years

- The organization of work and design of jobs to facilitate the above.

Taguchi methodology

This methodology was developed by the Japanese engineer, Taguchi. Its main features are to:

- push quality back to the design stage since quality control or statistical process control can never fully compensate for bad design;
- optimize routinely product and process design prior to manufacture;
- emphasize *design* rather than *inspection* for control of production (so it is an off-line method);
- produce robust products with intrinsic quality and reliability characteristics; this means stability in output characteristics no matter what transients occur in the manufacturing process;
- prototype product designs and production processes (primarily involving real physical prototypes);
- concentrate on the practical engineering, not the *statistical* niceties of theory.

Quality circles

Quality circles comprise groups of workers and supervisors within a single area or department in an organization which meet regularly to study ways of improving quality and monitor progress in achieving quality improvement goals.

TOTAL QUALITY MANAGEMENT (TQM)

Total quality management is a process with a strong philosophical base which incorporates many of the concepts upon which total quality control systems are based, but goes even further in emphasizing that quality should be managed into the system, and quality management should always be orientated towards the achievement of complete customer satisfaction. The TQM approach to quality is described more fully in Chapter 42.

COMPARISON OF APPROACHES AND BENEFITS

The systems and processes described above all aim to improve competitive advantage by delivering higher levels of quality and service to the customer. However, they approach the achievement of this aim in different ways and achieve different benefits. These are summarized in Table 41.1.

FURTHER READING

Chase, R, *Winning With Quality*, IFS Publications, Kempston 1989.

Wilson, G, and Millar, R, *Taguchi Methodology within Total Quality*, IFS Publications, Kempston 1990.

42. Total Quality Management

DEFINITION

Total quality management (TQM) is a systematic way of guaranteeing that all activities within an organization happen the way they have been planned in order to meet the defined needs of customers and clients. The emphasis is on involving everyone in the organization in activities which provide for continuous improvement and for achieving sustained high levels of quality performance.

THE TQM APPROACH

The TQM approach is about gaining commitment to quality. Everyone at every level in the organization has genuinely to believe in quality and to act on that belief. Total quality can be described as an attitude of mind which leads to appropriate behaviour and actions. It has to be, as at Nissan: 'the centrepiece of the company's philosophy, with commitment at *every level* to a zero-defect product.'[1] TQM has therefore to be distinguished from quality control, quality assurance and total quality control. The key differences between these approaches was set out in Table 41.1. (Chapter 41).

Total quality should also be distinguished from the quality assurance standard (BS5750 or ISO9000). As a quality assurance standard, BS5750 lays down the requirements for a quality management system and provides a structured approach upon which to base that system. It gives a framework for establishing quality standards and can operate as a kite mark to demonstrate that quality assurance is being tracked systematically by management. But it does not specify quality standards for products and in itself it does not guarantee the commitment of everybody in an organization to a quality programme.

BASIC CONCEPTS OF TQM

There are three basic concepts of TQM:

1. *Customer satisfaction*. The only real measure of the quality of a product or

service is the extent to which it delivers customer satisfaction. The word 'satisfaction' can be defined as when all customers' wants, needs and expectations are met, whether or not they have been expressed.

2. *The significance of internal customers*. Another key concept in total quality is the significance of the internal customer. This refers to the fact that everyone who receives goods or services from a colleague within an organization is a customer of that colleague. The goods or services can include materials, tools, parts, sub-assemblies, completed goods for despatch, designs, drawings, information, advice, help, guidance, administrative assistance, etc. Suppliers of these goods and services have to be just as aware of the need to achieve high levels of quality for their colleagues as for their ultimate customers. In the last analysis, of course, the quality of the services provided to internal customers will affect the quality delivered to the external customer. But the final result can only be guaranteed if attention is paid to quality in all aspects of the transactions and processes which take place within the organization.
3. *Total quality*. The concept of total quality indicates the requirement for *all* employees in the organization to be involved *all* the time in meeting *all* customer requirements.

THE EVOLUTION OF TQM

The concept of TQM was evolved primarily by a group of American quality experts including W E Deming, Joseph Juran and Philip Crosby. The influence of the Japanese approach to quality is also significant. It is interesting to note that there is no Japanese word for quality. Instead, the word *kaizen* is used, meaning continuous improvement by all the staff at all times.

INTRODUCING TQM

TQM must by definition extend to all aspects of a company's operation and its relationships with internal and external customers. It is essentially a *process*, a way of doing things, which makes use of a number of techniques but ultimately depends on the attitudes and behaviour of all those involved; and that means everyone in the organization and its suppliers.

The steps required to develop TQM are described below:

1. Formulate a TQM policy

A TQM policy might cover the following points:

- The goal of the organization is to achieve customer satisfaction by meeting the requirements of both external and internal customers.
- The need is to establish customer requirements and respond quickly and effectively to them.

- It is essential to concentrate on prevention rather than cure.
- Everyone is involved – all work done by company employees, suppliers and product outlets is part of a process which creates a product or service for a customer.
- Each employee is a customer for work done by other employees and has the right to expect good work from them and the obligation to contribute work of high calibre to them.
- The standard of quality is 'zero defects' or 'no failures' - everyone has to understand the standards required and the need to do it right first time.
- Sustained quality excellence requires continuous improvement.
- Quality performance and costs should be measured systematically.
- Continuous attention must be paid to satisfying educational and training needs.
- High-quality performance will be recognized and rewarded.
- Quality improvement is best achieved by the joint efforts of management and employees.

2. Determine quality standards

Quality standards may simply be expressed as a zero-defect policy but it is still necessary to define what a zero-defect situation is for each key operation and service. This means the clarification of what constitutes a defect or failure to achieve a standard, how that will be measured or recognized and what steps may be required to prevent the occurrence of the defect.

3. Measure quality

The measurement of quality may involve process control (see Chapter 32) or similar techniques which include the analysis of the system, the collection of information on variations from the norm or attributes (data on whether a process is meeting or not meeting specification) and the use of techniques for establishing process capability and performance.

4. Determine the cost of quality

The process of identifying the cost of total quality is a key element in understanding where existing processes are failing so that the attention of management can be focused on the achievement of noticeable improvements. The costs of quality were identified by Collard[2] under five headings:

- *Cost of prevention*. The cost of an action to prevent or reduce defects and failures.
- *Cost of appraisal*. The cost of assessing the quality achieved.
- *Cost of internal failure*. The costs arising within the organization due to failure to achieve the quality specified before the transfer of ownership to the customer.

- *Cost of external failure*. The costs arising outside the organization due to failure to achieve the quality specified after the transfer of ownership to the customer.
- *Cost of lost opportunity*. The cost of losing the opportunity to sell to customers in the future if customers have been lost through poor-quality products or services.

5. Plan for quality

Planning for quality involves the following:

- Recording the series of events and activities constituting the total process by the use of flow charting and other means of activity analysis.
- Analysing the existing processes and system flows to establish inconsistencies and potential sources of variations and defects.
- Specifying for each activity the necessary quality-related activities, including material and packaging specifications, quality control procedures, process control systems, and sampling and inspection procedures.
- Developing, as appropriate, just-in-time (JIT) systems (see Chapter 31), which provide for the right quantities to be produced or delivered at the right time and ensure that there is no waste.
- Determining how to achieve quality in the purchasing system, with particular reference to the development of long-term relationships with suppliers so that dependable product quality and delivery standards can be defined and maintained.
- Conducting failure mode, effect and criticality studies (FMECA) to determine possible modes of failure and their effects on the performance of the product or service, and to establish which features of product design, production or operation are critical to the various modes of failure.
- Developing planned maintenance systems (see Chapter 43) to reduce the incidence of emergency maintenance.
- Designing quality into the product, making sure that the standards and specifications meet customer needs and can be achieved by existing processes (or, if not, by improving these processes in particular ways).
- Conducting process capability studies to ensure that it will be possible to achieve quality standards through existing processes or, if not, what changes are required.
- Examining quality requirements in manufacturing to ensure that answers can be made to the following questions: Can we make it? Are we making it? Have we made it? Could we make it better?
- Studying storage, distribution and delivery arrangements to ensure that they are capable of meeting customer demands.
- Examining after-sales service procedures and achievements to identify areas for improvement.

Organize for quality

Organizing for quality means looking at the accountabilities of each member of the organization and ensuring that the responsibility for quality performance is clearly specified. The organization for quality should aim to take account of the development of joint responsibility for quality in production or distribution teams. The focus should be on teamwork for quality. Finally, consideration should be given to giving responsibility to individuals and/or taskforces to oversee the development and implementation of total quality management.

Train for quality

The achievement of improved standards of quality will require additional and higher levels of skills and knowledge. Training needs therefore have to be identified and continuous training programmes developed – quality training is not a one-off process. The employee development system has to operate within a learning, self-development, continuous improvement culture.

Gain commitment to quality

Procedures and systems for laying down standards and measuring quality performance are all very well, but significant results from TQM will not be obtained unless total commitment to quality is achieved at all levels of the organization. The emphasis should be on self-responsibility for quality. This can be a long-term process – it will not be achieved by running a few short courses. Commitment is achieved by example from the top and, more importantly, by getting people involved in quality improvement programmes. Quality circles or improvement groups are one approach to achieving commitment. But they will not succeed by themselves. Total quality has to be seen as a permanent and fundamental part of everyday working. The Japanese approach, as translated to Nissan Motor (UK), involves seeing quality as a team affair to be discussed by all members at five-minute meetings at the start of every day.

Motivate for quality

Motivating for quality means reviewing the reward system so that it supports the strategic objectives of the total quality programme. If the system is essentially production driven and based on individual rewards, it is likely to conflict with a quality-driven teamwork approach. The reward system should not just include financial rewards. There are other means of rewarding people by nonfinancial means such as recognizing achievements and providing additional learning and promotion opportunities.

BENEFITS OF TQM

The benefits of TQM include:

- increased customer satisfaction and therefore additional sales;
- the achievement of competitive advantage – companies are increasingly competing on the basis of quality products and services;
- the minimization of waste;
- the ability to redeploy resources to add real value; and
- focusing attention on continuous improvement.

Overall, the process of developing a TQM culture can increase involvement, identification and commitment.

REFERENCES

1. Wickens, P, *The Road to Nissan*, Macmillan, London 1987.
2. Collard, R, 'Total quality: the role of human resources', Armstrong, M, (ed.), *Strategies for Human Resource Management*, Kogan Page, London 1992.

FURTHER READING

Crosby, P B, *Quality is Free*, McGraw-Hill, New York 1979.
Deming, W E, *Quality, Productivity and Competitive Position*, MIT Center for Advanced Engineering Study, Cambridge, MA 1982.
Juran, J M, *Quality Control Handbook*, McGraw-Hill, New York 1979.
Price, F, *Right First Time*, Gower, London 1985.

43. Planned Maintenance

DEFINITION

Planned maintenance draws up in advance plant, equipment or building maintenance programmes to ensure that they operate or remain trouble-free for a predetermined period.

Planned maintenance includes programmes for preventive maintenance, which is carried out at predetermined intervals to reduce the likelihood of an item not meeting an acceptable condition. But it may additionally include programmes for the routine servicing and overhaul of plant which is not strictly preventive maintenance.

RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN DIFFERENT TYPES OF MAINTENANCE

The relationship between planned maintenance and other types of maintenance is shown in Figure 43.1.

METHOD

The steps required to introduce and operate a planned maintenance programme are as follows:

1. *Complete plant register*. This provides details of all the plant, equipment and vehicles to be maintained. The information for each item covers:
    - a reference number for identification;
    - a description of the make, model, age and any modifications;
    - location; and
    - details of major components or parts, to include any items common to other equipment.
2. *Complete building register*. This provides details of each building or structure to be maintained – size, location, equipment contained.
3. *Investigate operating life characteristics*. The design of maintenance programmes depends on the operating life characteristics of the equipment.

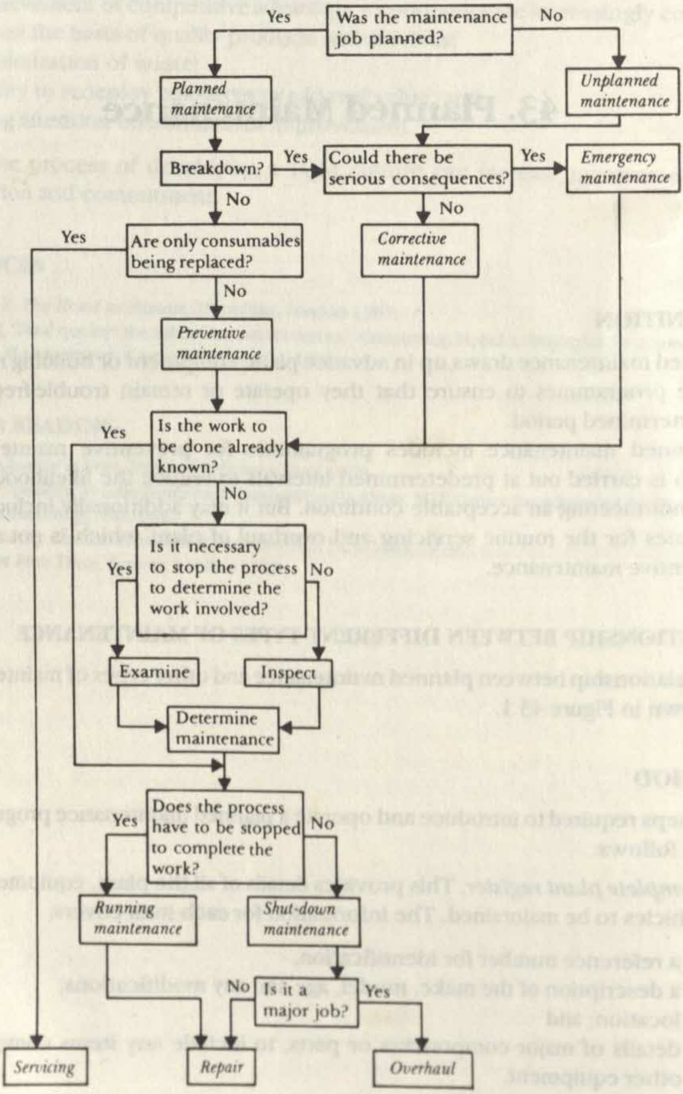


Figure 43.1. *Relationship between the different types of maintenance*. From *Maintenance Aspects of Terotechnology 1*, HMSO with permission

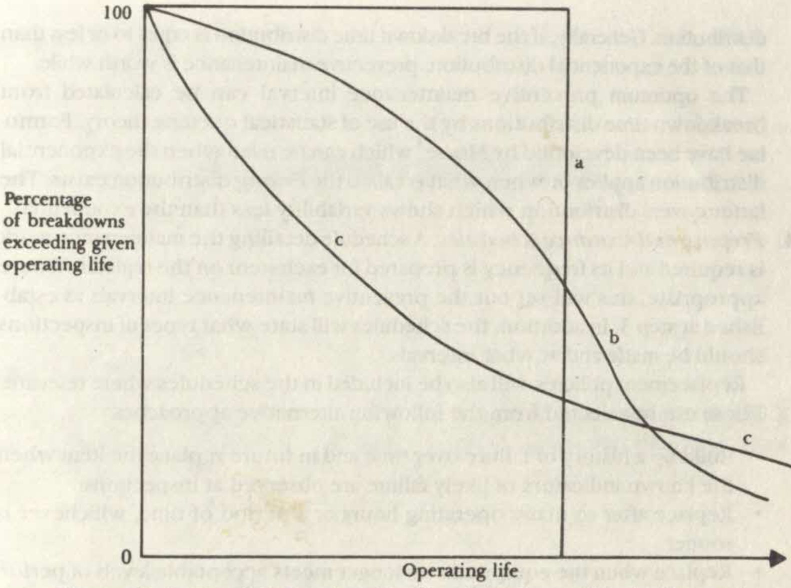


Figure 43.2. ***Breakdown time distributions.*** From *Production and Operations Management*, Ray Wild, Holt, Rinehart & Winston, 1983[1]

Breakdown time distributions can be prepared from data obtained from records, other users, manufacturers and trade associations. Examples of breakdown time distribution curves are shown in Figure 43.2.

Curve *a* is the ideal but unlikely situation when the operating life between breakdowns is constant. There is no variability, and the closer the breakdown pattern corresponds to this ideal pattern the more effective and appropriate preventive maintenance will be. This is because of the relative ease with which the best time for maintenance can be predicted and the limited time that will be spent on such maintenance.

Curve *b* represents the typical case of a variable operating life. The more variable this life is, the more time will be spent on breakdowns and the less predictable those breakdowns will become. In these circumstances it may be necessary to consider the comparative costs of preventive and breakdown maintenance. The former could be more expensive if a highly variable operating life leads to more time spent on maintaining plant rather than operating it.

The planned maintenance programme may therefore allow for breakdown maintenance to plant where it would be less costly than preventive maintenance, reserving the latter for plant with a less variable operating life.

In curve *c* the pattern of variability corresponds to the exponential distribution. Generally, if the breakdown time distribution is equal to or less than that of the exponential distribution, preventive maintenance is worth while.

The optimum preventive maintenance interval can be calculated from breakdown time distributions by the use of statistical queuing theory. Formulae have been developed by Morse[2] which can be used when the exponential distribution applies or when what is called the *Erlang* distribution exists. The latter covers distribution which shows variability less than the exponential.

4. *Prepare maintenance schedules*. A schedule detailing the maintenance work is required and its frequency is prepared for each item on the register. Where appropriate, this will set out the preventive maintenance intervals as established at step 3. In addition, the schedules will state what types of inspections should be made and at what intervals.

   Replacement policies will also be included in the schedules where relevant. These can be selected from the following alternative approaches:

   - Build up a history of failure over time and in future replace the item when the known indicators of likely failure are observed at inspections.
   - Replace after so many operating hours or a period of time, whichever is sooner.
   - Replace when the equipment no longer meets acceptable levels of performance.
   - Replace the item only when it has failed.

5. *Draw up programme*. A programme of planned maintenance is established from the schedules with each task being allocated to a particular period of time. In preparing the programme, the aim will be to achieve a balanced workload for maintenance staff as well as minimizing maintenance costs and interruptions to production.

BENEFITS

The benefits of planned maintenance are:

1. minimized maintenance costs – plans can be made and material and spare parts ordered in line with the plan;
2. maintenance can be carried out without inconveniencing operations; and
3. the reduction if not elimination of machine downtime.

REFERENCES

1. Wild, R, *Production and Operations Management*, Holt, Rinehart & Winston, London 1983.
2. Morse, P M, *Queues, Inventories and Maintenance*, Wiley, London 1958.

FURTHER READING

Corder, A, *Maintenance Management Techniques*, McGraw-Hill, New York 1976.

44. Inventory Control

DEFINITION

Inventory control ensures that the optimum amount of inventory (or stock) is held by a company so that its internal and external demand requirements are met economically.

AIMS

Inventory control has three aims:

1. To minimize the costs of ordering and holding inventory, which is often the largest single investment a company makes. Typically, inventory can be 50-60 per cent of current assets, 30-35 per cent of total assets, and exist at a ratio to plant of between two and five.
2. To maintain acceptable levels of customer service by minimizing stockouts (ie, goods not being available from stock when required).
3. To reconcile the potential conflict between these objectives. Clearly, a policy of minimizing stock can produce an unacceptable level of customer service. Inventory control policies and techniques therefore aim to optimize stock levels *vis-à-vis* customer service requirements.

TYPES OF INVENTORY

The different types of inventory are:

1. raw materials, bought-out parts and components to be used in making the products;
2. work-in-progress items which are partly manufactured and await the next stage in the process;
3. finished goods consisting of products ready for sale; and
4. spare parts, tools, jigs, fixtures and consumable items used in the process itself or to keep the plant going.

A distinction is made between:

- independent items such as finished goods, which do not relate to the use of another item; and
- dependent items, the demand for which is linked to the use of other items, such as sub-assemblies which go into a higher-level component or finished item, standardized parts for several sub-assemblies or assemblies, and the ingredients required in the manufacture of a product.

INVENTORY POLICIES

Cost control

The cost control policies are concerned with minimizing the following costs:

- ordering costs
- holding or storage costs
- the cost of stockouts (loss of customer goodwill).

To achieve the objective of optimization referred to earlier, any policies directed at reducing ordering or holding costs must not conflict unduly with policies on minimizing the cost of stockouts, ie, customer service policies.

Service levels

Service levels to customers are the extent to which either finished stock can be supplied to them 'off the shelf' or the company is able to accept a certain level of stockouts for defined periods of time. The two criteria used to assess service levels are:

1. the probability of not running out of stock. This may be expressed as, say, 95 per cent, which means that on five occasions out of 100 there will be a stockout, ie, demand will not be met ex-stock. This is called the protection or vendor service level and is set at the percentage which is deemed acceptable; and
2. the proportion of demand met ex-stock per annum. This is the customer service level and is the criterion which is being increasingly used. Again, the policy is set in percentage terms.

When considering service levels, it is necessary to establish policies for:

- how much buffer or safety stock should be carried – this constitutes the excess of the reorder level over the expected demand during the lead time; and
- the extent to which back-ordering is permitted, ie, accepting orders even when no actual stock remains, thus in effect allowing negative stock (or dues) to build up.

Techniques

The main inventory control techniques used to implement these policies are:

1. demand forecasting;
2. the categorization of inventory items;
3. reorder level; and
4. materials requirement planning.

Computers are used extensively in all these areas, particularly materials requirement planning (see Chapter 28).

In addition, just-in-time methods (see Chapter 31) are, in effect, inventory control systems.

DEMAND FORECASTING

Demand forecasts are based on analysis of past demands and sales forecasts. If the demand for the finished product is forecast this can be used to establish demands at material and component level by exploding the total product into its constituent parts.

CATEGORIZATION OF INVENTORY ITEMS

The categorization of inventory is based on the Pareto principle that where a large number of items are contributing to a result, only a small proportion of those items will make a very considerable impact on the outcome. This rule is also known as the 80/20 rule because, frequently, 20 per cent of items account for about 80 per cent of the total result.

Categorization starts with the analysis of inventory under the headings of unit value and annual usage which, multiplied together, produce what is termed the annual requirements value. Inventory items are then listed in order of decreasing value and split into:

A-items: the key items, which account for about 80 per cent of the value but only 5 per cent of volume. A high degree of control is necessary over stock of these items, usually of the periodic review type (see below), ie, at fixed intervals, when the appropriately sized replenishment order is placed.

B-items: the next most important of the items, accounting for 20 per cent of volume and 15 per cent of turnover. A reorder level system as described later is generally used for these items, ie, stock is replenished whenever it falls below a fixed value.

C-items: the majority of items which account for only about 5 per cent of value but amount to 80 per cent of volume. A routine reorder system such as the two-bin method (see below) is suitable.

REORDERING SYSTEMS

Reordering systems ensure that replenishment is achieved at minimum cost while meeting customer service requirements. The factors to be taken into account are:

- basic reorder level requirement;
- need for buffer stock (also known as safety stock); and
- economic order quantity and lot size.

These will determine how the reorder level is calculated and the reorder systems required.

The basic reorder level requirement

The level at which an item needs to be replenished is calculated by multiplying the time it takes to get an order into the company from an outside supplier (the lead time) by the number of units used of that item over the same period. This basic calculation, however, does not allow for the amount of buffer stock needed to deal with the occasions when demand exceeds the average level.

Buffer stock

The amount of buffer stock held is influenced by the policy on service levels – the ratio of customers serviced without delay to the total demand. The company can then determine what risk of a stockout it is prepared to accept. This can be expressed as a percentage of orders, and is called the protection level.

To find the amount of buffer stock required to achieve this protection level, the first step is to establish the average usage and the standard deviation of usage around that average. The application of normal curve theory by means of standard normal distribution tables will show that 95 per cent of the usage will fall

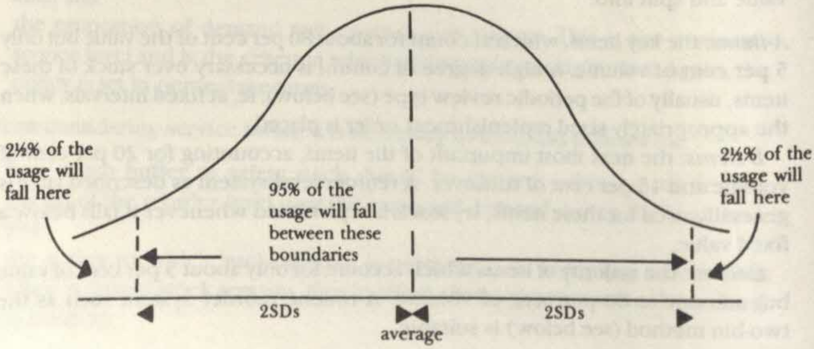

2½% of the usage will fall here
95% of the usage will fall between these boundaries
2½% of the usage will fall here
2SDs
2SDs
average

Figure 44.1. *Buffer stock – normal distribution*

within two standard deviations on either side of average. This is illustrated in the normal curve in Figure 44.1. For example, an item has an average usage in a lead time of 30. It is normally distributed and the standard deviation is four units. If, then, a buffer stock of two standard deviations (eight units) were added to the average usage of 38 to produce a total reorder level of 38, then a stockout would not be expected on more than one occasion in 40 (2.5 per cent). Using this calculation as a basis, the protection level can be increased or decreased by varying the size of the buffer stock.

Economic order quantity and lot size

The replenishment quantity is determined so as to minimize inventory operating costs, which consist of storage plus ordering costs. For this purpose, the *economic order quantity* is used. It is calculated by the following formula:

$$EOQ = \sqrt{\frac{2\ z\ Cs}{cC}}$$

where z = total annual usage, Cs = cost of placing an order, C = carrying cost per year, c = unit cost per item.

The economic order quantity formula is used for instantaneous replenishment. For replenishment at a particular rate, the *economic lot size* formula is used as follows:

$$ELS = \sqrt{\frac{2\ z\ Cs}{cC} \times \frac{P}{P-d}}$$

where p = production rate per day and d = demand rate per day.

Reorder level calculation

Allowing for buffer stock, the full reorder level calculation formula is:

Reorder level = average usage in a lead time plus buffer inventory

Reorder levels can be set in weeks or months of supply rather than in units of stock. Thus a reorder level of 400 units, with a weekly rate of demand or usage of 100 units, can be expressed as 'four weeks' supply'.

Reorder system – independent items

The reorder systems used for independent items (ie, those which do not relate to another item such as finished goods) are as follows:

1. *Fixed reorder quantity system*. This is a continuous review system in which, when inventory falls to a predetermined level, an order of a specified size is issued (taking into account economic order quantity and lot size considerations). This is often applied to items categorized as B or C in the system

described earlier, and in its simplest form for C category stock, a *two-bin* system is used. In this system two bins of inventory are kept and when one is used, an order is placed.

2. *Fixed reorder cycle system*. This provides for stock to be checked at fixed intervals. If there has been usage at the time of checking, then an order is issued for the quantity that has been used. This system is particularly appropriate for A category stock (ie, the most important 20 per cent). The stock levels are reviewed regularly, irrespective of demand.
3. *Optional replenishment system*. Inventory is checked both on a quantity and time basis. Either of these will highlight the inventory item for review, but an order is only placed if the fixed reorder quantity has been used.

Reorder systems – dependent items

Materials requirement planning is used for dependent items. The system starts with a forecast of demand for higher-level assemblies (ie, finished goods) and from this the demand for dependent items (components, sub-assemblies, parts and raw materials) is calculated by means of a parts explosion. The result of this calculation appears as a master schedule. Materials requirement planning is dealt with in more detail in Chapter 28.

USE OF COMPUTERS

Computers, which can be associated with MRPII systems, can be used effectively with fairly modest software to generate detailed material requirement profiles covering each component's anticipated usage, stock and stockout date.

BENEFITS

Inventory costs can be prohibitive. They must be minimized. But it is equally necessary to preserve an acceptable level of customer service and to avoid production delays because of shortages. Inventory control systems and techniques can optimize these often-conflicting objectives by means of statistical analysis and systematic control.

FURTHER READING

Van Hees, R N, and Monhemius, W, ***Production and Inventory Control***, Macmillan, London 1972.

45. Make or Buy Decisions

DEFINITION

A make or buy decision is simply the choice between making a part or article within the company or purchasing it from outside.

CONSIDERATIONS

The following considerations apply when taking a make or buy decision:

1. The capability of the company to make the item in terms of the capacity (people, plant and space) available and the ability to achieve required quality standards.
2. The availability of outside suppliers who can deliver the item in the quantities, quality and time required.
3. The differential cost of making or buying the item. This means that consideration has to be given to these conditions:
    - If items which are currently purchased are manufactured, what additional or incremental costs will be incurred and how do these compare with the costs being saved?
    - If items are purchased which could be manufactured, what costs will be avoided and how do these compare with the costs which will be incurred?
4. The opportunity cost of using existing capacity to manufacture alternative items which would make a greater contribution to profit and fixed costs than the item under consideration. A make or buy decision is often essentially about how best to utilize existing facilities.
5. The impact of a decision to make the item on aggregate volumes, an increase in which should contribute to overhead recovery and facilitate the balancing of demand and operations capacity over time.
6. The level of variable overheads which are charged is the part or article.

METHOD

The procedure for taking a make or buy decision is as follows:

1. Produce a precise specification of the item and define the quantities required, the timing of deliveries and the maximum acceptable unit cost.
2. Analyse existing capacity to find out if the item can be made in accordance with specifications for quality, quantity, and delivery dates.
3. Analyse tenders made by outside suppliers to find out which, if any, can best satisfy requirements for quality, quantity, cost limits and delivery.
4. Calculate the incremental cost of making the item – that is, the full accounting cost of the labour and direct materials used to make it. The incremental cost will equal the marginal cost if, and only if, factory capacity is sufficiently under-utilized before the make or buy decision is taken to render all fixed costs irrelevant to the decision.
5. Calculate the cost to buy, which is the purchase cost invoiced by the supplier (total cost less any trade discount), plus any delivery and inspection costs and costs of buying office-staff time.
6. Assess the opportunity cost of making the component as measured by the total contribution that would have been earned by using the resources required to make the item to manufacture instead of an alternative more profitable product.
7. Weigh the results of the various assessments listed below and decide. Clearly, the key points affecting the decision will be:
   - the capacity of the company or the supplier to make what is required and deliver it when required; and
   - the differential costs of making or buying, taking into account opportunity costs. Thus, even if the cost of manufacturing is less than buying, it may still be better to buy the item if the contribution from using spare capacity to make a more profitable item is greater than the extra cost of buying rather than making.

BENEFITS

A thorough make or buy analysis, as outlined above, will ensure that all the capacity, capability, differential cost and opportunity cost factors will have been taken fully into consideration before the choice is made.

46. Physical Distribution Management

DEFINITION

Physical distribution management (PDM) uses quantitative techniques to achieve the best balance between inventory investment, expediting action and shipping frequency, having taken into account the likely incidence of stockouts and their impact on customers and, therefore, sales.

AIM

The aim of PDM is to determine the speed and accuracy of response to customer demand and to develop cost-effective systems to meet agreed levels of service. The importance of improving efficiency and cutting costs is highlighted by the fact that distribution costs in manufacturing industry average about 14 per cent of sales, while in merchandising companies they average as much as 25 per cent of sales.

CRITERIA

There are two criteria for measuring distribution effectiveness:

1. The level of service provided to customers with respect to average response time and reliability of response time. Frequent stockouts may result in substantial lost sales.
2. The ratio of distribution costs to sales.

These criteria have to be balanced, and this is what PDM sets out to do.

TECHNIQUES

Tactical

At the tactical level, PDM techniques are concerned with:

- the customer supply profile
- expediting
- shipping frequency.

Tactical decisions in each of these areas are made within the context of the existing supply pattern. The techniques used to assist in making these decisions are described later in this chapter.

Strategic

In the longer term, the strategic aspects of PDM will aim to optimize the number and location of supply points and distribution channels for each product, so that the most profitable average response time and variability of response time are achieved. These strategic aspects are considered in Chapter 47.

CUSTOMER SUPPLY PROFILE

The basic PDM technique is the construction of a customer supply profile from an analysis of the probabilities of an order reaching a customer within a period of time from the order being placed.

Typically, the customer supply profile has two peaks. The higher peak corresponds to the normal time required for the customer order cycle. The length of this cycle depends on the location of the supply point with respect to the customer, the method of transport used, and the time taken on the various aspects of order processing, such as handling the paperwork, order picking and assembly, despatch and the inspection and storing of incoming goods.

The second lower peak is the response time if a stockout occurs. The magnitude of this peak depends on how much inventory the supply point carries, how frequently it uses expediting to avoid the delay in response time caused by stockouts, and whether or not the company can predict customer demand well enough to manage its own replenishment cycle effectively. Supply location, transport time and the order processing time will also affect stockout response time.

The analysis of the customer supply profile provides the basis for deciding, in the light of the expected incidence of stockouts, what are the most profitable trade-offs between one or other of inventory investment, expediting and shipping frequencies.

EXPEDITING

Expediting avoids or minimizes the occurrence or impact of stockouts by such means as additional production shifts, extra overtime, special-line priorities, product substitutions, pressure on other suppliers and higher-speed transportation.

The policy on expediting is derived from balancing the costs of increasing the amount of expediting by any of the means mentioned above, or the costs of increasing the investment in inventory against the losses that may result from stockouts. If the profit penalty from a stockout is greater than the cost of expediting to prevent a stockout, then expediting should be used and vice versa.

To decide whether or not to expedite and, if so, at what level, the following steps are taken:

1. Analyse the relative costs of expediting or not expediting.
2. Select in-stock availability target levels - often called service levels or fill rates.
3. Decide on the best balance between inventory investment and the expected frequency of expediting.

Fill rates

Fill rates or service levels for the availability of stock are expressed as a percentage of demand satisfied in a given period. A typical rule-of-thumb figure is 95 per cent. But more analysis can result in a flexible approach to fixing fill rates which can save inventory costs.

The factors to be considered are as follows:

1. *The stockout penalty*. The higher the penalty, the higher the fill rate.
2. *Predictability of demand*. The higher the predictability of demand, other things being equal, the higher the fill rate. This is because the item with relatively unpredictable demand requires more inventory to achieve a given fill rate. Hence the point of maximum profit is at a lower fill rate for this item than for the item with more predictable demand.
3. *Cost of expediting*. If expediting is relatively cheap, it may be more profitable to set lower fill-rate goals for the inventory system and resort to frequent expediting when stockouts threaten.

Balancing inventory investment and the frequency of expediting

The best balance between inventory investment and the expected frequency of expediting is achieved by analysing the following variables:

1. The demand rate of the item.
2. The cost difference per unit between the normal mode of supply and expediting.
3. Any interest earned on working capital by expediting.
4. The unit cost of carrying inventory.
5. The difference between the predictability of demand during the replenishment lead time when expediting and not expediting.

SHIPPING FREQUENCY

Deciding on the best shipping frequency of resupplying a warehouse or a customer is another trade-off process between stockout cost, transportation cost and inventory investment. The relative cost of each of these factors at different frequencies needs to be analysed. As might be expected, the analysis will show that large, infrequent shipments reduce annual transportation costs but result in higher inventory investment, while more frequent but smaller shipments have the opposite effect.

BENEFITS

PDM techniques can be used to carry out explicit cost and profit trade-offs so that the most effective distribution combinations are found. As a result, distribution effectiveness can be increased by balancing the level of service that the company would like to provide for its customers against the costs of doing so.

FURTHER READING

Herron, D P, 'Managing physical distribution for profit', *Harvard Business Review*, May–June 1979.

47. Distribution Planning

DEFINITION

Distribution planning takes the marketing and production plans, analyses them, and decides on the distribution resources required and the operational schedules needed to satisfy customer demands.

THE PROCESS OF DISTRIBUTION PLANNING

The process of distribution planning is shown in Figure 47.1. The main elements are as follows:

1. *The marketing plan*, which forecasts total demand.
2. *The production plan*, which schedules production to meet the demand and projects the flow of the finished product into stores and warehouses.
3. *Distribution analysis of plans*, which takes forecast demand and deliveries from production and analyses:
   - The total volumes reaching warehouses over the planning period.
   - The mix of different products, with associated information about space and any special storage or transportation requirements for individual products.
   - Customer requirements – by whom, when, where and in what condition (form of packing) are the products required by customers.
   - Destinations – the analysis of individual customer requirements to prepare consolidated information on deliveries by destination.
   - Timings – the analysis of the timing of deliveries to individual customers so that they can be consolidated with the information on destinations to prepare route plans and despatch and delivery schedules.
4. *The distribution resource plan*, which covers:
   - space – the amount required in the central warehouses or outlying depots and the optimum location of warehouses and depots;

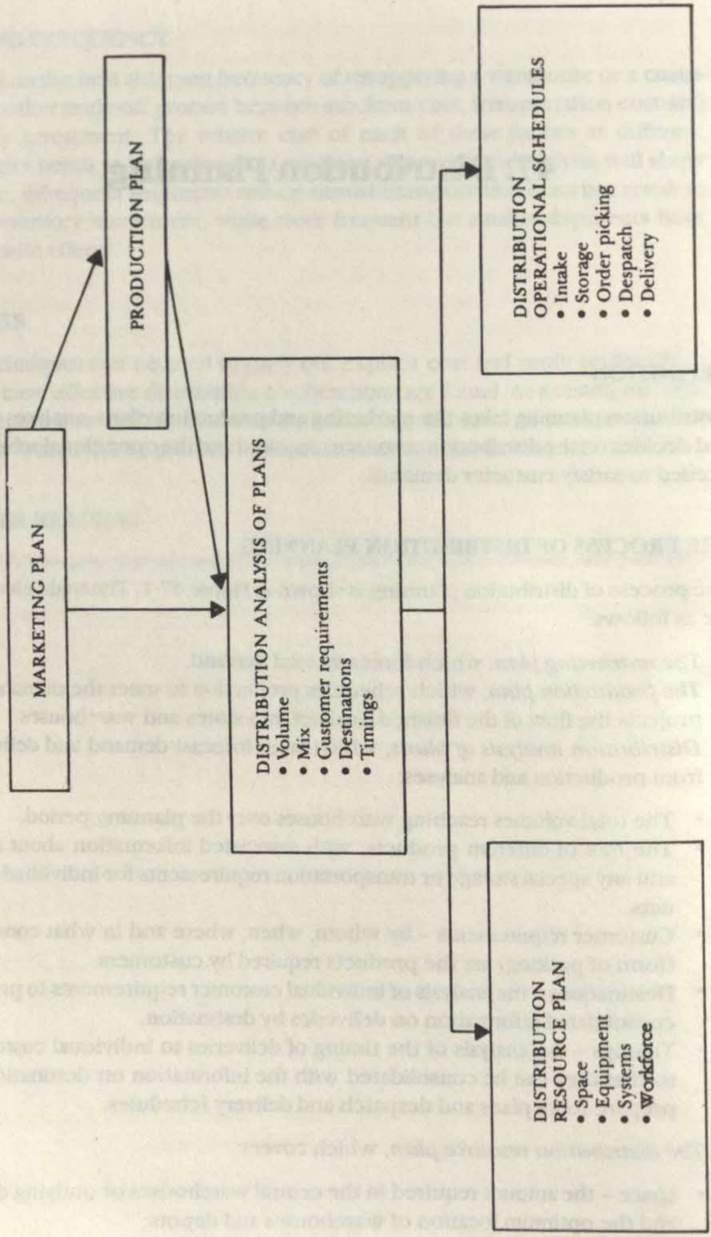


Figure 47.1. *The process of distribution planning*

- equipment - in the warehouses and depots and for transportation and delivery;
- systems:

  (a) within the warehouses and depots for planning the utilization of space, equipment and labour and for stock location and order picking;
  (b) in the field for planning and scheduling routes and deliveries and the use of transport;

- Manpower - how many and what type of people are required, when and where.

5. *Distribution operating schedules*, which prepare the detailed programmes, schedules and routes for intake, storage, order picking, despatch and delivery.

TECHNIQUES

Distribution planning uses standard scheduling techniques, as in production control, which are frequently computerized and translate customer orders into picking lists and delivery schedules. Stock location systems can also be computer controlled, and automated systems for picking and assembling orders are available. There are a number of distribution planning software packages available. It is possible to have fully automated warehouses controlled almost entirely by computers which are integrated with the order processing and production scheduling systems. Distributed data processing means that outlying warehouses and depots can control their own systems. For inventory control and stock movement purposes in retail distribution, point-of-sale terminals can generate information which is instantly available in the distribution centre.

Distribution planning also uses specific techniques for resource allocation (modelling) and for solving transportation problems.

Distribution models for resource allocation

Distribution models can take sales projections and translate them for periods of two years ahead into forecasts of workforce and machine hours required, number of picking faces, number of pallet movements and schedules of the amounts of the product to be despatched.

The general arrangement of a distribution planning model used by a book-club firm to schedule resources up to two years ahead is shown in Figure 47.2. The key input data are the membership projections showing the numbers of members in each book club and the number of new members joining. From this data, forecasts are made of the number of books to be despatched to existing members, as a result of catalogue sales, and for new members. After allowing for returns, the bulk storage/intake movements and machine picking requirements

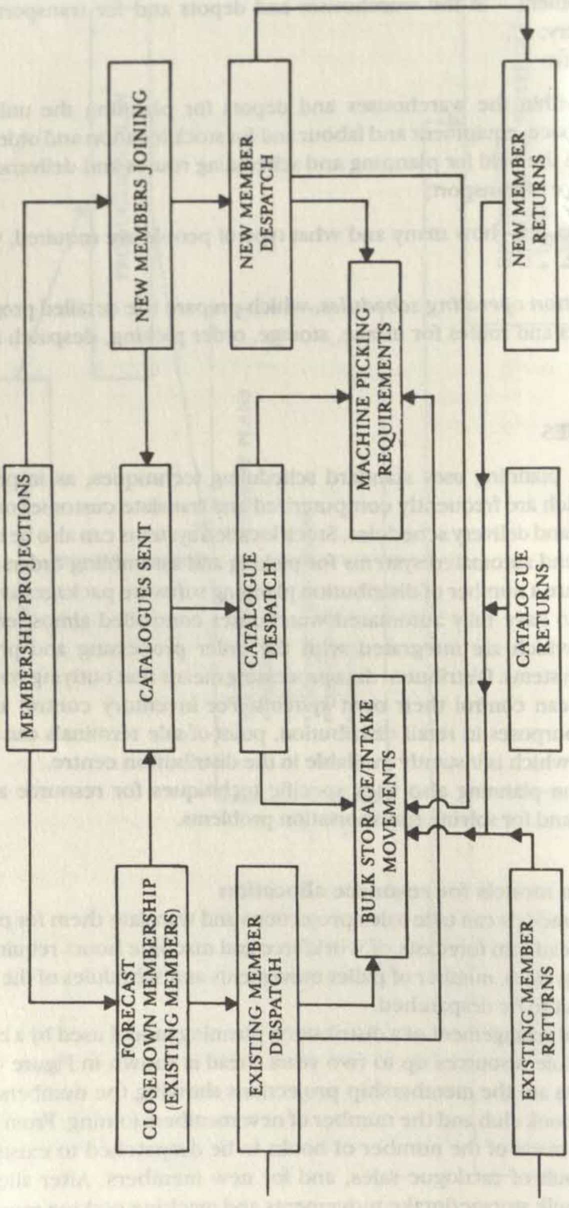


Figure 47.2. *Distribution planning model: general arrangement*

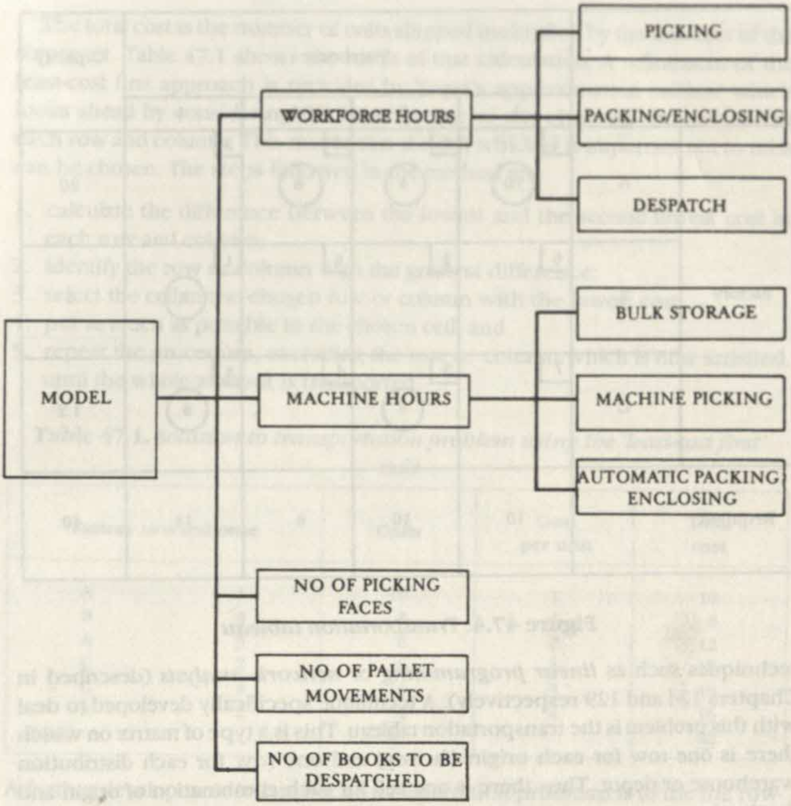


Figure 47.3. *Distribution planning model – main reports*

can be projected. The main reports generated by the distribution planning model are shown in Figure 47.3.

The standard transportation problem

The standard transportation problem is to find the most economically feasible pattern of shipments from origins to destinations given:

- A set of origins with specific product availabilities.
- A set of destinations with specified requirements at each.
- The per-unit cost of transporting products from each origin to each destination.

The transportation problem can be solved by using operational research

		Warehouse				Capacity
		1	2	3	4	
Factory	A	1 ⑩	4 ④	2 ⑥	5	20
	B	6	2	6	1 ⑧	8
	C	7	3 ⑥	4	3 ⑥	1.2
Required		10	10	6	14	40

Figure 47.4. *Transportation tableau*

techniques such as *linear programming* or *network analysis* (described in Chapters 124 and 129 respectively). A technique specifically developed to deal with this problem is the transportation tableau. This is a type of matrix on which there is one row for each origin (factory) and one row for each distribution warehouse or depot. Thus there is one cell for each combination of origin and destination.

An example of a transportation tableau is shown in Figure 47.4. In this tableau, the capacities and requirements are noted on the borders. The unit cost of the shipment is entered in the top left-hand corner of each cell. To find the best solution, which is the one that satisfies delivery requirements at the lowest total cost, the 'least-cost first' rule is applied. This means putting as much capacity as possible in the cell with the lowest unit cost but within the limits of what is required in the particular warehouse and what is available from the factory. In this example, the lowest unit cost (1) is the cell representing factory A and warehouse 1. The requirement at warehouse 1 is for 10 units which is within the available capacity from factory A. The shipment of 10 is then entered in the centre of the cell within a circle.

This process continues for the cell with the second lowest cost (B4) where 8 units can be shipped (the total available from factory B, but within the requirement of warehouse 4); and so on.

The total cost is the number of units shipped multiplied by the unit cost of the shipment. Table 47.1 shows the result of that calculation. A refinement of the least-cost first approach is provided by Vogel's approximation method which looks ahead by considering the consequence of not choosing the best cell in each row and column. This means that the cell which it is important not to miss can be chosen. The steps followed in the method are:

1. calculate the difference between the lowest and the second lowest cost in each row and column;
2. identify the row or column with the greatest difference;
3. select the cell in the chosen row or column with the lowest cost;
4. put as much as possible in the chosen cell; and
5. repeat the procedure, excluding the row or column which is now satisfied, until the whole amount is transported.

Table 47.1. *Solution to transportation problem using the 'least-cost first' rule*

Factory to warehouse		**Units**	**Cost per unit**	**Total cost**
A	1	10	1	10
B	4	8	1	8
A	3	6	2	12
C	2	6	3	18
C	4	6	3	18
A	2	4	4	16
Totals		40		82

A further development in large-scale transportation problems is to use the row-column sum or stepping-stone method with the help of a computer to check whether any new shipments can profitably be introduced, calculate what compensating changes need to be made to existing shipments and, using an iterative approach, repeat these checks and adjustments until the cheapest solution is obtained. *Sensitivity analysis* can then be used to find out how sensitive the optimal solution is to changes in costs, whether it is worth expanding factory capacities, or whether warehouse requirements should be adjusted.

Network flow models

Transportation problems can be represented as networks as well as tableaux. Nodes correspond to potential shipments. The example given in Figure 47.4 is recast in this form in Figure 47.5, which enters unit costs in a square on shipment arrows as illustrated for A to 1 only. The task is to choose flows on the arrows so

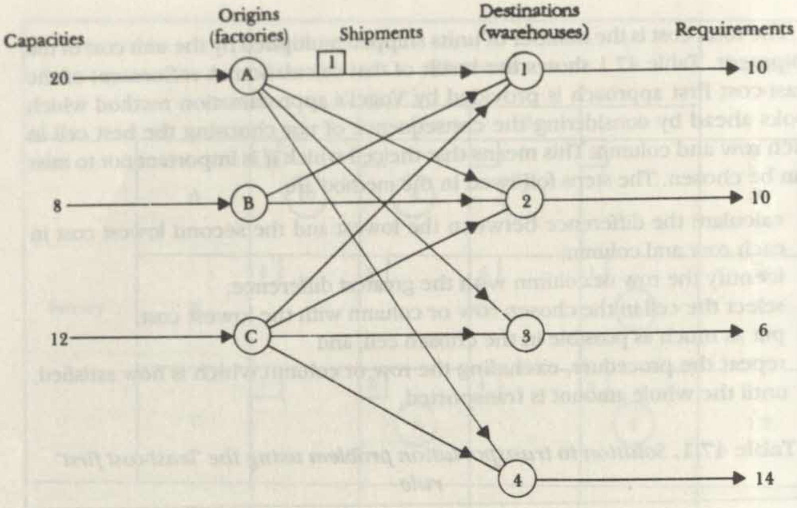


Figure 47.5. *Network representation of transport problem*

as to minimize total cost on the principle that 'what goes in must come out' at each node.

FURTHER READING

Ammer, D S, *Materials Management*, Irwin, Homewood, Illinois 1980.

Littlechild, S C, 'Transportation and network problems', in Littlechild, S C, (ed.), *Operational Research for Managers*, Philip Allan, Deddington, Oxford 1977.

48. Project Management

DEFINITION

Project management is the planning, supervision and control of the creation or extensive modification of a building, plant or major facility.

THE PROJECT MANAGEMENT SEQUENCE

The project management sequence is illustrated in Figure 48.1.

INITIATION

Objectives

Project planning starts with a definition of the objectives of the project. This is obtained by answering two basic questions:

1. Why is this project needed?
2. What benefits are expected from the project?

The answers to these questions are quantified as far as possible. The requirement for the project is spelt out in such terms as space needed for extra production or throughput; facilities (depots, stores, retail outlets) required to generate extra sales; and plant required for new products or to improve productivity or quality.

The benefits are expressed as revenues generated, costs saved and, most importantly, return on investment.

Assessment

In the assessment stage the objectives of the project and the estimated benefits are evaluated against the forecast costs.

Investment appraisal techniques such as *discounted cash flow* (Chapter 80) are used to analyse the return on investment and so ensure that the project will satisfy the company's criteria in this area.

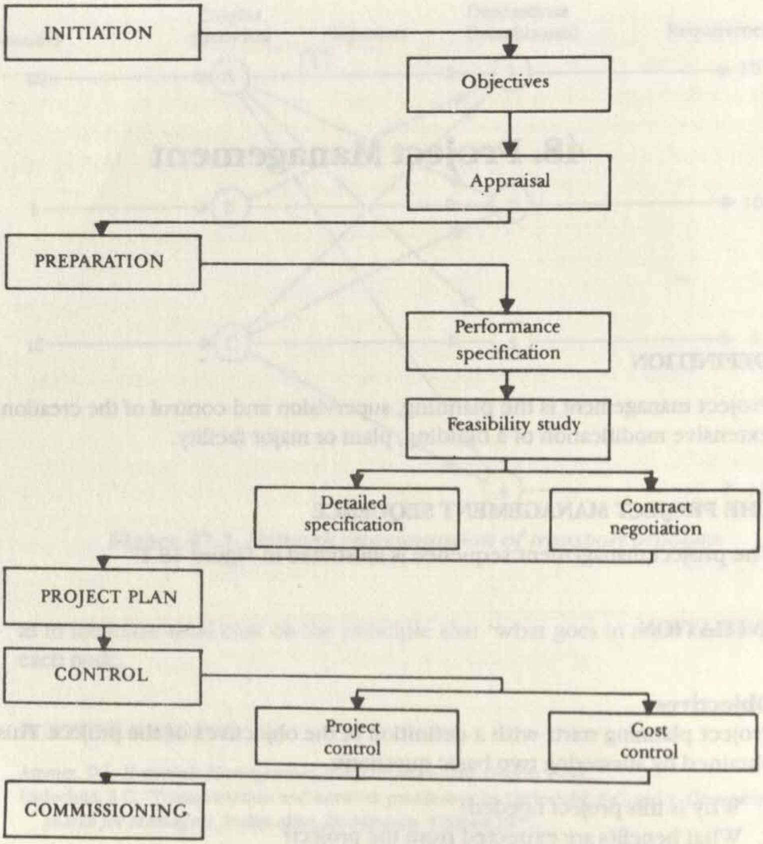


Figure 48.1. *The project management sequence*

Simultaneously, studies are made of how finance will be raised, and a broad cash flow analysis is carried out to ensure that cash will be available to finance each stage of the project.

A *cost-benefit analysis* may be appropriate, especially if some of the expected benefits are intangible. This technique requires a monetary assessment of the total costs and revenues of the project, paying attention to any social costs and benefits which do not normally feature in conventional costing exercises. The object is to identify as many tangible and intangible costs and benefits as possible.

If the appraisal shows that the project is justified in cost-benefit terms and can be financed, the planning stage can be started.

PREPARATION PLANNING

Performance specification

The performance specification is an outline specification which sets out what the building, plant or facility is expected to do. This covers the whole project and also every part which will be critical to achieving its overall objectives or purpose. At later stages, when evaluating the detailed specification, controlling the execution of the project or finally deciding to accept the completed project, fitness for purpose will be the fundamental criterion used. If what is proposed or done is not fit for its purpose then it is not acceptable. If any claims have to be negotiated with the contractor because of modifications to the original specification, then these can be settled without too much argument if it can be shown that the modifications were essential to meet the performance specification.

Feasibility study

The feasibility study decides on the basic configuration of the building, plant or facility, and its location. Initial plans are drawn up, and estimates are made of costs and timings for starting and completing the project.

This feasibility study may be carried out by the company or by consultants. Together with the performance specification it will provide the basis for the final specification and for negotiations with contractors and suppliers. It would provide the basic documentation if the contract were being put out to tender.

Detailed specification

The detailed specification describes in full the configuration of the building, plant or facility and incorporates the performance specification. It includes detailed plans plus specifications and quantity requirements for all materials, finishes, plant, equipment and facilities. The cost of each item is estimated at present prices and, if there is any doubt about the price, a provisional sum is allocated. A contingency sum of, say, 10 per cent is added to the estimated costs to cover the inevitable additional expenditure that will be incurred during the project because of modifications to the original specification.

The detailed specification may be prepared by the company with the help of consultants. In the case of a construction project, a quantity surveyor prepares the estimates of quantities and costs.

Alternatively, the specification may be prepared by the developer or contractor, either as part of a package or in response to an invitation to tender or during the course of contractual discussions and negotiations. In this case, the client gets the specification checked by his or her own professional staff or by independent consultants, architects or quantity surveyors as appropriate. It is vital to get the latter to check on quantities and costings.

Contract negotiation and agreement

During this stage the contract is negotiated with the contractor and/or the various suppliers. Contract documentation includes the following:

1. *The performance and detailed specification or description of works.*
2. *The price.* This should be a fixed price wherever possible. *If* escalation clauses are included (they are best avoided) they should be related to specific events or indices and limits should be defined.
3. *Completion or delivery date.* This should be specified and penalty clauses included in the contract against late completion or delivery. Such clauses should include the requirement that the contractor or supplier meet any additional costs arising if he or she fails to meet the specified date.
4. *Performance.* Performance bonds should be included to cover the satisfactory achievement of agreed performance levels on delivery or after a defined running-in period. Penalty clauses should be included to cover failure to perform.
5. *Modifications.* No modifications to be made by the contractor or supplier without the prior consent of the company. Modifications can be proposed by the company but can only be actioned on the written instructions of a designated officer of the company. If not so authorized, the contractor or supplier meets any additional costs (including the cost of delays). The fixed costs, plus any delay costs, are agreed when modifications are discussed.
6. *Progress.* The company reserves the right to inspect and check on progress. In a construction project this may include the right of the company to place a clerk-of-works permanently on site who is authorized to inspect and report on progress and standards achieved. The contract also includes the right of the company to vet proposals put forward by contractors, subcontractors and suppliers, and to attend site meetings.
7. *Services.* The contractor undertakes to ensure that all services such as gas, electricity or water are available as specified.
8. *Legal and planning.* The contractor ensures that legal obligations are fulfilled and planning consent obtained.
9. *Insurance.* The contractor or supplier meets all insurance costs until the contract is completed.
10. *Storage and delivery.* The contractor or supplier stores and delivers plant and equipment at his or her expense.
11. *Handover.* The contractor or supplier undertakes to prepare or test the building, plant or equipment and to hand it over in a state in which it can be used immediately or after a specified run-in period.
12. *Maintenance and warranty.* The contractor or supplier agrees service arrangements during the hand-over period and after the building or plant has been accepted. Warranties provide for rectification over a defined period of any faults which result in the performance specifications not being met

so long as these faults are clearly not the responsibility of the company in using the building or plant.

PROJECT PLAN

The project plan covers the programme, financing and allocation of resources for the whole programme. It is the key to the management of the project and the basis for project and cost control.

Programme

Programming the project requires the following:

1. A list of the major operations in sequence.
2. A breakdown of each major operation into the sequence of subsidiary tasks.
3. An analysis of the interrelationships and interdependencies of major and subsidiary tasks.
4. An estimate of the time required to complete each operation.
5. A procurement plan for ordering and obtaining delivery of materials, fittings, equipment and plant.
6. A manpower plan for obtaining the numbers required with different skills at each stage of the project and for providing training during the commissioning period.

The programme is described in detail in writing but is also represented by charts which clearly indicate start and completion times and illustrate interdependencies. The two main forms of chart used are as follows:

1. *Gantt chart.* Gantt or bar charts as illustrated in Figure 48.2 plot in bars the period of time which each operation should take. These can be prepared and

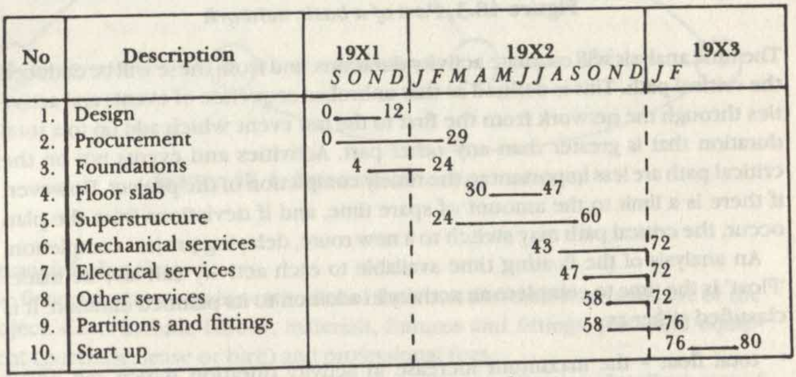


Figure 48.2. *The Gantt chart*

maintained manually but nowadays this control mechanism is usually computerized – there are numbers of software packages available for this purpose.

2. *Network planning*. Network analysis and planning, or critical path analysis (CPA), represents the component parts of the project as a network of interrelated activities and highlights those activities which are critical to the progress and completion of the project and upon which later or interrelated activities depend. Events are represented by circles, activities by arrows and the length of activities by the lengths of arrows.

   The network therefore represents the logic of the project as a continuing series of interrelationships between its parts. The most familiar network analysis system, which is usually linked to a computer, is PERT (programme evaluation and review technique). Part of a basic network is illustrated in Figure 48.3.

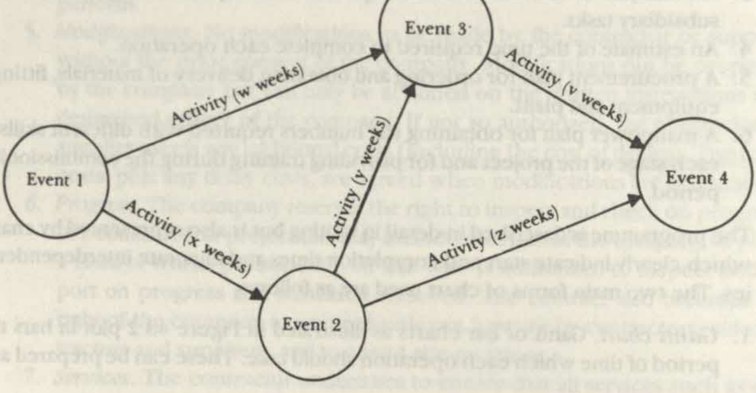


Figure 48.3. *Part of a basic network*

The time analysis will estimate activity durations, and from these will be deduced the critical path. This is defined as that unbroken sequence of events and activities through the network from the first to the last event which add up to a total duration that is greater than any other part. Activities and events not on the critical path are less important to the timely completion of the project. However, if there is a limit to the amount of spare time, and if deviations from the plan occur, the critical path may switch to a new route, delaying project completion.

An analysis of the floating time available to each activity can also be made. 'Float' is the time to complete an activity in addition to its planned duration. It is classified either as:

- total float – the maximum increase in activity duration which can occur without increasing the project duration; or

- free float – the maximum increase in activity duration which can occur without altering the floats available to subsequent activities.

The complete programme analysis for each activity will thus show its duration, its earliest and latest start time, its earliest and latest finish time and the total free-float time.

Line of balance

Line of balance techniques are sometimes used in project planning. They require the listing of the time order of a process and the results to be obtained week by week.

Resource allocation

Resource allocation in terms of the workforce hours and therefore type and number of people required at each stage of the project is carried out by reference to the estimates prepared at the design stage and the detailed programmes. For every resource type, the resources required by each activity are totalled and represented graphically over a time. This process is illustrated in Figure 48.4, in which for each activity the first number represents the duration in weeks while the second represents the number of people required. The figures for each type of manpower are then totalled week by week and, if necessary and possible, adjustments are made to the programme to smooth out the usage of manpower and minimize waiting time.

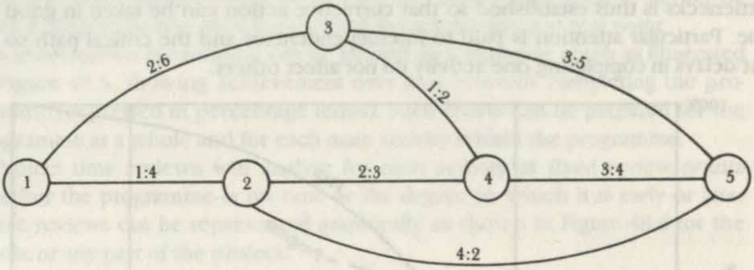


Figure 48.4. *Resource allocation network*

Financial planning

The financial plan contains estimates of the costs for each stage and part of the project. Costs include labour, materials, fixtures and fittings, plant and equipment (purchase, lease or hire) and professional fees.

The estimates are prepared by reference to the specifications for all aspects of the project. Alternative estimates are considered to establish the most economical approaches to be used, consistent with meeting delivery dates and quality standards.

The timing of payments is analysed by means of the project construction, installation and procurement programme. PERT or similar techniques can be used to prepare cost tables and cost curves which establish for each activity the normal costs, construction costs if there is a time over-run, and the 'crash' costs that might be incurred to expedite completion or avoid penalties. A schedule of payments is prepared and from this, cash flow forecasts are made.

Project management plan

The project management plan contains provisions for the overall direction and coordination of the project and for the availability of the necessary supervision and specialist services in such fields as project control, finance, quantity surveying and personnel management. It also includes arrangements for coordination and site meetings and for the provision of control information.

CONTROL

Project control

Project control is based on progress reports showing what is being achieved against the plan. The planned completion date, actual achievement and forecast completion date is provided for each item. The likelihood of delays, over-runs or bottlenecks is thus established so that corrective action can be taken in good time. Particular attention is paid to interdependencies and the critical path so that delays in completing one activity do not affect others.

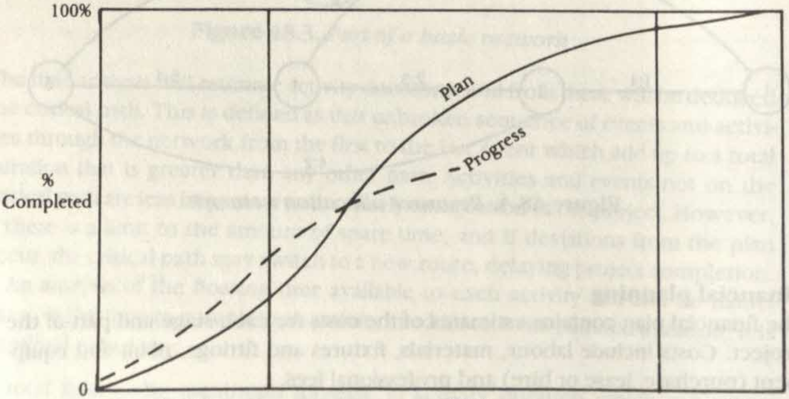


Figure 48.5. *Project plan and progress chart*

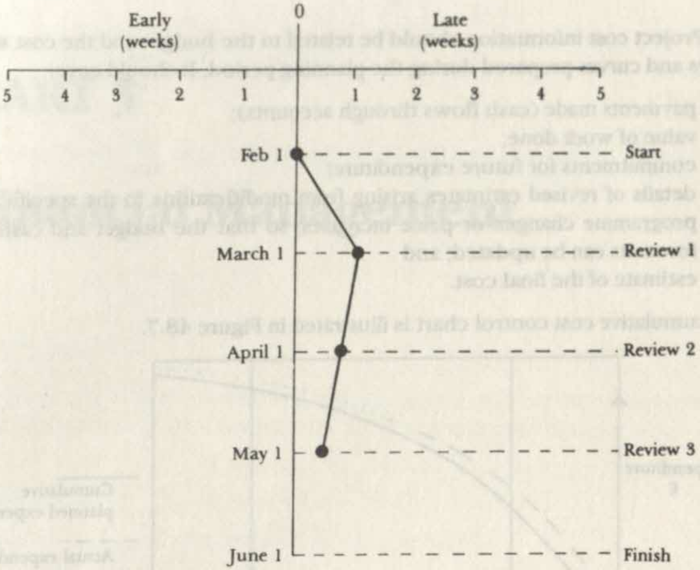


Figure 48.6. *Time review chart*

Control information can be generated by the computer as part of a PERT or CPA (critical path assessment) system. It can also be represented graphically on a Gantt or line-of-balance chart by plotting the actual achievement, period by period, against the line showing the planned achievement at that point.

A construction programme can be plotted on a planning graph as illustrated in Figure 48.5, showing achievement over time towards completing the programme (expressed in percentage terms). Such charts can be prepared for the programme as a whole and for each main activity within the programme.

Project time reviews will analyse for each activity at fixed review points whether the programme is on time or the degree to which it is early or late. These reviews can be represented graphically as shown in Figure 48.6 for the whole or any part of the project.

Project cost control

Project cost control compares actual with planned expenditure at regular review points and analyses any variance to establish its cause and decide on the corrective action required. Negative variances can arise from price or pay increases, programme over-runs, variations in the mix of labour on the project, extra labour or overtime to maintain or catch up with the programme, alterations in methods and the use of equipment and facilities on the project and, importantly, changes to the specification or the project completion date.

Project cost information should be related to the budget and the cost schedules and curves prepared during the planning period. It should cover:

1. payments made (cash flows through accounts);
2. value of work done;
3. commitments for future expenditure;
4. details of revised estimates arising from modifications to the specification, programme changes or price increases, so that the budget and cash flow forecasts can be updated; and
5. estimate of the final cost.

A cumulative cost control chart is illustrated in Figure 48.7.

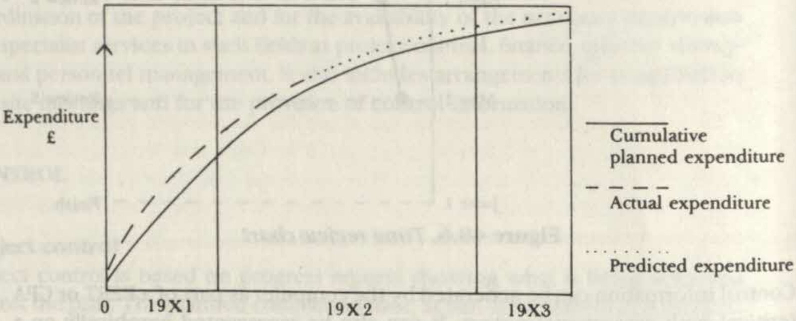


Figure 48.7. *Cumulative cost control chart*

USE OF COMPUTERS

All the project management activities referred to above can be carried out manually, but they can all be handled much more effectively by the use of computer software.

COMMISSIONING

At an appropriate time before the start-up, the commissioning plan is updated and final arrangements made for the installation of equipment, fittings and furniture, the recruitment or transfer and training or retraining of personnel, the testing of plant and services and the provision of stocks of materials and parts.

FURTHER READING

Stallworthy, E E, and Kharbanda, O P, *Total Project Management*, Gower, Aldershot 1983.
Taylor, W J, and Watling, T F, *Successful Project Management*, Business Books, London 1979.

PART 5

Financial Management

Project cost information should be related to the budget and the cost schedules and curves prepared during the planning period. It should cover:

1. payments made (cash flows through accounting;
2. value of work done;
3. commitments for future expenditure;
4. details of revised estimates arising from modifications, design or programme changes [illegible] so that the budget and cash flow forecasts can be updated; and
5. estimate of the final cost.

A cumulative cost control chart is illustrated in Figure 18.7.

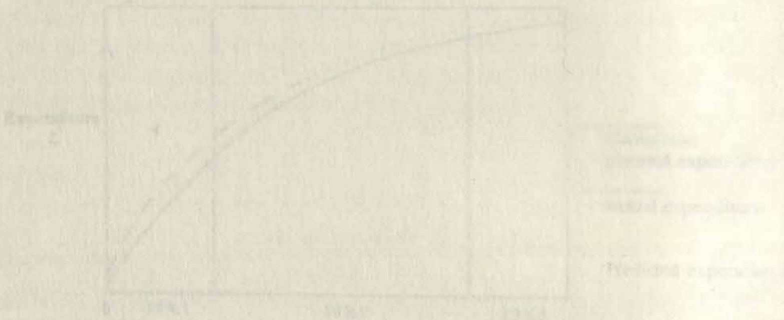


Figure 18.7 Cumulative cost control chart

USE OF COMPUTERS

All the project management activities referred to above can be carried out manually, but they can all be handled much more effectively by the use of computer software.

COMMISSIONING

At an appropriate time before the start-up, the commissioning plan is updated and final arrangements made for the installation of equipment, fittings and furniture, the recruitment or transfer and training or retraining of personnel, the testing of plant and services and the provision of stocks of materials and parts.

FURTHER READING

[illegible] and Kharbanda, O.P. *Total Project Management*, Gower, Aldershot [illegible]
[illegible] *Strategic Project Management*, Business Books, London [illegible]

49. Financial Management: An Overview

DEFINITION

Financial management is concerned with all aspects of how the business deals with its financial resources in order to maximise profit over the long term.

COMPONENTS OF FINANCIAL MANAGEMENT

Financial management involves the following activities:

- *Financial planning*, which predicts the performance of the business in financial terms to give an overall measure of how it is performing and to provide a basis for financial decision-making and for raising finance.
- *Financial accounting*, which clarifies, records and interprets in monetary terms transactions and events of a financial nature. Financial accounting will involve maintaining records of transactions (bookkeeping), preparing balance sheets and profit and loss accounts, preparing value added statements, managing cash, handling depreciation and inflation accounting. The accounts prepared by the firm will be audited to ensure that they present a 'true and fair view' of its financial performance and position. But there is scope within the law and accounting rules for company accountants to indulge in 'creative accounting' to improve the picture the accounts present to the outside world (the City and investors).
- *Financial analysis*, which analyses the performance of the business in terms of variance analysis, cost-volume-profit analysis, sales mix analysis, risk analysis, cost-benefit analysis and cost-effectiveness analysis.
- *Management accounting*, which accounts for and analyses costs, provides the basis for allocation costs to products or processes, prepares and controls financial budgets and deals specifically with overhead and responsibility accounting. Management accounting provides the data for financial analysis and for capital appraisal and budgeting.
- *Capital appraisal and budgeting*, which selects and plans capital investments based on the returns likely to be obtained from those investments. The

capital appraisal techniques comprise accounting rate of return, payback and discounted cash flow.

FURTHER READING

Mott, G, *Accounting for Non-Accountants* (4th edition), Kogan Page, London 1993.

50. Financial Planning

DEFINITION

Financial planning is the process of predicting the performance of the business to give an overall measure of how well it is doing, and to provide the basis for decision-making about future requirements for finance and the rates of growth and profitability required to meet the expectations of shareholders and the City.

FINANCIAL PLANNING ACTIVITIES

The main financial planning activities are as follows:

- *Profit forecasting*. Predicting future levels of turnover, cost of sales and overheads.
- *Cash flow forecasting*. Predicting the flows of cash into and out of the business and net cash balances in the bank.
- *Tax planning*. Forecasts of the incidence of corporation tax, capital gains tax, VAT (the extent to which the business is a net payer or a net receiver) and National Insurance payments.
- *Long-range budgeting*. Preparing long-range capital and financial budgets indicating what funds will be required in the future.
- *Raising finance*. Deciding on the basis of financial projections and budgets the amount of capital and liquid funds required in the future and taking whatever steps are required to raise finance and secure cash flow.
- *Profit and dividend planning*. Planning to achieve a rate of profit and dividend payment to achieve earnings per share figures and price/earning ratios which will satisfy the City and investors.
- *Strategic planning*. Generally providing the basis and rationale for the strategic plans for the business in terms of profit, growth, acquisitions, diversifications, overseas investments and portfolio planning.

51. Financial Accounting

DEFINITION

Financial accounting records the revenue received and the expenditure incurred by a company so that its overall performance over a period of time and its financial position at a point in time can be ascertained.

The financial accounting system classifies, records and interprets in monetary terms transactions and events of a financial character.

PURPOSE

The purposes of financial accounting are to meet:

1. the external requirements of shareholders, potential investors, financial analysts, creditors, trade unions, the Registrar of Companies (in the UK) and the Inland Revenue; and
2. the internal requirements of the management of the company who require information to management, not only for control purposes but also as a guide to decision-making.

FORMAT OF FINANCIAL ACCOUNTS

Financial accounting systems produce the following financial statements:

1. *The balance sheet*, which is a statement on the last day of the accounting period of the company's assets and liabilities and the share capital and reserves or shareholders' investment in the company.
2. *The manufacturing and trading accounts*, which, for a period of accounts, show the cost of goods manufactured, the cost of goods sold, sales revenue, and gross profit (the difference between the sales revenue and the cost of goods sold).
3. *The profit and loss account*, which takes the *gross profit* from the trading account and deducts marketing, distribution and administrative costs and expenditure on research and development to determine the company's

trading or operating profit, for the period. To this, investment income is added and interest payable deducted to give *profit before taxation*, from which corporation tax is deducted to give the *net profit or loss* for the period. (See Chapter 53.)

4. *The profit and loss appropriation account*, which indicates the profit available for appropriation to shareholders in the form of dividends, for transfer to reserves and for carrying forward to the next account. The profit available for appropriation is represented by the balance brought forward from the previous account, plus or minus the net profit or loss for the period.
5. *Cash flow statements*, which identify the movements in assets, liabilities and capital which have taken place during the period and the resultant effect on cash or net liquid funds. It described the sources from which additional cash (funds) were derived and the application to which this cash was put.
6. *The value added statement* which shows the company's sales income during a period less the cost of bought-in materials and services. Value added is the wealth the company has been able to create by its own and its employees' efforts during a period.

RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN THE BALANCE SHEET AND THE PROFIT AND LOSS ACCOUNT

The balance sheet and the profit and loss account are the two key financial statements. Their relationship is illustrated in Figure 51.1.

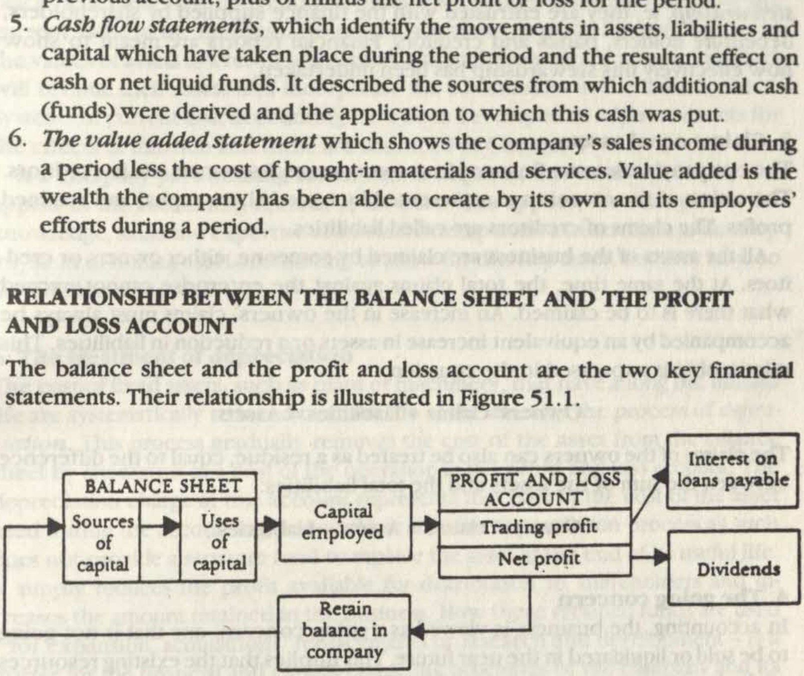


Figure 51.1 *Relationship between balance sheet and profit and loss account*

FINANCIAL PRINCIPLES

The following accounting principles or concepts operate as guidelines in the preparation of financial statements and reports.

1. Measuring in money

Financial reports express in monetary terms certain facts relating to the assets of the enterprise, the claims against those assets and the profits or losses resulting from the use of those assets. Money is used as the common denominator and accounting therefore only deals with those facts that can be represented in monetary terms.

2. The business as a separate unit

Each business is a separate entity for accounting purposes and accounts are kept for each entity. The directors of a company carry out the important function of *stewardship*, ie, they are entrusted with the finance supplied by shareholders, debenture holders, banks and creditors. Financial reports are meant to show how effectively this stewardship has been undertaken.

3. Claims equal assets

The company's assets are financed from two sources: its owners and its creditors. The claims of the owners are represented by issued share capital and retained profits. The claims of creditors are called liabilities.

All the assets of the business are claimed by someone, either owners or creditors. At the same time, the total claims against the enterprise cannot exceed what there is to be claimed. An increase in the owners' claims must always be accompanied by an equivalent increase in assets or a reduction in liabilities. This relationship is expressed in the equation:

$$\text{Owners' claims} + \text{Liabilities} = \text{Assets.}$$

The claims of the owners can also be treated as a residue, equal to the difference between the sum of the assets and the total liabilities:

$$\text{Owners' claims} = \text{Assets} - \text{Liabilities.}$$

4. The going concern

In accounting, the business is viewed as a going concern, one that is not going to be sold or liquidated in the near future. This implies that the existing resources of the business, such as plant and equipment, will be used in order to produce goods, and not simply sold in tomorrow's market. Therefore regular accounting reports do not usually attempt to measure what the business is currently worth to its owners at market rates, ie, it is not normally the practice to value capital assets at their net realizable value (the price that could be obtained if the goods were sold on the open market less the cost of selling them).

However, because capital is invested with the expectation of the return *of* that capital as well as a return *on* that capital, investors expect their capital to be maintained, which happens when revenues are at least equal to all costs and expenses. There are two capital maintenance concepts: ***financial capital maintenance*** (maintain original cash investment) and ***physical capital maintenance*** (maintain physical operating capability) – see Chapter 57. These raise questions about the use of historical costs as the normal basis of financial reports, which are mentioned briefly below.

5. Measuring actual cost

In the standard balance sheet and profit and loss account the resources of the company are shown at their historical cost (the actual cost at the time of acquisition) less, where appropriate, depreciation, rather than their current or replacement value. The conventional balance sheet does not therefore show the current value of the business. No regular allowance is made for any changes in the values of assets as a result of inflation, although from time to time companies will revalue their assets and incorporate the adjustments in the balance sheet. Systems of current cost accounting have been developed to adjust accounts for the effects of inflation and these are described in Chapter 57.

If a company pays nothing for an item it acquires, this item will usually not appear in the accounting records as an asset. This applies, for example, to the knowledge, skills and expertise of its staff. Attempts have been made to develop a system of human asset accounting to allow for this key asset, but they have so far failed to take root.

6. The treatment of depreciation

The cost of fixed assets, such as plant or machinery, that have a long but limited life are systematically reduced over the life of the asset by the process of *depreciation*. This process gradually removes the cost of the asset from the balance sheet by showing it as a cost of the operation in the profit and loss account. The depreciation charge in this account represents that part of the cost of the asset used during the accounting period. Note that the depreciation process as such does not provide a separate fund to replace the asset at the end of its useful life. It simply reduces the profit available for distribution to shareholders and increases the amount retained in the business. How these retained funds are used – for expansion, acquisitions, replacements or research and development – is a matter for the financial and capital budgeting processes of the company and its system of cash or funds flow management. There are different methods available for depreciation and these are discussed in Chapter 56.

7. Accruals

In accounting, revenues and costs are accrued. The impact of events on assets and equities is recognized in the time periods when services are rendered or utilized instead of when cash is paid or received. That is, revenue is recognized as it is *earned* and expenses are recognized as they are *incurred*, not when cash changes hands. These revenues and costs are entered into profit and loss account in the period to which they relate.

This principle means that before producing final accounts *adjustments* have to be made to ensure that the accrual concept of assigning the financial effects of transactions to the accounting period in which they were earned or incurred is implemented.

Adjustments are made in the form of:

- *accruals* - expenses arising from services that have been provided in the current accounting period, the benefit from which has been used in earning the current period's revenue, but which will not be paid for until the following period; and
- *prepayments* - recorded expenses which refer to a period beyond that for which the final accounts are being presented.

In addition, *provision* may be made in the accounts this year for prudent reasons for costs, although not yet paid, and even though no benefit may yet have been derived from them.

8. Consistency

Auditors require consistency in the accounting treatments of like items within each accounting period and from one period to the next.

9. Prudence

Accountants have to be conservative in preparing financial statements. Revenues and profits are *never* anticipated and are only included in financial statements when they are realized, but provisions is made for *all* known liabilities.

ACCOUNTING BASES AND POLICIES

These accounting principles often require a considerable amount of commercial judgement when they are being applied. Decisions have to be made at the end of each period on the basis of an assessment of future events. For example, it is often necessary to consider the extent to which expenditure incurred in one year can reasonably be expected to produce benefits in the form of revenue in other years and should be carried forward in whole or in part. This means deciding on the extent to which the expenditure should appear in the profit and loss account of the current year as distinct from appearing in the balance sheet as a resource at the end of the year. Commercial judgement is also required on matters such as the depreciation of assets, the valuation of stocks and work-in-progress and the treatment of research and development expenditure and long-term contracts. To assist in making consistent and acceptable (from an accounting point of view) judgements accounting bases and policies are developed.

Accounting bases

Accounting bases are the methods used to express or apply fundamental accounting concepts to financial transactions. These bases are produced in the form of accounting standards by the accounting professional bodies. In the UK these are issued by the Accounting Standards Body and are known as financial reporting standards (FRSs) or statements of standard accounting practice. They have covered such areas as extraordinary and exceptional items (SSAP 67), stock valuation (SSAP 9), and depreciation (SSAP 12). In the USA the Financial Accounting Standards Board produces statements on similar topics.

Accounting policies

Accounting policies are the specific accounting bases judged by the business to be the most appropriate to its circumstances and therefore adopted in the preparation of its accounts. For example, of the various methods of accounting for depreciation, the policy adopted may be straight-line depreciation of plant over a period of five years.

FURTHER READING

Pendlebury, M, and Groves, R, *Company Accounts*, (2nd edition), Unwin Hyman, London 1990.
Lewis, R W, and Pendrill, D, *Advanced Financial Accounting*, (3rd edition), Pitman, London 1991.

52. Balance Sheet Analysis

DEFINITION

Balance sheet analysis assesses the financial strengths and weaknesses of the company primarily from the point of view of the shareholders and potential investors, but also as part of management's task to exercise proper stewardship over the funds invested in the company and the assets in its care.

THE BALANCE SHEET

Components

The three main components of a balance sheet are:

1. *assets* = what the business owns;
2. *liabilities* = what the business owes; and
3. *capital* = the owners' interest in the business.

The balance sheet equation

The balance sheet equation is:

Capital + Liabilities = Assets.

Capital plus liabilities comprise where the money comes from, and assets are where the money is now.

MAKE-UP OF THE BALANCE SHEET

The balance sheet contains three major sections:

1. *Assets or capital in use* divided into the following:
   - Long-term or *fixed assets* which the company owns and needs to carry on its business: land and buildings; plant and machinery; fixtures and fittings; and motor vehicle fleet.

- Short-term or *current assets* which change rapidly as the company carries on its business: stocks of raw material; work-in-progress; stocks of finished goods; debtors; bank balances and cash. The heading 'current assets' covers an important operating cycle within the company which is vital for both profitability and liquidity. In this cycle, cash flows out of the business up to the point where the customer, or debtor, takes delivery of the finished goods. When the customer pays, cash flows back, and if the goods yield a profit, current assets increase.

2. *Current liabilities*, the amounts owed which will have to be paid within 12 months of the balance sheet date. These will be shown under the heading of creditors in the balance sheet and will include tax, bank overdraft and dividend payments due to shareholders.
3. *Net current assets* or *working capital* which is current assets less current liabilities. Careful control of working capital lies at the heart of efficient business performance.
4. *Sources of capital*, comprising:
   - share capital;
   - reserves which include retained profits, which are distributable, and any funds in the share premium account (money paid in by shareholders over and above the nominal value of the shares they hold) which are non-distributable; and
   - long-term loans.

ANALYSIS

Balance sheet analysis concentrates on two areas: liquidity and capital structure. Information derived from both the balance sheet and the profit and loss account also provides a number of key analytical areas and these are dealt with in Chapter 132.

Liquidity analysis

Liquidity analysis aims to establish that the company has sufficient cash resources to meet its short-term obligations. The key balance sheet ratios used in liquidity analysis are as follows:

1. *The working capital ratio (current ratio)*. This relates the current assets of the company to its current liabilities and is calculated as:

$$\frac{\text{Current assets}}{\text{Current liabilities}}$$

There is no categorical rule of what this ratio should be but, clearly, if it is less than 1, there may be danger because the liquid resources are insufficient to cover short-term payments. However, too high a ratio (say more than 2) might be due to cash or stock levels being greater than is strictly necessary and might therefore be indicative of the bad management of working capital requirements.

The working capital ratio is susceptible to 'window dressing', which is the manipulation of the working capital position by accelerating or delaying transactions close to the year end.

2. *The quick ratio (acid-test ratio)*. The working capital ratio includes stock as a major item and this may not be convertible very readily into cash if the need arises to pay creditors at short notice. The quick ratio, as its name implies, concentrates on the more readily realizable of the current assets and provides a much stricter test of liquidity than the working capital ratio.

   The quick ratio is calculated as:

$$\frac{\text{Current assets minus stocks}}{\text{Current liabilities}}$$

Again, there are no rigid rules on what this ratio should be. But it should not fall below 1 because this would mean that if all the creditors of a company requested early payment there would be insufficient liquid, or nearly liquid, resources available to meet the demands. The company would fail the 'acid test' of being able to pay its short-term obligations and would therefore be in danger of becoming insolvent. The seriousness of the situation would depend on the availability of loan or overdraft facilities.

Capital structure analysis

Capital structure analysis examines the overall means by which a company finances its operations. Companies are usually financed partly by the funds of their ordinary shareholders and partly by loans from banks and other lenders. These two sources of finance are referred to as equity and debt respectively, and the relationship between the two indicates the gearing or leverage of the company.

The higher the proportion of debt to equity, the higher the gearing ratio, ie, a company is said to be highly geared when it has a high level of loan capital as distinct from equity capital. The problem which can arise from high gearing is that providers of loan capital have priority for payment over shareholders and, in hard times, the latter might suffer. On the other hand, gearing provides the benefit of a predictably fixed amount of interest every year, and the priority given to providers of loan capital over shareholders on liquidation should make the cost of debt capital less than that of equity. The gearing position of a company can be assessed by the use of the following balance sheet ratios:

1. *Long-term debt to equity ratio*. This is the classic gearing ratio and is calculated as:

$$\frac{\text{Long-term loans plus preference shares}}{\text{Ordinary shareholders' funds}} \times 100$$

2. *Long-term debt to long-term finance ratio*. This ratio calculates the amount of debt finance as a proportion of total long-term finance as follows:

$$\frac{\text{Long-term loans plus preference shares}}{\text{Long-term loans plus preference shares plus ordinary shareholders' funds}} \times 100$$

The implications of this ratio are similar to those of the long-term debt to equity ratio. The higher the ratio, the higher the proportion of debt in the capital structure of a company and therefore the higher the amount of the interest charges that might be expected.

There is no such thing as an optimum ratio. It depends on circumstances. But a company with a low level of business risk with stable operating profits may be able to withstand higher gearing than a company whose operating profits fluctuate widely.

3. *Total debt to total assets ratio*. This ratio shows the proportion of the total assets of the company that is financed by borrowed funds, both short term and long term. It is calculated as:

$$\frac{\text{Long-term loans plus short-term loans}}{\text{Total assets}} \times 100$$

The total debt to total assets ratio recognizes the fact that short-term bank loans and overdrafts are often almost automatically renewable and are therefore effectively a source of long-term finance. Again, this ratio gives an indication of the extent to which interest payments will have to be made.

FURTHER READING

Pendlebury, M, and Groves, R, *Company Accounts*, (2nd edition), Unwin Hyman, London 1990.

53. Profitability Analysis

DEFINITION

Profitability analysis classifies, measures and assesses the performance of the company in terms of the profits it earns in relation either to the shareholders' investment or capital employed in the business, or in relation to sales. Profit (or loss) can be defined as revenue or income minus expenses. Alternatively, profit can be regarded as the increase in the owners' claims or an increase in net assets.

PURPOSE

Profit serves three purposes, as defined by Peter Drucker:[1]

1. It measures the net effectiveness and soundness of a business's effort.
2. It is the premium that covers the cost of staying in business.
3. It ensures the supply of future capital for innovation and expansion.

Profitability is the primary aim and best measure of efficiency in competitive business, and profitability analysis aims to provide the data on which action can be taken to improve the company's business performance.

CLASSIFICATION OF PROFITS

There are four headings under which profits are classified:

1. *Gross profit*. The difference between sales revenue and the cost of goods sold. There is also referred to as *gross margin*, especially in the retailing industry.
2. *Operating or trading profit*. The gross profit less marketing and distribution costs, administrative costs and research and development expenditure.
3. *Profit before taxation*. Operating profit plus invested income minus interest payable.
4. *Net profit*. Profit before taxation minus corporation tax.

PRESENTATION OF PROFITS

Profit information is derived from the trading account and the profit and loss account.

Trading account

The trading account shows the cost of goods manufactured, the cost of sales, sales and the gross profit, which is transferred to the profit and loss account. This is shown in Table 53.1.

Table 53.1. *Trading account*

	£000
Finished goods to warehouse	
Opening stock	500
Factory production	6,500
	7,000
Less closing stock	400
Cost of sales	6,600
Sales	8,000
Gross profit to profit and loss account	1,400

Profit and loss account

The profit and loss account is set out along the lines shown in Table 53.2. (This lists the typical main headings, but the presentation will vary between companies.)

MEASUREMENT OF PROFITABILITY

Profitability is a measure of the return in the shape of profits that shareholders obtain for their investment in the company. It is expressed in the form of the following ratios.

1. Return on equity

This ratio shows the profitability of the company in terms of the capital provided by the owners of the company, ie, the shareholders. The formula for this ratio is:

$$\frac{\text{Profit after interest and preference dividends but before tax and extraordinary items}}{\text{Average ordinary share capital, reserves and retained profit for the period}} \times 100$$

This ratio therefore focuses attention on the efficiency of the company in earning profits on behalf of its ordinary shareholders. This is regarded by many analysts as the basic profitability ratio.

Table 53.2 *Profit and loss account*

	£000	£000	£000
Gross profit from trading account			1,400
Selling and distribution costs			
Sales reps' salaries and expenses	150		
Sales office salaries	30		
Distribution costs	100	280	
Advertising		50	
Administration expenses			
Office salaries		150	
Directors' salaries		100	
Depreciation		20	
Audit fees		10	
Provision for bad debts		30	
Bank interest		20	
			660
Operating profit			740
Investment income			40
Profit before interest and taxation			760
Less loan interest			50
Profit before taxation			730
Taxation			200
Net profit to appreciation account			530

2. Return on capital employed

The return on capital employed ratio aims to provide information on the performance of a company by concentrating on the efficiency with which the capital is employed. The basic formula is:

$$\frac{\text{Trading or operating profit}}{\text{Capital employed}} \times 100$$

The profit figure taken is the one which reflects the ordinary activities of the company and excludes the effects of any extraordinary items. Interest charges are not deducted because, assuming the capital employed represents the total assets of the company, it will be partially financed by creditors, and the profit figure should therefore be the amount before any interest payments to those creditors are made. Taxation charges are also left in the profit figure because the amount of taxation paid by a company depends on a variety of circumstances, which may not all be under the control of the company. The interest paid on current liabilities, or received on current assets, is also included in the calculation of profit.

Capital employed is usually taken as either the total assets of the company, ie, fixed assets plus current assets, or the net total assets, ie, fixed assets plus current assets minus current liabilities. Use of the total assets figure focuses attention on the efficiency with which all the resources available to the managers of the company have been utilized, and this is the basis which is referred to most frequently. The argument for using net total assets is that these are the resources which are most under the control of the company and any distortions caused by variations in working capital policy will be minimized.

The alternative formulae are therefore:

1. *Return on total assets*

$$\frac{\text{Trading profit before interest, taxation and extraordinary items}}{\text{Average total assets for the period}} \times 100$$

2. *Return on net total assets*

$$\frac{\text{Trading profit before interest, taxation and extraordinary items}}{\text{Net total assets for the period}} \times 100$$

Earnings per share

Earnings per share are calculated as:

$$\frac{\text{Profit after interest, taxation and preference dividends but before extraordinary items}}{\text{The number of ordinary shares issued by the company}}$$

This is widely used as a variation on the return on equity indicator of profitability. Its disadvantage for intercompany comparison purposes is that the earnings per share clearly depend on the number of shares issued, which has nothing to do with profitability. Similarly, comparisons over a period of time within a company will be affected if any bonus share issues have taken place.

Price-earnings (P/E) ratio

This ratio is calculated as follows:

$$\frac{\text{Market price of ordinary shares}}{\text{Earnings per share}}$$

It reflects the expectations of the market concerning the future earnings of the company (market price), and the earnings available for each ordinary share, based on the results of the most recent accounting period.

If the market price is £5 per share and earnings per share are 50p, the price/earnings ratio is 5.00 ÷ 0.50 = 10. This means that, if £5 is paid for a share, then the shares are selling at 10 times earnings, ie, ten years of current cost earnings at 50p have been bought. For comparison purposes, companies with higher P/E ratios are regarded as having better prospects.

Return on sales or profit margin ratio

The return on sales or profit margin is a key ratio. It shows how well the company is doing in maximizing sales and minimizing costs. It is calculated as:

$$\frac{\text{Profit}}{\text{Total sales}} \times 100$$

The ratio therefore expresses the profit in pounds generated by each pound sales. The profit figure used is generally, but not always, the trading profit before interest, taxation and extraordinary items as is the case in the formulae for return on capital employed.

Asset turnover ratio

Although a much-used ratio, the return on sales may be misleading because it fails to take account of the assets available to achieve the profit margin. It can be used in association with the return on capital employed, but the problem can also be overcome by adopting the asset turnover ratio, which is calculated as:

$$\frac{\text{Total sales}}{\text{Assets}}$$

This ratio expresses the number of times assets have been 'turned over' during a period to achieve the sales revenue. It measures the performance of the company in generating sales from the assets at its disposal.

REFERENCE

1. Drucker, P, *The Practice of Management*, Heinemann, London 1955.

FURTHER READING

Mott, G, *Management Accounting for Decision Makers* (2nd edition), Pitman, London 1991.
Westwick, C A, *How to Use Management Ratios* (2nd edition), Gower, Aldershot 1987.

54. Value Added Statement

DEFINITION

A value added statement sets out the details of the value added to the cost of raw materials and bought-out parts by the process of production and distribution. It seldom appears in the annual company account but is sometimes used in employee reports.

FORMAT

The format recommended in the UK Accounting Standard Body's discussion paper, *The Corporate Report* (1975), is as follows:

Value added

1. **Turnover.**
2. **Bought-in items (materials and services).**
3. **Value added (ie turnover minus the cost of bought-in items).**

Distribution as follows

4. **To employees (wages, salaries and other employment costs).**
5. **To government (taxation).**
6. **To providers of capital (interest on loans, dividends).**
7. **To provide for maintenance and expansion of assets: depreciation, retained profits.**

CONTENT

The content of the value added statement comprises the following.

Calculation of the value added figure

1. **The turnover figure that appears in the profit and loss account. This is usually exclusive of value added tax in the UK.**
2. **The cost of bought-in items, which will include raw materials, bought-in**

parts, heating and lighting, printing and professional and specialist services. This is deducted from the turnover figure to give a figure of the value added by the efforts of the company's employees to make the best use of the capital and other resources available to them.

3. Turnover minus cost of bought-in items.

Distribution of value added

4. The share allocated to employees, comprising gross pay, employers' National Insurance and pension contributions, and the costs of fringe benefits and employee facilities.
5. The payments to government, normally corporation tax, but some reports include National Insurance contributions, value added tax, customs and excise duty, etc.
6. The share allocated to the providers of long-term capital – interest paid and payable on loans, dividends paid and payable to shareholders.
7. The extent to which a proportion of value added is being retained for the future development of the business and the maintenance of the fixed asset base. Some people argue that depreciation should not be included in this category, but should be treated as a deduction from gross value added at the head of the statement.

USE

The value added statement does not add anything to the information already given in the profit and loss account and other financial statements issued by companies. But it does rearrange this information in order to highlight the fact that a company is operated for the benefit of a number of different interests – employees, shareholders, lenders and government – who each have certain rights which have to be satisfied to the best of the company management's abilities.

For employees in particular, value added statements focus attention on their contribution and are often expressed in the form of value added per employee. But the statements also draw the attention of employees and others to the fact that the results obtained additionally depend on the contribution of shareholders and lenders who provide capital and have to be rewarded for the risk they take. Finally, the statement indicates quite clearly the size of the obligations companies have to the government as well as to the other interested parties.

55. Cash Management

DEFINITION

Cash management forecasts cash flows (inflows or outflows of cash) as part of the working capital cycle, prepares cash and financial budgets and fund flow statements, and manages the cash or funds flowing through the company.

PURPOSE

Basic aim

The basic aim of cash management is to ensure that cash in exceeds cash out. In other words, the purpose of cash or funds management is to ensure that the company has the cash and working capital for its expanding or fluctuating needs without either tying up funds which could be more profitably invested or used elsewhere, or relying too heavily on bank overdrafts or other short-term loans.

Overtrading

Cash management aims to minimize the danger of overtrading. This takes place when a rapidly expanding company achieves increased profits, but has a deteriorating cash position because the profits generated by sales are not translated into cash flows.

Extra sales require more stock, labour and capital expenditure. Sales results in the first place in the creation of debts with a time lag before the debts are paid. These factors could more than absorb the cash flow being generated.

The extent to which a company can and should rely on overdrafts to finance a deficit is limited. There is always the danger that in hard times banks will reduce or even withdraw overdraft facilities, resulting in a cash crisis.

THE WORKING CAPITAL CYCLE

The working capital cycles for a manufacturing and a retailing company are

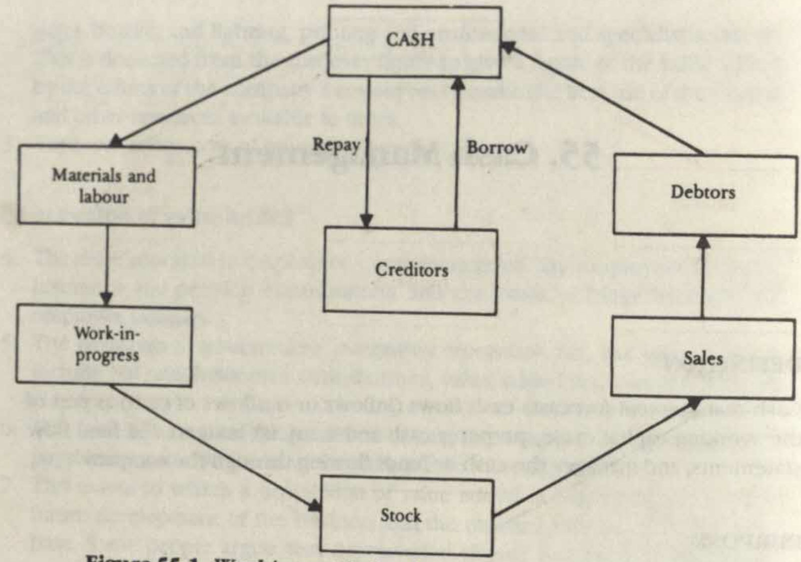


Figure 55.1. *Working capital cycle – manufacturing company*

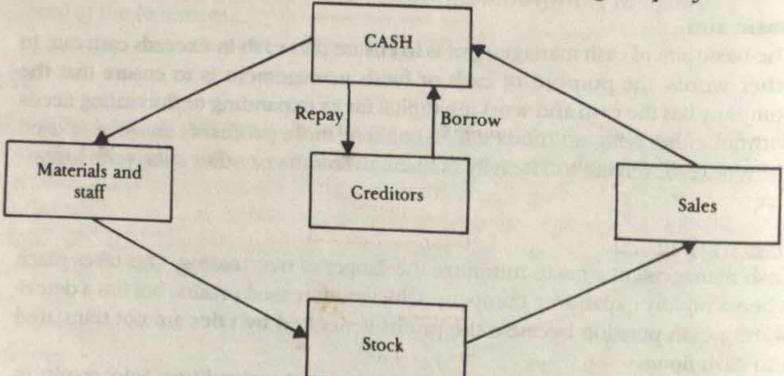


Figure 55.2. *Working capital cycle – retailing company*

illustrated in Figures 55.1 and 55.2 respectively. They show the significant role of cash in the operation of a business.

COMPONENTS OF CASH MANAGEMENT

Cash management starts with the construction of *operating* and *capital expenditure cash budgets*. These are combined with information on investment receipts and outflows as a result of taxation, dividend or interest payments to form the *finance budget*. As an ancillary to this budget a *funds flow statement* shows the source and application of all the funds used by the company. Finally, the process of *funds flow management* ensures that all cash or fund flows are handled effectively.

THE OPERATING CASH BUDGET

The operating cash budget deals with budgeted receipts (forecast cash inflows) and budgeted payments (forecast cash outflows). It includes all of what is sometimes referred to as the revenue expenditure incurred in financing current operations, ie, the costs of running the business in order to generate sales - buying materials, parts and non-capitalized tools and equipment, labour and staff costs, and selling, administration and research and development costs.

The operating cash budget is based on forecasts of cash inflows and outflows for each accounting cycle of the year and is set out as shown in Table 55.1. If the first budget run reveals any cash flow problems steps can be taken to see if any adjustments can be made to outflows (delays in paying creditors) or inflows (calling in debts more vigorously). Contingency plans can also be made to raise short-term finance if necessary.

Table 55.1. *Operating cash budget*

	Period				
	1	*2*	....	*13*	*Total*
Budgeted receipts					
Cash sales					
Receipts from debtors					
Budgeted payments					
Materials					
Cash purchases					
Payments to creditors					
Factory payroll					
Other production outlays (excluding depreciation)					
Selling outlays					
Administrative outlays					
Total payments					
Operating cash surplus or (deficit)					

CAPITAL EXPENDITURE CASH BUDGET

The capital expenditure cash budget plans cash outlays on capital expenditure projects. The projected outflows have to be considered carefully in relation to the operating cash budget to ensure that cash flow problems are avoided. Capital expenditures can often be rephased to avoid embarrassment.

Neither the operating nor the capital expenditure budget makes any reference to the charge for depreciation shown in the profit and loss account. The intention of this depreciation charge is to spread the cost of the fixed assets to the particular periods or products that benefit from their use, so that the capital of the company remains intact. No cash outflow is included in the depreciation charge, which is why it is excluded from the operating cash budget.

FINANCE BUDGET

The finance budget is prepared from the information supplied by the operating cash and capital expenditure budgets together with further information on inflows or receipts (investment income) and outflows or payments (taxation, dividends and interest payments).

This analysis may indicate the need to rearrange the flows in the finance budget to overcome any forecast cash deficit problems. If cash deficits cannot be smoothed out, the analysis will show when there will be a need to raise finance. A forecast surplus will assist in the planning of investments.

A finance budget is set out along the lines shown in Table 55.2.

Table 55.2. *Finance budget*

	£		£	
Inflows				
Opening cash balance				
Operating cash surplus				
Investment income				
Total receipts				
Outflows				
Taxation				
Preference dividends (net)				
Ordinary dividends (net)				
Interest payments (net)				
Bank interest				
Capital expenditure				
Operating cash deficit				
Total payments				
Surplus finance or deficit to be financed				
Sales or purchase of investments				
Closing cash balance				

THE CASH FLOW STATEMENT

Purpose

The cash flow statement answers for shareholders and management the following questions:

1. What resources did the company have available to it last year?
2. How did the company use those resources?
3. To what extent have funds been generated from operations or raised by other means, including the incurrence of loans and obligations or the disposal of fixed assets?
4. Did the funds generated from ordinary trading operations cover the payment of tax and dividends, or had the funds for these payments to be raised by long-term borrowings or asset disposals?

Preparation

In essence, the cash flow statement is prepared by comparing the balance sheet at the end of the period with the balance sheet at the beginning of the period and listing the change in each balance sheet item. *Financial Reporting Standard (FRS) 1* allows two alternative ways of disclosing the net cash flow from operating activities – the indirect and direct method (at present, the indirect method is the more commonly used).

Table 55.3 is a comparison of the direct and indirect methods.

Table 55.3 *Comparison of direct and indirect methods*
(reproduced with permission from Mott, G, *Accounting for Non-Accountants*, Kogan Page, London 1993)

Direct method	*£000*
Cash received from customers	9,900
Cash payments to suppliers	(5,200)
Cash paid to and on behalf of employees	(2,700)
Other cash payments	(600)
Net cash inflow from operating activities	£1,400
Indirect method	
Operating profit	1,340
Depreciation charges	280
Increase in stocks	(170)
Increase in debtors	(120)
Increase in creditors	70
Net cash inflow from operating activities	£1,400

FUNDS FLOW MANAGEMENT

Cash management is more than simply ensuring that cash in exceeds cash out, however important that form of liquidity may be. It is about managing money in the broader sense of the systems concept of funds. Funds flow through all the assets of a business, and funds flow management is the critical task of deciding on and controlling the volume of funds and the speed with which they travel through the system.

Funds flow management therefore ensures that:

1. forecasts are made of all the funds circulating through the system;
2. steps are taken to ensure that, as far as possible, inflows and outflows are balanced to enable an appropriate degree of liquidity to be maintained thus avoiding excessive deficits that cannot be financed by normal means;
3. credit and bad debts are controlled properly in order to speed up and maximise cash inflows;
4. the cost of financing short-term deficits is minimized by such means as negotiating beneficial overdraft facilities or, within reason, delaying payments to creditors;
5. the total capital resources of the company are sufficient to meet current and forecast levels of trading;
6. surplus cash resources are invested profitably, both in the shorter and the longer term; and
7. cash inflows and outflows are continuously monitored in order to action the various measures listed above.

BENEFITS

Cash management is a systematic process of ensuring that problems of liquidity are minimized and that funds are managed effectively. It enables the company to recognize the potential dangers of overtrading. Steps can then be taken to modify trading plans to keep them in line with cash resources or, preferably, in an expanding business, to raise the additional capital required before a crisis hits the company.

56. Depreciation

DEFINITION

Depreciation is the allocation of the acquisition cost of plant, property or equipment to the particular periods or products that benefit from the utilization of the assets.

REASON FOR DEPRECIATING ASSETS

Assets are depreciated because if, during the year's operations, some of their life has been used, then this should be taken as a 'cost' in the profit and loss account before declaring a profit. The purpose of depreciation is to remove gradually the cost of the asset from the accounting records by showing it as an operational cost. Financial resources are invested with an expectation of a return *of* that capital. In other words, investors expect that the value of their capital investment will be maintained. If, therefore, a charge is made each year in the profit and loss account to cover depreciation, then there is no reduction in the capital employed. A false profitability figure would result from a failure to charge depreciation on the accounts.

Note that the depreciation process does *not* provide a separate fund to replace the asset at the end of its useful life. The sum allowed for depreciation has been retained in the business, and it is impossible to separate depreciation money from retained profit money. If liquid funds are required for replacements, a separate provision must be made for them by means of a corresponding investment in a cashable security. When examining company accounts, one of the points to look for is that a reasonable and consistent charge for depreciation has been made in the profit and loss account.

METHODS

The two main ways of calculating depreciation are as follows:

1. ***Straight-line method.*** This is the simplest to operate and is done by taking

the cost of the asset, dividing it by the anticipated life of the asset in years and charging the result each year to the accounts. Thus a £10,000 asset with a life of five years will be depreciated at the rate of £2,000 a year.

2. *Reducing-balance method*. This method recognizes that assets such as motor vehicles may depreciate at a greater rate in their early life, and therefore deducts a constant percentage of the asset balance. If 25 per cent were used as the rate for an asset worth £10,000, the depreciation figures would be: year 1 – £2,500; year 2 – £1,875; year 3 – £1,406, etc.

DEPRECIATION AND INFLATION

If depreciation is based on the historical cost of acquiring the asset, then in times of inflation the application of the normal straight-line or reducing-balance methods will not take account of the fact that the current or replacement cost of the asset is higher. As a result, profits may be overstated. The technique of current cost inflation accounting, as defined in Chapter 57, is designed to overcome this difficulty.

57. Inflation Accounting

DEFINITION

Inflation accounting is the technique used to adjust financial accounts to allow for the effect of inflation. Inflation can be defined as a decline in the purchasing power of money due to an increase in the general level of prices.

REASONS FOR INFLATION ACCOUNTING

Financial accounts are the basis on which the success of the business is measured and on which investors can find out whether or not their investment is safe and will produce a reasonable return for them. Financial accounts therefore have a significant effect on the business, and shareholders are particularly interested in them from the point of view of not only obtaining a good return on their investment but also of maintaining the value of that investment. But if this value is expressed in terms of historical costs, without allowing for the impact of inflation, it could be illusory. Hence the need for inflation accounting. These issues are considered in more detail below.

Influence of financial accounts

Financial accounts have a major influence on:

1. the level of dividends declared by the directors;
2. the willingness of investors to risk their capital in the company, ie, to buy or sell shares;
3. the willingness of a potential creditor to lend to the company;
4. the interest displayed by other companies in taking over the company;
5. the agreement of shareholders to the re-election of directors;
6. the basis for company taxation;
7. the attitude of employees and trade unions to the company; and
8. government policies relating to monopolistic practices and price control.

The concept of income and the maintenance of capital

Income is increase in wealth, ie, capital, and invested capital is traditionally regarded as a financial rather than a physical concept. The focus is on the potential profitability of that money invested, no matter what inventory or other capital resources have been acquired.

Financial resources (capital) are invested with the expectation of the return *of* that capital as well as an additional amount representing the return *on* that capital. The expectation is that capital will be maintained, and this happens when revenues are at least equal to all costs and expenses. There are two concepts of capital maintenance.

1. *Financial capital maintenance*. Costs and expenses are measured by the financial resources (usually, historical, ie, original, costs) used up in earning the revenue.
2. *Physical capital maintenance*. Costs and expenses are measured as the amount required to preserve the capacity of the company to maintain previous levels of output of goods or services.

The historic cost illusion

The problem with the financial capital maintenance concept is that it is based on historical costs and, because of inflation, these are illusory. In times of inflation, they can produce misleadingly high levels of profit when current revenues are matched against costs incurred in previous years, and these costs are expressed in historic pounds.

Purpose of inflation-adjusted accounting

The purpose of inflation-adjusted accounting is to restore the principle of matching current revenues with current costs or current purchasing power to the profit and loss account, thus removing the inflationary element from historic cost profit and/or allowing the concept of physical capital maintenance to be adopted.

TECHNIQUES

The two techniques used in inflation accounting are:

1. current purchasing power accounting (CPP); and
2. current cost accounting (CCA).

Current purchasing power accounting

The CPP system adjusts all accounting figures for changes in the index of retail prices between the date of the original transaction and the accounting date, thereby providing an overall adjustment to the accounts for the effects of inflation. This approach is linked to financial capital maintenance in that it meets the needs of proprietors or businessmen and women who seek to preserve the value of their investment and look at accounts to assess its growth. CPP accounting will express incomes, expenditure and costs in 'real' terms, thus avoiding the illusion of growth which is simply a function of the falling value of money.

The problem with the CPP system is the use of an overall index to deflate the accounts when, in practice, the replacement costs of some assets may have changed at a rate which is quite different from the movement in the index of retail prices.

Current cost accounting

The CCA system matches current revenues with the current cost of the resources which are consumed in earning them. Historic cost figures are adjusted individually for the changes in prices which are specific to the physical resources (stock, plant or equipment). This avoids the blanket approach of the CPP system and satisfies the concept of physical capital maintenance, ie, that the capital to be maintained is not the proprietary investment (the financial capital maintenance concept) but the physical resources of the business itself.

Current costs in CCA are usually replacement costs and are therefore based on the assumption that the business will continue in its present form as a 'going concern'. CCA does not, however, show the value of these assets. This can be done if the net realizable value (NRV) concept is used, ie, the amount of money for which an asset can be exchanged in the marketplace (selling price less selling cost). But NRV is not so relevant to a continuing business as the replacement cost concept, and the latter approach is usually adopted in a current value system.

The current cost method separates income from continuing operations from income arising from holding gains. The income from continuing operations is defined as the excess of revenue over the current costs of the assets consumed in obtaining that revenue. Holding gains are defined as increases in the replacement costs of the assets held during the current period. The advocates of a physical concept of capital maintenance claim that all holding gains should be excluded from income and become a part of revalued capital called revaluation equity. The point being made is that for a going concern, no income can result unless the physical capital devoted to operations during the current period can be replaced.

USE OF INFLATION ACCOUNTING

CCA is now only used for internal reporting purposes, both to establish pricing policies and because it provides a more reliable measure of the return on capital employed which can be used to assess the comparative performance of different divisions within a company. Current cost profit and loss accounts and balance sheets can be prepared in addition to the historic cost accounts to provide more insight into the performance of a business in current terms. It might be revealed, for example, that after a period of high inflation a company may have much less to distribute to its shareholders on a current cost basis than if historical costs had been used.

BENEFITS

The main benefit of inflation accounting is that the emphasis on current values provides a more realistic picture on which managerial decisions and the views of investors can be based. It directs attention to real increases or decreases in income by removing the effect of inflation and concentrates the minds of businessmen and women on the need for physical capital maintenance so that the capacity of the business to continue is preserved.

FURTHER READING

Lewis, R, and Pendrill, D, *Advanced Financial Accounting* (3rd edition), Pitman, London 1991.

58. Raising Finance

DEFINITION

Raising finance requires initial decisions on the capital structure of the company. Financing demands a knowledge of the sources of funds and the advantages and disadvantages of each source. Further decisions are then made on the most appropriate method of satisfying either short-term requirements to finance current trading, or medium- and longer-term needs to provide funds for growth, capital investments and acquisitions.

CAPITAL STRUCTURE AND GEARING

When considering capital structure the major consideration is the proportion of debt finance the company should undertake to maintain. This proportion of fixed interest capital to equity or ordinary shares is known as gearing or leverage.

The pursuit of an optimum level of debt as compared with equity finance, while an important consideration, is not necessarily the only one that exercises the minds of financial managers. Some analysts assert that the value of the company cannot depend on the manipulation or distortion of financial policy with regard to the proportion of debt finance, but rather depends upon the investment performance and risk characteristics of the particular enterprise.

Despite these views, however, managements have to make decisions on the level of gearing or leverage they want, and may have to justify these decisions to the shareholders. If preference for debt finance results in a high proportion of fixed interest capital, the company is said to be highly geared. A low-geared company has a high proportion of equity capital.

Advantages of high gearing or leverage

A preference for debt finance and therefore high gearing may be justified for one or more of the following reasons:

1. **The cost of debt capital may normally be expected to be lower than that of equity.**

2. Income-producing assets can be financed without immediate reference to shareholders and therefore without having to justify an increase in equity capital.
3. The creation of new equities may increase the risk of potential loss of control.
4. Earnings per share should be increased if the fixed-interest capital is used to earn a return in excess of the interest charge, and this benefit accrues to the ordinary shareholders of the company.
5. Gearing or leverage increases the value of the company through the tax advantages of debt finance. Interest payment is a tax-deductible expense.

Disadvantages of high gearing

High gearing can be risky, even to the point of bankruptcy, if earnings are not sufficient to cover additional interest costs. This may result in an increase in the equity capitalization rate needed to compensate shareholders for the additional financial risks they must now carry. It is normally desirable to cover interest payments at least three or four times by profit before interest (ie, profit before interest should be three or four times as high as the interest payments).

Many companies take a cautious view of gearing and, while they recognize its advantages, prudently require five times cover and use this as a guide to the maximum amount of fixed interest debt they can incur.

SOURCES OF FINANCE

The main sources of finance available to a company are:

1. short-term borrowing;
2. medium-term finance;
3. longer-term debt capital;
4. convertibles;
5. equity capital; and
6. venture capital.

Short-term borrowing

Short-term (less than one year) funds to finance current trading can be obtained by means of the following:

1. *Trade credit*. Delaying payment for goods received.
2. *Short-term bank lending*. Through self-liquidating loans or overdrafts. An overdraft or, in the USA, a line of credit facility, is relatively cheap and can be used flexibly. It is particularly useful for companies where the demand for and supply of cash fluctuate widely throughout the year.
3. *Bill finance and acceptance credits*. Where the borrower signs a promissory note or trade bill, issued by his or her creditor, for a stated term for repayment

and an appropriate rate of interest. An acceptance credit allows the borrower to draw his or her bill directly on the bank and this bill can be rediscounted or sold in the market, thereby generating immediate cash. Trade or bank bills usually carry a modest interest rate.

4. *Intercompany loans and the interbank market*. Limited facilities exist in the UK for intercompany loans when companies bypass the banking system by placing deposits directly with one another or through a broker. Alternatively, bank money-market lines exist for bank loans for a stated period negotiated at a percentage against the interbank 'wholesale' money-market rate, usually referred to as the London Inter-Bank Offer Rate, or LIBOR.
5. *Commercial paper*. This facility is available in the USA and allows companies to issue fully negotiable paper or promissory notes direct to the public.
6. *Factoring*. A factor purchases his or her client's book debts and, on an agreed maturity date, pays to the client the full value of the approved debt purchased less the agreed service fee of between 1 and 3 per cent of turnover. The factor collects the debts and thus relieves his or her client of sales ledger handling costs. Thus factoring provides a credit facility and can reduce debts.

Medium-term finance

Medium-term finance is provided over a period of one to five or even as many as 15 years by banks, specialist brokers and finance houses. The main sources are as follows:

1. *Term loans*. A business loan with an original maturity of one to five years which is not repayable on demand unless the borrower breaches stipulated conditions. Term loans are usually made to purchase a fixed asset and banks prefer them to be self-amortizing. Such loans can be matched to the expected payback period of an investment.
2. *Hire purchase*. Where the borrower is regarded as a hirer but can purchase the equipment when all instalments have been paid. Interest rates are high.
3. *Leasing*. A method of financing the use of equipment as distinct from financing ultimate ownership. Operating leases are for a period of up to three years and carry a full maintenance service. Contract hire applies to the provision of motor vehicles. A third form of leasing, financial leasing, allows the borrower to acquire the use of an asset on terms which correspond to those obtainable on a medium-term loan, of which it can be regarded as a straight substitute. Leasing at one time offered significant tax advantages in the UK but this is no longer the case, except for companies which may be unable to make full use of their capital allowances to reduce their tax liabilities.

Longer-term debt capital

Longer-term debt capital can be obtained in the following forms:

1. *Loan capital.* Long-term bank loans, mortgages, loan stocks and debentures which constitute a fixed-term debt and usually carry a fixed rate of interest. Loan stocks and debentures are normally secured on the assets of the borrower. Both adequate asset and earnings cover will be expected if a Stock Exchange listing for the debt is sought, and constraints may be placed on the borrower on the use of assets arising under the terms of the security.

   For example, if a debenture is secured by a floating charge on the general assets of the company it may be specified that inventory should not fall below a certain level.
2. *Preference shares.* Shares of the company whose holders rank as non-voting owners with prior rights over ordinary shareholders for the distribution of income or capital. They provide a greater rate of return for shareholders than fixed interest stocks, although with less security. Cumulative preference shares provide the right to receive dividends missed in previous years.

   The disadvantage of this form of finance is that the borrower is committing him or herself to a long-term fixed rate debt, probably at historically high rates of interest.

   Many companies prefer floating rate, medium-term finance or have simply rolled over short-term bank borrowings.

Convertibles

Convertible loans are issues of debt stock, carrying a rate of interest and specified maturity date and giving the holder the right to convert into issues of equity at stated prices. Their value from the point of view of the company is that such issues provide it with relatively cheap, fixed (tax-deductible), interest debt capital. Although convertible into equity at a later date, convertible stock affords for the present a given volume of cheaper, fixed-rate loans. If it is converted in the future, it can be replaced by issues of new convertibles to preserve the gearing rate.

Equity capital

Equity capital normally represents the largest proportion of capital employed by the company. It can be obtained in the following ways:

1. *By internal finance* supplied from retained earnings. This does not require any formal issue of securities to shareholders, but adds to the value of shareholders' securities by the creation of reserves attributable to ordinary shareholders.
2. *By raising finance on the open market* through the issue of new securities in exchange for capital supplied by new shareholders.
3. *By a rights issue* restricted to existing shareholders.
4. *From the unlisted security market* which is an over-the-counter service op-

erated by brokers and designed to facilitate share transactions in small companies. Disclosure from the company and the permission of the Stock Exchange are not needed for each deal.

Venture capital

Venture capital can be raised from or through merchant banks or agencies. Common to all venture capital is the identification by the banker of what he or she considers strong growth potential so that the high risks he or she takes are balanced by the hope of correspondingly high return. Venture capital investment is almost always taken in the form of an equity shareholding of between 5 and 40 per cent, and very often the holding company requires a seat on the board of the client company. This implies a much closer relationship between the two sides than is common between lender and borrower.

The advantage of using venture capital is that smaller companies can gain access to long-term finance without recource to a share issue or without saddling themselves with heavy, fixed-interest payments. A potential drawback to some companies is the loss of a degree of independence because of the direct interest taken by the suppliers of the finance.

CHOICE OF METHODS

The following factors have to be taken into account in choosing a method of raising finance:

1. The term over which it is required.
2. The level of gearing or leverage existing in the company and the policy on the limits to which gearing can be increased.
3. The cost of the finance in terms of interest rates.
4. The degree to which the company wishes to tie itself down with fixed commitments or, put another way, the extent to which it needs to vary its requirements for finance in the short or medium term.
5. The relative tax advantages of different forms of borrowing.
6. The size and reputation of the company (when raising equity finance).
7. The costs of raising finance, eg, the cost of a new issue of securities.
8. The readiness of the company to accept a degree of involvement in its affairs, by providers of venture capital or, in some cases, institutional shareholders.

59. Creative Accounting

DEFINITION

Creative accounting is defined by Michael Jameson (see Further Reading section at the end of this chapter) as the process of 'structuring transactions so as to produce the required financial outcome, rather than allowing accounting to report transactions in a neutral and consistent way'.

Creative accounting operates within the letter both of the law and of accounting standards but is clearly against the spirit of both. It is essentially a process of using the rules, the flexibility provided by the rules and the omissions from those rules to make financial statements look somewhat different from what was intended by the rules.

Some of the main areas in which creative accounting can take place are described below.

FIXED ASSETS

Fixed assets are those assets such as property and plant which have a useful life beyond the current accounting period - they are depreciated over their useful economic life. The amount at which they are shown in the balance sheets will not necessarily represent their value.

Useful economic life

Creative accountants can exercise choice over the length of the useful economic life. If the company wants to maintain its fixed assets in the balance sheet at the highest level it can, then the useful economic life will be as long as possible. If, on the other hand, the company wishes its fixed asset values to reduce quickly, it will choose much shorter lives. As Jameson suggests, 'the useful life decision is taken by determining first, what answer is required and second, by assessing what useful life will give that answer'.

Depreciation method

Different methods of depreciating assets (eg, straight-line, reducing-balance - see Chapter 56) can influence the balance sheet value of an asset. Changing from one method to another can make a significant impact on profits. Terry Smith (see, also, Further Reading section) quotes a major company as having inflated the average growth in profits over the years 1985 - 90 from 14.3 to 16.7 per cent by changing the depreciation method.

CURRENT ASSETS

Legal manipulation when accounting for current assets can take place in the areas of stocks and work-in-progress, debtors and cash.

Stocks

The higher the value of stock at the end of the year, the higher the profit. However, this year's closing stock is next year's opening stock, so a high figure at the end of one year will reduce next year's profits. Massaging stock values from one year to the next will not create profit in the long run but will enable a creative accountant to smooth profits by either boosting one year's profit or hiding an unexpected and embarrassingly high profit in a particular year.

Massaging stock figures can be achieved by varying methods of accounting for stock. For example, stock can be valued at the direct, out-of-pocket cost of its acquisition, or on the basis of the additional costs of getting the stock into place. Indirect labour costs and certain overheads can be included or excluded from the stock valuation.

Stock holdings can be increased deliberately at the end of the year, which allows companies to carry forward production overheads and boost the current year's profits. Alternatively, stocks could be run down to reduce current profit levels. Thus the accounting system will have the effect of advancing or retarding the recognition of profit, and this has the appearance of creating or hiding profit in the short run.

Debtors

The debtors figure in the current assets can be manipulated by adjusting the provision for bad debts. In the short term, a higher provision will hide profits and a lower provision will boost profits. If there has been over-provision for bad debts, profits can be increased in later years by reducing the provision.

In the short run, profit or balance sheet changes between one year and the next can be smoothed by advancing the issue of invoices to boost profits or by delaying their issue to reduce profits.

Cash

Cash holding can be manipulated by varying the timing of payments and receipts. If a company wants to show high levels of cash in the bank at the end of the financial year it will ensure that as many payments as possible are banked before the year end. Profits can also be boosted in one year by delaying payment until after the year end. These are, of course, only short-run devices.

LIABILITIES

Judgement can be exercised on the recognition of liabilities in the balance sheet and there is scope for creativity in moving liabilities off the balance sheet.

Current liabilities

The actual amount due to creditors can be varied according to whether any discounts available have been included or excluded. There is also scope for adjusting the level and timing of accruals (expenses arising from services provided in the current accounting period, the benefit from which has been used in earning the current period's revenue, but which will not be paid for until the following period).

Long-term liabilities

It is often in the interests of a company to show that as many of its debts as possible will become due for settlement as far into the future as can be arranged. Where loans are of an indeterminate duration it may be possible to 'roll them over' into the future, especially where the debts exist between companies in the same group.

Off-balance sheet liabilities

The amount of debt carried by a company can be seemingly reduced by placing debts 'off-balance sheet'. This can be achieved by placing an asset such as property and its associated borrowings in a quasi-subsidiary, in which case it does not appear in the holding company's balance sheet as a separate item.

INCOME

The basis of company accounting is not cash but the accrual system. This means that the income a company receives in a year is not the same as the net increase in its bank account over the year. Its revenue is the value of the goods and services that it has delivered to customers during the year. Cash expected next year is treated as an accrual and included in the current year's profit and loss account.

Accountants have, however, to make assumptions about accruals. Judgement is required. This is especially the case when long-term contracts are involved, and the creative accountant may be able to provide for the sales revenue to increase at a desirable rate (neither too fast nor too slow). It is also possible to manipulate bad debt write-offs by charging them against revenue and thus maintaining gross margin.

This propensity of creative accountants to smooth out profit figures has been encouraged by the City's enthusiasm for steady increases in turnover and profitability without any sudden fluctuations.

EXPENSES

Expenses are deducted from revenue in arriving at profit. To maximize profits and produce favourable price-earnings (P/E) ratios, creative accountants may wish to massage expenses by deferring costs into the future. This can be done by including expenditure in the valuation of stock or work-in-progress and carrying it forward.

Another popular method of deferring costs into the future is to capitalize them, ie, to include them on the balance sheet as fixed assets. This can include intangible assets such as research and development expenditure, goodwill, patents and trademarks.

Other methods for manipulating the level of expenses which go into the profit and loss account include the following:

- *Provisions* for known and anticipated future expenses can be made for the permanent diminution of the value of fixed assets. When more credits are required for the profit and loss account, an accountant who has deliberately overprovided (if the auditors can be persuaded that the amount is reasonable) will be able to argue that the original provision is no longer required and that it should be written back into the profit and loss account.
- *Extraordinary or exceptional items* - earnings per share figures exclude extraordinary items (expenditures which are related to events outside the normal business of the company) but include exceptional items (expenditures which can be expected to occur from time to time but not often). To boost earnings per share and therefore the all-important (to investors) price-earnings ratio, the creative accountant will aim to treat costs as extraordinary rather than exceptional items, thus keeping them out of the calculation. Such manipulation is possible because the dividing line between extraordinary and exceptional items can be imprecise.

CONCLUSION

The existence of creative accounting in the above fields and others such as pre-acquisition write-downs, disposals, brand accounting, pension fund accounting and currency mismatching has been demonstrated clearly by Terry Smith. It flourishes because of the pressure from the City for sustained profitability, and because total precision in the application of the law and accounting standards is virtually impossible in these and other areas. There is often room for judgement, and although auditors are there to ensure that a 'true and fair view' is expressed by the accounts they are not always in a position to challenge the judgements and assumptions made by company accountants.

FURTHER READING

This chapter has been largely based on Michael Jameson's *A Practical Guide to Creative Accounting* (Kogan Page, London 1988) which provides a very clear and detailed exposition of creative accountancy practices. Reference has also been made to *Accounting for Growth* by Terry Smith (Century, London 1992), which illustrates in a compelling way how companies have actually used creative accounting techniques.

60. Management Accounting

DEFINITION

Management accounting provides information to management on present and projected costs and on the profitability of individual projects, products, activities or departments as a guide to decision-making and financial planning.

TECHNIQUES

Management accounting uses the following techniques:

- *Cost accounting*. The recording and allocation of cost data.
- *Cost analysis*. The classification and analysis of costs to aid business planning and control.
- *Absorption costing*. The assignment of all costs, both fixed and variable, to operations or products.
- *Marginal costing*. The segregation of fixed and variable or marginal costs and the apportionment of those marginal costs to products or processes.
- *Standard costing*. The preparation of predetermined or standard costs and their comparison with actual costs to identify variances.
- *Variance analysis*. The identification and analysis of differences between actual and standard costs, or between actual and budgeted overheads, sales and profits, with a view to providing guidance on any corrective action required.
- *Cost-volume-profit analysis*. The study of the relationship between expenses, revenue and net income in order to establish the implications on profit levels of changes in costs, volumes (production or sales) or prices.
- *Profit-volume charts*. Specifically reveal the impact of changes in volume on net income.
- *Break-even analysis*. Indicates the point where sales revenue equals total cost and there is neither profit nor loss. It also shows the net profit or loss that is likely to arise from different levels of activity.
- *Sales mix analysis*. Calculates the effect on profits of variations in the mixture of output of the different products marketed by the company.

- *Financial budgeting*. Deals with the creation of budgets – statements in quantitative and financial terms of the planned allocation and use of the company's resources. The basic form of budget is a static budget, ie, one which assumes a constant level of activity.
- *Flexible budgets*. Take account of a range of possible volumes or activity levels.
- *Zero-based budgeting*. Requires managers to justify *all* budgeted expenditure and not to prepare budgets as no more than an extension of what was spent last year.
- *Budgetary control*. Compares actual costs, revenues and performance with the fixed or 'flexed' budget so that, if necessary, corrective action can be taken or revisions made to the budget.
- *Overhead accounting*. Direct attention to the identification, measurement and control of overheads.
- *Responsibility accounting*. Defines responsibility centres and holds the managers of those areas responsible for the costs and revenues assigned to them.
- *Capital budgeting*. The process of selecting and planning capital investments based on an appraisal of the returns that will be obtained from the investments. The main capital appraisal techniques comprise *accounting rate of return, payback* and *discounted cash flow*.
- *Risk analysis*. Assesses the danger of failing to achieve forecasts of the outcome or yield of an investment.

USES

Objective

The main objective of management accounting is to provide management information which will help managers to optimize their decisions with a view to improving present performance and providing for longer-term profitable growth. Management accounting could therefore be described as the development and maintenance of a management information system.

Principles

In carrying out this task, management accountants are governed by two key principles:

1. *Comparison*. Either of:
   - what has been achieved with what should have been achieved – this is a feedback process designed to point the way to corrective action and improved performance, not simply a stick with which to beat managers; or
   - alternative courses of action with a view to deciding which, on balance, is

the best in terms of cost/benefit, cost-effectiveness or return on investment – this is an evaluative process.

2. *Relevance*. Management accounting as a decision-making tool must only be concerned with relevant data, ie, information that will lead the manager to the best decision. When managers make decisions they are choosing between alternatives in order to predict which one has the best future. Historical costs only help to shape predictions, and the relevant data or costs are the expected future data that will *differ* among alternatives. Any item is irrelevant if it will remain the same regardless of the alternative selected.

Decisions and problem-solving

Management accounting is used to assist in making decisions or in solving problems in the following areas:

1. Long-range planning.
2. Budgetary and financial control.
3. Profitability measurement and analysis and profit improvement planning.
4. Cost reduction.
5. Investment appraisal and portfolio management.
6. Pricing.
7. Make or buy.
8. Product development and product mix.
9. Capacity planning.
10. Distribution planning.

BENEFITS

Management accounting brings together a wide range of quantitative and analytical techniques. By understanding what is available in the way of these techniques and how they can be used, management is placed in the best position to make good decisions and to prepare realistic plans for the future.

FURTHER READING

Drury, C, *Management and Cost Accounting* (3rd edition), Van Nostrand Reinhold, London 1992.
Mott, G, *Management Accounting for Decision Makers* (2nd edition), Pitman, London 1991.

61. Cost Accounting

DEFINITION

Cost accounting is concerned with the classification, recording, allocation and analysis of cost data to provide information for product costing, operational control, inventory valuations and decision-making.

OBJECTIVES

1. *Pricing*. To provide guidance on pricing decisions and to ensure that prices at least cover the costs of developing, manufacturing and selling the products of the company and the costs of administering and financing the firm.
2. *Control*. To provide a basis for controlling expenditure by ensuring that managers are involved in budgeting costs in their departments and have the information which will enable them to control their costs within their budget. Operational control systems provide feedback to production and department managers on the resources consumed (labour, materials, energy, overheads) during an operating period.
3. *Profit management*. To provide information on fixed and variable costs which enables profits and contributions to be forecast and will ensure that profits achieved are measured accurately.
4. *Inventory valuation*. To ensure that inventory is valued correctly and thus provide a basis for the realistic measurement of profit. This involves allocating periodic production costs between goods sold and goods in stock.
5. *Appraisal of alternative courses of action*. To provide information which will help in decision-making concerned with strategic planning, product planning and the appraisal of capital investment projects.

COST ACCOUNTING TECHNIQUES

Cost accounting techniques are concerned with:

1. cost classification

2. costing
3. cost analysis.

Costs need to be classified according to the type of expense (direct or indirect) or behaviour (fixed or variable) and by reference to the product, job or order and the location of the activity incurring the expense. Costing determines product costs by allocating prime costs and overheads to products and provides the basis for analysis, decision-making and control.

COST CLASSIFICATION

Classification of costs by type of expense

This classification distinguishes *direct manufacturing costs*, which are clearly identified with the product, and others. Direct costs are divided into:

- *direct materials*, which form part of the finished product and can be directly associated with it;
- *direct labour*, the labour which contributes to the conversion of the direct material or components into the finished product;
- *direct expenses*, those costs other than material or labour which can be charged direct to the product (eg, the cost of processing the product by a subcontractor); and
- the total of direct material and labour costs plus direct expenses is also known as the *prime cost* of production.

Indirect manufacturing costs cannot readily be identified with the product or ultimate cost unit. Indirect costs consist of:

- *indirect materials*, such as the tools and consumables used in a production department;
- *indirect labour*, such as quality control and inventory control staff, shop cleaners;
- *indirect expenses*, such as rent and rates, depreciation of plant and insurance.

The total of indirect material and labour costs plus indirect expenses is known as the *factory overhead*. *The total product cost* or total manufacturing expense is the sum of prime costs and factory overheads. *Other indirect expenses or overheads* which are incurred on activities or to pay for facilities or services other than connection with production include:

- marketing and selling costs;
- distribution costs - warehousing, depots or transportation;
- research and development costs; and
- administration expenses - the costs of administrative departments such as

finance, personnel and the corporate office, plus any corporate costs such as rent, rates and insurance that cannot be charged directly to manufacturing.

The relationship between these costs is illustrated in Figure 61.1.

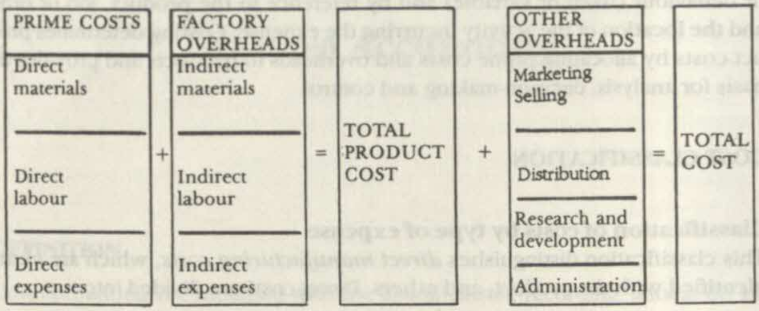


Figure 61.1. *The make-up of total costs*

Classification of costs by behaviour

Costs may be classified into three patterns of behaviour:

1. *Variable*, where the cost varies directly or proportionately to the level of activity. Direct material is an example of a variable cost. In this case the variable cost per unit is constant, irrespective of changes in the level of activity.
2. *Non-variable or fixed*, where the total cost remains unchanged over a period of time regardless of changes in the levels of activity. The most regular fixed cost items are rent and rates, management salaries and depreciation of fixed assets. In these cases the fixed cost per unit will fall as output increases and will rise as output decreases.
3. *Semi-variable*, where the total costs tend to vary with significant changes in activity levels but are fixed at certain levels of activity.

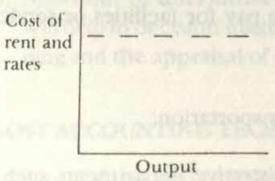


Figure 61.2. *Fixed costs*

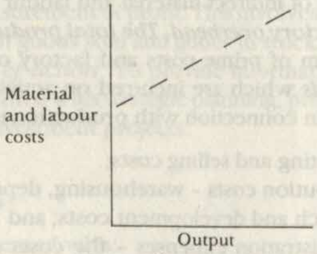


Figure 61.3. *Variable costs*

4. *Stepped*, where there is a significant change in costs at specific activity levels (a type of semi-variable cost). Graphical representations of fixed and variable costs are shown in Figures 61.2 and 61.3 respectively.

Classification of costs by product, order or job

A product, order or job cost is determined by calculating the direct labour and direct material costs. In addition, departmental overheads are allocated in accordance with one of the following measures of activity:

1. direct labour costs
2. direct labour hours
3. machine hours
4. units of product.

Figure 61.4 shows how fixed and variable costs combine to produce total costs.

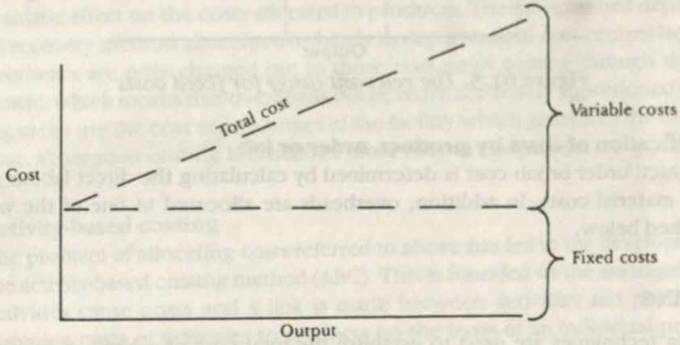


Figure 61.4. *Total costs*

Classification of costs by location

Costs may be classified according to function, department, location or designated cost centre. Directly attributable costs will be allocated to the cost centre and are controllable by the manager of that cost centre. In a fully absorbed costing system, other costs which cannot be attributed directly will be apportioned to departments on some arbitrary basis, eg, building occupation costs might be apportioned on the basis of floor area. Apportioned costs are largely uncontrollable by the departmental manager.

The semi-variable and stepped cost categories exist because costs do behave that way. But when carrying out *cost-volume-profit* (CVP) analysis (see Chapter 68), or preparing break-even charts, it may be necessary to make assumptions as to whether costs are truly variable or whether they should be regarded as fixed for the purpose of the calculation.

It is also necessary to bear in mind the concept of *relevant range* when examining fixed costs. A fixed cost is fixed only in relation to a given period of time - the budget period - and a given, though wide, range of activity called the relevant range. For example, output above a particular range may require more space or extra managerial or supervising staff. This is illustrated in Figure 61.5.

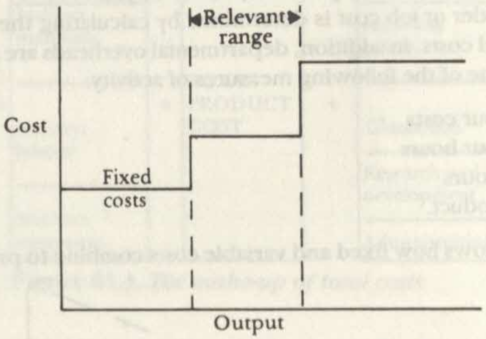


Figure 61.5. *The relevant range for fixed costs*

Classification of costs by product, order or job

A product, order or job cost is determined by calculating the direct labour and direct material costs. In addition, overheads are allocated in one of the ways described below.

COSTING

Costing techniques are used to establish the total cost of a product for stock valuation, pricing and estimating purposes and to enable the company to establish that the proposed selling price will enable a profit to be made. Costing techniques also, and importantly, provide information for control and decision-making. There are a number of approaches to costing which are all based on some form of measurement and take account of the need for overhead recovery.

Cost measurement

Cost measurement involves measuring the direct costs of materials and labour plus the indirect costs (overheads) originating in the factory (factory overheads) and elsewhere in the company (distribution, marketing, advertising, servicing, research and development, purchasing, information systems and administration).

Overhead recovery

Overheads are charged to cost units to provide information on total costs - this process is called overhead recovery. It involves some method of allocating overheads to products on the grounds that all company resources support production and sales - even corporate expenses should be allocated to product costs. There are a number of methods of doing this as summarized below.

Absorption costing

The most widely used method of overhead recovery is called absorption costing and involves allocating all fixed and variable costs to cost units. The global recovery method charges out all overheads to cost units on the basis of the direct labour hours although this can be arbitrary and is certainly flawed in situations where direct labour costs are not a particularly high proportion of total costs. A recent UK study established that direct labour only averaged 12 per cent of total costs in the companies surveyed. This can result in a situation where a very small change in the number of direct labour hours worked can have an unrealistic and dramatic effect on the costs allocated to products. The more refined departmental recovery method allocates overheads to departmental cost centres but these overheads are only charged out to those cost units passing through that cost centre, which means that overheads can be more accurately apportioned according to the use the cost centre makes of the facility which generated the overhead cost. Absorption costing is described more fully in Chapter 62.

Activity-based costing

The problem of allocating costs referred to above has led to the development of the activity-based costing method (ABC). This is founded on the assumption that activities cause costs and a link is made between activities and products by assigning costs of activities to products on the basis of an individual product's demand for each activity. Activity-based costing is treated more fully in Chapter 63.

Marginal costing

Marginal or direct costing (see Chapter 64) segregates fixed costs and apportions the marginal or variable costs to products. It is used, often in association with an absorption costing system, for cost-volume-profit analysis (see Chapter 68) and planning.

Standard costing

Standard costing (see Chapter 65) is the preparation of predetermined or standard costs and their comparison with actual costs to identify variances. Standard costs are used to measure performance and express what a product or activity should cost, not what it actually costs. It is used mainly in mass or large-batch production factories.

COST ANALYSIS

When analysing costs the following concepts need to be considered:

1. The distinction between product costs and period costs.
2. The distinction between total costs and marginal costs.
3. The need for relevance.
4. The use of differential costing.
5. Opportunity cost.

Product and period costs

Product costs are related to goods produced or purchased for resale and are initially identifiable as part of inventory. These product or inventory costs become expenses in the form of cost of goods sold only when the inventory is sold.

Period costs are costs that are being deducted as expenses during the current period without having been previously classified as product costs. The distinction between product and period costs when analysing gross margin and operating profit is illustrated in Figure 61.6.

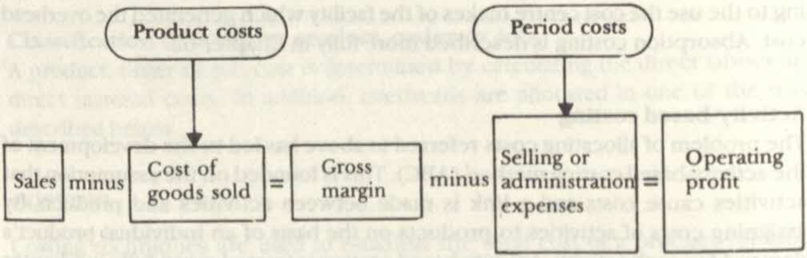


Figure 61.6. *Product and period costs*

Total and marginal costs

If some costs are variable while others are fixed, the total cost per unit of output is representative of only one level of activity. A change in the volume of output will affect the total unit cost, because the fixed costs will spread over a larger or smaller number of units.

Marginal costing recognizes the variability of cost items and differentiates throughout the costing system between the variable or marginal costs and the fixed or period costs.

When calculating the marginal cost of a product, the total of prime cost and variable overheads is computed. The difference between the marginal cost of the product and the selling price is the marginal income or contribution.

Relevance

Cost analysis has to be relevant. It has to provide information that will lead to the best decisions concerning future courses of action when alternatives are available.

Cost analysis is therefore concerned with the expected future data which will influence choices of action. In cost analysis terms, relevance is therefore about the expected future costs of alternatives and is not simply about historical or past data which may have no bearing on the decision.

Differential costing

Differential costing is used in decision-making, which is essentially a process of choosing between competing alternatives, each with its own combination of income and costs. Problems of choice include capital expenditure decisions, make or buy decisions, the length of production runs, sales mix decisions and product planning.

Differential costing is concerned with the effects on costs and revenue of a certain course of action. Differential costs are increases or decreases in total costs, or the change in specific elements of costs that result from any variations in operations. Economists use the term incremental costs for the same concept and define them as the additional costs of a change in the level or nature of an activity.

Differential costing only uses *relevant* costs as defined above. In other words, it eliminates residual costs (usually historical or sunk costs) and concentrates on the costs that will be incurred as a result of company decisions, ie, future costs.

Differential costing is more difficult if an absorption costing system is used because average unit costs produced by such a system include past costs, which are irrelevant to decisions about the future.

Opportunity costs

Opportunity costs represent income forgone by rejecting alternatives. They are therefore not incorporated into formal accounting systems because they do not incorporate cash receipts or outflows. Opportunity costs are, however, very relevant when examining alternative proposals or projects. When deciding whether or not to allocate capital to a project it is highly desirable to consider if the money could produce a better or worse return if invested elsewhere.

BENEFITS

The provision of comprehensive but relevant cost data is an essential component in successful management. The classification of costs as direct or indirect and fixed or variable, and the allocation or apportionment of those costs to products and cost centres is vital to the process of cost-volume-profit analysis. This analysis then provides the basis for output and pricing decisions. The analysis of costs and the provision of cost data are the basis for *responsibility* accounting, in which managers take part in constructing their budgets and are held responsible for any variances that occur which are within their control.

62. Absorption Costing

DEFINITION

Absorption or full costing is the practice of assigning all costs, both fixed and variable, to operations or products. Some absorption costing systems set expenses such as general administration, financial costs and selling expenses against revenue in the profit and loss account so that the outcome is simply the cost of production. In a full historical cost system, however, all administration and sales expenses are also absorbed into production costs.

COST OF PRODUCTION

In an absorption cost system the cost of production consists of:

1. *prime costs* - direct material and direct labour; and
2. *production overheads* - indirect materials and wage costs arising in such areas as stores, packing, maintenance, the salaries of factory managers and supervisors, and the costs of power, heating and lighting and depreciation.

The process of relating these costs to production is called assignment.

The selling value of the goods produced minus the full cost of production is the factory profit.

OVERHEAD ABSORPTION OR RECOVERY

The overhead which is charged to cost units is called absorbed or recovered overhead. Overhead absorption or recovery is achieved by one or a combination of overhead rates, for example, labour hour rate, machine hour rate, direct material costs percentage. The difference between the amount of overhead recovered during a period and the actual overhead incurred is called under- or over-recovered overhead.

The methods used to allocate or assign overheads to production are as follows:

1. *Direct allocation*. Where there is a demonstrable relationship between the

cost and the product to which it is being applied. Such costs may be direct to the cost centre but indirect to the production process. Depreciation and fixed process costs may be treated this way.

2. *By proration and apportionment*. Establishing some basis for apportioning overheads which are not directly related to products. Some aspect of size in the department or production volumes is usually the base, although there is no one generally accepted approach to apportioning overhead costs. Examples of methods used are:

   - dividing the total overhead figure by the number of units produced, but this is too crude as each unit may not be identical and, if so, they should not share indirect costs equally;
   - direct labour hours or costs for the various products or units produced – this is best in a labour-intensive operation, but is the most frequently used method;
   - machine hours where machines dominate, as in a machine shop; and
   - floor space, for power, heat, lighting, rent and rates.

FULL ABSORPTION

For pricing and inventory valuation purposes it is necessary to know the full cost of producing a cost unit. This is not only the prime cost plus factory overheads, which make up the cost of production, but also all the other overheads, which include selling and administration expenses. These overheads are distributed to the cost unit by apportionment and absorption, using one or more of the bases mentioned earlier, eg, direct labour hour rate or machine hour rate. Thus the cost unit is based on the total unit cost inclusive of full overhead recovery. This process is sometimes referred to as the global recovery method.

ADVANTAGES AND DISADVANTAGES

Advantages

The apparent advantage of absorption or full costing is that all the costs are covered. Nothing seems to be hidden away. Absorption costing based on the full recovery of overheads highlights the danger of cutting prices to achieve volume sales without paying enough attention to the need to allow for fixed costs in the longer term. Absorption costing is also recognized by the International Accounting Standards Body as the appropriate method of valuing stocks and work-in-progress.

Disadvantages

The main disadvantages of absorption costing are as follows:

1. The fixed costs are apportioned on the basis of assumptions about the level of output and are, in fact, representative of only one level of activity. A change in the volume of output will affect the total unit cost, since the fixed costs will be spread over a larger or smaller number of units. Overheads are then either under- or over-absorbed and the total cost per unit will have been under- or over-stated. The danger is that once a budget has been prepared on an absorption cost basis with built-in assumptions about the level of activity, the figures which it reveals are likely to continue to be used for pricing and profit planning decisions even though changes in output levels make them invalid. For example, if fixed costs remain unchanged, reduction in output levels will mean they have to be apportioned over a smaller number of units. The factory profit per unit of output will therefore be less. But management may still expect the higher budgeted profit fixed for a larger output figure to apply at the lower level. Their expectations of profit will therefore be too high.

   The concept of operating leverage is relevant to this problem. Operating leverage is the ratio of fixed costs to total costs. The higher this is, the more sensitive overhead recovery is to volume forecasting errors.
2. There is no satisfactory method of allocating indirect fixed expenses to the final product. Arbitrary methods are adopted, usually related to the volume of production (eg, direct labour hours), even though the results obtained from one method in a given circumstance may differ significantly. However, the recently developed technique of activity-based costing aims to overcome this problem (see Chapter 63).
3. Absorption costing does not provide adequate guidance on the relationships between cost, volume and profit or on the pricing decisions which are dependent on these relationships. In other words, absorption costing does not permit the proper analysis of the impact of volume changes on profitability.
4. The full historical method of costing, which absorption costing becomes if all overheads are charged or allocated to each unit of cost, is based on the cost when it is incurred. There is no reference to possible changes in price if the product is to be produced in the future. The adoption of a historical basis for assessing expenses can have a misleading effect if the costs are required to tell management whether or not it is worth while continuing production of a particular product. The difficulty of changing prices is particularly relevant in the case of materials whose prices vary considerably over short periods of time.

OTHER APPROACHES

The disadvantages listed above refer mainly to the global recovery method which aggregates all overheads then charges them out to cost units according to the direct labour hours going into each product. The more refined departmental overhead recovery method is used by many larger firms with diversified products and production systems. This involves charging out all overheads to operational cost centres when they arise. These operational cost centres then charge out their overheads but only to those cost units passing through that cost centre.

Another recently developed approach to costing is activity-based costing as described in Chapter 63. This aims to provide better management accounting information for product costing, decision support and cost control purposes. It may be used in conjunction with a global overhead recovery system which provides financial accounting information for valuing inventory.

In addition, some companies use marginal costing, as described in Chapter 64, to help them make decisions which allow for volume and price changes. But they will continue to use some form of absorption costing as the main method of recording historical costs (ie, costs that have already been incurred) and valuing stocks and work-in-progress.

63. Activity-Based Costing

DEFINITION

Activity-based costing (ABC) systems are based on the belief that activities cause costs and that a link should therefore be made between activities and products by assigning costs of activities to products based on an individual product's demand for each activity.

RATIONALE

The concept of activity-based costing was developed by Robert Kaplan and Robin Cooper from the Harvard Business School.[1,2] They argued that managers in companies selling multiple products are making important decisions about pricing, product mix and process technology based on distorted cost information.

The reason for this distortion is that the traditional method of allocating factory and corporate overheads by burden rates on direct labour (absorption costing or global overhead recovery) was designed several decades ago when overhead costs were relatively small and distortions arising from arbitrary overhead allocations were not significant. This was especially the case in the typical situation where a company was making a limited range of products and the costs of direct labour and materials, the most important production factors, could be traced easily to individual products. Today, however, product lines and marketing channels have proliferated. Direct labour now represents a relatively small proportion of corporate costs, while expenses covering factory support operations, marketing, distribution and engineering have exploded.

In any case, the resources consumed by products are unrelated to direct labour costs. Costs are therefore allocated to products in ways which are not connected to actions taken within a cost centre.

Some companies have recognized the declining role of direct labour and use two additional allocation bases – materials-related expenses and machine hours or processing time. According to Kaplan and Cooper, however, this still does not guarantee that the allocation of overheads will not distort product costs, and cost centre managers may not get the control information they need.

As a result, decisions on pricing and product mix are being made on the basis of inaccurate data. Profits are frequently understated on high-volume products and overstated on speciality items. A further problem is that cost centre managers do not get the right information for controlling their costs. Operating costs are reported too late and are too aggregated to benefit production cost centre managers.

One reason for this reluctance to trace overheads to products and allocate costs more accurately according to the use of resources was that the expense of collecting data made it hard to justify more sophisticated allocation procedures. However, information costs are not longer a barrier. And for operations under computer control (see Chapter 40), digital data is easily captured to record what, when and how much was produced. Automatic bar-code reading of parts combined with local area networks permit continual tracking of parts and operatives. Cost control systems can record these data and provide frequent, accurate reports on output and resource consumption.

A further reason for the reliance on traditional methods is that they were originally designed for inventory valuation which, in accordance with financial accounting principles, requires manufacturers to allocate periodic production costs to all items produced. For this purpose, an aggregated, simplistic method of assigning overhead costs to products is quite acceptable - accountancy principles do not require that allocated overhead costs be casually related to the demands of individual products.

But as Kaplan argues, cost system designers have failed to recognize that their systems need to address three different functions:

- Inventory valuation for financial and tax statements, allocating period production costs between goods sold and goods in stock.
- Operational control, providing feedback to production and department managers on the resources consumed (labour, materials, energy and other services) during an operating period.
- Individual product cost measurement.

Kaplan and Cooper argue that no single system, especially one based on the aggregate allocation of overheads, can adequately cover all three functions. The traditional method of allocation is appropriate for inventory valuation but is inadequate as a means of providing data for operational control and product pricing. They therefore suggest that an additional system - activity-based costing - should be used for these purposes.

THE PHILOSOPHY OF ACTIVITY-BASED COSTING

The assumption underpinning activity-based costing (ABC) is that virtually all of a company's activities exist to support the production and delivery of goods and services. They should therefore all be considered product costs. And because nearly all factory and corporate support costs are separable, they can be split apart and traced to individual products or product families.

On the basis of this assumption, the philosophy of activity-based costing is that costs can be controlled more effectively by focusing directly on managing the forces that cause the activities - the 'cost drivers' - rather than cost.

The reporting of the costs consumed by the significant activities of a business, and their cost drivers, provides the basis for understanding what causes overhead costs and directs attention to where steps can be taken to improve profitability. Knowing the high costs of material movements, or the cost of producing many different components or maintaining many different machines, highlights the need to carry out these activities more effectively.

Thus activity-based costing provides better, more accurate, information for decision-making on prices and product mix, and for the control of manufacturing operations.

DEVELOPING AN ACTIVITY-BASED COSTING SYSTEM

The steps required to develop an activity-based costing system are as follows:

1. Identify the main activities performed in the organization, such as manufacturing and assembly, as well as support activities, including purchasing, packing and despatching.
2. Identify the factors which influence the cost of each activity - the cost drivers.
3. Collect accurate data on direct labour and material costs and on the costs of each of these factors.
4. Establish the demands made by particular products on activities, using the cost drivers as a measure of demand.
5. Trace the cost of activities to products according to a product's demand for each activity.

The rules developed by Kaplan and Cooper for this process are:

- focus on expensive resources, thus directing attention to resource categories where the new costing process has the potential to make big differences on product costs;
- emphasize resources whose consumption varies significantly by product and product type - look for diversity; and
- focus on resources whose demand patterns are uncorrelated with traditional allocation measures, such as direct labour, materials and processing time, thus identifying resources with the greatest potential for distortion under traditional systems.

This process cannot be done with surgical precision, but, as Kaplan and Cooper say:

> It is better to be basically correct with activity-based costs, say within 5 or 10 per cent of the actual demands a product makes on organizational resources, than to be precisely wrong (perhaps by as much as 200 per cent) using outdated allocation techniques.

ABC may not be appropriate for all companies, particularly those where overheads are relatively small and which do not produce a wide range of products. But many of the benefits of ABC can still be obtained by implementing a partial system which focuses only on the most important activities.

Nor should the method be used to produce monthly profit statements. Traditional methods can be used for that, leaving ABC to support strategic decision-making, profitability analysis and the control of manufacturing costs.

BENEFITS

Activity-based costing ensures that management accounting information is not merely a by-product of external financial accounting systems. While it provides a more accurate basis for calculating product costs, perhaps its greatest benefit is that it is a mechanism for managing costs. It is in this area of cost management and resource planning, rather than product costing, that ABC has the greatest potential.

In particular, the benefits of ABC are that:

- the cost-driver rates established by the system can be used to measure activity performance and efficiency and provide a more suitable basis for budgeting;
- accurate feedback can be provided to cost centre managers on their performance based on their consumption of resources during a period rather than the allocations of costs over which they have no control; and
- the provision of accurate information on product costs enables better decisions to be made on pricing, marketing, product design and product mix.

REFERENCES

1. Kaplan, R, 'One cost system isn't enough', *Harvard Business Review*, January–February 1988, pp. 61–66.
2. Cooper, R, and Kaplan, R, 'Measure costs right: make the right decisions', *Harvard Business Review*, September–October 1988, pp 96–103.

FURTHER READING

Drury, C, *et al.*, *A Survey of Management Accounting Practices in UK Manufacturing Companies*, Chartered Association of Certified Accountants, Glasgow 1993.

64. Marginal Costing

DEFINITION

Marginal or direct costing divides costs into fixed and variable costs. The latter tend to vary in total, in relation to output, and are regarded as marginal costs. Marginal costing first segregates fixed costs and then apportions the marginal costs to products or processes.

Marginal costing may be incorporated into the system of recording and collecting costs or it may be used as an analytical tool for studying and reporting on the effects of changes in volume and type of output. Where it is incorporated into the system of recording and collecting costs, stocks are valued at variable costs, while fixed costs are not charged to production but are instead written off to the profit and loss account in the year in which they are incurred.

Marginal costing is also sometimes called variable costing.

BACKGROUND TO MARGINAL COSTING

The background to the marginal costing concept is the marginal theory in economics which refers to the ambition of the entrepreneur to expand his or her business at the point where the additional cost of producing one more unit equals the additional revenue from selling it. The reason for this is that, as output increases, the pressures of demand and supply will cause prices and wages, and therefore costs, to increase. As more units are produced which need to be sold, prices will have to be reduced to ensure their disposal. This increase in cost and reduction in revenue will mean that, eventually, the additional cost of producing one more unit will be exactly the same as the additional revenue from selling it. No further profits will therefore be made and it will no longer be in the interests of the company to continue production.

Marginal costing is known as direct costing in the USA where it was developed in the 1930s to overcome the distortion caused by fluctuations in the level of stocks, and to eliminate the problem of the volume variance where there are large seasonal variations in the level of sales.

MAKE-UP

Marginal cost

Marginal cost comprises material, labour and expenses, plus variable works, administration and selling expenses.

Contribution

Sales revenue minus marginal cost equals the contribution or margin. This indicates the amount which sales of the product contribute to the fixed expenses of the enterprise and to profit, thus highlighting the fact that until those fixed expenses have been covered, no profit has been made.

Comparison of full, or absorption, and marginal costing

The distinction between full and marginal costing for a product is illustrated in Table 64.1.

Table 64.1. *Comparison of full and marginal costing*

		Full cost		*Marginal cost*	
	p	*p*	*p*	*p*	*p*
Sales price			50		50
Direct material costs		5		5	
Direct labour costs		3		3	
Direct expenses		2		2	
Prime cost		10		10	
Works expenses					
Fixed	8				
Variable	4	12		4	
		22			
Administration expenses					
Fixed	6				
Variable	—	6		—	
Cost of production		28			
Selling expenses					
Fixed	10				
Variable	6	16		6	
Total of above costs and expenses			44		20
Net profit			6		
Margin or total contribution					30
Contribution to fixed costs				24	
Contribution to profit				6	

USES

Marginal costing has the following uses:

1. *Cost-volume-profit analysis.* It is an essential tool in *cost-volume-profit analysis.* It demonstrates the relationships between cost and volume and, therefore, the effect on profit of a change in volume. Thus it assists in making decisions on selecting products, outlets and markets.
2. *Relationship between fixed costs and profits.* It highlights the significance of fixed costs on profits. It indicates whether or not, in a highly competitive situation, it may well be wise to take an order which covers marginal costs and makes some contribution towards fixed costs, rather than lose the order and the contribution by insisting upon a price above full cost.
3. *Contribution analysis.* The analysis of the contribution per unit each product makes towards fixed or current period costs and profit leads to the preparation of statements showing the total contribution each product class has made towards the recovery of period costs. These statements may be further refined by deducting any discretionary or separable period costs (ie, costs such as annual tooling and product advertising) which should be avoided if the product line were dropped.
4. *Sales mix decisions.* These can be made by analysing the respective contributions of each product line after charging separable period costs.
5. *Overcoming the volume variance problem.* The problems of volume variance in a standard absorption costing system are overcome. In absorption costing, the under- or over-absorbed fixed production overhead is represented by the volume variance. In businesses with large variations in stock levels and a high ratio of fixed costs this approach can lead to serious distortions in the profit figures. It is perfectly possible in these circumstances for profits to decline when sales increase and vice versa, and it is hard to explain with absorption costing what is happening or why. Profit planning and control are therefore made more difficult. With the marginal costing approach, stocks are valued at variable cost and there is no volume variance. Consequently, the relationship between sales volume and contribution is much easier to explain and understand.
6. *Make-or-buy decisions.* These are best taken with full knowledge of the marginal or variable cost of making rather than buying a product. But it is also helpful to know through marginal costing what contribution to fixed costs will result from a 'make' decision.
7. *Limiting factor decisions.* Decisions on which orders to accept have often to be made when plant is being operated at capacity. The order to be accepted is the one that marginal costing shows will make the highest contribution per unit of the limiting factor. For example, if labour were the limiting factor, the

product to be chosen for production would be the product which yields the largest contribution per unit of labour employed.

8. *Pricing decisions*. The marginal cost approach to pricing decisions recognizes that decision-making is about choosing between competing alternatives, each with its own combination of income and costs. The relevant concepts to employ are therefore future incremental costs and revenues and opportunity costs, not full costs, which include historical or sunk costs. The marginal approach answers the question 'What will happen to profits if the selling prices of particular products are raised or lowered?' With marginal pricing, the company seeks to fix its prices so as to maximize its total contribution to fixed costs and profit. This is achieved by considering each product separately and fixing its price at a level which is calculated to maximize its total contribution.

ADVANTAGES AND DISADVANTAGES

Advantages

Marginal costing systems are simple to operate and do not involve the problems of overhead apportionments. Fluctuations in profits are easier to explain because they result from cost-volume interactions and not from changes in inventory. Marginal costing emphasizes the contribution made by sales to fixed cost recovery and profit and clarifies decision-making in many key areas of management accounting where volume and product mix and pricing considerations are important.

Disadvantages

Marginal costing diverts attention from full costs, especially in the longer term. But in the long run it is important to have an understanding of the full cost of a product to the company, since the company must make sufficient contribution from all products to cover fixed costs and provide an adequate return on capital employed. In the short term, it may be desirable to price products below full cost as long as the price covers the variable cost and makes some contribution. But it is important to know what the implications of such decisions are on fixed cost recovery at the time they are made. Marginal pricing can lead to danger if it is indulged in too readily and without proper foresight.

CONCLUSION

Marginal costing is an essential tool for cost-volume-profit analysis and planning. It is often operated as such in association with an absorption costing system which provides information on full costs for longer-term control and for the valuation of stocks in financial accounts.

65. Standard Costing

DEFINITION

Standard costing is the preparation of predetermined or standard costs, their comparison with actual costs to identify variances, and the analysis of variances to determine causes and to decide on any corrective actions required.

A standard is the required value of an item, given current capacity and working methods. Standards are developed by analysis for each of the cost components in a product. The total of these components is the total standard cost of the product.

USE

Standard costs are used to measure performance. They express not what a product or activity actually cost, but what it should have cost.

In theory, standard costs are the real costs of the product and can properly be used as a means of charging production and, therefore, for valuing work-in-progress and finished stocks. Any deviation from standard is said to be the result of inefficiency, excessive waste or some other abnormal condition and is chargeable only to the period in which it is incurred.

METHOD

Basic approach

Standards are set after a careful analysis of the job, the methods which are used and the efficiency of performance. Detailed standards are often only established for the two major elements of cost: direct labour and direct materials, and all other costs are controlled with the help of departmental overhead budgets. Before setting direct labour or direct material standards, however, it is necessary to decide on the type of standards to be used.

Types of standards

The two main types of standards are:

1. *ideal or perfection standards*, which are expressions of the absolute minimum costs possible under the best conceivable conditions, using existing specifications and equipment; and
2. *currently attainable standards*, which are those that can be attained by very efficient operations.

Currently attainable standards are most commonly used because:

- they do not demotivate employees by setting almost unachievable goals, as ideal standards do; and
- they provide a more realistic basis for cash budgeting, inventory valuation and departmental budgets.

Direct labour standards

Direct labour standards consist of two elements – standard time and standard pay:

1. *Standard time*. The standard time to produce a limit of output is based on standard hours. Work study is used to determine the standard work output for an average worker working at an average pace. This average output per working hour is the standard hour, which gives the labour content of a cost unit expressed as standard time (hours or minutes) per unit. In departments with a number of products all units of hours are expressed in terms of the standard input of hours allowed for their production. Standard hours thus become the common denominator for measuring total volume.
2. *Standard pay*. Stated as the hourly wage rate.

The unit labour cost is calculated by multiplying the standard time per unit by the standard hourly pay rate.

Direct material standards

Direct material standards are built up by:

1. establishing the price per unit of each material or ingredient used in manufacturing the product;
2. working out the standard usage of each of those materials or ingredients in manufacturing one unit of the product; and
3. multiplying price per unit by standard usage to obtain the standard material cost per unit.

Make-up of standard unit costs

The standard unit cost is the standard labour cost per unit plus the standard material cost per unit. To this are added the variable expenses or overheads which are recovered on a basis such as so much per labour hour. The standard costs plus standard variable expenses give the total variable costs. If fixed costs are added, the total cost per unit is obtained as set out in the example of a standard cost profile in Table 65.1. This profile includes variable and fixed overheads for which standards are also required.

Table 65.1. *Standard cost profile*

	Per unit £
Direct materials	6.00
Direct labour	2.00
Variable expenses	.70
Variable costs	8.70
Fixed costs	.30
Total costs	9.00
Profit	1.00
Sales price	10.00

OVERHEADS

Overhead standards are set on the basis of an estimate of the activity levels in the coming period. They are split into the part that varies in relation to changes in output, and the part which remains fixed - a variable overhead and a fixed overhead component. Overheads are applied as a standard rate per unit of output on the basis of direct labour or machine hours or direct material.

VARIANCE ANALYSIS

Variance analysis is the technique of analysing the difference between planned and actual costs.

Variances for labour or material are either price (wages or ingredients) or quantity (standard hours or material usage). Differences between standard and actual overhead rates are expressed as volume, cost or efficiency variances.

Variance analysis is treated in more detail in Chapter 66.

BENEFITS

Standard cost systems are used to overcome some of the weaknesses of historical cost accounting which only provides information on what costs have been, gives no indication of what costs ought to be, and only allows managers to compare present performance with past results. The information provided by a standard cost system is used to promote cost control and improve managerial efficiency.

66. Variance Analysis

DEFINITION

Variance analysis identifies differences between actual and standard costs or between actual and budgeted overheads, sales and, ultimately, profits. The reasons for variances are then established to provide guidance for any corrective action required.

CLASSIFICATION OF VARIANCES

The classification of variance headings and the reasons why variances occur are shown in Figure 66.1.

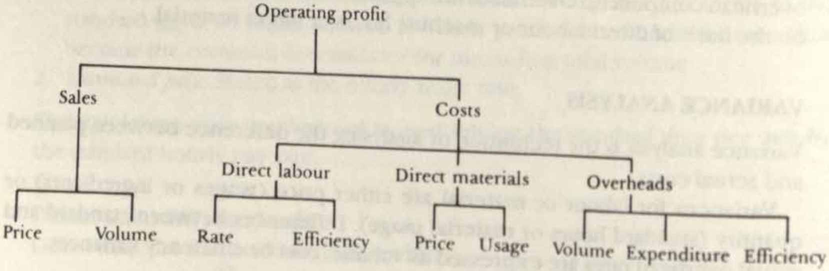


Figure 66.1. *Classification of variances*

OPERATING PROFIT VARIANCE

Operating profit is revenue less current expenses. Variances in operating profit are caused either by sales revenue being above or below budget or because of positive or negative variances under the headings of direct labour, direct materials and overheads.

SALES VARIANCE

Sales variance is the difference between the budgeted value of sales and the actual value of sales achieved in a given period. Sales variances may be caused by a sales price variance or a sales volume variance. The latter is subdivided into sales quantity variance and sales mix variance.

Sales price variance

Sales price variance is that portion of the sales variance which is due to the difference between the actual value of sales (actual quantity × actual price) and the actual quantities sold, valued at standard price. In other words, it is the difference between the actual price at which the product was sold and the standard or budgeted price. .

Sales volume variance

Sales volume variance is that portion of the sales variance which is due to the difference between the actual quantities sold and the standard quantity specified. It can be subdivided into two types of variance:

1. *Sales quantity variance*. That portion of the sales volume variance which is due to the difference between actual and budgeted units sold. Under absorption costing, these variances are valued at the standard unit profit, and under marginal costing they are valued at the standard unit contribution.
2. *Sales mix variance*. That portion of the sales volume variance which is due to differences between the actual and the standard or forecast composition of the sales mix, ie, the proportions of each type of product sold.

DIRECT LABOUR AND MATERIAL VARIANCES

Direct labour

Direct labour variances are classified as follows:

1. *Labour rate variance*. The difference between the actual and budget/standard hourly rate of pay applied to the actual hours paid. This is the price variance for labour costs.
2. *Labour efficiency variance*. The difference between the actual working and standard hours to produce the actual output. This variance can be subdivided into:
   - labour productivity variance – the variance caused by the standard mix of labour producing more or less than expected;
   - labour mix variance – the variance caused by differences between the

- proportions of the different grades of labour actually used and the budgeted or standard proportions; and
- labour idle time variance – the difference between budgeted hours paid and actual hours worked; this difference is idle time, which will have been budgeted at zero, so that any idle time causes an adverse variance.

Direct materials

Direct materials variances are classified as follows:

1. *Materials price variance*. The difference in unit prices between standard/budget and actual applied to the actual quantity of materials used.
2. *Materials usage variance*. The materials quantity variance; the variance arising from using more or fewer units of material input than budgeted/standard to produce the actual quantity of units. This variance can be subdivided into:
   - materials yield variance – that part of the materials usage variance arising from the materials process loss being different from budget/standard; and
   - materials mix variance – that part of the materials usage variance arising from the proportion in which materials are used being different from the budgeted standard proportions.

Interrelationships

The interrelationships between price (or rate) and quantity (efficiency or usage) variance is illustrated in Figure 66.2. In this example, the rectangle represents standard costs whose sides represent standard price and standard quantity. Both variances are adverse. The upper right-hand area is treated as a price variance so that the analysis of the quantity variance can concentrate on the factors other than price which produced it.

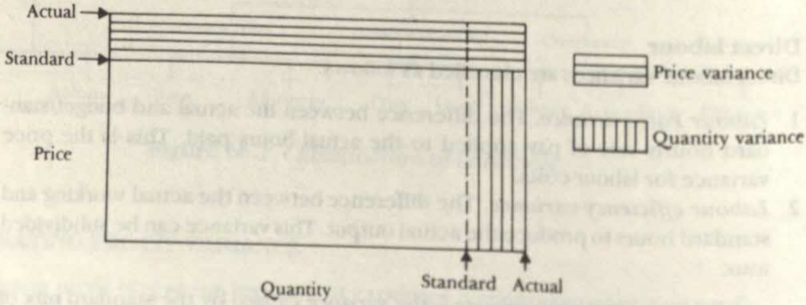


Figure 66.2. *Interrelationship between variances*

OVERHEAD VARIANCES

Overhead variances are classified thus:

1. *Volume*. The overhead quantity variances arising from the volume against which overheads are recovered being different from standard/budget.
2. *Expenditure*. The overhead price variances arising because of a difference between standard/budget overhead expenditure in the month and actual expenditure applied to the actual recovery volume.
3. *Efficiency*. That part of the volume variance arising from labour productivity variances when overheads are recovered against labour hours.

BENEFITS

Variance analysis is a key part of control especially when it is based on properly measured standards. It uses the management by exception principle which means that problems are brought into prominence so that action can be taken where it is most needed, and efforts are made directly where they can produce the best results.

67. Cost-Volume-Profit Analysis

DEFINITION

Cost-volume-profit (CVP) analysis studies the relationships between expenses (costs), revenue (sales) and net income (net profit). The aim is to establish what will happen to financial results if a specified level of activity or volume fluctuates, ie, the implications on profit levels of changes in costs, volume of sales or prices.

USES

CVP analysis is used to study the effects of changes in volume on variable costs, and the relationship between profit and volume (the profit-volume or P/V ratio). It answers the key question: 'What effect would increases or decreases in one or more of labour cost, material cost, fixed costs, volume of sales have on profits?' CVP analysis is used in profit planning and as a guide to making tactical decisions on sales effort and prices.

CONCEPTS AND TECHNIQUES

CVP analysis combines the following management accounting concepts and techniques:

1. the variable and fixed elements of cost;
2. profit-volume (P/V) ratio analysis;
3. differential costing;
4. break-even analysis;
5. margin of safety ratio; and
6. sales mix analysis.

Variable and fixed costs

1. *Variable costs* vary directly with the level of business activity and are constant per unit of production.

2. *Fixed costs* remain constant over a particular period of time, whatever the level of business activity, within a given, though wide, range known as the relevant range.

Profit-volume ratio

The profit-volume or contribution ratio is sales revenue minus variable costs (contribution) divided by sales revenue. It shows the rate at which profit increases or decreases with an increase or decrease in volume.

Differential costing

Differential or incremental costing measures the effects on total costs that result from any changes in operations. In CVP analysis it is used to assess the impact of alternative decisions about activity volumes on fixed or variable costs and on contribution or profit. Differential costing can be linked with *sensitivity analysis*, which takes an overall look at the effect of different assumptions, including activity levels and costs, on profit levels.

Break-even analysis

Break-even analysis shows the point at which sales revenue is just sufficient to cover total costs, ie, the number of units which must be sold before the company begins to earn a profit.

Margin of safety ratio

The difference between actual or budgeted sales and break-even sales is known as the margin of safety. The margin of safety ratio, therefore, indicates the extent to which sales volume could decrease before profits would disappear, other things being equal. In other words, the margin of safety represents that proportion of sales which determines the profits of the company.

Sales mix analysis

Sales mix analysis establishes the effects of changes in the sales mix on cost-volume-profit relationships. When a sales mix is chosen it can be shown on a P/V or break-even chart by assuming average revenues and costs for a given mix.

METHOD

CVP analysis combines the concepts and techniques listed above by initially:

1. establishing the fixed and variable costs related to products;
2. calculating the relationship between sales volume and revenue by reference to actual or assumed unit prices;

3. working out the profit-volume (P/V) ratio by calculating contribution (sales revenue minus variable cost) as a proportion of sales revenue;
4. using differential costing and sensitivity analysis to assess the impact of alternative decisions on activity levels on costs and profits;
5. drawing up break-even charts which establish the point at which sales begin to produce profits;
6. deducing from the break-even analysis the margin of safety ratio to indicate the levels of profit as different volumes of sales above the break-even point; and
7. determining the cumulative or combined effect of each product on profitability to assess the effects of changes in the product mix.

The outcomes of each of the above analyses are then linked to answer such questions as follows:

- What sales revenue must be achieved to recover fixed costs?
- By what percentage can current sales drop before the margin of safety is exhausted and break-even point is reached?
- How will profits be affected by different levels of sales?
- What level of sales revenue must be achieved to reach profit targets?
- What are the implications of increases or decreases in costs per unit or fixed costs on profits?
- What is the optimum mix of products from the point of view of probability?
- What effect will price changes have on profits (on the basis of assumptions about the impact of such changes on demand and therefore revenue)?

BENEFIT

The benefit of CVP analysis is that it highlights the key factors that affect profits and enables the company to understand the implications of changes in sales volume, costs or prices. This knowledge of cost behaviour patterns and profit-volume relationships provides insights which are valuable in planning and controlling short- and long-run operations.

68. Profit-Volume Charts

DEFINITION

Profit-volume (P/V) charts show the impact of changes in volume on net income.

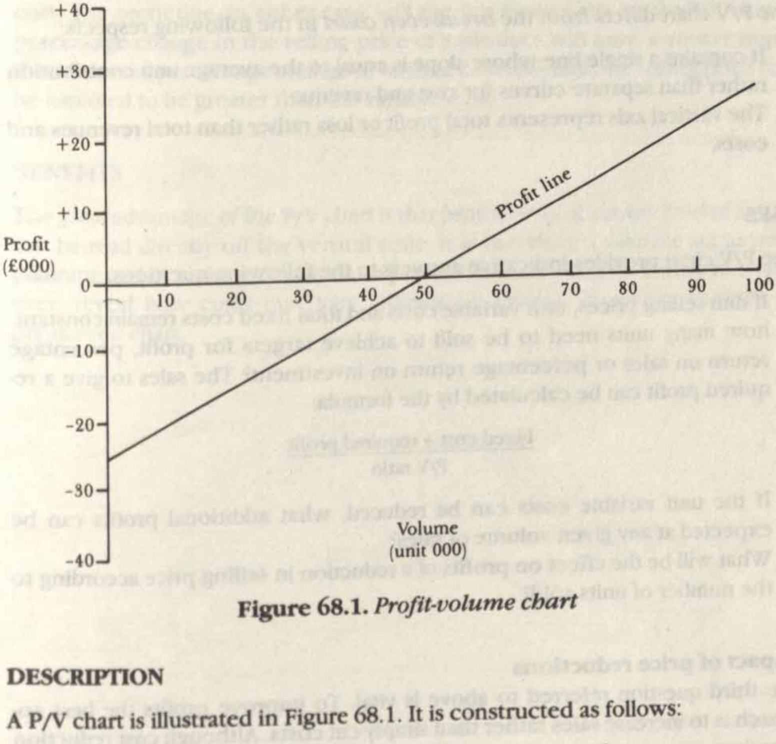


Figure 68.1. *Profit-volume chart*

DESCRIPTION

A P/V chart is illustrated in Figure 68.1. It is constructed as follows:

1. The vertical axis represents total profit (net income) or loss.
2. The horizontal axis represents volume in units.

3. Unrecovered fixed costs are shown as losses below the horizontal axis, and at zero volume the net loss equals total fixed costs, of £25,000 in this example.
4. The profit line slopes upwards from the intercept with the vertical axis at a loss of £25,000.
5. The profit line intercepts the horizontal volume axis at the break-even point of 50,000 units. This is where sales minus variable costs (ie, total contribution) equals fixed costs.
6. Each unit sold beyond the break-even point will contribute to profits (total costs being completely recovered). In this example, every 10,000 units sold above the break-even point adds £5,000 to profits.
7. The P/V ratio represents the slope of the profit line on the profit-volume chart. It is the ratio at which profit increases/decreases with an increase/decrease in volume and is given by the formula:

$$P/V = \frac{\text{Sales} - \text{variable costs (total contribution)}}{\text{Sales}}$$

The P/V chart differs from the *break-even chart* in the following respects:

1. It contains a single line whose slope is equal to the average unit contribution rather than separate curves for cost and revenue.
2. The vertical axis represents total profit or loss rather than total revenues and costs.

USES

The P/V chart provides indicative answers to the following questions:

1. If unit selling prices, unit variable costs and total fixed costs remain constant, how many units need to be sold to achieve targets for profit, percentage return on sales or percentage return on investment? The sales to give a required profit can be calculated by the formula:

$$\frac{\text{Fixed cost} + \text{required profit}}{\text{P/V ratio}}$$

2. If the unit variable costs can be reduced, what additional profits can be expected at any given volume of sales?
3. What will be the effect on profits of a reduction in selling price according to the number of units sold?

Impact of price reductions

The third question referred to above is vital. To improve profits the best approach is to increase sales rather than simply cut costs. Although cost reduction exercises are part of a profit improvement plan they should not be the only resource – if profits cannot be increased by more sales then the future of the product or even the company is in doubt.

One way of increasing sales is to reduce prices. But there are three limitations on the effectiveness of this action:

1. If the demand for the product is inelastic, volume will not respond to changes in price and the only result will be lower profits.
2. Even if greater quantities can be sold at a lower price any advantage gained will be lost if competitors retaliate by lowering their prices as well.
3. While sales volume may increase with reductions in price, it may not increase sufficiently to overcome the handicap of selling at a lower price.

Demand analysis and assessments by the marketing department can establish the degree to which the first two limitations apply. The third limitation can be dealt with by use of the P/V chart. A reduction in the selling price of a product has the same general effect on the marginal contribution as an increase in the variable cost. The profit line, in either case, will rise at a slower rate on the P/V chart. A percentage change in the selling price of a product will have a greater impact than the same percentage change in variable costs because the selling price must be assumed to be greater than the variable cost.

BENEFITS

The great advantage of the P/V chart is that profits or losses at any level of activity can be read directly off the vertical scale. It is therefore a valuable aid to profit planning and to making decisions on pricing and sales targets. It does not, however, reveal how costs may vary following a change in activity as does the break-even chart.

69. Break-even Analysis

DEFINITION

Break-even analysis is a method for identifying the relationships between costs, volume of output and profit. It indicates the break-even point, the point where sales revenue equals total cost (the sum of fixed and variable costs) and there is neither profit nor loss. Profits are made if revenue exceeds this point while a loss is incurred if revenue falls below it.

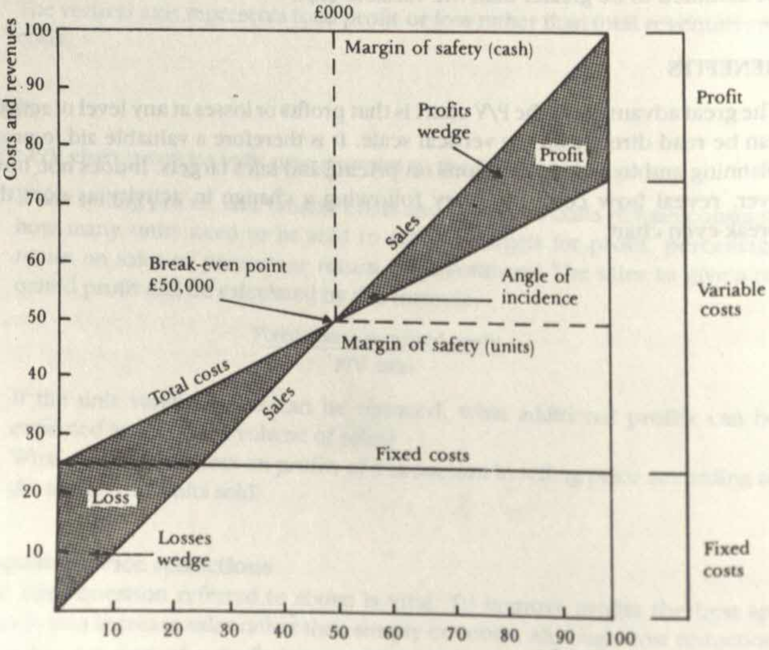


Figure 69.1. ***A break-even chart***

THE BREAK-EVEN CHART

Break-even analysis is carried out by means of a break-even chart, which is illustrated in Figure 69.1 and shows:

1. variable costs in relation to sales units or output added to fixed costs to produce total costs;
2. sales revenue in relation to number of units sold;
3. the break-even point where the sales revenue line crosses the total cost line;
4. the profit and loss wedges above and below the break-even point respectively;
5. the margin of safety in sales units or cash, ie, the extent to which sales volume or revenue exceeds the break-even point; and
6. the angle of incidence – the angle at which the sales revenue line crosses the total cost line. The aim of management will be to achieve as large a range of incidence as possible, since this gives a correspondingly high rate of profit once the break-even point has been passed.

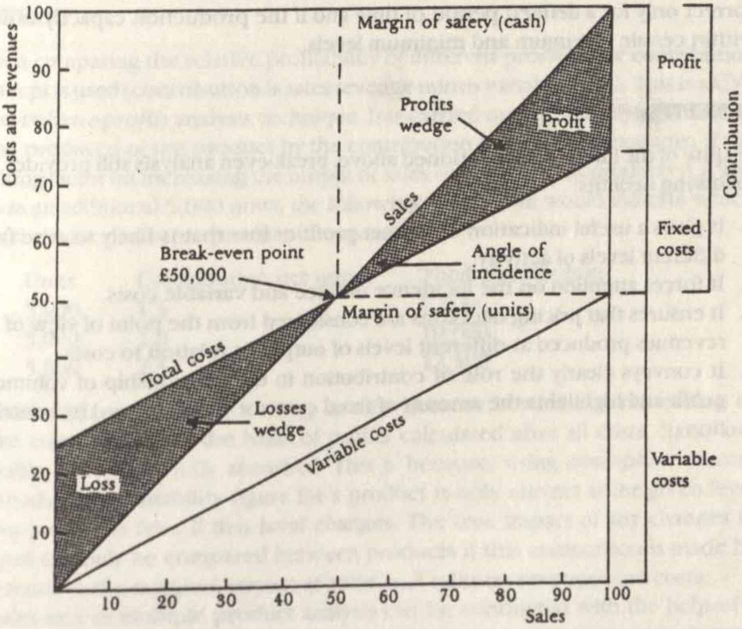


Figure 69.2. ***Break-even chart showing contribution***

An alternative method of drawing a break-even chart is shown in Figure 69.2. This clearly indicates the contribution to fixed costs and profits achieved above the break-even point. There are a number of assumptions built into break-even charts, which are often unrealistic. These can limit their usefulness. The main assumptions are:

1. the variable costs associated with producing the various levels of output are constant and can be represented by a straight line. This is linked to the assumption that volume is the only factor affecting variable costs and all other factors (eg, wage levels and the cost of materials) remain unchanged;
2. the fixed costs remain constant over the range of output;
3. the selling price per unit is constant (ie, no discounts) making sales revenue a straight line;
4. production and sales are equal and there are no significant changes in inventory levels; and
5. there is only one product or, if there is more than one product, a constant sales mix exists over the whole range.

It has also to be remembered that the picture presented in a break-even chart is correct only for a defined period of time and if the production capacity is used within certain maximum and minimum levels.

BENEFITS

In spite of the limitations mentioned above, break-even analysis still provides the following benefits:

1. It gives a useful indication of the net profit or loss that is likely to arise from different levels of activity.
2. It forces attention on the incidence of fixed and variable costs.
3. It ensures that pricing decisions are considered from the point of view of the revenues produced at different levels of output in relation to costs.
4. It conveys clearly the role of contribution in the relationship of volume to profit and highlights the amount of fixed cost not yet recovered by contribution.

70. Sales Mix Analysis

DEFINITION

The sales mix is the combination of quantities of a variety of company products that comprise total sales. Sales mix analysis calculates the effect on profits of variations in the mixture of output of the different products.

METHOD

When comparing the relative profitability of different products the contribution concept is used (contribution is sales revenue minus variable costs). This is a CVP (*cost-volume-profit*) analysis technique. It is carried out by multiplying the units to be produced of the product by the contribution per unit. For example, if the limiting factor on increasing the output or sales of three related products A,B and C was an additional 5,000 units, the following calculation would indicate which was the most profitable product to expand:

	Units	Contribution per unit	Total contribution
A	5,000	1.5	7,500
B	5,000	2.0	10,000
C	5,000	2.5	12,500

Contribution or *marginal costing* is used because it would be misleading to make comparisons on the basis of profits calculated after all costs, fixed and variable, have been fully absorbed. This is because, using *absorption costing* methods, the profitability figure for a product is only correct at the given level of output and is false if that level changes. The true impact of any changes in output can only be compared between products if this comparison is made by reference to the marginal impact of additional sales on revenues and costs.

Sales mix or multiple product analysis can be conducted with the help of a P/V (*price-volume*) *chart* as in the following example of a two-product company:

1. The unit contribution margin for product A is £1 and for product B £2.

2. Fixed costs are £100,000.
3. The break-even point, $\frac{\text{Fixed costs}}{\text{Contribution margin}}$, is therefore 100,000 units if only B is sold.
4. If the planned mix is three units of A for each unit of B the contribution margin for this package of products will be $(3 \times £1) + (1 \times £2) = £5$.
5. The average contribution margin per unit of product would be £5 divided by four units in each package = £1.25.
6. The break-even point, assuming that the mix is maintained, is: £100,000 ÷ £1.25 = 80,000 units (consisting of 60,000 units of A and 20,000 of B).

These relationships are illustrated in Figure 70.1. The slopes of the solid lines show the unit contribution margins of each product.

The slope of the broken line shows the average contribution. If a target of 160,000 units is achieved consisting of 120,000 units of A and 40,000 of B, the profit (net income) would be £100,000. However, if the mix changes and the

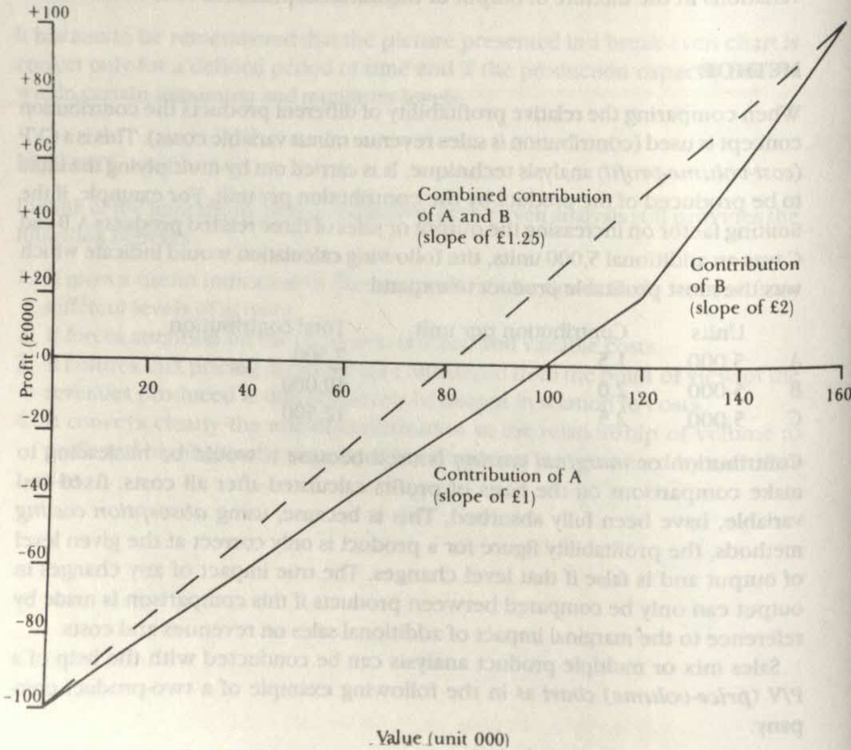


Figure 70.1. *Sales mix shown on a P/V chart*

sales of B are higher than expected, net income increases. Selling a higher proportion of A would have the opposite effect. When the sales mix changes, the break-even point and the expected profits at various levels of sales are altered.

THE LIMITING FACTOR CONCEPT

Sales mix analysis can be used when a limiting factor or constraint applies. A limiting factor is a factor in the activities of an undertaking which at a point in time over a period of time will limit the volume of output. It is frequently sales potential, but it may be a limitation in plant, skilled labour or floor space.

The limiting factor concept deals with a single constraint. For example, if the constraint is plant capacity and a choice has to be made in a batch production factory of the priority between jobs, the contribution each job will make can be divided by the machine hours and the jobs ranked according to contribution per machine hour.

If there are more constraints *linear programming* techniques may have to be used.

BENEFITS

Sales mix analysis helps management to make decisions on changes in sales and production policies. These decisions are made on the basis of comparisons between the contribution to profit and fixed cost made by different combinations of products, especially when limited factors apply.

71. Financial Budgeting

DEFINITION

Budgeting deals with the creation of budgets: statements in quantitative and usually financial terms of the planned allocation and use of the company's resources. Budgets are usually prepared annually, but may be updated during the year.

PURPOSE

Budgets are needed for three reasons:

1. To show the financial implications of plans.
2. To define the resources required to achieve the plans.
3. To provide a means of measuring, monitoring and controlling results against the plans.

THE PROCESS OF BUDGETING

The process of budgeting is shown in Figure 71.1. The components of this process are as follows:

1. *The corporate plan*, which has defined the longer-range objectives of the company in terms of return on shareholders' investments, return on capital employed and growth in revenue and profits. The annual budget can be regarded as the first year of the long-range financial plan. The corporate plan will include capital investment plans and the research and development programme.
2. *Forecasts* of the sales revenue that can be obtained in the coming financial year, accompanied by forecasts of the capital and research and development expenditure that will be needed to achieve the forecasts. The sales forecast will have been made with the help of market research and will take into account both likely demand and any limiting factors or constraints in such

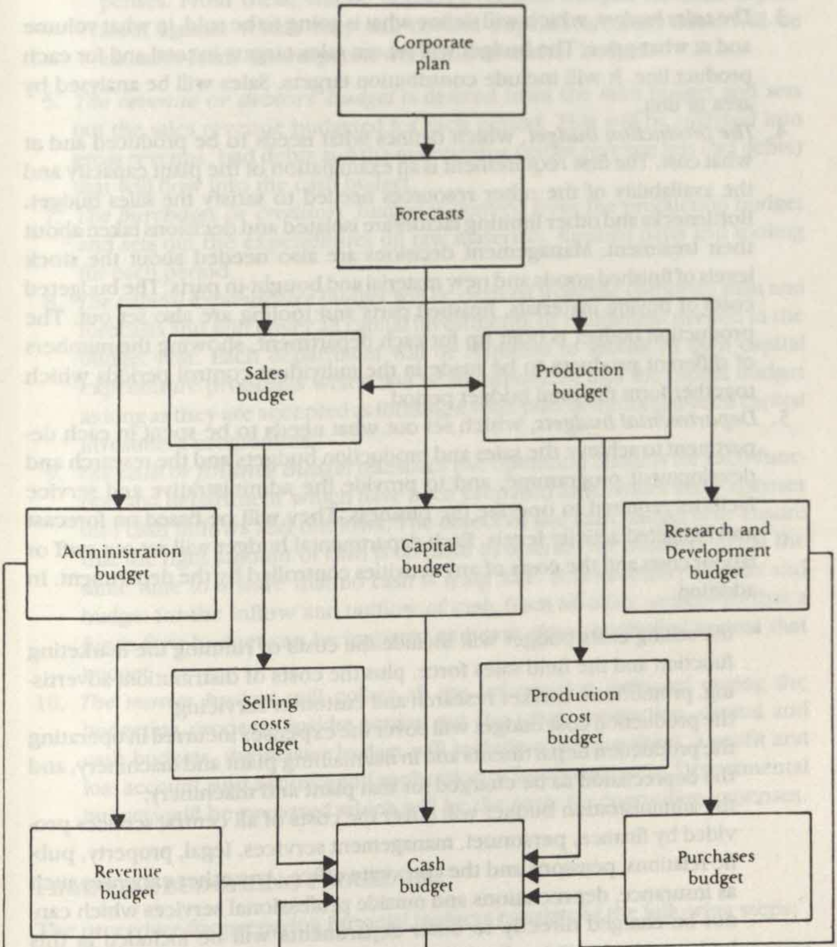


Figure 71.1. *The budgeting process*

areas as production capacity. It will be the mainspring for the rest of the budget.

3. *The sales budget*, which will define what is going to be sold, in what volume and at what price. The budget will set out sales targets in total and for each product line. It will include contribution targets. Sales will be analysed by area or unit.
4. *The production budget*, which defines what needs to be produced and at what cost. The first requirement is an examination of the plant capacity and the availability of the other resources needed to satisfy the sales budget. Bottlenecks and other limiting factors are isolated and decisions taken about their treatment. Management decisions are also needed about the stock levels of finished goods and new material and bought-in parts. The budgeted costs of buying materials, finished parts and tooling are also set out. The production budget is built up for each department, showing the numbers of different products to be made in the individual control periods which together form the total budget period.
5. *Departmental budgets*, which set out what needs to be spent in each department to achieve the sales and production budgets and the research and development programme, and to provide the administrative and service facilities required to operate the business. They will be based on forecast and budgeted activity levels. Each departmental budget will set out staff or labour costs and the costs of any activities controlled by the department. In addition:

   - the selling costs budget will include the costs of running the marketing function and the field sales force, plus the costs of distribution, advertising, promotions, market research and customer servicing;
   - the production cost budget will cover the expenses incurred in operating the production departments and in maintaining plant and machinery, and the depreciation to be charged for that plant and machinery;
   - the administration budget will cover the costs of all central services provided by finance, personnel, management services, legal, property, public relations, pensions and the corporate office. Any other expenses such as insurance, depreciations and outside professional services which cannot be charged directly to other departments will be included in this budget, which will be divided into sections for each service department or area; and
   - the research and development budget will cover all the research and development expenses of the company, including the operation of research establishments, the costs of buying external research and the costs of any materials used.

   The departmental budgets will be analysed into the direct costs incurred in buying in materials and finished parts, the departmental expenses or overheads and the central or corporate overheads and expenses. From these will be devised overhead budgets for each department against which they will control expenditure, and these will be added to form the corporate overhead or master budget.

6. *The revenue or debtors' budget* is derived from the sales budget and sets out the sales revenue budgeted for each period. This will be analysed into gross revenue, bad debts and the net revenue (gross revenue less bad debts) that will flow into the cash budget.
7. *The purchases or creditors' budget* is derived from the production budget and sets out the expenditures on raw materials, finished parts and tooling for each period.
8. *The capital expenditure budget* will be derived from the corporate plan and forecasts and will cover all capital investments or equipment needed in the budget year. Each department will be required to submit its own capital expenditure proposals which will be incorporated into the capital budget as long as they are accepted as forming a valid part of the longer-term capital investment programme.
9. *The cash or finance budget* translates the operating budgets for each function and department which have been prepared as revenues and expenses into cash inflows and outflows. The object of the cash budget is to ensure that the right amount of cash is on hand to operate the business, yet at the same time to ensure that no cash is lying idle. It is necessary to plan and budget for the inflow and outflow of cash from all other sources so that a funds flow budget can be prepared and cash flows controlled against that budget.
10. *The master budget* will collate all the information prepared during the budgeting process. Besides setting out the sales, production, capital and cash budgets, the master budget will include a balance sheet, a profit and loss account, and a source and application of funds statement. Departmental budgets will be prepared which will be the basis for controlling expenses.

FINANCIAL BUDGETING PROCEDURE

The procedure for preparing financial budgets consists of the following steps:

1. *Budget guidelines* are prepared which have been derived from the corporate plan and forecasts. These will include sales and output targets and the activity levels for which budgets have to cater.

   Policies will be set out on the profit margins or contribution to be achieved and the ratios to be met, eg, return on capital employed, overheads to sales revenue, bad debts to sales revenue, stock to sales, stock to current assets, current liabilities to current assets.

Finally, the assumptions to be used in budgeting are given. These include rates of inflation and increases in costs and prices.

2. *Initial budgets* are prepared by departmental managers with the assistance of budget accountants where possible and necessary. Changes to previous budgets which are not in line with changes in activity levels or assumptions on inflation and cost or price increases have to be justified. These departmental budgets are checked by higher management to ensure they meet the guidelines.
3. *Functional and departmental budgets* are collated and analysed to produce the master budget. This is reviewed by top management who may require changes at departmental level to bring it into line with corporate objectives for profitability and growth.
4. *The master budget* is finally approved by top management and budget packs are issued to each departmental or budget centre manager for planning and control purposes.

BENEFITS

Budgets translate policy into financial terms, which in business is the only way in which, ultimately, policies can be expressed. It is certainly the only basis upon which control can be exercised as described in Chapter 74.

72. Flexible Budgets

DEFINITION

A flexible budget is one that takes account of a range of possible volumes. It is sometimes referred to as a multi-volume budget. The range of possible outputs may be known as the relevant range. 'Flexing' a budget takes place when the original budget is deliberately amended to take account of changed activity levels.

REASON FOR FLEXIBLE BUDGETS

A static budget, as described in Chapter 71, is prepared for only one level of activity, eg, volume of sales. This means that both fixed and variable costs are assumed to remain constant at any level of activity. Fixed may do so, but variable costs, by definition, will not, as is shown in Figure 72.1. Because the actual

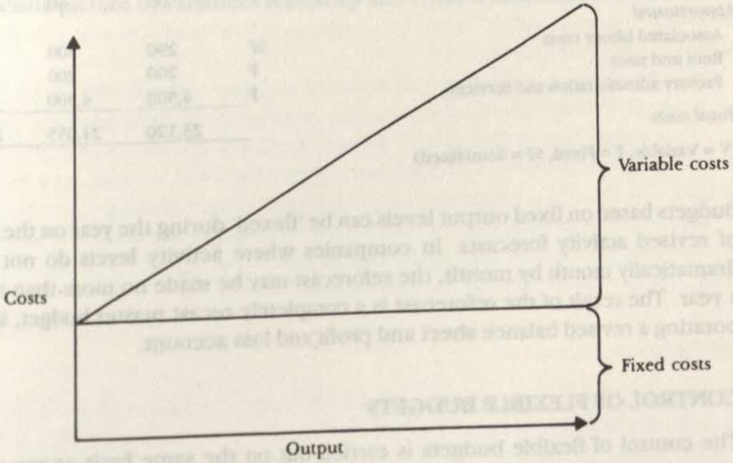


Figure 72.1. *Relationship of total costs to output*

output will almost certainly be different from the budgeted output, the original budget will be inaccurate. It is therefore necessary to 'flex' budgets to reflect different levels of output – assumed or actual.

PREPARATION OF FLEXIBLE BUDGETS

Flexible budgets are prepared by assuming different levels of output or activity and preparing cost and overhead budgets for each level. For example, in an assembly shop, activity levels, if a standard costing system is used, would be expressed in standard hours and the activity level would be expressed as a percentage of the standard hours achieved. Thus, the targeted standard hours would be shown as 100-per-cent activity level. A weekly budget for such an assembly shop is shown in Table 72.1.

Table 72.1. *Weekly flexible budget for assembly shop*

PERFORMANCE			**Budget**	
Standard hours produced		2,850	3,000	3.150
Activity %		95	100	105
COSTS				
Directly allocable		£	£	£
Direct materials	V	3,700	4,000	4,300
Direct labour	V	11,400	12,000	12,600
Indirect labour	F	2,750	2,750	2,750
Tools and consumables	V	50	55	60
Power	V	20	30	30
Repair materials and labour	V	150	160	170
Depreciation of plant	F	60	60	60
Apportioned				
Associated labour costs	SF	290	300	310
Rent and rates	F	200	200	200
Factory administration and services	F	4,500	4,500	4,500
Total costs		23,120	24,055	24,980

(V = Variable, F = Fixed, SF = Semi-fixed)

Budgets based on fixed output levels can be 'flexed' during the year on the basis of revised activity forecasts. In companies where activity levels do not vary dramatically month by month, the reforecast may be made no more than twice a year. The result of the reforecast is a completely recast master budget, incorporating a revised balance sheet and profit and loss account.

CONTROL OF FLEXIBLE BUDGETS

The control of flexible budgets is carried out on the same basis as any other control process, ie, actuals are compared with budget to show any variances.

The budget with which the actuals are compared, however, is the adjusted budget based on achieved activity levels. In a standard costing system these would be shown as standard hours produced. Table 72.2. is an example of a departmental operating statement which shows the original budget for a performance of 3,000 standard hours compared with the adjusted budget for a performance of 3,150 standard hours, an activity ratio of 105 per cent. The actual costs recorded are compared with the adjusted budget to indicate favourable or unfavourable (in brackets) variances.

Table 72.2. *Departmental operating statement*

	Original budget £	**Adjusted budget** £	**Actual cost** £	**Variances** £
Direct materials	4,000	4,300	4,400	(100)
Direct labour	12,000	12,600	13,000	(400)
Variable overheads	245	260	240	20
Fixed overheads	2,750	2,750	2,750	—
Depreciation of plant	60	60	60	—
Apportioned costs	5,000	5,010	5,010	
	24,055	24,980	25,460	(480)

BENEFITS

Flexible budgetary control overcomes the major disadvantage of fixed budgeting, which is that it does not allow for almost inevitable variations in activity levels which will affect costs. If such allowances are not made, a completely unrealistic picture of variances is built up and control cannot be overcome.

73. Zero-Base Budgeting

DEFINITION

Zero-base budgeting is a technique that requires budget managers to re-evaluate all their activities completely in order to decide whether they should be eliminated, or funded at a reduced, similar or increased level. Appropriate funding levels, from zero to a significant increase, will be determined by the priorities established by top management and the overall availability of funds.

BASIS

The traditional approach to budgeting tends to perpetuate commitments that had their origins in the past. This practice begins with the past level of expenditures as a base and concentrates on projected increases or decreases from that base. Only a small portion of the budget is analysed, rather than close scrutiny being made of every part of it. The minds of managers concentrate only on justifying increases rather than on challenging the need for any function or activity in its present form.

The term 'zero-base' does not mean that everybody's position is automatically 'zeroed', or that operations and structure must again be built from the ground up. This would be unrealistic. But it does demand a systematic evaluation and review of all activities and programmes, current as well as new, on a basis of output as well as cost, emphasizing managerial decision-making. The approach recognizes that, ultimately, the production of a budget is a matter of assessing priorities against margin and profit targets, and in the light of an analysis of the costs and benefits of alternative approaches.

METHOD

Zero-base budgeting covers all activities, although it would not be necessary to include direct labour if standard costs are used. For each activity the basic elements or decision units are defined and each unit is analysed to establish:

1. its objectives;
2. the activities carried out;
3. the present costs of these activities;
4. the benefits resulting from each activity;
5. the standards and other performance measures that exist;
6. alternative ways of achieving objectives, and the priorities between them; and
7. the advantages and disadvantages of incurring different levels of expenditure.

BENEFITS

Zero-base budgeting is no panacea and it has often failed because companies have introduced over-elaborate procedures which have sunk almost without trace in a sea of paperwork. But the approach is right: cost control is about challenging and justifying proposed expenditures as well as monitoring what has actually been spent. The most elaborate control system in the world is useless if it relates to an unsound base. Zero-base budgeting techniques can and should be used to develop an attitude of mind on the part of managers to the examination and control of all their activities. They should not be used in a threatening way. The emphasis should be on their value in getting priorities right and ensuring that costs and benefits are thoroughly reviewed to the advantage of all concerned.

74. Budgetary Control

DEFINITION

Budgetary control compares actual costs, revenues and performances with the budget so that, if necessary, corrective action can be taken or revisions made.

PRINCIPLES OF CONTROL

The five principles of control are:

1. *plan* what needs to be achieved;
2. *measure* regularly what has been achieved;
3. *compare* actual achievements with the plan;
4. *take action* to correct deviations from the plan; and
5. *feed back* results to amend the plan as required.

APPLICATION TO BUDGETARY CONTROL

The application of these principles to budgetary control requires the following:

1. *A budget* for each cost centre which sets out under each cost heading (to which a cost code will have been attached) the budgeted expenditure against whatever activity levels have been built into the budget.
2. A system of *measurement* or recording which allocates all expenditures to the current cost code and cost centre and records the activity levels achieved.
3. A system for *comparison* or reporting which sets out actuals against budgets and indicates the positive and negative variances that have occurred. This system of comparison must ensure that performance reports are available quickly to the right person and are presented in such a way that variances are immediately identifiable.
4. A procedure for *acting* on the control information received. This requires reports to higher management on what is being done to deal with variances.
5. A procedure for *feeding back* changes in activity or performance levels or

revised forecasts so that the budget guidelines can be amended and budgets updated.

The process is illustrated in Figure 74.1.

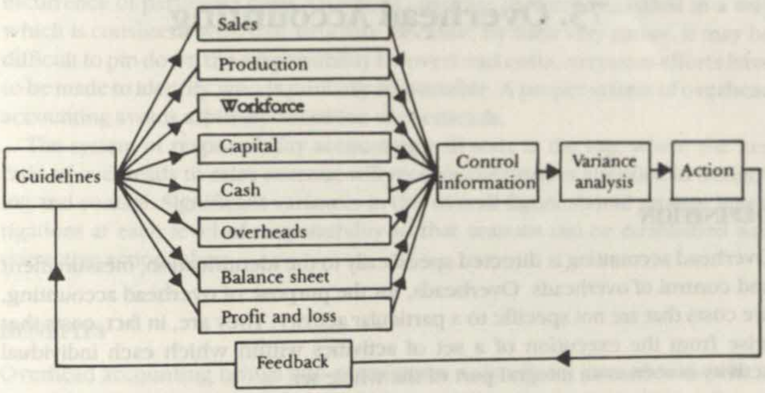


Figure 74.1. *The process of budgetary control*

BENEFITS

Budgetary control is the only basis on which performance can be monitored and, consequently, improved. It will not work effectively, however, unless:

1. the budget is based on adequate forecasts and assumptions;
2. the budget is realistic – the targets are not so high as to be unattainable or so low as to be meaningless;
3. control information clearly specifies deviations or variances;
4. control information goes to the right people who are responsible for the results and will analyse variances and can take action; and
5. steps are taken by higher management to ensure that variances are analysed and reported on and that corrective action is planned, implemented and successful.

Note, however, that what has been described in this chapter and in Chapter 71 on financial budgeting, is a static budgeting system which is based on predetermined activity or volume levels. But these volumes change, and many assumptions about the incidence of variable costs and the amount and allocation of overheads or expenses included in the original budget will no longer be valid. A system for 'flexing' budgets, ie, adjusting them in the light of actual or forecast changes in activity levels, is required. This was described in Chapter 72.

75. Overhead Accounting

DEFINITION

Overhead accounting is directed specifically to the identification, measurement and control of overheads. Overheads, for the purpose of overhead accounting, are costs that are not specific to a particular activity. They are, in fact, costs that arise from the execution of a set of activities within which each individual activity is seen as an integral part of the whole set.

PRINCIPLES OF OVERHEAD ACCOUNTING

The following principles apply to overhead accounting:

1. Overhead cost accounting is done for two reasons:
    - Analysis of existing operations for cost control purposes and to ensure that costs are minimized for any given level of output.
    - Analysis for making economic decisions which will govern alterations to the existing operational system.
2. Overheads should only be analysed for specified accounting units and over a defined period of time.
3. No overhead analysis can be relevant by itself for all decisions and control purposes. The analysis will provide information and guidance, but the ultimate decision may have to take into account other factors in the internal and external environment of the company.
4. Overhead accounting should only concern itself with relevant costs, ie, those costs that will be affected in the future by current decisions (this approach is also termed incremental costing). Historical costs provide a base for projections into the future but are not relevant in themselves.

OVERHEAD CONTROL

Overhead control is a matter first of identifying overheads and then of defining responsibility for those overheads. An overhead cost is only controllable if the manager concerned can influence the level of cost incurred.

Overhead control is thus achieved by introducing a system of *responsibility accounting* which is related to the decision-making structure that influences the incurrence of particular costs. Overhead costs are therefore classified in a way which is consistent with that structure. Because, by their very nature, it may be difficult to pin down the responsibility for overhead costs, strenuous efforts have to be made to identify who is primarily responsible. A proper system of overhead accounting avoids arbitrary allocation of overheads.

The system of responsibility accounting will start at the top, where the key ratio of overheads to sales revenue will receive continuous attention in budgeting and control. Significant variances in this overall figure should prompt investigations at each level of responsibility so that reasons can be established and corrective action taken.

BENEFITS

Overhead accounting brings into prominence a significant area of costs which it is often difficult to control. This problem typically arises because the overheads are not classified accurately and responsibility for their control is diffuse. Overhead accounting aims to overcome these defects.

FURTHER READING

Drury, C, *Management and Cost Accounting*, (3rd edition), Van Nostrand Reinhold, London 1992.

76. Responsibility Accounting

DEFINITION

Responsibility accounting defines responsibility centres throughout the organization. The managers of each of these centres are held responsible for the costs and revenues assigned to them.

The three main areas of responsibility covered are:

1. ***cost centres*, where only costs are reported formally. They are the smallest segment of activity or area of responsibility for which costs are accumulated. Typically, cost centres are departments, but a department may contain several cost centres;**
2. ***profit centres*, where costs and revenues are reported formally. They are usually segments of a business responsible for the sales and profits of a product line; and**
3. ***investment centres*, where there is a formal reporting of revenues, expenses and related investment. Their success is measured not only by their income but also by relating that income to their invested capital. Typically, a whole business or subsidiary can be treated as an investment centre.**

BASE

Responsibility accounting is based on four principles.

1. Objectives

The overall objectives of the business are divided and subdivided into the objectives of each of its constituent parts, expressed as profit, contribution or cost. This is illustrated in Figure 76.1.

2. Controllable costs

Responsibility accounting excludes or segregates costs which are not controlled directly by the manager. For example, in a machine shop the level of waste is directly controllable but the rent is not.

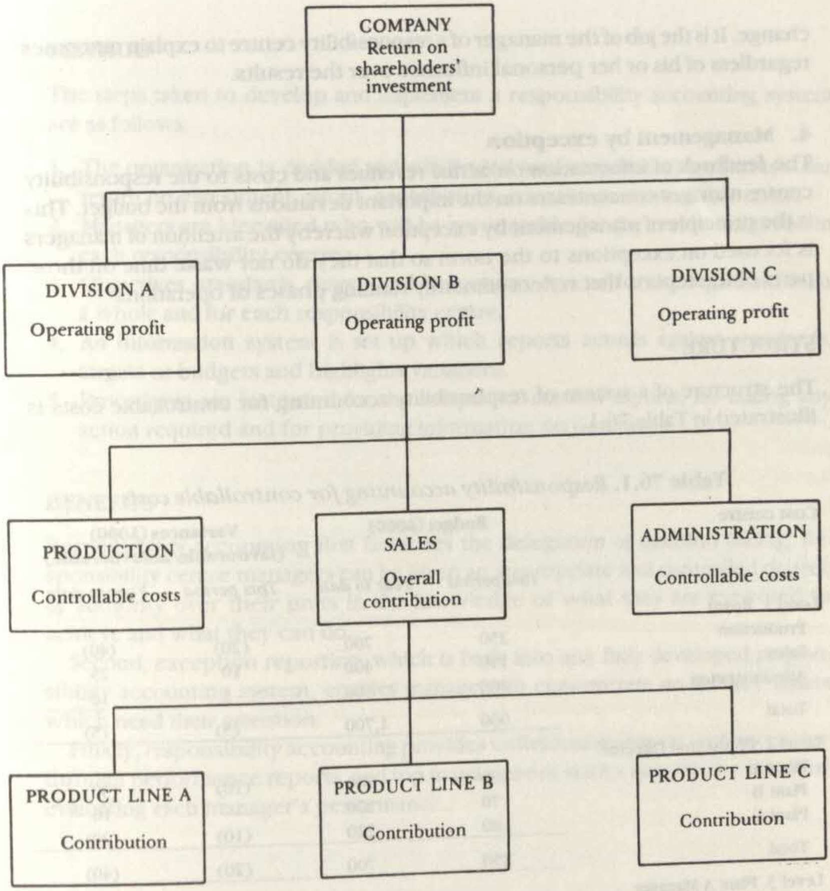


Figure 76.1. *Organizational assignment of responsibilities*

3. Explanation

The results achieved in a profit centre are not all directly controllable by the profit centre manager. External factors will affect both revenues and expenditures. But responsibility accounting requires managers to *explain* why the actual results obtained differ from those in the forecast or budget. Even if these are a result of changes in the external environment, managers are still expected to predict and measure the behaviour of relevant parts of that environment and to act appropriately. Only by seeking and offering such explanations will they be able to adopt a pro-active rather than a reactive stance to the management of change. It is the job of the manager of a responsibility centre to explain outcomes regardless of his or her personal influence over the results.

4. Management by exception

The feedback of information on actual revenues and costs to the responsibility centre manager concentrates on the important deviations from the budget. This is the principle of management by exception whereby the attention of managers is focused on exceptions to the norm so that they do not waste time on those parts of the reports that reflect smoothly running phases of operations.

STRUCTURE

The structure of a system of responsibility accounting for controllable costs is illustrated in Table 76.1.

Table 76.1. *Responsibility accounting for controllable costs*

Cost centre	Budget (£000)		Variances (£000) (favourable/unfavourable)	
	This period	*Year to date*	*This period*	*Year to date*
Level 1. Board				
Production	250	700	(20)	(40)
Sales	150	400	10	25
Administration	200	600	5	10
Total	600	1,700	(5)	(5)
Level 2. Production Director				
Plant A	100	280	(10)	(30)
Plant B	70	200	—	10
Plant C	80	220	(10)	(20)
Total	250	700	(20)	(40)
Level 3. Plant A Manager				
Department A	50	140	(4)	(15)
Department B	30	80	(4)	(10)
Department C	20	60	(2)	(5)
Total	100	280	(10)	(30)
Level 4. Department A Manager				
Line A	10	35	(1)	(3)
Line B	20	60	(2)	(8)
Line C	20	45	(1)	(4)
Total	50	140	(4)	(15)

METHOD

The steps taken to develop and implement a responsibility accounting system are as follows:

1. The organization is divided and subdivided into responsibility centres – for return on investment, profit, contribution, revenue or controllable costs.
2. Managers are identified who will be accountable for the results achieved in each responsibility centre.
3. Objectives, standards, targets and budgets are agreed for the organization as a whole and for each responsibility centre.
4. An information system is set up which reports actuals against standards, targets or budgets and highlights variances.
5. Procedures are instituted for the analysis of control reports, for taking any action required and for providing information on outcomes.

BENEFITS

Responsibility accounting first facilitates the delegation of decision taking. Responsibility centre managers can be given an appropriate and controlled degree of authority over their units in the knowledge of what they are expected to achieve and what they can do.

Second, exception reporting, which is built into any fully developed responsibility accounting system, enables managers to concentrate on the key issues which need their attention.

Finally, responsibility accounting provides individual managers with incentive through performance reports, and top management with a quantitative basis for evaluating each manager's performance.

77. Capital Budgeting

DEFINITION

Capital budgeting is the process of selecting and planning capital investments based on an analysis of the cash flows associated with the investments and appraisals of the benefits that are likely to arise from them. Capital budgeting is based on the belief that the object of any investment is that in return for paying out a given amount of cash today, a larger amount will be received back over a period of time. Capital budgeting and investment appraisal procedures frequently require choices to be made from a number of options.

FACTORS

The basic factor to be considered in making a capital expenditure decision is that there will be a pattern of cash outflows and inflows over a number of years, as illustrated in Figure 77.1.

The problem is to determine whether the cash outflow required for the investment is justified by the cash inflows which will be created over its life.

The detailed factors to be evaluated in making investment decisions are:

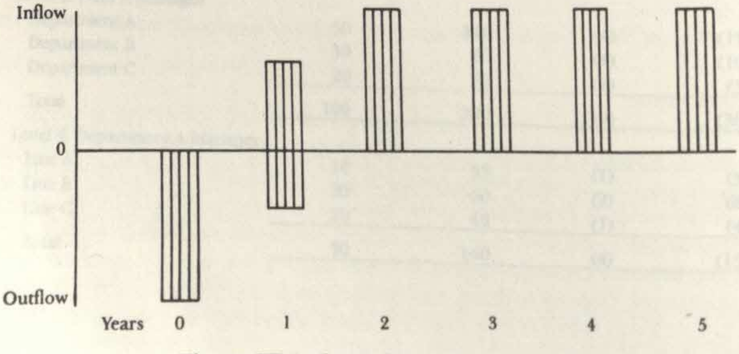


Figure 77.1. *Capital investment cash flows*

1. the initial cost of the project;
2. the phasing of expenditure over the project;
3. the estimated life of the investment; and
4. the amount and timing of the resulting income.

The outflow of funds needed to acquire a capital asset is called 'the investment'. The inflows represent funds generated by the investment and can be called 'returns'. The returns on a project are represented by the excess of added revenue over added costs (other than depreciation, since in capital investment decisions depreciation over the life of the investment is represented by the investment).

OPPORTUNITY COST

An overriding principle in investment appraisal is that the company should value projects on the basis of the opportunity cost of capital – the cost in terms of lost income or profit of the forgone alternative investment: in other words, what could be earned if the money available was invested in other projects. Projects which earn a rate of return less than could be earned by other means (less than the opportunity cost of capital) should be rejected, and those that yield a superior rate of return should be accepted.

THE COMPARISON OF RETURNS WITH INVESTMENT

Capital investment decisions require the comparison of two streams of funds. A favourable decision is indicated if returns less investment is positive. But in many projects, returns from the initial outlay are yielded over long periods of time. Some adjustment for this time difference is desirable for two reasons:

1. Investors have to wait for the returns to materialize and such waiting implies uncertainty due to the inherent difficulty of long-term forecasting.
2. The waiting requires the sacrifice of present consumption or other investment opportunities.

Because of the importance of this principle, the most favoured approach to investment appraisal as part of the capital budgeting procedure is discounting. This adjusts for the time differential and takes into account uncertainty and the sacrifice of the alternative uses of funds. The effect of discounting is to express the two streams of investment and returns in present value equivalents.

The incidence of taxation also has a significant effect on the timing of the streams of returns and, if a discounting procedure is used, the decision to go ahead with an investment will only be made if the total present value of returns after tax charges minus the total present value of investment after tax relief results in a positive figure.

INVESTMENT APPRAISAL TECHNIQUES

The four main techniques for appraising investment proposals are as follows:

1. *Payback* - the length of time which must elapse before the cash inflow from the project equals the total initial cash outflow.
2. *Accounting rate of return* (also known as the unadjusted rate of return) which calculates the average annual profit as a percentage of the original cash outlay.
3. *Discounted cash flow (DCF)*, which is a discounting method expressing future cash inflows in present values.
4. *Net present value (NPV)*, which is related to DCF and consists simply of adding the present values of all the cash inflows.

Although the discounted cash flow and the net present value method are in many ways the most appropriate techniques because they involve discounting cash flows to present values, this does not mean that the payback or accounting rate of return methods cannot or should not be used to provide a quick, simple although somewhat crude view on how long it will take the company to get its money back (payback), or how the average rate of return compares with other rates that could be earned.

These methods are dealt with at great length in Chapters 79-81.

CAPITAL BUDGETING PROGRAMME

A capital budgeting programme consists of the following stages:

1. *The search for investment opportunities*. To provide for profitable growth, management generates a constant flow of investment opportunities for appraisal.
2. *The identification of relevant alternatives*. There is rarely only one way of carrying out a project and relevant alternatives need to be evaluated to seek the best approach and to highlight opportunity costs.
3. *The determination of costs*. The emphasis is on relevant cost information, ie, future incremented cash flows, not traditional historical cost accumulations. It is cash flows and net book values that are important in the long-term assessment.
4. *The determination of revenues*. Again these are forecast in the form of cash flows over a period of time. This requires estimates of the probabilities of different levels of revenue being attained, taking into account possible variations in the factors such as demand built into the forecast. *Risk analysis* techniques such as the calculation of expected values, utility theory, mean variance analysis, game theory, Monte Carlo simulations and decision trees are all used for this purpose.
5. *The screening and ranking of projects*. Alternative proposals are screened

and ranked in accordance with the rates of return, generally at the net present values that it is believed they will generate. The payback period and the accounting rate of return from different projects may also be considered. Potential rates of return are compared with the company's policy on the minimum satisfactory rate of return it requires from an investment. This policy will be influenced by the target rates of return on shareholders' capital or on capital employed, and by the cost of obtaining capital.

6. *Capital expenditure control*. When the decision to incur capital expenditure has been made, a capital budget is set up for the project and procedures are introduced for the authorization of expenditure. Project control information is needed as part of the system of *project management*. This control data will show progress, expenditure to date against budget and total anticipated expenditure compared with the overall capital budget for the project.
7. *Rate of return control*. Information is generated which compares net cash flows with budget and enables corrective action to be taken when required.

BENEFITS

Capital budgeting ensures that:

1. projects are properly evaluated in terms of the cash outflows and inflows involved and the payback, rate of return and net present value of the investment;
2. alternative proposals can be compared so that the opportunity costs of investments are identified and the choice of project takes into account both those costs and the minimum rate of return targeted by the company; and
3. procedures are set up for the controlling expenditure within agreed budgets for the lifetime of the project and for comparing returns with forecasts so that corrective action can be taken when necessary.

FURTHER READING

Mott, G, *Investment Appraisal*, Pitman, London 1993.

78. Payback Method of Capital Appraisal

DEFINITION

The payback period method of capital appraisal forecasts when a project or capital investment will reach its break-even point, ie, the length of time which will elapse before the cash inflow from the project equals the total initial cash outflow.

PURPOSE

The purpose of the payback period technique is to discover how long it takes each project to generate enough cash inflows to recoup the initial outlays. The time taken to recoup is called the payback period, and it should be as short as possible. The longer the payback period, the longer money is tied up in the project.

CALCULATING PAYBACK

Payback is calculated by:

1. totalling the initial capital outlays;
2. estimating the cash inflows for year 1 (if any), then year 2, year 3 and so on until the total of inflows equals or slightly exceeds the outlay and any further deductions would be negative. The number of years' inflow deducted in this way will be the payback period in years; and
3. if, having deducted the inflows, there is a residue left which is less than the next year's inflow, that inflow figure is divided into the residue. The result of this division is the fraction of a year to be added to the payback period to give the exact period. This process is called interpolation.

USES

Payback is a quick and easy way of assessing the speed with which projects can turn round their funds, a factor which is important in times of cash shortage. It is also an easy method of assessing the relative merits of different investments. Guidelines can be used in the payback method to indicate whether or not a project is worth investigating further. For example, it may be decided that no investment should be considered if the payback period is longer than three years.

The main objective to the payback method is that it tells you nothing about the rate of return on investment that is being achieved after the initial outlay has been covered, and rate of return is the key measure of performance. The payback method also ignores the timing of cash flows.

79. Accounting Rate of Return

DEFINITION

The accounting or average rate of return method of capital investment appraisal calculates the forecast average rate of annual profit from an investment as a percentage of the original cash outlay. It is also known as the unadjusted rate of return.

METHOD

The accounting rate of return is calculated by taking the following steps:

1. Tabulate the capital outlays for each year of the project.
2. Divide the total capital outlay by the number of years over which the project runs to obtain the average annual capital outlay.
3. Tabulate the net inflows for each year.
4. Total the net inflows and divide that total by the number of years of project life in order to obtain the average annual return.
5. Divide the average annual return by the annual average capital outlay and multiply the result by 100 to obtain the percentage average annual rate of return.

USES

The accounting rate of return method is the traditional method of appraisal and is based on the familiar financial statements prepared under accrual accounting which recognize revenues and costs as they are earned or incurred, not as money is received or paid. It is thus a simple measure of profitability producing a figure which is easily compared with the return from alternative projects, the return that can be obtained from alternative investments (eg, bank deposits), or the dividend yield expected from an ordinary public company share.

The disadvantage of this technique is that it ignores the time value of money concept, ie, that £1 received today is worth more than £1 receivable at some future date, because £1 received today could earn interest in the intervening period. The discounted cash flow method is designed to overcome this defect.

80. Discounted Cash Flow

DEFINITION

The discounted cash flow (DCF) technique is used to establish and compare the return on investment in projects by discounting future cash flows to establish their present value. It focuses on cash inflows and outflows rather than on net income as computed in the accrual accounting sense. The DCF return is the true annual rate of return on the capital outstanding in the investment.

BASIS OF THE TECHNIQUE

The DCF technique recognizes that £1,000 receivable in one year's time is worth less than £1,000 receivable now. If, for example, the rate of interest is 15 per cent, the £1,000 receivable in one year's time is worth £870 now. The £870 could be invested at 15 per cent, which would represent a total of £1,000 in one year's time. On these terms, the company would not want to pay more than £870 today for the investment.

This process of expressing future inflows in present values is known as discounting and is, in effect, compound interest in reverse. A DCF calculation matches cash out against cash in over the life of the investment and relates the cash flow back to the initial outlay. The return from a project is calculated before any depreciation charges are deducted.

Taxation is an important factor in investment appraisal and must be deducted in the year in which it is paid, not the year in which it is incurred. This will incorporate all taxation allowances on the capital equipment, as this is a tax saving which increases the actual cash inflow of the project.

A DCF calculation works out the present value of an investment over a period of years at an assumed rate of interest. The present value is compared with the initial cost and the actual rate of return is the discount rate required to equalize the present value with the original cost. This rate of return is compared with target rates of return to see if the investment is viable. Alternative investments can be evaluated by comparing their respective rates of return.

THE DCF TECHNIQUE

The DCF technique comprises three elements:

1. Calculation of present value.
2. Calculation and use of net present value.
3. Calculation and use of the internal rate of return.

Calculation of present value

The first step in DCF is to calculate the present value. This is the current discounted value of the cash flow expected in a future year. A present value can be calculated by using the basic discounting equation:

$$\mathrm{PV} = \frac{CF}{(1+r)^n}$$

Where PV stands for present value
CF stands for cash flow in the year concerned
r stands for the annual interest rate expressed as a decimal, not a percentage
n stands for the year number concerned.

Alternatively, present value tables can be used which are set out as in Table 80.1.

Table 80.1. *Extract from present value table*

	Discount rate		
Year	*8%*	*9%*	*10%*
1	0.9259	0.9174	0.9091
2	0.8573	0.8417	0.8264
3	0.7938	0.7722	0.7513

Using this table, the present value of £50,000 received in year 2 and discounted at 10 per cent is 50,000 × 0.8264 = 41,320.

Net present value

The net present value (NPV) technique assumes some minimum desired rate of return (discount factor), adds the present values for each year of the project of all the cash inflows, and deducts from this figure the sum of all the present values of the cash outflows for each year of the project. Put another way, having selected a target minimum rate of return, the NPVs for each year (the present value of inflows minus the present value of outflows) are added to produce a total NPV for the whole project. An example of this calculation is given in Table 80.2.

If, having worked out the NPV, the result is positive, the project is desirable, and vice versa. When choosing among several investments the one with the largest NPV is the most desirable.

Table 80.2. *Calculation of net present value (NPV)*

Year	Inflow	Outflow	Net cash flow	Disount factor	Net present value
	£000	*£000*	*£000*	*10%*	*£000*
1	10	70	(60)	.9091	(54.55)
2	30	80	(50)	.8264	(41.32)
3	90	60	30	.7513	22.54
4	100	50	50	.6830	34.15
5	110	40	70	.6209	43.46
Total net present value =					4.28

The internal rate of return (IRR)

The internal rate of return is the discount rate that makes the NPV of a project equal to zero. Expressed another way, the internal rate of return can be defined as the discount rate that makes the present value of a project's expected cash inflows equal to the present value of the expected cash outflows, including the investment in the project. The IRR indicates the maximum cost of capital a project may incur without making a loss, ie, without its NPV becoming negative. The higher the IRR the more attractive the project.

The IRR can be found by trial and error. For example, in Table 80.2 a discount factor of 10 per cent gave a positive NPV of 4.28. If the discount factor were 14 per cent, the NPV would be minus 4.89. A discount factor of 12 per cent gives minus 0.50, so the IRR is just under 12 per cent (11.98 per cent).

The IRR is computed on the basis of the investment tied up in the project from period to period instead of solely the initial investment. The IRR in the above example is just under 12 per cent of the capital invested during each year. If money were borrowed at the same effective interest rate, the cash inflow produced by the project would exactly repay the hypothetical loan plus the interest over five years.

The IRR is used to ensure that the project will at least achieve the target rate of return set by the company, which will be related to the cost of capital. If there is more than one project to evaluate then, clearly, the higher the IRR, the more advantageous the project.

BENEFITS

The discounted cash flow technique, including the use of NPVs and the IRR, is the only capital appraisal method which indicates the value of a project after accounting for the opportunity cost of money. Because it explicitly and automatically weighs the time value of money, it is the best method to use for long-range decisions where the overriding goal is maximum long-term net cash inflows. It has to be remembered, however, that the DCF is based on two fundamental assumptions: first, that the predicted cash flows will occur in the amounts and at the times specified; second, that the original amount of the investment can be looked upon as being either borrowed or loaned at some special rate of return.

Doubts about the uncertainty of forecasts lead many companies to rely more on the traditional payback or accounting return techniques. But these also have assumptions about future inflows built into them. While these methods have their uses, only DCF properly measures the return on cash flows over time. To minimize the problems of uncertainty, ***risk analysis*** techniques can be used.

FURTHER READING

Mott, G, *Investment Appraisal*, Pitman, London 1993.

81. Risk Analysis

DEFINITION

Risk analysis assesses the danger of failing to achieve forecasts of the outcome or yield of an investment or investments - the risk attached to a project being largely its loss-making chances. Outcomes are generally expressed as net present values (NPVs) following discounted cash flow calculations of the probabilities of variations occurring to the basic data built into the forecast, such as demand, costs, inflation and cash flows.

THE NEED

Estimates of cash flows prepared when appraising investments are subject to the possibility of forecasting error, like all such estimates. Errors occur because:

1. demand is never wholly predictable, and forecasts of cash inflows are therefore uncertain;
2. costs and therefore cash outflows are time based but unforeseen circumstances can change them; and
3. inflation cannot be predicted accurately and reduces the value of money, while increasing interest rates.

TECHNIQUES

The most commonly used techniques in risk analysis are:

1. three-level estimates
2. expected value.

Three-level estimates

The preparation of three-level estimates is a fairly crude method of comparing risks. It is similar to *sensitivity analysis* in that, unlike other risk analysis techniques, it does not incorporate probability assessments of variations into the basic factors.

Three forecast cash flows are produced: one for the best conditions (optimistic); one for the worst conditions (pessimistic); and the third for the most likely outcome. These provide an overall feel for what might happen to the project upon which management can base its decisions. More analytical techniques are available, as described below, but to a greater or lesser degree all of these depend on certain subjective assumptions.

Expected value

The expected value is a forecast based on the weighted average of all the reasonably probable levels that sales might achieve. Probability is expressed as the percentage chance of obtaining a given result. In risk analysis, expected values are also called certainty equivalents.

The expected value is obtained by multiplying each of the alternative demand forecasts expressed as cash flows by its probability and adding the results together as shown in Table 81.1.

Table 81.1. *Expected value calculation*

Forecast demand in units	Cash flow	Probability	Expected value
	£	%	£
2,000	20,000	20	4,000
3,000	30,000	40	12,000
4,000	40,000	30	12,000
5,000	50,000	10	5,000
		100	33,000

BENEFITS

Risk analysis ensures that the factors influencing the likely outcomes of investments are identified and that the probabilities of their occurrence are fully explored. It provides guidance for decision-making but, because of the assumptions that have to be built into all estimates of probabilities, risk analysis can never completely supplant managerial judgement, that is to say, the gut feeling that an investment will or will not work.

FURTHER READING

Mott, G, *Investment Appraisal*, Pitman, London 1993.

82. Programme Budgeting*

DEFINITION

Programme budgeting, also known as output budgeting, is the integration of a number of planning, budgeting and control techniques for:

1. establishing priorities and strategies for major public sector developments or operational programmes;
2. identifying, allocating and costing the resources required;
3. planning the work to be done to achieve the expected outputs; and
4. monitoring performance and controlling results.

In programme budgeting, a programme is an activity or sequence of activities which needs to be carried out to achieve a desired output over a set period of time and within a predetermined budget.

The process of programme budgeting is also referred to as a *planning, programming, budgeting system (PPBS)*.

CONCEPT OF PROGRAMME BUDGETING

The concept of programme budgeting was developed in the USA in the 1960s. Its use was rapidly extended to the UK and elsewhere. It became fashionable in the UK at the time of the Fulton Report on the Civil Service which advocated the use of more management techniques and emphasized the need for accountable management, ie, holding individuals and units responsible for performance measured as objectively as possible. Possibly because it was oversold as a panacea at the time, programme budgeting as such is not heard about much today. But the concept and the approach remain valid and are still used or advocated, even if the name has changed.

The need

The belief that programme budgeting was necessary arose because of the indissoluble connection between budgeting and the formulation and conduct of national policy. Governments are constrained by the scarcity of economic resources at their disposal, but the extent to which a government desires to pursue its objectives will influence the resources available to itself by taxation and other means. Planning, programming and budgeting constitute the processes by which it was thought that objectives and resources, and the interrelationships between them, could be taken into account to achieve a comprehensive and coherent programme of action for a government as a whole.

---

* Referred to in the USA as program budgeting.

No government nor, indeed, any commercial enterprise can avoid a degree of compromise when selecting goals and strategies. The task of helping to make the necessary compromises among various objectives is a function of planning, programming and budgeting. To make these compromises, programme budgeting attempts to express the various activities for which plans have to be made in terms of the only common denominator available, which is, of course, money.

A government, like a private business, can determine its policies most effectively if it chooses rationally among alternative courses of action, with as full knowledge as possible of the implications of those alternatives. And because these choices are often fundamentally the same as those made in private enterprise, programme budgeting uses business management techniques such as corporate planning, investment appraisal and, particularly, management accounting.

The importance of management accounting

The significance attached to the role of management accounting in the planning and control processes of the government was emphasized in a UK government White Paper reprinted in 1983 on *Efficiency and Effectiveness in the Civil Service*. This paper stated that management accounting systems enabled all those who incur, control or influence costs 'to consider options, formulate plans to meet objectives, and subsequently to compare actual expenditure against those plans'. The emphasis in management accounting is not only to assess cash expenditure on an input basis, as in the British government vote system, but also, and more importantly, to allocate such costs to outputs or objectives so that they can provide a proper basis for monitoring performance against plans.

Cost-benefit analysis

However, many of the outputs resulting from government programmes are difficult to evaluate in purely financial terms, especially those concerned with social issues. Hence the use of cost-benefit techniques to measure inputs and outputs in these more subjective areas.

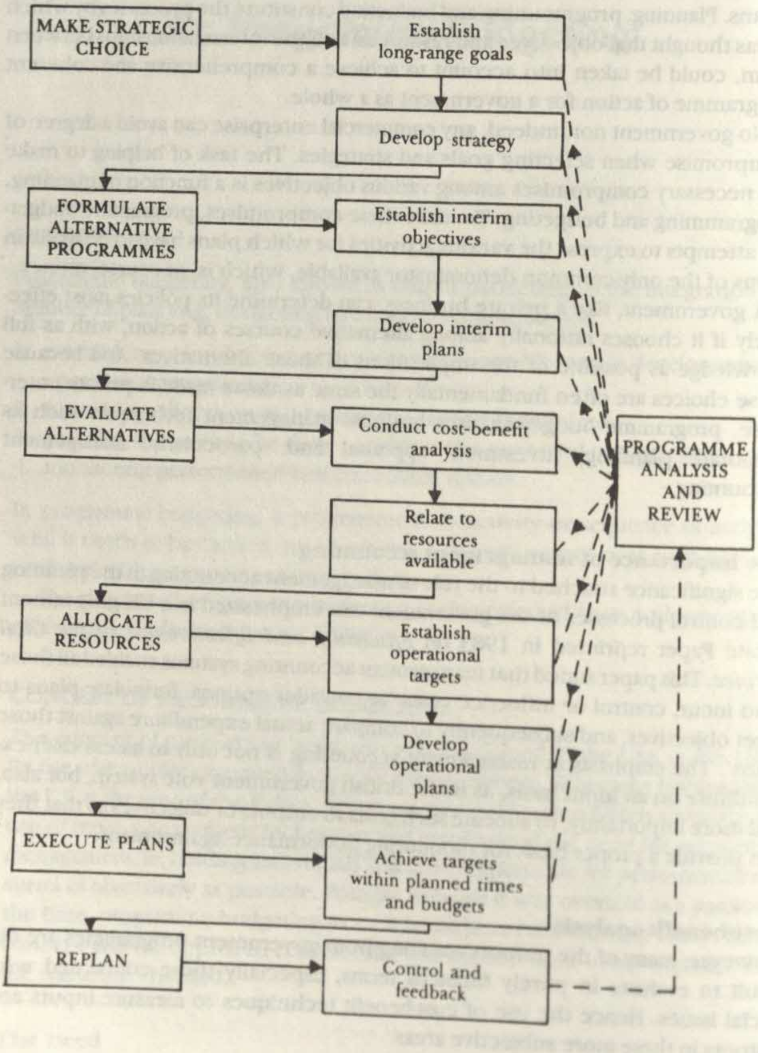

MAKE STRATEGIC CHOICE
Establish long-range goals
Develop strategy
FORMULATE ALTERNATIVE PROGRAMMES
Establish interim objectives
Develop interim plans
EVALUATE ALTERNATIVES
Conduct cost-benefit analysis
Relate to resources available
ALLOCATE RESOURCES
Establish operational targets
Develop operational plans
EXECUTE PLANS
Achieve targets within planned times and budgets
REPLAN
Control and feedback
PROGRAMME ANALYSIS AND REVIEW

Figure 82.1. *The process of programme budgeting*

OVERALL APPROACH TO PROGRAMME BUDGETING

The overall approach to programme budgeting follows these stages:

1. Appraisal and comparison of various government activities in terms of their contribution to national objectives.
2. Determination of how given objectives can be attained with minimum expenditure and resources.
3. Projection of government activities over an adequate time horizon.
4. Comparison of the relative contribution of private and public activities to national objectives.
5. Revision of objectives, programmes and budgets in the light of experience and changing circumstances.

THE PROCESS OF PROGRAMME BUDGETING

The process of programme budgeting is illustrated in Figure 82.1. The techniques used in this process, as described elsewhere in this book are:

1. strategic planning (Chapter 2);
2. management accounting (Chapter 60);
3. investment appraisal (Chapter 78);
4. cost-benefit analysis (Chapter 83);
5. cost-effectiveness analysis (Chapter 84); and
6. budgetary control (Chapter 74).

In addition, the analytical process of establishing objectives and drawing up alternative programmes can be assisted by building a hierarchical programme structure to illustrate how departmental or functional programmes with overriding objectives can be split into a hierarchy of dependent and interrelated subobjectives. This is shown in Figure 82.2.

DEVELOPMENTS IN PROGRAMME BUDGETING

Although little reference is now made, in the UK at least, to the original notion of programme budgeting, the basic concepts are retained in one form or another, although the emphasis may have changed.

In the US, rational policy analysis has become a major feature of the administration, using 'hard edge' quantitative techniques in a logic-of-choice approach to decision-making, drawn from economics, statistical decision theory and operation research.

BENEFITS

Programme budgeting as originally conceived, or as modified by more recent

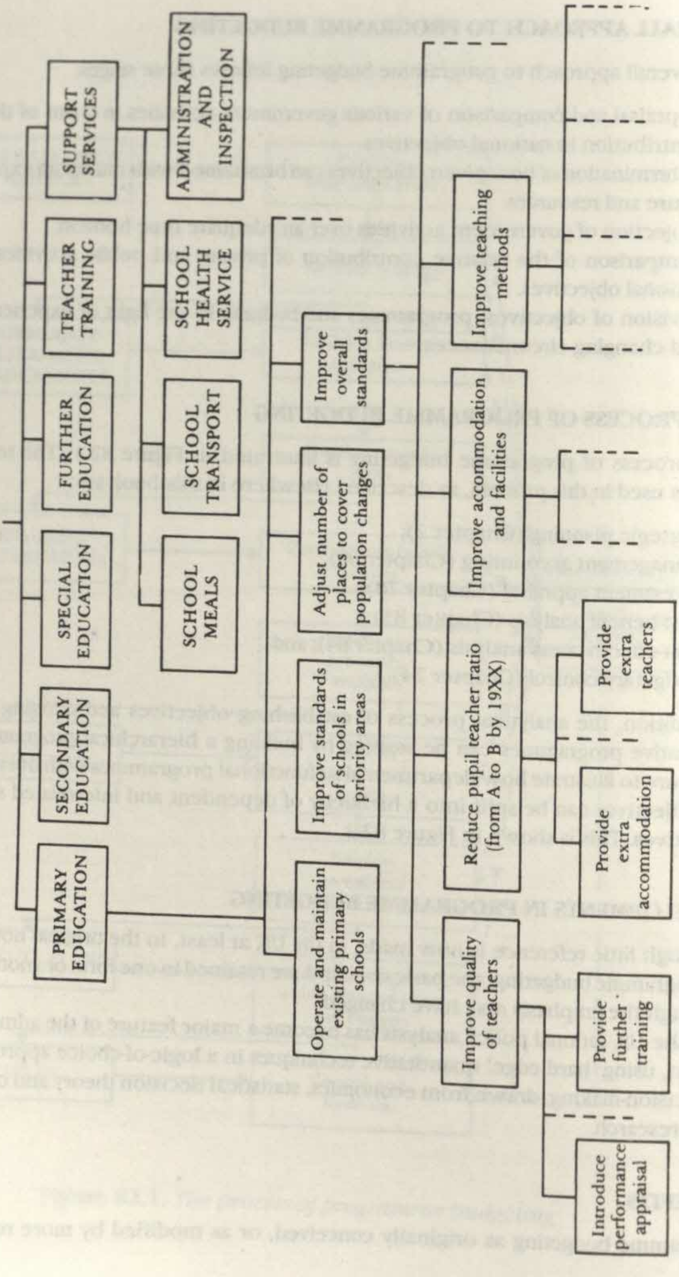

PRIMARY EDUCATION
SECONDARY EDUCATION
SPECIAL EDUCATION
FURTHER EDUCATION
TEACHER TRAINING
SUPPORT SERVICES
SCHOOL MEALS
SCHOOL TRANSPORT
SCHOOL HEALTH SERVICE
ADMINISTRATION AND INSPECTION
Operate and maintain existing primary schools
Improve standards of schools in priority areas
Adjust number of places to cover population changes
Improve overall standards
Improve quality of teachers
Reduce pupil teacher ratio (from A to B by 19XX)
Improve accomodation and facilities
Improve teaching methods
Introduce performance appraisal
Provide further training
Provide extra accommodation
Provide extra teachers

Figure 82.2. *Possible educational objectives for an education authority*

governments, is designed to help higher-level decision-takers who are concerned with broad questions of whether to embark upon, maintain, modify or discontinue particular activities.

In the UK, the emphasis on output budgeting coupled with increasing attention to management accounting techniques has focused attention on the assessment of the cost-effectiveness of present and future activities in order to ensure the efficient use of available resources and, in particular:

1. to reveal uneconomic activities, under-utilized capacity and wastage and to assist corrective action; and
2. to ensure that decisions are taken with full knowledge of all relevant financial information.

The potential benefits of using this approach are obvious. What is interesting to management in the private sector, however, is that although programme budgeting has been developed and adapted for use in public administration, the way it brings together its planning, evaluation and control techniques into a coherent package has much of interest to those involved in corporate planning and financial control in industry or commerce.

FURTHER READING

Jones, R, and Pendlebury, M, *Public Sector Accounting*, (3rd edition), Pitman, London 1992.

83. Cost-Benefit Analysis

DEFINITION

Cost-benefit analysis conducts a monetary assessment of the total costs and revenues or benefits of a project, paying particular attention to the social costs and benefits which do not normally feature in conventional costing exercises.

AIM

The underlying object of cost-benefit analysis is to identify and quantify as many tangible and intangible costs and benefits as possible. The aim is then to see a strategy which achieves the maximum benefit for the minimum cost. Only where benefits exceed costs should a project be undertaken.

BACKGROUND

In business, the usual method for testing the 'soundness' of proposed activities is investment appraisal, which requires a calculation of the value of the resources to be employed in them (the costs) which are compared with the value of the goods or services to be produced (the benefits). In appraising an investment, it is the normal practice to subtract from the annual value of receipts all variable or running costs, leaving a residual which can be expressed as an annual rate of return on the capital employed. Because money in the hand is worth more than money in prospect, *discounted cash flow* (DCF) techniques are often used to discount expected future cash flows at arbitrary chosen rates to arrive at a present value. If the anticipated return compares favourably with the prospective rates obtainable from the alternative uses to which the capital might be put, the prospective project may be regarded as sound.

In contrast, in the public sector many services are provided, such as roads and schools, without direct prices being charged for them. The cost can usually be calculated, but it is more difficult to place a financial value on the benefits resulting from the satisfaction of group wants. And there may be social costs involved which are difficult (in some cases, perhaps, impossible) to measure.

The concept of welfare economics, as developed by Professor AC Pigou, argues that there are circumstances in which market forces fail to encompass all costs and all benefits. To obtain a full picture of the likely costs and benefits of projects in the public sector, it may be necessary to try to assess these social costs and benefits. This is the particular feature of cost-benefit analysis which distinguishes it from the investment or project appraisal techniques used in business.

METHOD

A cost-benefit analysis is conducted in the following stages:

1. The project and its overall objectives (described as benefits) are defined.
2. A more detailed list is prepared of the anticipated benefits and likely costs. Social benefits and costs will be included in this list.
3. The list of benefits and costs, direct or indirect, is reduced to monetary values in order to arrive at an estimate of the current net benefit of the project (if any). The assessment of social benefits or costs often relies on judgement and may therefore be questionable. The fact that the term sometimes used for these values is 'shadow price' is revealing. In a transportation study, for example, accessibility and speed may be assessed as benefits, and noise as a cost. But how is the effect of noise on local residents to be measured? One way is to ask individuals how much they would pay to have a quieter house. This then becomes an estimate of the value of peace and quiet. This will not, of course, give a precise answer. It is not like using a scientific measuring instrument. But the advocates of attaching values to social benefits and costs will say that at least, if consistent methods are used, a basis is provided for comparing the total costs and benefits of alternative projects, which is the main object of cost-benefits analysis.
4. The stream of net benefits is predicted for each year of the project. The net benefit will be the value of the benefit accruing from the project minus the running costs incurred. This stream will be expressed as a positive or negative cash flow depending on whether benefits exceed costs or costs exceed benefits.
5. The stream of annual net benefits is compared with the capital cost of the project, and this can be expressed as a percentage rate of return on the investment. Three methods of appraisal are available:
   - In the net present value method a discount rate is chosen and used to convert a time stream of net benefits into present value terms. Investment costs are then deducted and the projects appraised in the light of the resulting net present values. The discounted cash flow approach is the preferred method.
   - The implicit rate of return on capital employed yielded by each project may be found by mathematical methods. The resulting internal rates of

return can then be used in the appraisal process to identify the project where the rate is highest.

- The present values of the benefit stream can be expressed as 'benefit-cost' ratios with the denominator representing total costs. Choice of project in this case would depend on the size of the resulting ratios.

6. The final appraisal is made. Crudely, if costs exceed benefits, ie, the benefit-cost ratio is less than 1, the project should not be considered. The comparison between alternative projects may look at the respective benefit-cost ratios, but it should also consider the different net present values and the discounted rates of return on the investment.

BENEFITS

Cost-benefit analysis can be used simply to ensure that value for money is obtained from a project which requires the investment of funds. It can and does go beyond this by providing a basis for assessing the merits of different projects in terms of the benefits they produce and the costs that will be incurred.

Cost-benefit studies attempt to allow for social costs and benefits. And as these are a feature of most, if not all, public sector projects, the discipline of trying to apply a consistent method of measurement in these areas should help to produce better decisions which take important subjective factors into account. The difficulty is, of course, placing realistic values on such things as good health, quiet houses or protection from a potential enemy. Cost-benefit analysts have sometimes attempted the impossible, and Professor Peter Self described the efforts of the Roskill Commission on London's third airport as 'nonsense on stilts'. But at least cost-benefit analysis concentrates attention on basic issues. And the task of listing relevant costs and benefits is in itself a valuable discipline.

FURTHER READING

Jones, R, and Pendlebury, M, *Public Sector Accounting* (3rd edition), Pitman, London 1992.

84. Cost-Effectiveness Analysis

DEFINITION

Cost-effectiveness analysis compares alternative courses of action in terms of their costs and their effectiveness in attaining some specific objectives.

AIMS

The aims of cost-effectiveness analysis are to:

1. assist decision-makers to identify a preferred choice among possible alternatives;
2. ensure that the course of action selected will provide good value for money - better than any other course of action; and
3. generally provide for the better allocation and use of resources.

METHOD

Cost-effectiveness analysis is carried out in the following stages:

1. *Establish objectives*. An analysis of what the decision-maker is trying to attain through his or her policy or programme. At this stage, preliminary information will be obtained about how to measure the extent to which objectives are achieved. This will mean that the outputs and potential benefits of the programme will need to be specified, at least in outline.
2. *Identify alternatives*. The means by which the objectives will be attained.
3. *Assess costs*. Actual costs *and* opportunity costs for each alternative. Because the choice of an alternative implies that certain specific resources can no longer be used for other purposes, the true measure of their cost is the opportunities they preclude.
4. *Construct model*. A simplified representation of the real world which abstracts the features of the situation relevant to the question being studied. The means of representation may vary from a set of mathematical equations to a

purely verbal description of the situation, in which judgement alone is used to predict the consequences of various choices. In cost-effectiveness analysis, as in any analysis of choice, the role of the model is to predict the costs that each alternative would incur and the extent to which each alternative would assist in attaining the objectives.

5. *Select criteria*. The rules or standards by which to rank the alternatives are selected in order of desirability and the most promising is chosen. They provide a means for weighing cost against effectiveness.
6. *Conduct analysis*. The consequences of choosing an alternative as indicated by means of the model. These consequences show how effective each alternative is in the attainment of objectives (which means that a measure of effectiveness for each objective is required) and what the costs are. The criteria can then be used to arrange the alternatives in order of preference.
7. *Implement and review*. The selected policy or programme is implemented and its cost and effectiveness are measured against budgets and performance criteria. The review will then determine any changes needed to improve cost-effectiveness.

BENEFITS

Cost-effectiveness analysis can help a decision-maker to understand the relevant alternatives and the key interactions by giving him or her an assessment of the costs, risks and possible pay-offs associated with each course of action.

FURTHER READING

Jones, R, and Pendlebury, M, *Public Sector Accounting* (3rd edition), Pitman, London 1992.

PART 6

Human Resource Management

PART 6

Human Resource Management

85. Human Resource Management: An Overview

DEFINITION

Human resource management (HRM) is a strategic and coherent approach to the management of an organization's most valued assets – the people working there who individually and collectively contribute to the achievement of its objectives for sustainable competitive advantage.

HRM PHILOSOPHY

The main HRM beliefs are as follows:

- *Employees as valued assets*. The fundamental belief underpinning HRM is that sustainable competitive advantage is achieved through people. They should therefore be regarded not as variable costs but as valued assets in which to invest, thus adding to their inherent value.
- *Strategy and culture are important*. Organizational effectiveness can be increased significantly by paying close attention to the development of integrated business and human resource strategies and by shaping the culture of the organization. A longer-term perspective in managing people and in developing an appropriate corporate culture is seen as important. Every aspect of employee management must be integrated with business management and reinforce the desired company culture.
- *Emphasis on commitment rather than on compliance*. The optimum utilization of human resources will be achieved by developing consistent and coherent policies which promote commitment to the organization and unleash the latent creativity and energies of the people who work there, thus leading to enhanced performance.
- *Emphasis on the key role of line management*. HRM is owned by line managers who alone have the responsibility for managing their staff. The role of the HR (personnel) function is to enable line managers to fulfil their HRM responsibilities effectively.

AIMS OF HRM

The aims of HRM are derived directly from the philosophical statements given above. These aims can be summarized as follows:

- To enable management to achieve organizational objectives through its workforce.
- To utilize people to their full capacity and potential.
- To foster commitment from individuals to the success of the company through a quality orientation in their performance and that of the whole organization.
- To integrate human resource policies with business plans and reinforce an appropriate culture or, as necessary, reshape an inappropriate culture.
- To develop a coherent set of personnel and employment policies which jointly reinforce the organization's strategies for matching resources to business needs and for improving performance.
- To establish an environment in which the latent creativity and energy of employees will be unleashed.
- To create conditions in which innovation, teamworking and total quality can flourish.
- To enable the company to make the best use of developments in information technology and integrated approaches to manufacturing such as just-in-time, cellular manufacturing and flexible manufacturing systems.
- To encourage willingness to operate flexibly in the interests of the 'adaptive organization' and the pursuit of excellence.
- To maintain a healthy and safe working environment.

CHARACTERISTIC FEATURES

The most characteristic features of HRM are that:

- it is a top-management driven activity;
- the performance and delivery of HRM is the prime responsibility of line managers;
- it emphasizes the need for strategic fit – the integration of business and personnel strategies;
- it involves the adoption of a comprehensive and coherent approach to employment policies and practices;
- importance is attached to strong cultures and values;
- it places emphasis on the attitudinal and behavioural characteristics of employees;
- employee relations are individual rather than collective, high trust rather than low trust;
- organizations are decentralized with flexible roles for staff and more emphasis on teamwork; and

- rewards are differentiated according to performance, competence or skill.

HRM ACTIVITIES

The key HRM activities are described below:

- *HRM strategy* - formulating strategies which set clear directions for long-term development and provide the basis for building a coherent approach to personnel management.
- *Organization* - helping with the restructuring of organizations and the redesign of jobs to fit projected changes in product or systems development, technologies, decentralization and ownership.
- *Culture management* - influencing behaviour and, thereby, attitudes through resourcing, performance management, development and reward strategies and helping to get the mission and values of the organization defined, understood, accepted and acted upon.
- *Change management* - using knowledge of the factors which influence commitment to change and devising programmes and methods of introducing change accordingly.
- *Managing commitment* - introducing communication, participation and performance management systems and implementing educational programmes designed to increase identification with the company's mission and values and develop behaviour and attitudes which support their achievement.
- *Flexibility* - developing and implementing flexibility strategies to make the best use of human resources and enable people to learn and apply a wider range of skills.
- *Teamworking* - enhancing the ability of people to work well together and making the best use of the synergies resulting from effective teamwork and of the increased motivation achieved by being part of an autonomous work group.
- *Quality management* - assisting with the introduction of total quality management approaches through education and training processes, and involving people in quality improvement programmes.
- *Resourcing* - matching human resources to the changing requirements of the organization.
- *Performance management* - introducing systems which clarify objectives at all levels in the organization and measure performance against those objectives in order to agree improvement and development plans.
- *Human resource development* - investing in the training and development of all levels of the workforce and relating those training programmes to the needs of the organization and individuals to improve performance and extend their knowledge base.

- *Reward management* – using the reward management system to define performance expectations and reward people according to their contribution.
- *Employee relations* – developing a cooperative climate of employee relations which allows direct communication to employees but, where appropriate, recognizes the role unions play in a pluralist organization.

BENEFITS

Human resource management is essentially a business-orientated philosophy concerning the management of people in order to obtain added value from them and thus achieve competitive advantage. It is a philosophy that appeals to managements who are striving to beat off increasing international competition and appreciate that to do this they must invest in human resources as well as new technology.

FURTHER READING

Armstrong, M, *Human Resource Management: Strategy and Action*, Kogan Page, London 1992.

86. Human Resource Planning

DEFINITION

Human resource planning uses demand and supply forecasting techniques to determine the future workforce requirements of the company.

THE PROCESS OF HUMAN RESOURCE PLANNING

While human resource planning is primarily concerned with ensuring that the company gets the quantity and quality of people it needs, it is also linked with productivity planning to ensure that the best use is made of the company's human resources.

Human resource planning consists of six interrelated areas of activity:

1. *Demand forecasting*. Estimating future needs by reference to corporate and functional plans and forecasts of future activity levels.
2. *Supply forecasting*. Estimating the supply of employees by reference to analyses of current resources and future availability, after allowing for wastage.
3. *Determining human resource requirements*. Analysing the demand and supply forecasts to identify future deficits or surpluses.
4. *Productivity and cost analysis*. Analysing productivity, capacity, utilization and costs in order to identify the need for improvements in productivity or reductions in cost.
5. *Action planning*. Preparing plans to deal with forecast deficits or surpluses of personnel. To improve utilization and productivity or to reduce costs.
6. *Human resource budgeting and control*. Setting human resource budgets and standards and monitoring the implementation of the plans against them.

These are illustrated in Figure 86.1.

DEMAND FORECASTING

Demand forecasting is the process of estimating the future quantity and quality of human resources required. The basis of the forecast is the annual budget and

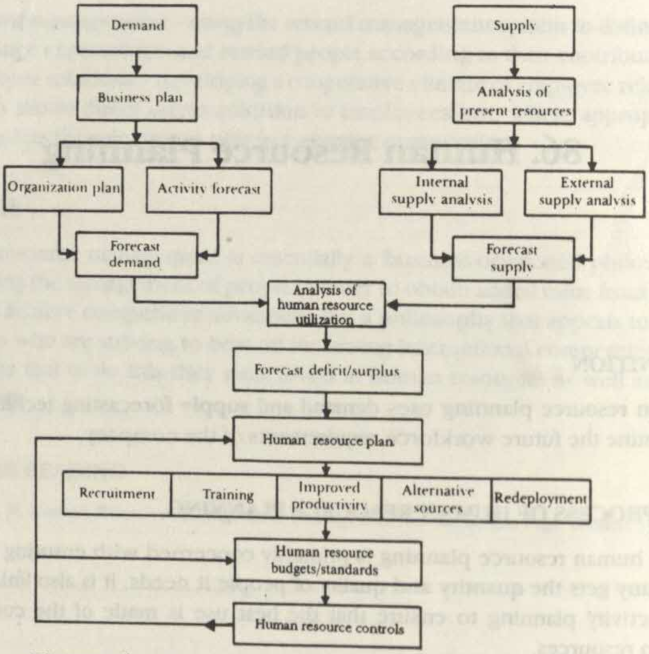


Figure 86.1. *The process of human resource planning*

longer-term corporate plan, translated into activity levels for each function and department. The three techniques used in demand forecasting are:

1. ratio-trend analysis
2. work study
3. econometric models.

Ratio-trend analysis

Ratio-trend analysis is carried out by studying past ratios between, say, the number of direct and indirect workers in a manufacturing plant, and forecasting future ratios, having made some allowance for changes in organization or methods. Activity level forecasts are then used to determine direct labour requirements and the forecast ratio of indirects to directs is used to calculate the number of indirect workers needed.

Work study

Work study techniques can be used when it is possible to apply work measurement to calculate how long operations should take and the amount of labour required. The starting point in a manufacturing company is the production budget prepared in terms of volumes of saleable products for the company as a whole, or volumes of output for individual departments. The budgets of productive hours are then compiled by the use of standard hours for direct labour, if standard labour times have been established by work measurement. The standard hours per unit of output are then multiplied by the planned volume of units to be produced to give the total planned hours for the period. This is divided by the number of operators required. Allowance may have to be made for absenteeism and forecast levels of idle time. The following is a highly simplified example of this procedure:

1. Planned output for year: 20,000 units.
2. Standard hours per unit: 5 hours.
3. Planned hours for year: 100,000 hours.
4. Productive hours per worker/year (allowing normal overtime, absenteeism and downtime): 2,000 hours.
5. Number of direct workers required (c/d) 100,000 ÷ 2,000: 50.

Work study techniques for direct workers can be combined with ratio-trend analysis to calculate the number of indirect workers needed. Clerical staff requirements may also be estimated by these methods if clerical work measurement techniques are used.

Econometric models

To build an econometric model for human resource planning purposes it is necessary to analyse past statistical data and to describe the relationship between a number of variables in a mathematical formula. The variables affecting human resource requirements may be identified under headings such as investment, sales or the complexity of the product line. The formula could then be applied to forecasts of movements in these variables to produce a human resource forecast.

SUPPLY FORECASTING

Human resources comprise the total effective effort that can be put to work as shown by the number of people and hours of work available, the capacity of employees to do the work, and their productivity. Supply forecasting measures the quantity of people that is likely to be available from within and outside the organization, having allowed for absenteeism, internal movements and promotions, wastage and changes in hours and other conditions of work. The supply analysis covers:

1. existing human resources;
2. potential losses to existing resources through labour wastage;

3. potential changes to existing resources through internal promotions;
4. effect of changing conditions of work and absenteeism; and
5. sources of supply from within the company.

BENEFITS

Human resource planning techniques ensure that the demand and supply factors in assessing future requirements are fully taken into account. They provide the basis for action plans dealing with recruitment, management, training, retraining, career progression, redundancy (if necessary) and the improvement of productivity.

87. Job Enrichment

DEFINITION

Job enrichment maximizes the interest and challenge of work by providing the employee with a job that has these characteristics:

1. It is a complete piece of work in the sense that the worker can identify a series of tasks or activities that end in a recognizable and definable product.
2. It affords the employee as much variety, decision-making, responsibility and control as possible in carrying out the work.
3. It provides direct feedback through the work itself on how well the employee is doing his or her job.

Job enrichment is not just increasing the number or variety of tasks, neither is it the provision of opportunities for job rotation. These approaches may relieve boredom, but they do not result in positive increases in motivation.

TECHNIQUES

There is no way of enriching a job. The technology and the circumstances will dictate which of the following techniques or combination of techniques is appropriate:

- Increasing the responsibility of individuals for their own work.
- Giving employees more scope to vary the methods, sequence and pace of their work.
- Giving a person or a work group a complete natural unit of work, ie, reducing task specialization.
- Removing some controls from above while ensuring that individuals or groups are clearly accountable for achieving defined targets or standards.
- Allowing employees more influence in setting targets and standards of performance.
- Giving employees the control information they need to monitor their own performance.

- Encouraging the participation of employees in planning work, innovating new techniques and reviewing results.
- Introducing new and more difficult tasks not previously handled.
- Assigning individuals or groups specific projects which give them more responsibility and help them to increase their expertise.

STEPS TO JOB ENRICHMENT

The following steps are taken when introducing job enrichment:

1. Select those jobs where better motivation is most likely to improve performance.
2. Set up a controlled pilot scheme before launching the full programme of job enrichment.
3. Brainstorm a list of changes that may enrich the jobs, without concern at this stage for their practicability.
4. Screen the list to concentrate on motivation factors such as achievement, responsibility and self-control.
5. Ensure that the changes are not just generalities like 'increase responsibility' but list specific differences in the way in which the jobs are designed and carried out.
6. Set precise objectives and criteria for measuring success and a timetable for each project, and ensure that control information is available to monitor progress and the results achieved.

BENEFITS

The benefits provided by job enrichment arise because it helps to make jobs intrinsically motivating, ie, people are motivated to achieve high productivity and high quality by the work itself, not simply by the extrinsic motivation provided by money. This happens as a result of:

1. *feedback* - individuals receive meaningful feedback about their performance, preferably by evaluating their own performance and defining the feedback they need. This implies that they should ideally work on a complete product, or a significant part of it which can be seen as a whole;
2. *use of abilities* - the job is perceived by individuals as requiring them to use abilities that they value in order for them to perform the job effectively; and
3. *self-control* - individuals feel that they have a high degree of self-control over setting their own goals and over defining the paths to these goals.

FURTHER READING

Ford, R, *Motivation through the Work itself*, American Management Association, New York 1969.
Paul, W J, and Robertson, K B, *Job Enrichment and Employee Motivation*, Gower, London 1970.

88. Job Design

DEFINITION

Job design is the process of deciding on the content of a job in terms of its duties and responsibilities; on the methods to be used in carrying out the job, in terms of techniques, systems and procedures; and on the relationships that should exist between the job-holder and his or her superiors, subordinates and colleagues.

AIMS

The aims of job design are:

1. to satisfy the requirements of the organization for productivity, operational efficiency and quality of product or services; and
2. to satisfy the needs of the individual for interest, challenge and accomplishment.

Clearly, these aims are interrelated and the overall objective of job design is to integrate the needs of the individual with those of the organization.

METHODS

The process of job design starts from an analysis of what work needs to be done - tasks that have to be carried out if the purpose of the organization or an organizational unit is to be achieved. This is where the techniques of work study, process planning and organizational analysis are used. Inevitably, these techniques are directed to the first aim of job design: the maximization of efficiency and productivity. They concentrate on the work to be done, not the worker. They may lead to a high degree of task specialization and assembly line processing, of paperwork as well as physical products. This in turn can lead to the maximization of individual responsibility and the opportunity to use personal skills.

Job design starts from an analysis of work requirements but when the tasks to be done have been determined, then it is the function of the job designer to consider how the jobs can be set up to provide the maximum degree of intrinsic motivation for those who have to carry them out. Consideration has also to be given to the third implied aim of job design: to fulfil the social responsibilities of the organization to the people who work in it by improving the quality of working life, which depends on both efficiency of performance and satisfaction of the worker.

TECHNIQUES

Job design uses two basic techniques, both of which are discussed in more detail in other sections of this handbook:

1. *Job analysis*. Establishing what work is to be done (Chapter 93).
2. *Job enrichment*. Bringing greater scope for personal achievement into the job (Chapter 87).

BENEFITS

Job design uses an analytical approach to maximize efficiency, satisfaction and, therefore, productivity.

FURTHER READING

Cooper, C, *Job Motivation and Job Design*, Institute of Personnel Management, London 1974.

89. Selection Testing

DEFINITION

Selection testing consists of the application of standard procedures to subjects which enables their responses to be quantified. The differences in the results represent differences in abilities or behaviour. The tests used for selection are intelligence tests, aptitude and attainment tests, and personality tests.

CHARACTERISTICS OF TESTS

The main characteristics of a test are that:

1. it is a sensitive measuring instrument which discriminates well between subjects;
2. it will have been standardized on a representative and sizeable sample of the population for which it is intended so that any individual's score can be interpreted in relation to that of others;
3. it is reliable in the sense that it always measures the same thing. A test aimed at measuring a particular characteristic, such as intelligence, should measure the same characteristic when applied to different people at the same or a different time, or to the same person at different times; and
4. it is valid in the sense that it measures the characteristic which the test is intended to measure. Thus an intelligence test should measure intelligence (however defined) and not simply verbal facility. A test meant to predict success in a job or in passing examinations should produce reasonably convincing (statistically significant) predictions.

INTELLIGENCE TESTS

Intelligence tests are the oldest and most frequently used psychological tests. The first test was produced by Binet and Simon in 1905, and shortly afterwards Stern suggested that the test scores should be expressed in the form of intelligence quotients, or IQs. An IQ is the ratio of the mental age as measured by a

Binet-type test to the actual (chronological) age. When the mental and chronological ages correspond, the IQ is expressed as 100. It is assumed that intelligence is distributed normally throughout the population, that is, the frequency distribution of intelligence corresponds to the normal curve shown in Figure 89.1. The most important characteristic of the normal curve is that it is symmetrical – there are an equal number of cases on either side of the mean, the central axis. Thus the distribution of intelligence in the population as a whole consists of an equal number of people with IQs above and below 100.

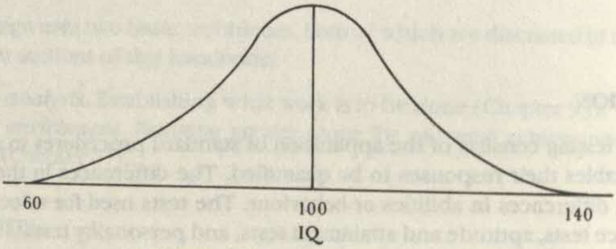


Figure 89.1. *An IQ normal curve*

APTITUDE AND ATTAINMENT TESTS

Aptitude tests are designed to predict the potential an individual has to perform a job or specific tasks within a job. They can cover such areas as clerical, numerical and mechanical aptitude, and dexterity. They may come in the form of well-validated single tests, or as a battery of tests such as those developed some years ago by the British National Institute of Industrial Psychology for selecting apprentices.

All aptitude tests should be properly validated. The usual procedure is to determine the qualities required for the job by means of a job analysis. A standard test or a test battery is then obtained from a test agency. Alternatively, a special test is devised by or for the company. The test is then given to employees already working on the job and the results compared with a criterion, usually supervisors' ratings. If the correlation between test and criterion is sufficiently high, the test is then given to applicants. To validate the test further, a follow-up study of the job performance of the applicants selected by the test is usually carried out.

Attainment tests measure abilities or skills that have already been acquired by training or experience. A typing test is the most typical example. It is easy to find out how many words a minute a typist can type and compare that with the standard required for the job.

PERSONALITY TESTS

Personality tests attempt to assess the type of personality possessed by the applicant in terms of personality traits (styles of behaviour such as aggressiveness or persistence) or personality types (salient features which characterize the individual such as extroversion or introversion).

They need to be treated with great caution. For selection purposes they are almost meaningless if they have not been validated by a thorough correlation of test results with subsequent behaviour. And such validations present great difficulties.

BENEFITS

Selection testing provides an objective means of measuring abilities or characteristics. Tests are most likely to be helpful when they are used as part of a selection procedure for occupations where a large number of recruits are required, and where it is not possible to rely entirely on examination results or information about previous experience as the basis for predicting future performance. In these circumstances it is economic to develop and administer the tests and a sufficient number of cases can be built up for the essential validation exercise. Intelligence tests are particularly helpful in situations where intelligence is a key factor but there is no other reliable method of measuring it.

FURTHER READING

Toplis, J, Dulewicz, V, and Fletcher, C, *Psychological Testing: A Practical Guide*, Institute of Personnel Management, London 1987.

90. Performance Management

DEFINITION

Performance management is a process or set of processes for helping organizations to achieve their objectives. It functions by first establishing shared understanding between managers and their staff about what *is* to be achieved, and then by managing and developing people in a way which increases the probability that it *will* be achieved in the short and longer term.

AIM

The aim of performance management is to establish a culture in which individuals and groups take responsibility for the continuous improvement of business processes and of their own skills and contributions.

Performance management systems can be used to communicate and reinforce the organization's strategies, values and norms, and to integrate individual and corporate objectives. But they also enable individuals to express their own views on what they should be doing, where they should be going and how they should be managed. Thus they provide a means whereby expectations can be shared between managers and their staff. Managers can clarify their expectations of what they want their staff to do and staff can communicate their expectations on how they should be treated.

PHILOSOPHY

The philosophy of performance management is based on the following concepts:

- The need for a process of management which supports the achievement of the business strategy by integrating individual and corporate objectives.
- The need to develop and maintain within the organization a process which enables it to fulfil its responsibilities to employees.
- The need to enable employees to manage their own performance.

- The importance of creating a partnership between managers and their staff in managing performance – managing by agreement rather than by command.
- The use of objectives and contribution (the results achieved) to provide the basis for measurement, assessment and development.
- The importance of measurement, feedback and positive reinforcement in managing performance.
- The need to have a fair and equitable system for measuring and assessing performance and for rewarding staff accordingly.
- The importance of recognizing that performance management is an essential process of *management* and not just a technique of performance appraisal and motivation.
- The need to develop the organization as a 'learning organization', ie, one which facilitates the learning of all its members and continually transforms itself.

Overriding all these is the concept of 'empowerment', which can be described as the process of giving people control over and responsibility for their work, and ensuring that they have the knowledge and skills to do it to the satisfaction of the organization and themselves.

BASIC FEATURES OF PERFORMANCE MANAGEMENT

Performance management exhibits the following basic features:

- The organization shares its vision of its objectives (its mission statement) and its strategic agenda with its employees.
- There is less emphasis on retrospective performance appraisal and more concentration on future performance planning – the focus is on improving performance rather than just assessing it.
- Outcomes in the form of contributions to achieving roles are defined in qualitative as well as quantitative terms.
- There is emphasis on coaching and counselling on the part of the manager and on self-appraisal and development on the part of the individual.
- Some form of upward assessment may be included.
- It is a continuous process, not an annual event.
- The minimum use is made of forms and the maximum use is made of existing processes of objective setting and work planning.
- Formal ratings are not necessarily part of the process.
- Focus on the individual's contribution to the team as a whole (team objectives).
- The whole process is subjected to regular evaluation.

CONDITIONS FOR SUCCESS

A full performance management system as described above may be difficult to introduce. When developing such a system the following are the conditions which must be satisfied to achieve a successful outcome:

- Top management commitment.
- Line management ownership and commitment.
- General belief among staff that the process is fair and beneficial to them as individuals.
- Cultural fit.
- Appropriate management style.
- A shared process of strategic management.
- High levels of skill in objective setting and measuring performance and contributions (both managers and individuals).
- A head of personnel who has the capacity to play a major and innovative role in ensuring that these conditions are satisfied.

BENEFITS

A performance management system can:

- help to develop a performance-orientated culture in the organization;
- improve individual and team performance and, through them, the performance of the organization as a whole;
- help in integrating individual, departmental, divisional and overall objectives;
- develop a culture in which the value of individuals to the organization is fully recognized;
- demonstrate the interest of management in the development of people at work; and
- help in the design of relevant training and development programmes.

FURTHER READING

Neale, F, (ed.) *The Handbook of Performance Management*, Institute of Personnel Management, London 1991.

91. Assessment Centres

DEFINITION

In an assessment centre, the multiple assessment of several managers in a company is carried out by a group of trained assessors using a variety of techniques such as games, simulations, tests and group discussions. Assessment centres aim to measure competence, defined as the ability and willingness to perform a task.

COMPETENCES ASSESSED

The competences assessed in a typical assessment centre programme include assertiveness, persuasive ability, communicative ability, planning and organizing ability, self-confidence, resistance to stress, energy level, decision-making, sensitivity to the feelings of others, administrative ability, creativity and mental alertness.

THE PROGRAMME

The programme may consist of such activities as questionnaires filled in by participants about their attitudes to their work and the company and their aspirations, written tests, video-taped, ten-minute speeches, role-playing exercises requiring leadership and group participation, in-basket exercises requiring participants to handle typical problems in a manager's in-tray, various interview simulations, management decision games, self-appraisal and peer rating, and depth interviews. Everything is observed and assessed by trained assessors.

BENEFITS

Well-conducted assessment centres can and do achieve better forecasts of future performance and progress than judgements made by line managers in the normal unskilled way. Face-validity is high – everyone is impressed by the proceedings.

FURTHER READING

Woodruffe, C, *Assessment Centres*, Institute of Personnel Management, London 1990.

92. Reward Management Systems

DEFINITION

A reward management system contains arrangements in the form of processes, practices, structures, subsystems and procedures which will be concerned with providing and maintaining appropriate types and levels of pay, benefits and other forms of reward.

COMPONENTS OF A REWARD MANAGEMENT SYSTEM

The components of a reward system consist of financial rewards (basic and performance pay) and employee benefits, which together comprise total remuneration. They also include nonfinancial rewards (recognition, praise, achievement, responsibility and personal growth) and, in many cases, a system of performance management as described in Chapter 90. The main elements of the system are as follows:

- *Processes* for establishing the value of jobs, the worth of individuals in those jobs and the range and level of employee benefits to be provided – these processes consist of market rate analyses, job evaluation schemes and performance management or appraisal systems.
- *Practices* for motivating people by the use of financial and nonfinancial rewards. The latter will be provided generally by the culture and values of the organization and specifically by the quality of management and leadership, the work itself and the opportunities given to employees to develop their skills and careers within the organization.
- *Structures* for relating pay and benefit levels to the value of positions in the organization's job hierarchy, and for providing scope for rewarding people according to their performance, skill or experience.
- *Systems* for providing financial rewards and incentives to people according to individual, group or organizational performance.
- *Procedures* for maintaining the system and for ensuring that it operates efficiently and flexibly and provides value for money.

AIMS

These components will be designed, developed and maintained on the basis of reward strategies, philosophies and policies which will be created within the context of the organization's business strategies, culture and environment. They will be expected to fulfil the following broad aims:

1. *Improve organizational effectiveness* - support the attainment of the organization's mission and strategies and help to achieve sustainable competitive advantage.
2. *Support and change culture* - underpin and, as necessary, help to change the organization's culture as expressed through its values for performance, innovation, risk-taking, quality, flexibility and teamworking.
3. *Achieve integration* - be an integrated part of the management processes of the organization. This involves playing a key role in a mutually reinforcing and coherent range of personnel policies and processes.
4. *Support managers* - support individual managers in the achievement of their goals.
5. *Motivate employees* - motivate employees to achieve high levels of quality performance.
6. *Compete in the labour market* - attract and retain high-quality people.
7. *Increase commitment* - enhance the commitment of employees to the organization so that they will (a) want to remain members of it; (b) develop a strong belief in and acceptance of the values and goals of the organization; and (c) be ready and willing to exert considerable effort on its behalf.
8. *Fairness and equity* - reward people fairly and consistently according to their contribution and value to the organization.
9. *Improve skills* - upgrade competence and encourage personal development.
10. *Improve quality* - help to achieve continuous improvement in levels of quality and customer service.
11. *Develop teamworking* - improve cooperation and effective teamworking at all levels.
12. *Value for money* - provide value for money for the organization.
13. *Manageable* - be easily manageable so that undue administrative burdens are not imposed on managers and members of the personnel department.
14. *Controllable* - be easily controllable so that policies can be implemented consistently and costs can be contained within budgets.

DEVELOPING A REWARD MANAGEMENT SYSTEM

The steps required to develop a reward management system are as follows:

1. *Determine reward management strategy* - how the reward system is re-

quired to support the achievement of the organization's objectives and provide levers for change, for example, by developing a more performance-oriented culture.

2. *Formulate reward policies* in such areas as the level of rewards, the relationship of pay levels to market rates (the company's 'pay posture') and relating rewards to performance.
3. *Analyse jobs* to provide the basis for job evaluation and salary surveys to establish market rates (see Chapter 93).
4. *Evaluate jobs* to establish the relative worth of jobs so that they can be positioned according to their value to the organization in a job hierarchy and slotted, where appropriate, into a pay bracket within a graded pay structure (see Chapter 94).
5. *Conduct salary surveys* to establish market rates (see Chapter 95).
6. *Design salary structure*, which defines the rates for jobs, describes the pay relationships (relativities) between them and, frequently, sets out the scope in the shape of a pay range or bracket for the pay of employees to progress according to experience and/or performance (see Chapter 96).
7. *Develop salary control systems*, which provide the basis for administering reward management (see Chapter 97).
8. *Devise payment-by-results systems*, which relate rewards directly to the results achieved (see Chapter 98).
9. *Design performance-related pay systems*, which relate pay to more general measures of performance (see Chapter 99).
10. *Decide on the total remuneration package*, which will incorporate various forms of employee benefits (pensions, sick pay, etc.) as well as basic pay, incentive pay, bonuses, and any company performance-related rewards such as profit sharing or gain sharing.

BENEFITS OF REWARD MANAGEMENT SYSTEMS

An effective reward management system will provide a sound basis for recruiting, motivating and retaining the quality of people required by the organization.

FURTHER READING

Armstrong, M. and Murlis, H, *Reward Management*, Kogan Page, London 1991.

93. Job Analysis

DEFINITION

Job analysis is the examination of a job, its component parts and the circumstances in which it is performed. It leads to a *job description* which sets out the purpose, scope, duties and responsibilities of a job. From the job analysis and job description, a *job specification* may be derived, which is a statement of the skills, knowledge and other personal attributes required to carry out the job.

USES

1. *Recruitment and selection*, where it provides a basis for a specification of what the company is looking for.
2. *Training*, where by means of skills and task analysis it produces training specifications which set out training needs and are used to prepare training programmes.
3. *Job evaluation*, where by means of whole job or factor comparison, job descriptions can be compared and decisions made on the relative position of a job in the hierarchy.
4. *Performance appraisal*, where the job description resulting from job analysis is used to decide on the objectives and standards the job-holder should reach against which his or her performance will be measured.
5. *Organization planning*, as part of the process of activity analysis.

TECHNIQUES OF COLLECTING INFORMATION

Information about jobs can be collected by means of questionnaires and/or interviews.

Questionnaires

Questionnaires, to be completed by job-holders and approved by job-holder's superiors, are useful when a large number of jobs are to be covered. They can also save interviewing time by recording purely factual information and by helping the analyst to structure his or her questions in advance to cover areas which need to be explored in greater depth.

Questionnaires should provide the following basic information:

- The job title of the job-holder.
- The title of the job-holder's superior.
- The job titles and numbers of staff reporting to the job-holder (best recorded by means of an organization chart).
- A brief description (one or two sentences) of the overall role or purpose of the job.
- A list of the main tasks or duties that the job-holder has to carry out. As appropriate, these should specify the resources controlled, the equipment used, the contacts made and the frequency with which the tasks are carried out.

Interviews

To obtain the full flavour of a job it is usually necessary to interview job-holders and to check the findings with their superiors. The aim of the interview is to obtain all the relevant facts about the job, covering the areas listed above in the section on questionnaires.

To achieve this aim job analysts:

1. work to a logical sequence of questions which help the interviewee to order his or her thoughts about the job;
2. pin people down on what they actually do;
3. ensure that the job-holder is not allowed to get away with vague or inflated descriptions of his or her work; and
4. obtain a clear statement from the job-holder about his or her authority to make decisions and the amount of guidance received from his or her superior.

TECHNIQUES OF WRITING JOB DESCRIPTIONS

Job descriptions are based on a detailed job analysis and should be as brief and as factual as possible. The headings under which job descriptions are written are set out below.

Job title

The existing or proposed job title indicates as clearly as possible the function in which the job is carried out and the level of the job within that function.

Reporting to

The job title of the manager or superior to whom the job-holder is directly responsible is given under this heading.

Reporting to him or her

The job titles of all the posts directly reporting to the job-holder are given under this heading.

Overall responsibilities

This section describes as concisely as possible the overall purpose of the job. The aim is to convey in no more than two or three sentences a broad picture of the job which will clearly identify it from other jobs and establish the role of the job-holder.

Main tasks

The steps taken to define the main tasks of the job are as follows:

1. Identify and list the tasks that have to be carried out. No attempt is made to describe in detail how they are carried out, but some indication is given of the purpose or objectives of each task.
2. Analyse the initial list of tasks and, so far as possible, simplify the list by grouping related tasks together so that no more than, say, seven or eight main activity areas remain.
3. Decide on the order in which tasks should be described. The alternatives include:
   - frequency with which they are carried out (continually, hourly, daily, weekly, monthly, intermittently);
   - chronological order;
   - order of importance; and
   - the main processes of management that are carried out, for example, setting objectives, planning, organizing, coordinating, operating, directing and motivating staff, and controlling.
4. Describe each main task separately in short numbered paragraphs. No more than one or at most two sentences are used for the description, but, if necessary, any separate tasks carried out within the task can be tabulated (a,b,c, etc.) under the overall description of the activity. A typical sentence describing a task should:
   - start with an active verb to eliminate all unnecessary wording. Verbs are used which express the actual responsibility to recommend, to do, to ensure that someone else does something, or to collaborate with someone, for example, prepares, completes, recommends, supervises, ensures that, liaises with;
   - state what is done as succinctly as possible; and
   - state why it is done: this indicates the purpose of the job and gives a lead to setting targets or performance standards.

FURTHER READING

Pearn, M, and Kandola, R, *Job Analysis*, Institute of Personnel Management, London 1986.

94. Job Evaluation

DEFINITION

Job evaluation schemes:

1. establish the rank order of jobs within an organization, measure the difference in value between them and group them into an appropriate grade in a job grade structure;
2. ensure that, so far as possible, judgements about job values are made on objective rather than subjective grounds; and
3. provide a continuing basis for assessing the value of jobs which is easy to understand, administer and control and is accepted by the staff as fair.

TECHNIQUES

The basic techniques used in job evaluation are as follows:

1. *Job analysis*. Information is obtained about the content of the job and the levels of responsibility involved (job analysis is described in more detail in Chapter 93).
2. *Whole-job comparison*. Following job analysis, whole jobs are compared with one another to determine their relative importance and their place in a hierarchy. (Job evaluation is essentially a comparative process.)
3. *Factor comparison*. Separately defined characteristics or factors which are assumed to be common to all jobs are analysed and compared. It is assumed that differences in the extent to which the characteristics are found in the jobs will measure differences between the jobs.

TYPES OF JOB EVALUATION

Job evaluation schemes are usually grouped into two basic types:

1. *Non-analytical*, based on whole-job comparisons. The main non-analytical schemes are job ranking and job classification.

2. *Analytical*, based on factor comparisons. The basic scheme is points rating, although there are a number of proprietary brands, of which the best known is the Hay/MSL scheme.

Job ranking

The simplest form of job evaluation is job ranking. This is a non-analytical approach which aims to judge each job as a whole and determine its relative value in a hierarchy by ranking one job against another. The rank order is established by considering the worth of each job to the organization. A grading structure has then to be developed and the jobs are slotted into the grades.

Job classification

Job classification is based on an initial definition of the number and characteristics of the grades into which the jobs will be placed. The grade definitions attempt to take into account discernible differences in skill and responsibility and may refer to specific criteria, such as level of decision, knowledge, equipment used and education or training required to do the work. Jobs are allotted to grades by comparing the whole-job description with the grade definition.

Points rating

Points rating schemes use factor comparison techniques. The factors selected are those considered to be most relevant in assessing the comparative value of jobs. Typical factors include resources controlled, decisions, complexity, and knowledge and skills.

Each factor is given a range of points so that a maximum number of points is available. The relative importance or 'weighting' of a factor is determined by the maximum number of points allotted to it. In each factor, the total range of points is divided into degrees according to the level at which the factor is present in the jobs. The characteristics of each degree in terms of, say, level of complexity, are defined as yardsticks for comparison purposes.

Jobs are evaluated by studying job descriptions containing analyses of the

Table 94.1. *An example of points rating*

Factor	**Job A**		**Job B**	
	Level	*Points*	*Level*	*Points*
Resources	4	20	5	25
Decisions	4	60	4	60
Complexity	5	25	3	15
Knowledge and skills	3	15	3	15
		120		115

degree to which the factor is present in the job and comparing them with the factor level definition. The jobs are graded for each factor and the points for each grading are added to produce a total score. This score can then be related to the scores of other jobs to indicate the rank order. For example, an evaluation of two jobs using a four factor scheme could produce the results shown in Table 94.1.

JOB EVALUATION PROGRAMME

A job evaluation programme consists of the eight stages shown in Figure 94.1:

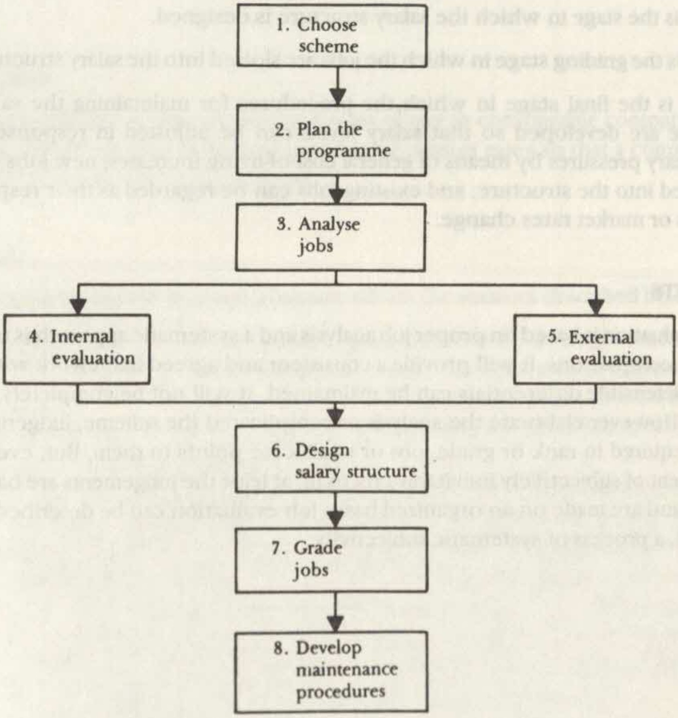


Figure 94.1. *Job evaluation programme*

Stage 1 is the preliminary stage in which information is obtained about present arrangements; decisions are made on the need for a new scheme or to revise an existing scheme; and a choice is made of the type of scheme to be used.

Stage 2 is the planning stage when the programme is drawn up; the staff affected are informed; arrangements are made as required for setting up working parties; and the representative sample of benchmark jobs to be analysed is selected.

Stage 3 is the analysis stage when information is collected about the sample of benchmark jobs as a basis for the internal and external evaluation.

Stage 4 is the internal evaluation stage when the jobs are ranked by means of the chosen evaluation scheme and graded, usually on a provisional basis pending the collection of market rate data, except where a job classification scheme is used to slot jobs into an existing job grade structure.

Stage 5 is the external evaluation stage when information is obtained on market rates.

Stage 6 is the stage in which the salary structure is designed.

Stage 7 is the grading stage in which the jobs are slotted into the salary structure.

Stage 8 is the final stage in which the procedures for maintaining the salary structure are developed so that salary levels can be adjusted in response to inflationary pressures by means of general cost-of-living increases; new jobs can be graded into the structure; and existing jobs can be regarded as their responsibilities or market rates change.

BENEFITS

If job evaluation is based on proper job analysis and a systematic approach is used to make comparisons, it will provide a consistent and agreed framework within which defensible differentials can be maintained. It will not be completely objective. However elaborate the analysis or complicated the scheme, judgement is still required to rank or grade jobs or to allocate points to them. But, even if an element of subjectively inevitably creeps in, at least the judgements are based on fact and are made on an organized basis. Job evaluation can be described as, in effect, a process of systematic subjectivity.

95. Salary Surveys

DEFINITION

Salary surveys obtain information on the rates of pay in comparable companies for similar jobs. The purpose is to obtain data on market rates so that a competitive salary structure can be maintained.

METHOD

Salary surveys obtain and analyse information from the sources described below:

1. *General published surveys*, which give information on the average or median (ie, middle of the range) salaries for typical jobs. An indication of dispersion is usually given in the form of the upper-quartile salary (the point above which 25 per cent of jobs are paid) and the lower quartile (the point below which 25 per cent of the jobs are paid).

   All published surveys depend on attracting the right range and type of participants and their success in doing this can vary from year to year. It is not possible to ensure a representative sample in all regions, industrial sectors or job types and it is essential that the survey user is aware of the areas where data are thin and can accordingly treat them with caution. This, together with the problems associated with correct matching of the job type and level, often means that while published survey data are usually relatively cheap to obtain they can, at best, give only a very broad indication of market rates.
2. *Specialized surveys*, which consist of three types:
   - Analyses of members' salaries conducted by professional institutions.
   - Local or national surveys of particular industrial groups produced by employers or trade associations.
   - Local or national market studies carried out on a 'one off' basis by consultants either for a single employee or a group of organizations.
3. *Company surveys*, which cover selected benchmark jobs which are special to the industry or are not dealt with adequately by other surveys. Surveys are

either conducted by a single company approaching others on a reciprocal basis, or they are carried out by a group of independent companies acting as a 'salary survey club'. The data from a company survey can be presented in the form illustrated in Figure 95.1.

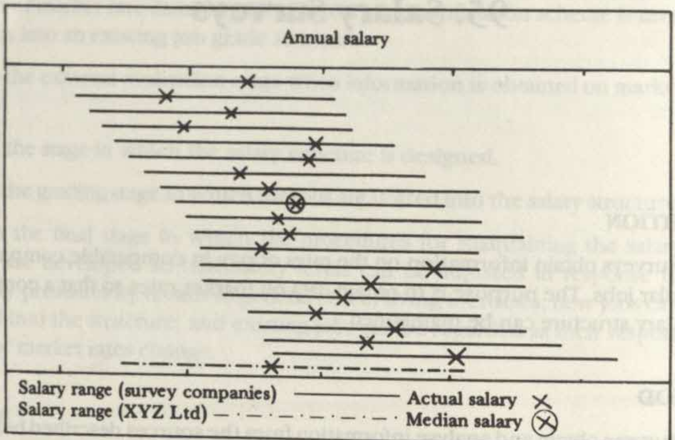


Figure 95.1. *Salary survey data presented graphically*

The translation of salary market data into an acceptable company salary structure is a process based on judgement and compromise. The aim is to extract a derived market rate based on effective estimates of the reliability of the data, and to strike a reasonable balance between the competing merits of the different sources used. However 'scientific' the approach, this is essentially an intuitive process. Once all the available data have been collected and presented in the most accessible manner possible (ie, job by job for all the areas the structure is to cover), a proposed scale midpoint has to be established for each level based on the place in the market the company wishes to occupy, ie, its 'market posture'. The establishment of this midpoint will be based not only on assessment of current and updated salary data but on indications of movements in earnings and the cost of living which are likely to affect the whole structure. For organizations needing to stay ahead of the market this point will often be around the upper quartile; for others, closer alignment with the median is adequate.

96. Salary Structure Design

DEFINITION

A salary structure consists of a company's salary levels or scales for single jobs or groups of jobs. The most typical structure is the graded structure as described below.

The design process uses the techniques of *job analysis, job evaluation* and *salary surveys* to produce an equitable and competitive structure.

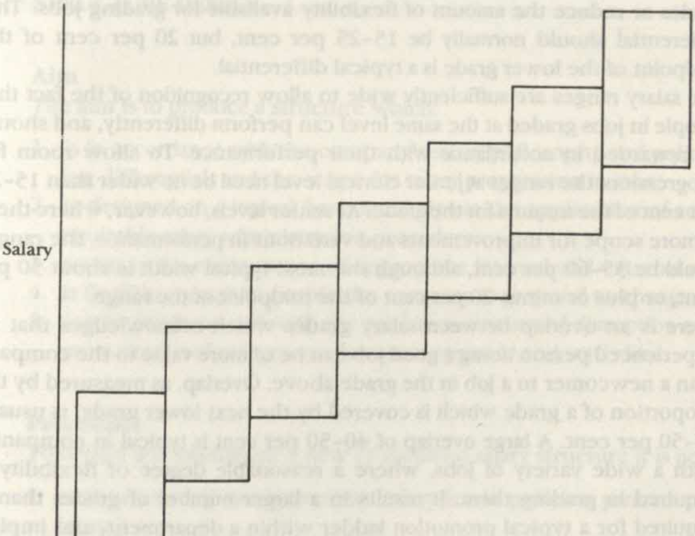


Figure 96.1. ***A broad-banded overlapping salary structure***

GRADED SALARY STRUCTURES

A broad-banded salary structure is illustrated in Figure 96.1. The main features of such a structure are as follows:

1. All jobs are allocated into a salary grade within the structure on the basis of an assessment of their internal and external value to the organization.
2. Each salary grade consists of a salary range or band. No individual holding a job in the grade can go beyond the maximum of the salary range unless he or she is promoted.
3. The jobs allocated to a salary grade are assumed to be broadly of the same level. In other words, they normally have the same minimum and maximum rates, which correspond with the grade boundaries.
4. The number of salary ranges or grades will depend on: (a) the salary levels of the highest- and lowest-paid jobs to be covered by the structure, which give the overall range of salaries within which the individual salary ranges have to be fitted; (b) the differentials between grades; and (c) the width of the salary ranges.
5. There is a differential between the midpoints of each salary range which provides scope for rewarding increased responsibility on promotion to the next higher grade but does not create too wide a gap between adjacent grades or reduce the amount of flexibility available for grading jobs. This differential should normally be 15-25 per cent, but 20 per cent of the midpoint of the lower grade is a typical differential.
6. The salary ranges are sufficiently wide to allow recognition of the fact that people in jobs graded at the same level can perform differently, and should be rewarded in accordance with their performance. To allow room for progression, the ranges at junior clerical level need be no wider than 15–20 per cent of the minima for the grade. At senior levels, however, where there is more scope for improvements and variations in performance, the ranges could be 35–60 per cent, although the most typical width is about 50 per cent, or plus or minus 20 per cent of the midpoint of the range.
7. There is an overlap between salary grades which acknowledges that an experienced person doing a good job can be of more value to the company than a newcomer to a job in the grade above. Overlap, as measured by the proportion of a grade which is covered by the next lower grade, is usually 25–50 per cent. A large overlap of 40–50 per cent is typical in companies with a wide variety of jobs, where a reasonable degree of flexibility is required in grading them. It results in a larger number of grades than is required for a typical promotion ladder within a department, and implies that in some circumstances a grade can be jumped following promotion.
8. The midpoint of the range is the salary level which represents the value to the organization of any job in that grade in which the performance of the job-holder is fully acceptable. It may be regarded as the 'target salary' for the

grade, which would be the average salary of the staff in the grade, assuming a steady movement of people through the range.

9. The midpoint of the range is aligned to the market rates for the jobs in the grade. The salary policy or 'posture' of the organization will determine whether the midpoint is equated to the median market rate or whether it is related to another point, for example, the upper-quartile market rate, or 10 per cent above the median.
10. General increases in salary levels following negotiations or changes in the cost of living (usually expressed in percentage terms) are dealt with by proportionate increases to the midpoints of each salary range. Assuming that the policy is to maintain range widths, this would result in proportionate increases to the maxima and minima of each grade.
11. Jobs can be regarded within the structure when it is decided that their value has altered because of a change in responsibilities or a pronounced movement in market rates. In the latter case, it is necessary to note that this is a special market rate for the job imposed by external circumstances and that this does not imply that jobs previously placed by job evaluation at the same level should also be regraded.

STRUCTURE DESIGN

Aim

The aim is to produce a structure which:

1. is in accordance with the company's salary philosophy and policies concerning differentials and the scope for salary progression in jobs;
2. is designed on a logical basis and helps in the application of consistent and equitable salary administration procedures;
3. assists in the maintenance of appropriate internal and external relativities;
4. is flexible enough to enable the company to respond to change; and
5. can be implemented with the minimum amount of disruption and the maximum degree of acceptance from management and staff alike.

Procedure

To design and implement a new or modified salary structure it is necessary to:

1. analyse existing arrangements – salary levels, policies, procedures and problems;
2. analyse and evaluate benchmark jobs. A benchmark job is a typical job which can be used as a reference point for internal and external comparisons;
3. obtain market rate information on benchmark jobs by means of salary surveys;

4. decide on the type and main features of the structure or structures required;
5. in the light of the decisions on the type of structure required, integrate the job evaluation and market rate data and design the structure; and
6. plan and execute the implementation of the new or modified structure.

Methods

The main methods of designing salary structures are as follows:

1. *Points evaluation scheme method*, which consists of five steps:
   - Conduct job evaluation using points scheme (Chapter 94).
   - Plot points scores against current salaries, and draw trend line to produce salary practice line (Figure 96.2).

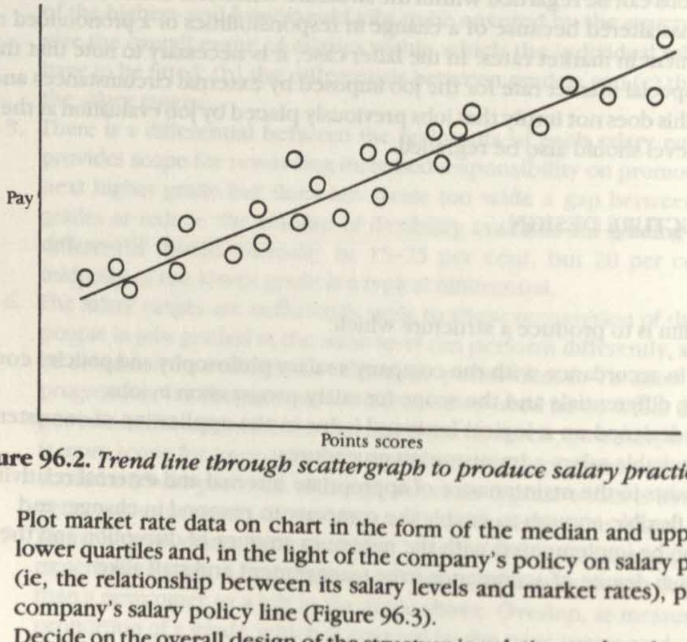


Figure 96.2. *Trend line through scattergraph to produce salary practice line*

   - Plot market rate data on chart in the form of the median and upper and lower quartiles and, in the light of the company's policy on salary posture (ie, the relationship between its salary levels and market rates), plot the company's salary policy line (Figure 96.3).
   - Decide on the overall design of the structure in relation to the salary policy line. This requires decisions on the number of grades, the midpoint salaries of each grade (ie, the differentials between them) and the boundaries of each grade in terms of point scores and salaries.
   - Take the scatter of existing salaries around the policy line and, allowing for natural groupings and in accordance with company policies on range width and overlap, define the salary and points ranges for each grade (Figure 96.4).

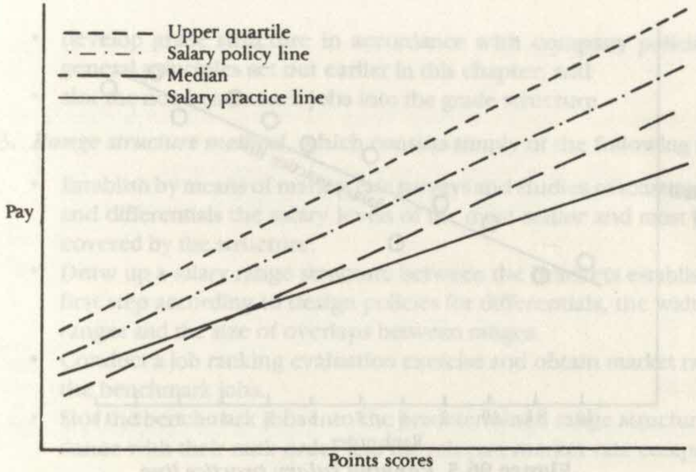


Figure 96.3. *Salary policy line*

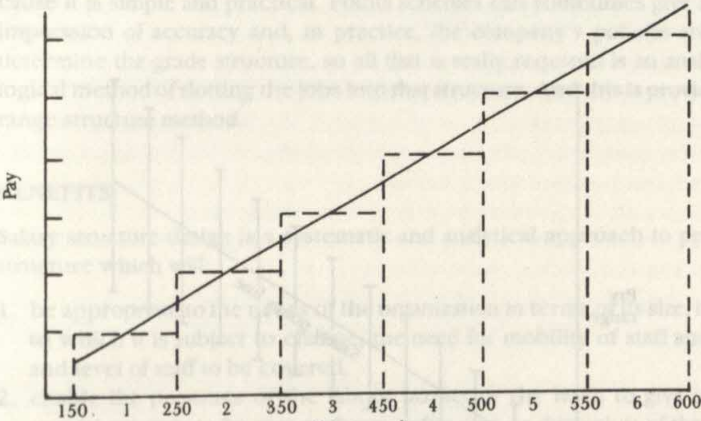


Figure 96.4. *A points scheme grade structure*

2. ***Ranking/market rate method*** **in which the steps are:**
   - **rank benchmark jobs and plot actual salaries to show practice line (Figure 96.5);**
   - **obtain market rate data on the benchmark jobs, plot on chart and, having drawn a salary policy line, plot the upper and lower limits of each benchmark job in accordance with range width policy, eg ± 15 per cent of midpoint (Figure 96.6);**

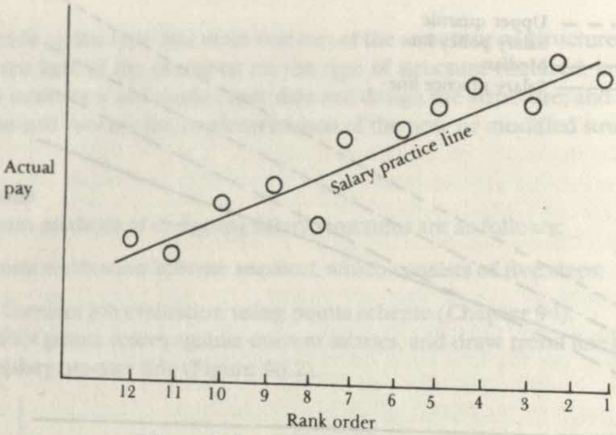


Figure 96.5. *Ranking salary practice line*

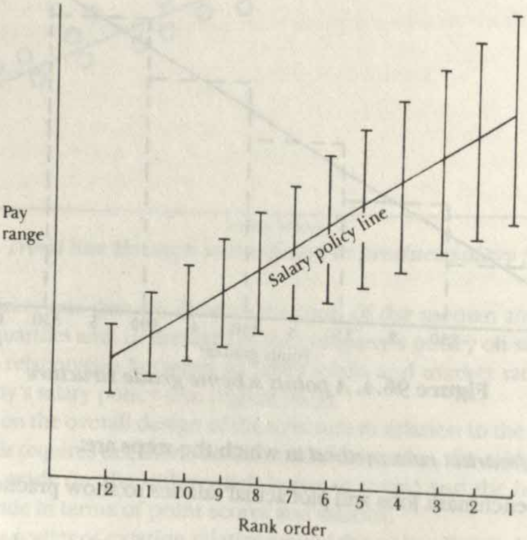


Figure 96.6. *Benchmark job range widths*

- develop grade structure in accordance with company policies and the general principles set out earlier in this chapter; and
- slot the non-benchmark jobs into the grade structure.

3. *Range structure method*, which consists simply of the following four steps:
    - Establish by means of market rate surveys and studies of existing structures and differentials the salary levels of the most senior and most junior jobs covered by the structure.
    - Draw up a salary range structure between the brackets established in the first step according to design policies for differentials, the width of salary ranges and the size of overlaps between ranges.
    - Conduct a job ranking evaluation exercise and obtain market rate data for the benchmark jobs.
    - Slot the benchmark jobs into the predetermined range structure in accordance with their rank order and the relevant market rate comparisons.

Of these three methods, the first and to a lesser degree, the second, appear to be the most 'scientific'. But the range structure method is frequently used because it is simple and practical. Points schemes can sometimes give a spurious impression of accuracy and, in practice, the company's policies are likely to determine the grade structure, so all that is really required is an analytical and logical method of slotting the jobs into that structure. And this is provided by the range structure method.

BENEFITS

Salary structure design is a systematic and analytical approach to producing a structure which will:

1. be appropriate to the needs of the organization in terms of its size, the degree to which it is subject to change, the need for mobility of staff and the type and level of staff to be covered;
2. enable the pressures of the labour market or the need to give individuals special rewards to be met without undue cost or distortion of the structure as a whole; and
3. facilitate consistency in the treatment of varying levels of responsibility and performance.

FURTHER READING

Armstrong, M, and Murlis, H, *Reward Management* (Chapters 7 and 8), Kogan Page, London 1991.

97. Salary Control Systems

DEFINITION

Salary control systems ensure that the salary policies of the company are implemented and that salary costs are kept within budget.

BASIS OF THE SALARY CONTROL SYSTEM

The salary control system is based on:

- a clearly defined and understood salary structure;
- defined methods of salary progression;
- budgets of salary costs;
- method of monitoring salary costs and the implementation of salary policies;
- clearly defined salary review guidelines;
- well-defined procedures for grading jobs and fixing salaries; and
- clear statements of the degree of authority managers have at each level to decide salaries and increments.

TECHNIQUES

There are four techniques for monitoring salary costs and checking on the stability and effectiveness of the salary system:

1. salary budget
2. attrition measurement
3. compa-ratio
4. salary audit.

SALARY BUDGET

The annual salary budget is a product of the numbers of staff to be employed and the rates at which they will be paid during the budget year. It is therefore based on human resource plans, present salary levels and forecasts of additional costs arising from general or individual salary reviews. Actual costs should be monitored against budget using a return such as that illustrated in Table 97.1.

Table 97.1. *Salary cost return*

Category of staff	Budget for year		Budget for period		Period actual		Year to date	
	No	*Cost*	*No*	*Cost*	*No*	*Cost*	*No*	*Cost*
Grades 3–2								
Grades 7–4								
Grades 12–8								
Total								

SALARY ATTRITION

Salary attrition takes place when entrants join on lower salaries than those leaving so that salary costs over a period are likely to go down, given a normal flow of starters and leavers and subject to the effect of general and individual salary increases. In theory at least, attrition helps to finance merit increases. It has been claimed that fixed incremental systems can be entirely self-financing. But the conditions under which this can be attained are so exceptional that a completely self-financing system rarely, if ever, occurs. But some amount of attrition to merit increased costs is normal and should be measured in order to assess actual costs and to forecast future expenditure.

Attrition can be measured over a period by the following formula: *total percentage increase to payroll arising from general promotional and merit increases* minus *total percentage increase in average salaries.*

COMPA-RATIO

A compa-ratio (short for comparative ratio) provides a measurement of how far average salaries in a range differ from the target salary, defined as the salary which should be earned by a fully competent individual in a job. A line drawn through the target salaries for each range in a salary structure is the salary policy line for an organization and it is this line which is related to market rates. If, typically, the target is the midpoint of the salary range for a grade, the compa-ratio can be calculated as follows:

$$\frac{\text{Average of all salaries in grade} \times 100}{\text{Midpoint of range}}$$

If the distribution of salaries is on target (ie, the average salary is equal to the midpoint) the compa-ratio will be 100. If the ratio is above 100 this would suggest either that staff are overpaid or that there are a large number of long-serving employees paid at the top of the range. Conversely, if the ratio is below 100, the causes would probably be that salaries are too low or that a large number of entrants on lower salaries have affected the relationships. The identification of the reasons for a high or low compa-ratio can suggest policy adjustments to correct the imbalance, although there can be many situations where a ratio of over or under 100 is perfectly justified.

SALARY AUDIT

The salary system needs to be audited to check that:

1. salary levels are keeping pace with changes in market rates so that salary policies on external relativities are being maintained;
2. the salary structure is not being eroded by grade drift (unjustifiable upgradings) or because salaries for new starters or promoted staff are fixed at too high a level;
3. appropriate differentials are being maintained internally; and
4. salary progression policies are being implemented properly.

The audit is conducted by monitoring external and internal relativities and procedures.

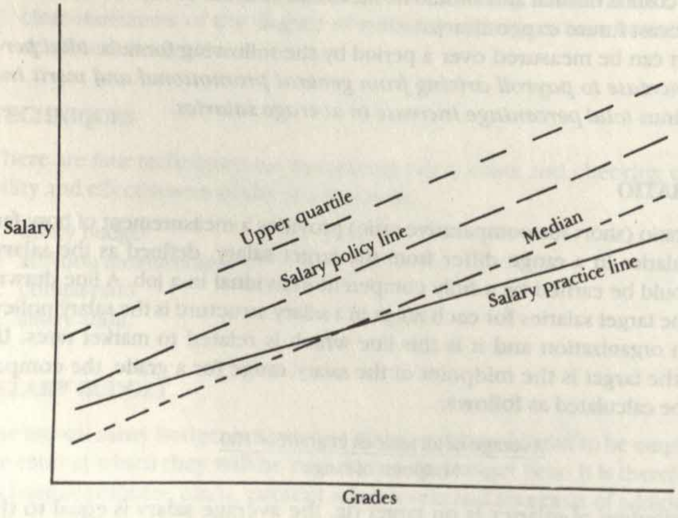


Figure 97.1. *Analysis of salary structure policy and practice in relation to market rates*

Monitoring external relativities

Market rate surveys are conducted or analysed regularly and comparisons made with salaries paid within the company to assess whether salaries are generally keeping pace with the market or whether any particular groups of staff are out of line. The best way to summarize and compare the data is to chart (as shown in Figure 97.1):

1. the salary practice line (the average of actual salaries paid in each grade);
2. the salary policy line (the line joining together the target salaries for each grade – usually the midpoint salary); and
3. the median and/or upper-quartile market rate trend lines.

Monitoring internal relativities

Internal relativities are monitored by carrying out periodical studies of the differentials that exist vertically within departments or between categories of staff. For example, if there is an established hierarchy in departments of, say, departmental manager, section heads, senior and junior clerks, the average salaries at each level are analysed periodically to reveal any changes in differentials between levels. There is nothing sacrosanct about the pattern of differentials. Structural adjustments within the company and alterations in market rates can justify changes. But it is desirable to know what is happening so that action can be taken, if required and if feasible, to restore the proper relationships.

It may also be interesting to analyse key ratios, for instance between the salary of the chief executive and the average earnings without overtime of semi-skilled employees. If, for example, this ratio has changed from 7:1 to 5:1 the implications will need to be studied, not only for the chief executive but also for intermediate jobs in the hierarchy.

Monitoring procedures

The following procedures are monitored to ensure that they are operating in accordance with the company's salary policies:

1. *General salary reviews*. The audit should ensure that general increases are not above the rate of inflation or the general level of market rate increases, and that the amount they cost is what the company can afford to pay.
2. *Individual salary reviews*. If variable merit increases are given, the audit checks that guidelines on the amounts that can be paid in relation to performance are available and that the total cost of the review falls within the guideline budget, and that increases are properly authorized.
3. *Regradings*. The audit checks that regradings are justified by job evaluation and that the new salaries resulting from regradings or promotions are in line with responsibility levels as indicated by the salary structure. The aim is to

avoid 'grade drift', ie, regradings made simply to obtain a higher salary and not related to an increase in responsibility.

4. *Appointment salaries*. The audit checks that salaries for new staff are in line with policies on where jobs fit into the salary structure and how much can be paid above the minimum to attract candidates.

BENEFITS

Salary control systems are needed to avoid excessive salary costs, staff being overpaid or underpaid for what they do, difficulties in recruiting or retaining staff, and lack of motivation because the salary system is inequitable.

98. Performance-Related Pay

DEFINITION

Performance-related pay (PRP) links reward or salary progression to some form of performance rating. This could be part of a performance management or appraisal system, or it could be based on an entirely separate appraisal of performance exclusively for pay purposes.

TYPES OF PERFORMANCE-RELATED PAY SCHEMES

The main types of individual PRP schemes are variable salary progression, variable increments and achievement bonuses.

Variable salary progression

In a variable salary progression system, movement through a salary range is governed by performance ratings, as shown in Figure 98.1.

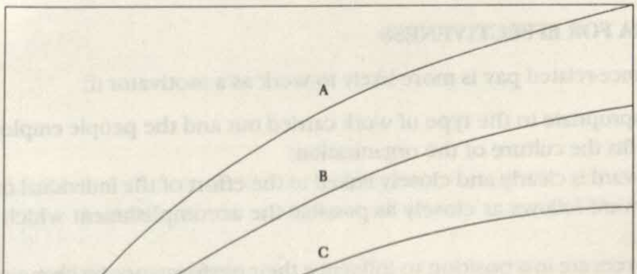


Figure 98.1. *Variable salary progression*

In this typical example there are four performance levels:

A = exceptional
B = above average
C = average
D = below average

Some organizations simplify the system by having only three ratings which indicate whether an individual should have an above-average, average or below-average increase. Guidelines are provided on the increases that can be awarded in each category. There is much to be said for this approach in that it does not label people and avoids asking managers to make fine discriminations in what is essentially a subjective process.

Variable increments

In an incremental or pay spine structure, pay can be varied according to performance by giving extra increments for good performance or by withholding increments for poor performance. The achievement of high ratings can also provide for job-holders to be awarded extra increments on top of their scale.

Achievement bonuses

Achievement or success bonuses are lump sum payments related to performance. They are sometimes the only variable element in pay, but they can be used to recognize exceptional performance or as a means of rewarding people who have reached the top of their salary scale when they perform particularly well. People in that position will be required to re-earn their bonus every year – it should not be regarded as an automatic handout.

CRITERIA FOR EFFECTIVENESS

Performance-related pay is more likely to work as a motivator if:

- it is appropriate to the type of work carried out and the people employed on it and fits the culture of the organization;
- the reward is clearly and closely linked to the effort of the individual or team;
- the reward follows as closely as possible the accomplishment which generated it;
- employees are in a position to influence their performance by changing their behaviour;
- they are clear about the targets and standards of performance required;
- they can track their performance against these targets and standards;
- fair and consistent means are available for measuring performance;
- the reward is clearly and closely linked and proportionate to the effort of the individual or team;

- employees expect that effective performance (or specified behaviour) will certainly lead to worthwhile rewards;
- the performance-related pay scheme operates by means of a defined and easily understood formula;
- provisions are made in the scheme for amending the formula in specified circumstances;
- constraints are built into the scheme which ensure that employees cannot receive inflated rewards which are not related to their own performance;
- the scheme is properly designed, installed and maintained; and
- employees covered by the scheme are involved in its development and operation.

BENEFITS

The main benefits of performance-related pay (PRP) are:

- rewarding people according to their performance will motivate them to achieve higher levels of performance;
- it is right and equitable to reward people according to their contribution. PRP provides a tangible means of recognizing achievement; and
- PRP is a means of ensuring that everyone understands the performance imperatives of the organization – the existence of a well-conceived and properly managed PRP scheme delivers a message to employees about the expectations of the organization for high-level performance.

These benefits are, however, dependent on the scheme meeting the exacting criteria set out above.

99. Payment by Results

DEFINITION

Payment by results systems relate the pay or part of the pay received by individual workers or groups of workers to the number of items produced or the time taken to do a certain amount of work.

The main schemes are:

1. **straight piecework**
2. **differential piecework systems**
3. **measured day work**
4. **group incentive schemes**
5. **factory-wide incentive schemes.**

STRAIGHT PIECEWORK

The most common of the schemes of payment by results which are purely individual in character is what is called straight piecework. This means payment of a uniform price per unit of production and it is most appropriate where production is repetitive in character and can easily be divided into similar units.

Straight piecework rates can be expressed in one or two main forms: 'money piecework' or 'time piecework'. In the case of money piecework, the employee is paid a flat money price for each piece or operation completed. In the case of time piecework, instead of a price being paid for an operation, a time is allowed (this is often called a time-allowed system). Workers are paid at their basic piecework rate for the time allowed, but if they complete the job in less time, they gain the advantage of the time saved, as they are still paid for the original time allowed. Thus, an operator who completes a job timed at 60 hours in 40 hours would receive a bonus of 50 per cent of his or her piecework rate, namely: (60–40/40) × 100.

Piece rates may be determined by work study using the technique known as effort rating to determine standard times for jobs. In situations where work is not repetitive, especially in the engineering industry, times may be determined on a much less analytical basis by ratefixers using their judgement. This often involves prolonged haggles with operators.

DIFFERENTIAL PIECEWORK SYSTEMS

Straight piecework systems result in a constant wage cost per unit of output, and management objections to this feature led to the development of differential systems where the wage cost per unit is adjusted in relation to output. The most familiar applications of this approach have been the premium bonus systems such as the Halsey/Weir or Rowan schemes. Both these systems are based on a standard time allowance and not a money piece rate, and the bonus depends on the time saved. Unlike straight piecework, the wages cost per unit of production falls as output increases, but the hourly rate of workers' earnings still increases, although not in proportion to the increased output. For obvious reasons, these systems are viewed with suspicion by unions and workers and many variations to the basic approach have been developed, some of which involve sharing the increments of higher productivity between employers and workers.

MEASURED DAY WORK

In measured day work the pay of the employee is fixed on the understanding that he or she will maintain a specific level of performance, but the pay does not fluctuate in the short term with his or her performance. The arrangement relies on work measurement to define the required level of performance and to monitor the actual level. Fundamental to measured day work is the concept of an incentive level of performance, and this distinguishes it clearly from time rate systems. Measured day work guarantees the incentive payment in advance, thereby putting employees under an obligation to perform at the effort level required. Payments by results, on the other hand, allows employees discretion as to their effort level but relates their pay directly to the output they have achieved. Between these two systems are a variety of alternatives that seek to marry the different characteristics of payment by results and measured day work, including banded incentives, stepped schemes and special forms of high day rate.

GROUP INCENTIVE SCHEMES

Group or area incentive schemes provide for the payment of a bonus either equally or proportionately to individuals within a group or area. The bonus is related to the output achieved over an agreed standard or to the time saved on a job – the difference between allowed time and actual time.

FACTORY-WIDE INCENTIVE SCHEMES

Factory-wide incentive or gainsharing schemes provide a bonus for all factory workers which is related to an overall measure of performance. They are sometimes referred to as share-of-production plans. The basic type of scheme links the bonus to output or added value (the value added to the cost of raw materials and bought-in parts by the process of production). Other schemes such as the Scanlon and Rucker plans have more elaborate formulae for calculating bonus and built-in arrangements for joint consultation.

In their simplest form these schemes provide for a direct link between the bonus and output or added value. Alternatively, a target for output or added value may be set and the bonus paid on a scale related to achievements above the target level.

BENEFITS

The benefits claimed for payment-by-results schemes are that people who work primarily for money will work harder if they are paid more.

Some commentators question the significance of money as an incentive. But even if it is accepted, as it is by most people, that money is a prime motivator, incentive schemes can only work if the following conditions are fulfilled:

1. There is a direct and easily recognizable link between effort and reward.
2. Incentive payments do not fluctuate too widely for reasons beyond the worker's control (especially when the bonus is a significant sum).
3. There is no undue delay in paying bonuses.
4. The scheme is manifestly fair and easy to understand.

From management's point of view, the increases in effort arising from a well-run scheme based on proper work measurement can be considerable in the right circumstances (ie, when the conditions listed above can be met). But incentive schemes can too easily lead to wage drift (rewards creeping up at a higher rate than effort) and endless wrangles between managers and ratefixers, and the workers and their representatives.

100. Systematic Training

DEFINITION

Systematic training is specifically designed to meet defined needs which will be satisfied by improving and developing the knowledge, skills and attitudes required by individuals to perform adequately a given task or job.

COMPONENTS

The components of systematic training are as follows:

1. *The identification and analysis of training needs*. All training must be directed towards the satisfaction of defined needs: for the company as a whole, for specific functions or groups of employees, or for individuals.
2. *The definition of training objectives*. Training must aim to achieve measurable goals expressed in terms of the improvements or changes expected in corporate, functional, departmental or individual performance.
3. *The preparation of training plans*. These must describe the overall scheme of training and its costs and benefits. The overall scheme should further provide for the development of training programmes and facilities, the selection and use of appropriate training methods, the selection and training of trainers and the implementation of training plans, including the maintenance of training records.
4. *The measurement and analysis of results*. These require the validation of the achievements of each training programme against its objectives and the evaluation of the effect of the whole training scheme on company or departmental performance.
5. *The feedback of the results of validations and evaluations*. So that training plans, programmes and techniques can be improved.

The relationships between these components are shown in Figure 100.1.

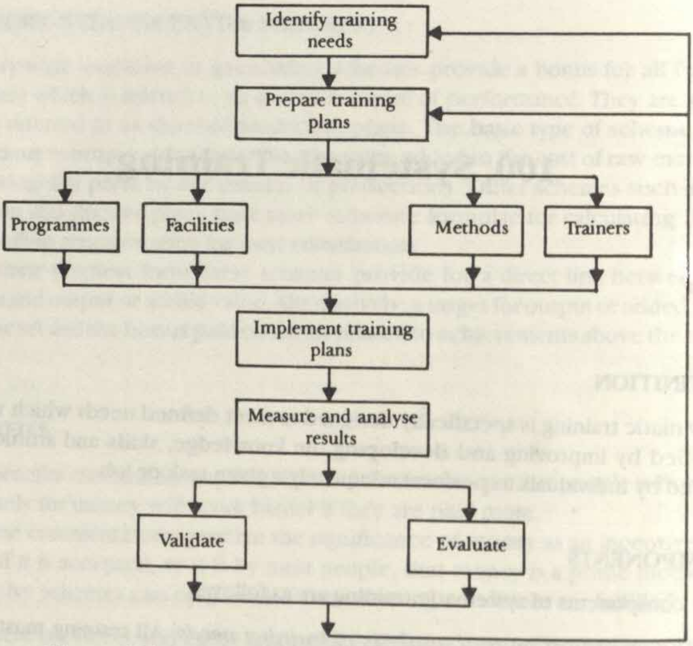


Figure 100.1. *The components of systematic training*

BENEFITS

Training can be defined variously as the modification of behaviour through experience; the transfer of skills and knowledge from those who have them to those who do not; or the bringing about of a significant improvement in performance as a result of instruction, practice and experience.

These definitions indicate what training is but not how it can be effective. And the only way of getting good results from training is to tackle it systematically. The benefits that result from this approach are:

1. learning time is shortened and the costs of training and the losses resulting from too lengthy a learning curve are reduced (the learning curve is the time taken to reach an acceptable level of performance);
2. the performance of existing employees is improved;
3. commitment to the job and identification with the company are increased; and
4. people's capacities are developed so that they can be better prepared for positions of greater responsibility in the future.

FURTHER READING

Kenney, J, and Reid, M, *Training Interventions*, Institute of Personnel Management, London 1988.

101. Identifying Training Needs

DEFINITION

Identifying training needs is the process of analysing training requirements as a basis for preparing relevant training programmes.

AIMS

The analysis of training needs aims to define the gap between what is happening and what should happen. This is what has to be filled by training (see Figure 101.1). The gap may consist of the difference between:

- how the company or a function within the company is performing and how it should perform;
- what people know and can do and what they should know and do; and
- what people actually do and what they should do.

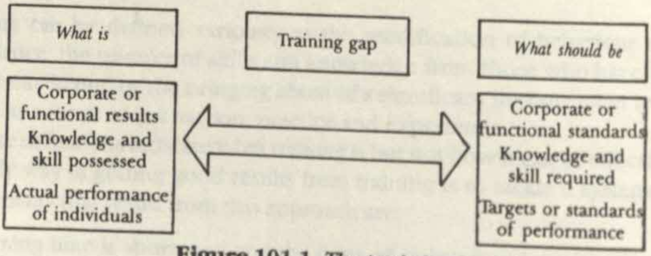

What is
Training gap
What should be
Corporate or functional results
Knowledge and skill possessed
Actual performance of individuals
Corporate or functional standards
Knowledge and skill required
Targets or standards of performance

Figure 101.1. *The training gap*

TRAINING NEEDS ANALYSIS

Training needs analysis covers corporate, group and individual needs as shown in Figure 101.2.

Corporate training needs should come from the analysis of company strengths and weaknesses as part of the corporate planning process. The company human

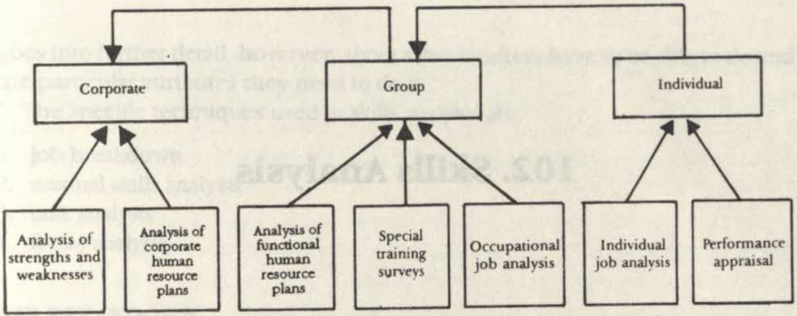

Corporate
Group
Individual
Analysis of strengths and weaknesses
Analysis of corporate human resource plans
Analysis of functional human resource plans
Special training surveys
Occupational job analysis
Individual job analysis
Performance appraisal

Figure 101.2. *Training needs - areas and methods*

resource plan will also indicate the numbers and types of people required in the future.

Group needs are identified by analysing functional or departmental human resource plans or by conducting special surveys using questionnaires and interviews. Job analysis can be used to determine the knowledge and skills required in specific jobs and this information can be supplemented by analysing the results obtained from the assessment of individual needs.

Individual training needs are identified by using the techniques of job analysis (Chapter 93), skills analysis (Chapter 102) and performance management systems (Chapter 90).

BENEFITS

Training programmes are too often shots in the dark. If they are not relevant to what is required by the organization then they are pointless. The only way to ensure relevance is to carry out a systematic training needs analysis exercise as an essential starting point in developing a training programme.

102. Skills Analysis

DEFINITION

Skills analysis identifies what the worker needs to know and be able to do to perform a job satisfactorily at experienced worker standard. Skills analysis leads to the production of a training specification or breakdown. This is used as the basis for the instruction given to trainees and for the design of the overall training programme.

THE TRAINING SPECIFICATION

The training specification breaks down the broad duties contained in the job description into the detailed tasks that must be carried out. It then sets out the characteristics that the worker should have in order to perform these tasks successfully. These characteristics are as follows:

1. *Knowledge*. What the worker needs to know. It may be professional, technical or commercial knowledge; or it may be about the commercial, economic or market environment – the machines to be operated, the materials or equipment to be used or the procedures to be followed, the customers, clients, colleagues and subordinates he or she is in contact with and the factors that affect their behaviour; or it may refer to the problems that will occur and how they should be dealt with.
2. *Skills*. What the worker needs to be able to do if results are to be achieved and knowledge is to be used effectively. Skills are built gradually by repeated training or other experience. They may be manual, intellectual or mental, perceptual or social.
3. *Attitudes*. The disposition to behave or to perform in a way which is in accordance with the requirements of the work.

TECHNIQUES

Skills analysis starts with *job analysis* as described in Chapter 93. Skills analysis goes into further detail, however, about what workers have to be able to do and the particular attributes they need to do it.

The specific techniques used in skills analysis are:

1. job breakdown
2. manual skills analysis
3. task analysis
4. faults analysis.

JOB BREAKDOWN

Definition

The job breakdown technique analyses a job into separate operations, processes or tasks which can be broken down into manageable parts for instructional purposes.

Method

A job breakdown analysis is recorded in a standard format of three columns:

1. *The stage column*. The different steps in the job are described - most semi-skilled jobs can easily be broken down into their constituent parts.
2. *The instruction column*. Against each step a note is made of how the task should be done. This, in effect, describes what has to be learned by the trainee.
3. *The key points column*. Against each step any special points such as quality standards or safety instructions are noted so that they can be emphasized to a trainee learning the job.

MANUAL SKILLS ANALYSIS

Definition

Manual skills analysis is a technique developed by WD Seymour from work study. It isolates for instructional purposes the skills and knowledge employed by experienced workers performing tasks which require a high degree of manual dexterity. It is used to analyse short-cycle, repetitive operations such as assembly tasks and other similar factory work.

Method

The hand, finger and other body movements of an experienced operative are observed and recorded in great detail as he or she carries out his or her work. The analysis concentrates on the tricky parts of the job which, while presenting no difficulty to the experienced operative, have to be analysed in depth before they can be taught to trainees. Not only are the hand movements recorded in great detail but particulars are also noted of the cues (vision and other senses) which the operative absorbs when performing the tasks. Explanatory comments are added when necessary.

TASK ANALYSIS

Definition

Task analysis is a systematic analysis of the behaviour required to carry out a task with a view to identifying areas of difficulty and the appropriate training techniques and learning aids necessary for successful instruction. It can be used for all types of jobs but is specifically relevant for clerical tasks.

Method

The analytical approach used in task analysis is similar to those adopted in the job breakdown and manual skills analysis techniques. The results of the analysis are usually recorded in a standard format of four columns as follows:

1. *Task*. A brief description of each element.
2. *Level of importance*. The relative significance of each task to the successful performance of the whole job.
3. *Degree of difficulty*. The level of skill or knowledge required to perform each task.
4. *Training method*. The instructional techniques, practice and experience required.

FAULTS ANALYSIS

Definition

Faults analysis is the process of analysing the typical faults which occur when performing a task, especially the more costly faults. It is carried out when the incidence of faults is high.

Method

A study is made of the job and, by questioning workers and supervisors, the most commonly occurring faults are identified. A faults specification is then produced which provides trainees with information on what faults can occur, how they can recognize them, what causes them, what effect they have, who is responsible for them, what action the trainees should take when a particular fault occurs, and how a fault can be prevented from recurring.

BENEFITS

Skills analysis is an essential element in systematic training. It is only by breaking down the job into its constituent parts and identifying what the worker needs to know and be able to do to complete each task satisfactorily that relevant training programmes can be prepared.

Skills analysis enables instruction to be based on the progressive part method in which the trainee is taught and practises each part until it can be done at target speed and at an acceptable level of quality. When two successive parts can be done separately in the target time they are practised jointly until the required speed is attained. Then a third part is added and so on, until the complete job has been learned. This is by far the best method of extending training in any job where there is more than one task to do, to the point at which trainees attain the training objective by achieving the experienced worker's level of output and quality.

103. Training Techniques

DEFINITION

A training technique is a specific and systematic approach to imparting knowledge or developing skills. The more important techniques are described below.

ACTION LEARNING

Action learning, as developed by Professor Revans, is a method of helping managers to develop their talents by being exposed to real problems. They are required to analyse them, formulate recommendations and then, instead of being satisfied with a report, actually take action. It accords with the belief that managers learn best by doing rather than being taught.

This approach conforms to the principle on which all good training should be based, ie, it is problem-based and action-orientated. It recognizes that the most perplexing task managers face is how to achieve change — how to persuade their colleagues and others to commit themselves to a different way of operating. An action-learning programme therefore concentrates on developing the skills which managers need to take action effectively, without ignoring the need for knowledge of relevant techniques.

The concept of action learning is based on five assumptions:

1. Experienced managers have a huge curiosity to know how other managers work.
2. Learning about oneself is threatening and is resisted if it tends to change one's self-image. However, it is possible to reduce the external threat so that it no longer acts as a total barrier to learning about oneself.
3. People only learn when they do something, and they learn more the more responsible they feel the task to be.
4. Learning is deepest when it involves the whole person - mind, values, body, emotions.
5. The learner knows better than anyone else what he or she has learned. Nobody else has much chance of knowing.

COMPUTER-BASED TRAINING

Computers can be used for training in the following ways:

1. To simulate actual situations so that trainees can 'learn by doing'. For example, technicians can be trained in trouble-shooting and repairing electronic circuitry by looking at circuit diagrams displayed on the screen and using a light pen to measure voltages at different points in the circuit. When faults are diagnosed, 'repairs' are effected by means of the light pen, this time employed as a soldering iron.
2. To extend programmed learning texts (see below) to provide diagrammatic and pictorial displays in colour and to allow more interaction between the trainee and the information presented on the screen.
3. To provide a database for information which trainees can access through a computer terminal.
4. To measure the performance of trainees against predefined criteria.
5. To provide tests or exercises for trainees. The technique of adaptive testing uses a program containing a large number of items designed to test a trainee's comprehension of certain principles. But it is not necessary for him or her to work through all of them or even to satisfy them sequentially in order to demonstrate understanding. His or her responses to a limited number of questions will show whether or not he or she has grasped the appropriate concepts to satisfy given training objectives. The process of testing can thus be speeded up considerably and can prove less frustrating for the trainee.

JOB INSTRUCTION

Job instruction techniques are based on ***skills analysis***. The sequence of instruction follows four stages:

1. ***Preparation***. The instructor has a plan for presenting the subject matter and using appropriate teaching methods and aids.
2. ***Presentation***. This consists of a combination of telling and showing (demonstration).
3. ***Practice***. The learner imitates the instructor and constantly repeats the operation under guidance. The aims are to reach the target level of performance for each element of the total task and to achieve the smooth combination of these elements into a whole job pattern.
4. ***Follow-up***. The trainer follows up and helps the trainee as required.

104. Group Dynamics

DEFINITION

Group dynamics is a form of training designed to help groups to analyse and improve the processes they use to make decisions, solve problems, resolve conflict and generally work effectively together.

The basic form of group dynamics training is known as T-group or sensitivity training. This approach is sometimes modified for use in courses designed to improve interactive skills, ie, the skills people use in communicating with and relating to one another. There are also various packaged group-dynamics courses, of which the best known are Blake's managerial grid and Coverdale training.

T-GROUP TRAINING

T-group stands for training group. This form of group dynamics training has three aims:

1. To increase *sensitivity*. The ability to perceive accurately how others are reacting to one's behaviour.
2. To increase *diagnostic ability*. The ability to perceive accurately the state of relationships between others.
3. To increase *action skill*. The ability to carry out skilfully the behaviour required by the situation.

In a T-group, the trainer will explain the aims of the programme and may encourage discussion and contribute his or her own reactions. But the trainer does not take a strong lead and the group is largely left to its own devices to develop a structure which takes account of the goals of both the members of the group and the trainer, and provides a climate where the group is sufficiently trusting of one another to discuss their own behaviour. They do this by giving 'feedback' or expressing their reactions to one another. Members may not always accept comments about themselves, but as the T-group develops they will increasingly understand how some aspects of their behaviour are hidden to them and will, therefore, be well on the way to an increase in sensitivity, diagnostic ability and action skill.

The design of a T-group 'laboratory' may include short inputs from trainers to clarify problems of group behaviour, intergroup exercises to extend T-group learning to problems of representation, negotiation and conflict management, and application groups where members get together to decide how they can best transfer what they have learned to their actual job behaviour. As much opportunity as possible will be given to members to test out and develop their own behavioural (interactive) skills - seeking or giving information, enlisting support, persuading and commanding.

INTERACTIVE SKILLS TRAINING

Interactive skills training is any form of training which aims to increase the effectiveness of an individual's reaction with others. As developed by Rackham,[1] it has the following features:

1. It is based on the assumption that the primary limitation on supervisory or managerial effectiveness lies not within each job boundary but on the interface between jobs.
2. There are no preconceived rules about how people should interact. It is assumed that the way interaction happens is dependent on the situation and the people in it - this is what has to be analysed and used as a basis for the programme.
3. The training takes place through groups which enable people to practise interactive skills - such skills can only be acquired through practice.
4. Participants have to receive controlled and systematic feedback on their performance - this is achieved by using specially developed techniques of behaviour analysis.
5. The analysis of behaviour is used to structure groups to avoid the restrictions on behaviour change which might result from relying on arbitrarily composed groups.

A typical design for an interactive skills programme as developed by Rackham consists of three stages:

1. *The diagnostic stage*. Groups undertake a wide range of activities. These are designed to provide reliable behaviour samples which the trainer records and analyses.
2. *The formal feedback stage*. The trainer gives groups and individuals feedback on their interactive performance during the diagnostic phase.
3. *The practice, monitoring, feedback stage*. The group undertakes further activities to develop and practise new behaviour patterns and receives feedback from the trainer to gauge the success of attempts at behaviour change.

REFERENCE

1. Rackham, N, Honey, P, and Colbert, M, *Developing Interactive Skills*, Wellens Publishing, Northampton 1967.

105. Management Development

DEFINITION

Management development is a systematic process which aims to ensure that an organization has the effective managers it requires to meet its present and future needs. It is concerned with improving the performance of existing managers, giving them opportunities for growth and development, and ensuring, so far as possible, that management succession within the organization is provided for.

OBJECTIVES

The objectives of a typical management development programme are to improve the financial performance and long-term growth of the company by:

1. improving the performance of managers by seeing that they are clearly informed of their responsibilities and by agreeing with them specific key objectives against which their performance will be regularly assessed;
2. identifying managers with further potential and ensuring that they receive the required development, training and experience to equip them for more senior posts within their own locations and divisions within the company; and
3. assisting chief executives and managers throughout the company to provide adequate succession and to create a system whereby this is kept under regular review.

TECHNIQUES

Management development uses six techniques:

1. organization review
2. human resource review
3. performance appraisal
4. management training
5. succession planning
6. career planning.

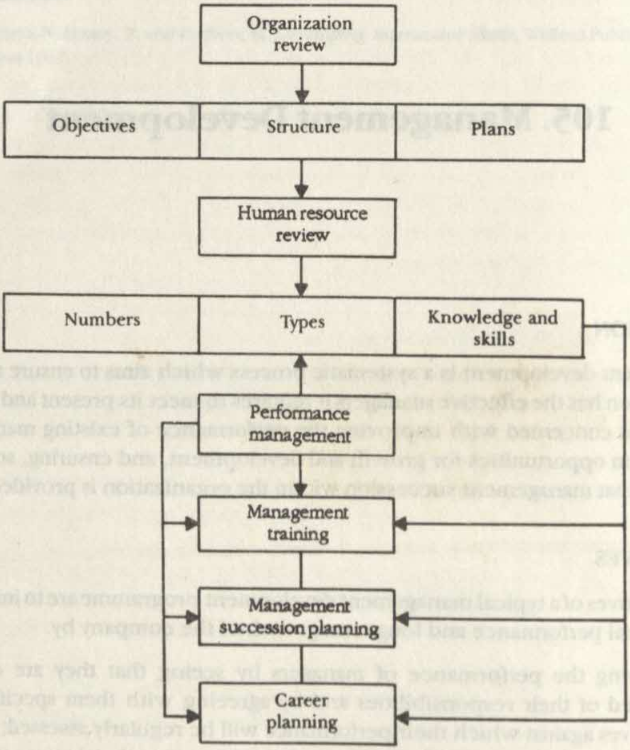


Figure 105.1. *The process of management development*

The activities associated with these techniques are interrelated as shown in Figure 105.1:

1. *Organization review.* Management development starts with organization planning in which the review focuses attention on present weaknesses and future demands on management.
2. *Human resource review.* Analyses present managerial resources and future requirements in the light of the organization review.
3. *Performance management.* Identifies management development needs.
4. *Management training.* On the principle that the best form of development is self-development, equips managers to do their jobs better and prepares them for promotion by ensuring that they have the right variety of experience

and guidance, in good time, in the course of their careers. This experience can and should be supplemented but never replaced, by courses carefully timed and designed to meet particular needs.

5. *Management succession planning*. Aims to ensure that an adequate supply of trained and capable managers will be available to fill future vacancies or to take up new positions created by change or growth.
6. *Career planning*. Aims first to ensure that people with promise are given a sequence of experience that will equip them for whatever level of responsibility they have the ability to reach and, second, to provide individuals with potential with the guidance and encouragement they need if they are to fulfil that potential.

BENEFITS

Management development, as described above, ensures that managers and potential managers get the most out of the experience they acquire in their day-to-day jobs. It also helps to clarify the roles and objectives of managers and their subordinates so that the latter can get the direction and guidance they need to develop their knowledge and skills and their careers.

FURTHER READING

Mumford, A, *Management Development: Strategies for Action*, Institute of Personnel Management, London 1989.

106. Quality Circles

DEFINITION

Quality circles are groups of workers, usually led by their supervisor, who meet voluntarily and often in their own time to discuss the problems they face in achieving quality, or some other important target. The circle is given training in problem-solving techniques and the resources to solve the problem it identifies.

METHOD

The idea of quality circles was developed in Japan. In the UK and other Western countries there are a number of different methods of operation but the essential ingredients are the same. The group consists of five to ten members, and attendance is voluntary. They may meet in company time. They are usually led by their immediate supervisor, although the leader is often chosen by the group. The leader has to be thoroughly trained in how to run the circle. He or she cannot be too directive but must ensure that the problem is identified and defined clearly and that analytical problem-solving techniques are used to solve it. He or she must help the group to keep its feet on the ground, come up with practical solutions and guide the circle when the agreed answer is being implemented. This role is a key one. Quality circle members are usually employees doing similar work.

The sequence of events in a typical quality circle is as follows:

1. The members identify problems in their work area, although on occasions supervisors or managers can indicate problems that need to be solved.
2. When the problem has been identified the circle agrees a realistic goal for its activities, such as to reduce defects from 6 to 3 per cent over a period of three months.
3. The circle draws up a plan for solving the problem using appropriate analytical techniques.
4. The base data are collected by members of the circle and possible solutions

to the problem are reviewed. Expertise from supervision or technical personnel can be called on.

5. When a solution has been agreed the circle presents to management its analysis of the problem and its proposals for solving it.
6. The circle is responsible for implementing solutions agreed by management. It monitors results, carries out tests as necessary and reports on progress.

REQUIREMENTS FOR SUCCESS

Quality circles are only effective under the following conditions:

1. They are introduced carefully. Pilot tests are essential.
2. A trained and experienced individual (probably an outside consultant) introduces the scheme.
3. Top management fully supports the scheme.
4. The environment and technology are such that the quality circle groups will have plenty of scope for developing improvements.
5. The management style of the company is sympathetic to this form of participation.
6. The members of quality circles are trained in problem-solving and analytical techniques.
7. An organizer is appointed to coordinate and monitor the programme.

BENEFITS

Quality circles can help to improve quality and productivity by obtaining employee involvement and commitment in solving problems jointly, and making sure those solutions are implemented.

107. Team Briefing

DEFINITION

Team briefing, also known as briefing groups, is a communications technique developed by the Industrial Society. As described by the society, team briefing is a system of communication operated by line management. Its objective is to make sure that all employees know and understand what they and others in the company are doing and why. It is a management information system based on the leader and his or her team getting together in a group for half an hour on a regular basis to talk about things that are relevant to their work.

OPERATION

Team briefing operates as follows:

1. *Organization*
   - cover all levels in an organization;
   - fewest possible steps between the top and bottom;
   - between 4 and 18 in each group; and
   - run by the immediate leader of each group at each level (who must be properly trained and briefed in his or her task).
2. *Subjects*
   - policies – explanations of new or changed policies;
   - plans – as they affect the organization as a whole and the immediate group;
   - progress – how the organization and the group is getting on: what the latter needs to do to improve;
   - people – new appointments, points about personnel matters (pay, security, procedures).
3. *Timing and duration*
   - a minimum of once a month for those in charge of others and once every

two months for every individual in the organization – but only meet if there is something to say;

- duration not longer than 20–30 minutes.

BENEFITS

Team briefing enables face-to-face communications to be planned and conducted systematically, although the actual briefing sessions are conducted informally. It enables people to discuss with their line manager or supervisor company matters which affect them personally. Through team briefing, the company can ensure that the reasons for change are brought out into the open so that understanding and acceptance can be increased. John Garnett, Director of the Industrial Society, has summarized the benefits of team briefing as follows: 'A simple checkable routine or drill where explanations can be given at each level by the boss of each work group on a regular basis. Subjects briefed in the group are those matters which help people to cooperate.'

FURTHER READING

Grummitt, J, *Team Briefing*, The Industrial Society, London 1983.

108. Total Loss Control

DEFINITION

Total loss control is a comprehensive programme of activities designed to prevent personal injury and accidents and to minimize losses to the business arising from damage or pollution.

Total loss control goes beyond simply preventing accidents by attacking all potential causes of loss whether caused by injury or damage. However, although the technique as a whole is referred to as total loss control, it is divided into two main areas: accident control and loss control. These are linked together in the total loss control programme.

ACCIDENT CONTROL

An accident is an unintentional or unplanned happening that may or may not result in property damage, personal injury, a work stoppage or interference, or a combination of those circumstances. The essence of total accident control is that *all* accidents as defined above are reported and investigated, whether or not they produce injury or loss. Only in this way can preventive measures be taken to avoid a recurrence. Moreover, safety audits and spot checks will consider every potential source of an accident, even if the risk of injury or damage is negligible.

An accident control programme consists of the following steps:

1. *Audit*. Regular surveys of all work areas using checklists to identify potential causes of injury or loss.
2. *Spot checks*. Periodical spot checks, especially in higher-risk areas, to investigate possible problems or to follow up preliminary information which indicates the likelihood of an accident.
3. *Control centres*. These are set up to report on and analyse injuries (first-aid posts) or damage (maintenance units). They ensure that information is collected for further analysis and investigation by designated health and safety advisers or loss control officers.

4. *Reporting rules*. Strict rules are published and enforced on reporting incidents. They may be phrased like this: 'Whenever you or the equipment you operate is involved in any accident that results in personal injury or damage to property, regardless of how minor, you must report it immediately to your foreman or supervisor.'
5. *Investigation*. This is carried out initially by the foreman or supervisor following a standardized procedure. The officer responsible for accident control will investigate more serious cases but will also carry out spot checks on relatively minor cases to ensure that local investigations are being conducted properly and to further the training of foremen and supervisors in accident investigation and control.
6. *Remedial action*. The designated accident control officer recommends remedial action to prevent potential accidents or to eliminate a hazard.
7. *Pro-active advice*. Accident control involves not only improving existing safety arrangements but also providing pro-active advice at the time when equipment, plant or buildings are being designed, installed or constructed.
8. *Training*. Foremen, supervisors and workpeople need specific induction and continuous training in safety practices and methods of preventing accidents.
9. *Education* A continuous programme of educational propaganda or good safety practice is essential.
10. *Follow-up*. The designated accident control officer continually follows up to ensure that remedial action has been taken and that training and education are effective.

LOSS CONTROL

Functions

The functions of loss control are to:

1. locate and define errors involving incomplete decision-making, faulty judgement, bad management or individual behaviour leading to incidents which result in loss of any kind to the business; and
2. provide sound advice to management as to how such mistakes can be avoided.

Methods

Loss control follows broadly the same procedures as accident control except that it covers a wider variety of potential problem areas, ie, not only potential damage but any losses, direct or indirect, arising from accidental damage *or* the standard processing methods used in the company. For example, loss control will monitor potential losses arising from pollution, vibration, lack of hygiene, fire, security lapses and even product liability. It will also consider the losses that might arise from interruptions to production in order to assess priorities in high potential-loss areas for remedial work.

The major elements of loss control management are:

1. *identification* of possible loss-producing situations (risk determination);
2. *analysis* of the causes of actual or potential losses;
3. *measurement* of any actual losses sustained by the company;
4. *selection* of methods to minimize losses including remedial engineering, revised procedures, training and education; and
5. *implementation* of these methods within the organization.

BENEFITS

The benefits of a systematic approach to the control of accidents and losses are quite clear. The overriding benefit of a system of total loss control is that it can produce significant reductions in losses and accidents if it is introduced and maintained as a comprehensive programme with full backing from the top and properly trained and qualified accident or loss prevention officers.

FURTHER READING

Fletcher, A and Douglas, H M, *Total Loss Control*, Associated Business Programmes, London 1971.

PART 7

Information Technology

109. Information Technology: An Overview

DEFINITION OF INFORMATION TECHNOLOGY

Information technology (IT) is defined as the collection, storage, processing and communication of information using a microelectronics-based combination of computer and telecommunications. It is based on the convergence of data-processing and telecommunications techniques, the former providing the capability for processing and storing information, the latter the vehicle for communicating it.

INFORMATION TECHNOLOGY – FUNDAMENTAL CONCEPTS

Information technology is founded on the concepts of:

- information as a major resource;
- the use of computer-based systems;
- the development of an IT architecture for the organization; and
- the development and operation of computer applications.

Information as a major resource

Information technology is founded on the concept of information as a major resource: an essential basis for planning, organizing, managing, administering and controlling the key operations and activities within a company. Information technology provides the capacity to generate, process and manipulate masses of continuous information quickly and economically and to ensure that it can be accessed rapidly.

Computer-based systems

IT processes are carried out by means of computer-based systems which comprise the computers, terminals, software, communication networks, procedures and people involved in information processing within an organization. Any part of such a system which is under the direct control of the main computer system or is directly linked to it is described as being 'online'.

IT architecture

Another fundamental concept of IT is that of IT architecture, defined by Gunton[1] as the way in which design, hardware (the physical manufactured components of a computer system) and software (the programs, procedures and routines designed to match computer systems to particular sets of requirements) interact in order to provide a planned level of capability and performance. The architecture defines how such component interactions will take place in order to run programs in a coordinated manner. The term 'systems network architecture' coined by IBM refers to the overall structure for a network of computers and terminals and the set of rules (known as protocols) governing the mechanisms they use to exchange information.

Applications

IT is basically concerned with the development and operation of applications which meet the needs of users. An application is the business or organizational use of a computer such as a stock control application. Application development is the design and implementation of the software facilities required to support such use. Applications are developed by systems analysts and application programmers who translate business requirements into technical system designs and who write, test and install programs using special programming language such as COBOL or FORTRAN.

RELATED TERMS

The term 'information technology' is often used synonymously with the term 'new technology'. The latter term embraces the computer-based systems and communication aspects of IT but concentrates more on the fields of automation, robotics and various other applications of IT in the form of integrated management and communication systems.

The term 'information technology' should be distinguished from the term 'data processing'. The latter refers to the conversion of raw data to machine readable form and its subsequent processing by a computer so that the data is converted to information for use in various applications. IT embraces both data-processing and communications technology and is also concerned with how the information generated by data processing should be put to good use in individual or integrated applications.

USES OF INFORMATION TECHNOLOGY

The main uses of IT are described below.

Data management

Data management involves the collection, organization and storage of data required for the conduct of the business, and the production of information in the form of reports or in response to enquiries. The key data management activities are:

- organizing files and records;
- locating data quickly in data stores (databases);
- maintaining, updating, manipulating and processing data; and
- extracting information from the database, which means carrying our sorting, calculating and formatting (ie, arranging information in a predetermined way) activities.

Application development and management

This is the process of applying hardware and software to satisfy business/user needs.

Communication management

This provides for the transfer and exchange of information between people and within computer networks.

Computer support to operations

This is the use of a computer system to support such activities as computer-aided design (CAD) and computer-aided manufacture (CAM).

Integrated systems

This is the use of computers and communications technology to help in running integrated systems such as the following:

- *Computer-aided engineering* (CAE, also known as CADCAM) - combining computer-aided design and computer-aided manufacturing systems to integrate design and manufacturing operations.
- *Computer-integrated manufacturing* (CIM) – integrating the various activities which together form the total manufacturing process, ie, design, production engineering, production planning and control, production scheduling, material requirement planning, manufacturing, cost accounting and distribution.
- *Flexible manufacturing systems (FMS)*, which integrate all aspects of machining in one cell.
- *Management information systems (MIS)*, which provide mainly financial and output or sales information or reports for planning and control purposes.
- *Point-of-event data capture systems*, which move information such as point-of-order in manufacturing, point-of-sale transactions in retailing and point-of-reservation in airlines and hotels to a central data store where it can be used

for any centralized operation (eg, inventory control) and can be accessed by personal computers.

- *Integrated business systems*, which link such activities as invoicing, stock control, purchasing, sales and general accounting into one overall system.

Decision support

IT supports decision-making by collecting, analysing and manipulating data in order to model alternatives and explore the consequences of different courses of action. *Expert systems* can be developed which aim to emulate the reasoning of an expert in a particular domain (area of expertise).

Industrial automation

IT is the basis of industrial automation in the following fields:

- *Process control*. Tight control is achieved over production processes by the rapid and continuous inspection of many variables and the initiation of speedy response to variations. Process control systems use real-time processing, ie, data is processed immediately after the event that occasions it.
- *Machine tool control*. Computer numerical control (CNC) systems prepare the information required to operate machine tools from design information. In direct numerical control (DNC) the computer is linked directly to the machine tool.
- *Robotics*. The design and use of robots in manufacturing.

Office automation

Office automation involves the use of personal computers, word-processors, desktop publishers, spreadsheets, laser printers and sophisticated telecommunication links such as videotext and electronic mail. The aim is to bring these devices together into an integrated system which will speed up the processing and exchange of information and streamline record-keeping.

Other operational and administrative applications

Other operational and administrative applications of IT include:

- stock/inventory control;
- physical distribution systems (automated warehouses);
- airline and hotel reservation systems;
- human resource planning;
- long-range profit forecasts;
- financial planning models;
- sales analysis and forecasts;
- direct mailing systems (data-based marketing);

- customer order processing;
- payroll;
- personnel information systems;
- budgetary control; and
- computer-based training.

BENEFITS

The benefits of IT are self-evident but, for the record, here are some of the more important ones:

- Speed in processing and transmitting quantities of data.
- Massive computerized power.
- Immediate access from any location to a database and to processing and computerized resources.
- Improved decision-making by rapid access to relevant information and the knowledge captured in expert systems.
- Immediate availability of the effects of changed inputs.
- The capacity to explore alternative courses of action by manipulating data with the help of such devices or spreadsheets.
- Rapid and automated production and dissemination of schedules, projections, mathematical models and all types of documents.
- Automatic control of processes and machines.
- The capacity to integrate activities through the controlled flow of information and instructions.
- Overall, the ability to make the best use of the information resources available to the organization.

REFERENCE

1. Gunton, T, *The Penguin Dictionary of Information Technology and Computer Science*, Penguin Books, Harmondsworth 1992.

FURTHER READING

Keen, P G, *Every Manager's Guide to Information Technology*, Harvard Business School Press, Boston, MA 1991.

110. Data Processing

DEFINITION

Data processing is the application of computers to the operational systems of organizations. As shown in Figure 110.1, it involves the collection (inputting), storage and processing of raw data on a routine or semi-routine basis and the delivery of output to users in the form of information for recording, analytical, administrative and decision-making purposes in any field of activity in which the organization is engaged.

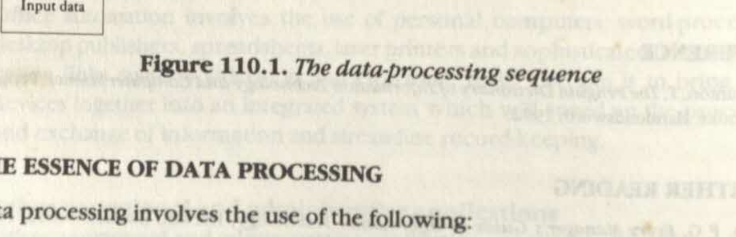


Figure 110.1. ***The data-processing sequence***

THE ESSENCE OF DATA PROCESSING

Data processing involves the use of the following:

- *Computers (hardware)* – mainframe, mini and micro.
- *Computer peripherals* – data storage, input and output devices and terminals.
- *Processing systems* – which process data in a number of different ways.
- *Software* – the components of a computer system which are programmed rather than manufactured and are used to match computer systems to a particular set of requirements.
- *Systems analysis* – which determines what the computer system is required to do and leads to the design of the system itself.

- *Programming* - which turns the results of the systems design into a suite of working programs.
- *Database management systems* - which consist of a set of interrelated software tools designed to construct and provide access to the database of the computer. (A database is a structured store of data, ie, a store containing both data and the means of maintaining relationships between the data.)

COMPUTERS – BASIC CONFIGURATION

The basic configuration of a computer is shown in Figure 110.2.

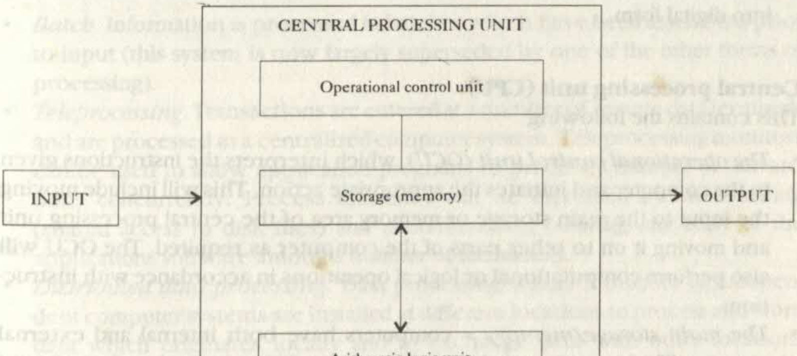


Figure 110.2. *The basic configuration of a computer*

Input

Input devices transfer data or programs into the memory of a computer. The commonest input device is the keyboard of a terminal. Other methods of inputting data to a computer include:

- *bar-codes*, which identify products and their prices and can be read automatically by light pens or scanners;
- *magnetic ink character recognition (MICR)*, which enables characters printed in special magnetic ink to be read by electronic means;
- *optical character recognition (OCR)*, which is a technique using electronic means for recognizing printed or typed characters by reference to their appearance;
- *optical mark reading (OMR)*, which is a technique using electronic means for reading marks made by hand in pencil or pen on sheets of paper;

- *natural language processing (NCO)*, which allows the computer to understand natural language input to it on a keyboard;
- *speech recognition systems*, which enable computers to recognize and respond to spoken instructions (still in the earlier stages of development);
- *graphic tablets*, which enable tones or shapes to be traced on a tablet with a stylus or 'pen' which makes electrical contact with the wires in the tablet and loads the information directly into the computer;
- *transducers*, which convert signals into electromagnetic impulses;
- *modems*, which handle information from data communication equipment such as telephone lines; and
- *A/D converters*, which convert analogue information (ie, continuous signals) into digital form.

Central processing unit (CPU)

This contains the following:

- *The operational control unit (OCU)*, which interprets the instructions given to the computer and initiates the appropriate action. This will include moving the input to the main storage or memory area of the central processing unit and moving it on to other parts of the computer as required. The OCU will also perform computational or logical operations in accordance with instructions.
- *The main storage/memory* - computers have both internal and external memory. The internal memory is held in the main storage unit and consists of the random access memory (RAM) and the read only memory (ROM). The RAM is where the computer's short-term working information (instruction and data) is stored. The size of a computer's RAM is measured in bytes which is a group of eight bits treated as a unit. A bit (a contraction of Binary digit) is a digit in the binary notion used within computer systems - binary notion is used in computer systems because their basic components can only distinguish between two states, represented by the presence or absence of an electrical charge. The size is normally expressed in kilobytes or k, equal to about 1,000 bytes. Thus a personal computer described as have 64 kilobytes (64k) of memory has in fact 65,536 bytes. A RAM is changeable at will and may be overwritten with new programs and data thousands of times in a few minutes of working life.

  The read only memory (ROM) is used to store on a chip constant and often-used programs which will rarely need to be changed, if at all.

  The external memory (also known as main or bulk storage) is where large volumes of data are stored on disks or tapes. The capacity of one hard disk can range from about ten up to thousands of megabytes (a megabyte is one million bytes).
- *CPU - arithmetic logic unit (ALU)* - the arithmetic logic unit carries out the

arithmetic calculations (add, subtract, etc.) and logic operations (eg, comparing two numbers). It is instructed by the operational control unit on what it has to do, where the data is to be found and where it has to be placed.

Output

Output is shown on a screen or visual display unit (VDU) or it can be printed using line printers or, in certain circumstances, laser printers.

Processing

Processing can be carried out in any of the following ways:

- *Batch*. Information is processed in batches which have been assembled prior to input (this system is now largely superseded by one of the other forms of processing).
- *Teleprocessing*. Transactions are entered at a number of remote data terminals and are processed in a centralized computer system. Teleprocessing monitors can be used to allow application programs to process a number of transactions concurrently. Process efficiency can be increased by multi-tasking (shared access to disk files) and multi-threading (sharing one copy of the applications software among a number of terminals).
- *Distributed data processing*. Data processing where a number of independent computer systems are installed at different locations to process and store data which originates locally and to exchange data with other locations through a communications network.
- *Real-time processing*. Systems in which processing takes place immediately after the event. Process control systems operate in real time because they must process the data created by the devices they are controlling quickly enough to feed back information which will affect their operation. Teleprocessing systems such as those for airline reservations also operate in real time.

TYPES OF COMPUTERS

The main types of computers are:

- *mainframe* - the general term used for a large centralized computer system which will have sophisticated job scheduling and job control facilities to cope with varied workload demands;
- *minicomputer* - a medium-sized machine, usually serving a department or a small organization; and
- *microcomputer (personal computer)* - a small computer system, usually with a single chip and assembled on a single printed circuit board.

COMPUTER PERIPHERALS

Computer peripherals are components of a computer system which are attached to the input or output parts of the processor and operate under its direct control. Peripherals compare mass storage devices such as disks and tapes and input/output such as scanners and printers. The term is not generally used to refer to devices used by people to input data to the computer such as operator consoles or keyboards; neither does it refer to terminals.

SOFTWARE

Software consists of all the components of a computer system that are programmed rather than written. Its purpose is to match particular requirements to the computer.

There are three main categories of software:

1. *Application software* – these comprise either:
    - application programs which are tailor made to meet the particular requirements of an organization or individual; or
    - application packages which are designed for use in conjunction with operating software (see below) as an application for general use by any organization or individual. An application package may be designed for a particular application (eg, a payroll package), or it may be described in terms of the type of task the package supports (eg, word-processing, desktop publishing or spreadsheets used for budgeting and financial modelling).
2. *Systems software* – the programs designed to help system analysts and programmers to develop application programs.
3. *Operating software*, which is supplied by the computer manufacturer and controls the operation of the hardware and the other software components run by the system.

PROGRAMMING LANGUAGES

Programming languages are the medium used to communicate with the computer. These must be 'grammatically correct', ie, there are rules governing the structure of programs which are referred to as syntax. The main types of programming languages are as follows:

- *Machine language*, which was written in binary code and could be inputted direct to the computer but has been superseded by the other languages.
- *Low-level languages* (also known as assembler language) translate the source code statements made by programs into machine processible form (called the

object code). Each of these statements corresponds more or less one for one with machine language.

- *High-level languages* – compiler programs or interpreters which convert source statements into machine code (executable or object code). This can be used any time it is called or selected. In high-level language each statement corresponds to a number of machine language instructions. High-level languages include BASIC, COBOL and FORTRAN.
- *Fourth generation languages (4GL)* are advanced programming languages which require fewer statements to produce the same results as earlier languages. They were initially associated with data-based management systems but now generally refer to any powerful system-building tool.

BENEFITS

The benefits of data processing are well established and include:

- the capacity to store masses of data;
- the capacity to process that data quickly, accurately and consistently;
- the elimination of much routine clerical and calculating work;
- the ability to produce almost instantaneously complex information for analytical and decision-making purposes; and
- the imposition of a systematic approach to processing data and working methods generally.

FURTHER READING

Bingham, J, *Data Processing*, Macmillan, London 1989.

111. Distributed Data-Processing Systems

DEFINITION

A distributed data-processing system contains within the overall computer system a number of computer systems at different locations to process and store their own data. These systems can exchange information with one another and the central facility by means of a communications network.

TYPES OF SYSTEMS

There are two types of distributed data-processing (DDP) system:

1. *Hierarchical distributed systems* in which the cental mainframe computer communicates information to different operational units in the organization. These units use their own mini- or micro-computers to carry out more detailed processing within the overall framework and feed back information as required to the centre.
2. *Star-type distributed systems* where each location carries out its own processing but will share data with other locations. Different locations may manage different parts of a common database. If necessary, work can be directed from one computer to another.

NETWORKS

A distributed data-processing system will have to develop a communication system between different locations. This may comprise a network – a system of interconnected communication facilities. The telecommunications (or network) architecture defines the linkages among the firm's communication facilities over which information moves within the organization.

There are four types of network:

1. *Backbone network* – the organization's central information highway systems which can be shared by many business units and applications.

2. *Local area networks (LAN)*, which connect devices in close physical proximity.
3. *Wide area networks (WAN)*, which are provided by public or private services for widespread organizations.
4. *Value-added networks (VAN)*, which add something of value to transmissions such as electronic data interchange services, electronic mail and information services.

DESIGNING DISTRIBUTED DATA-PROCESSING SYSTEMS

The design of distributed data-processing systems has to take account of the control software required to manage the system. The design of the network will be influenced by communication needs, the availability of equipment, application requirements and technical feasibility. Some standardization may be required of data transfer methods, hardware interfaces, data coding systems, computer languages, file access methods and recovery procedures.

Distributed data-processing philosophy is in line with the trend towards decentralization and devolution of authority. This means that the DDP system must be designed to make information available quickly to those who need to use it (in real time, ie, immediately after the event, whenever this is desirable and possible). It also means that decisions will have to be made on what data should be stored centrally, what should be stored at the locations and how the total database should be managed. The aim is to ensure that the centre exercises whatever level of control is appropriate and at the same time gets the information it needs, while locations have the capacity to manage their own database within corporate parameters.

BENEFITS

The prime benefits of distributed data processing are user convenience in decentralized organizations and the capacity it provides to respond quickly to changing application requirements.

112. Systems Analysis

DEFINITION

Systems analysis is the process of analysing data and paperwork flows, information requirements, sequences of activities, methods, procedures and the inputs required and outputs expected in operational or data-processing systems based on computers.

AIMS

The overall aim of systems analysis is to provide the basis for the development of computer applications which provide for the business or organizational use of a computer, for example, a payroll application.

In particular, systems analysis enables an organization to:

- provide the basis for developing systems strategies. This involves the design of the architecture of the system - the way in which design, hardware and software interact in order to provide a planned level of capability and performance;
- decide how best to put computer systems to work throughout the whole or large sections of the organization (integrated systems) or in a particular operational area;
- provide the basis for systems design; and
- ensure that computer systems match business and user needs.

THE PROCESS OF SYSTEMS ANALYSIS

Systems analysts:

- review the overall organizational needs for IT in order to develop information strategies and to design the architecture of the system;
- agree with users the requirements for new systems or improvements to existing systems;

- investigate and describe data flows and information requirements for new system applications or the features of existing systems;
- assess with users alternative approaches to meeting their needs and agree the best option; and
- produce functional specifications which describe to users and system designers what the new or redesigned application will achieve.

STAGES OF SYSTEMS ANALYSIS

The main stages of systems analysis are:

1. *the assignment brief*, which sets out what the system is required to do, the programme for the study, the resources required, the cost budget and the arrangements for involving users;

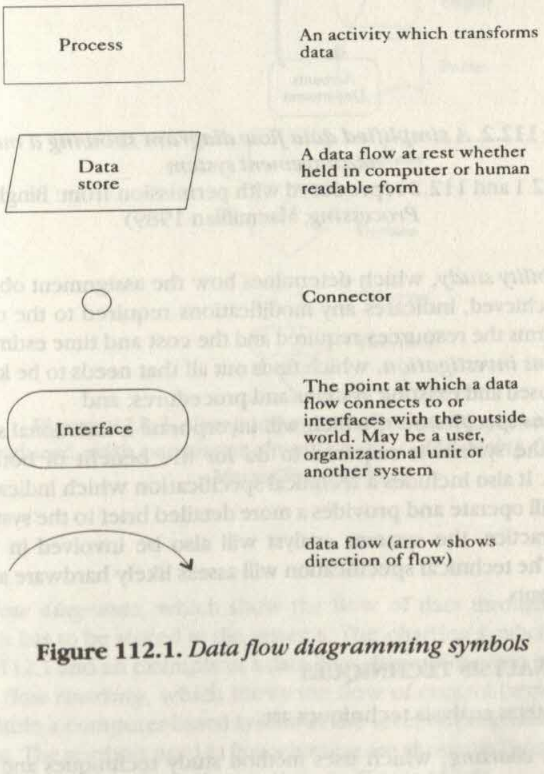

Process
An activity which transforms data
Data store
A data flow at rest whether held in computer or human readable form
Connector
Interface
The point at which a data flow connects to or interfaces with the outside world. May be a user, organizational unit or another system
data flow (arrow shows direction of flow)

Figure 112.1. *Data flow diagramming symbols*

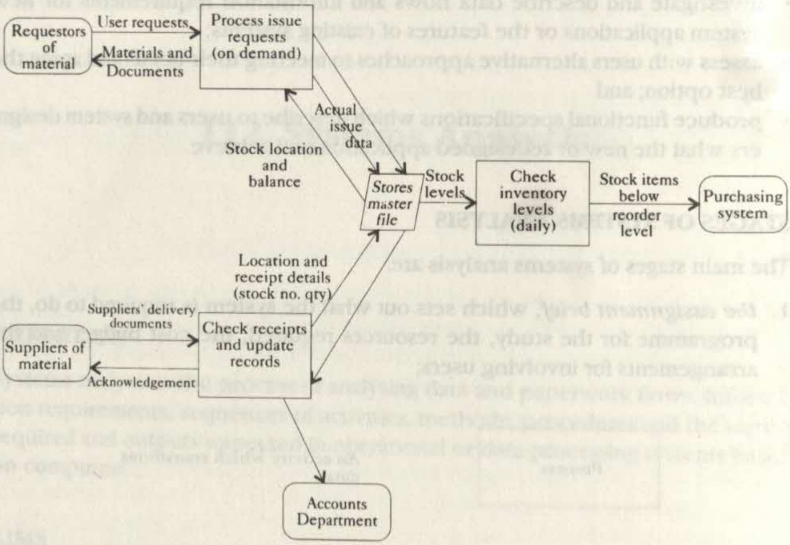

Requestors of material
User requests
Materials and Documents
Process issue requests (on demand)
Actual issue data
Stock location and balance
Stores master file
Stock levels
Check inventory levels (daily)
Stock items below reorder level
Purchasing system
Location and receipt details (stock no. qty)
Suppliers' delivery documents
Suppliers of material
Acknowledgement
Check receipts and update records
Accounts Department

Figure 112.2. *A simplified data flow diagram showing a materials management system*

(Figures 112.1 and 112.2 reproduced with permission from: Bingham, J *Data Processing*, Macmillian 1989)

2. *the feasibility study*, which determines how the assignment objectives may best be achieved, indicates any modifications required to the original brief and confirms the resources required and the cost and time estimates;
3. *the systems investigation*, which finds out all that needs to be known about the proposed and existing systems and procedures; and
4. *the systems specification*, which will incorporate a functional specification of what the system is required to do for the benefit of both users and designers. It also includes a technical specification which indicates how the system will operate and provides a more detailed brief to the systems designers (in practice, the systems analyst will also be involved in the systems design). The technical specification will assess likely hardware and software requirements.

SYSTEMS ANALYSIS TECHNIQUES

The main systems analysis techniques are:

- *procedure charting*, which uses method study techniques and symbols to record and describe systems and manual procedures;

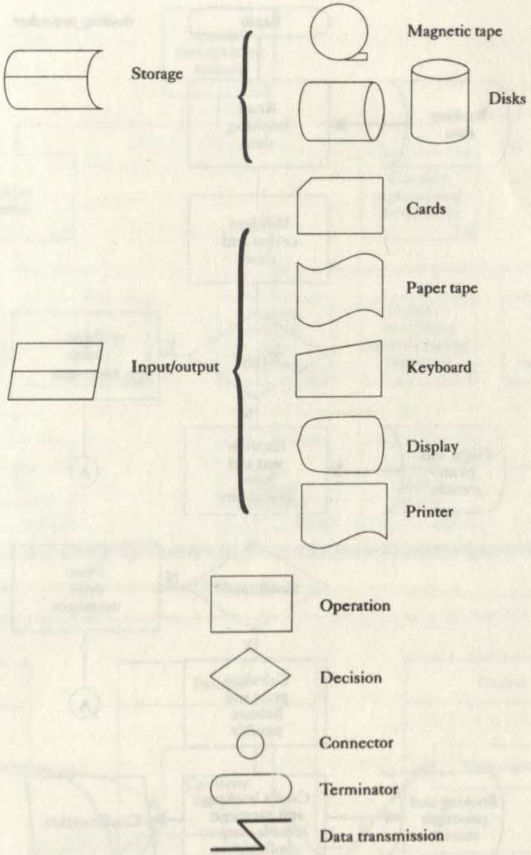


Figure 112.3. *Computer system flow chart symbols* (Reproduced, with permission, from Wright, G *Mastering Computers*, Macmillian 1988)

- *data flow diagrams*, which show the flow of data through a system and where it has to be stored in the systems. The charting symbols are shown in Figure 112.1 and an example of a data flow diagram is given in Figure 112.2;
- *system flow charting*, which shows the flow of control (sequence of activities) within a computer-based system at the level of programs, input, output and files. The symbols used in flow-charting are shown in Figure 112.3 and an example of a system flow chart is given in Figure 112.4;

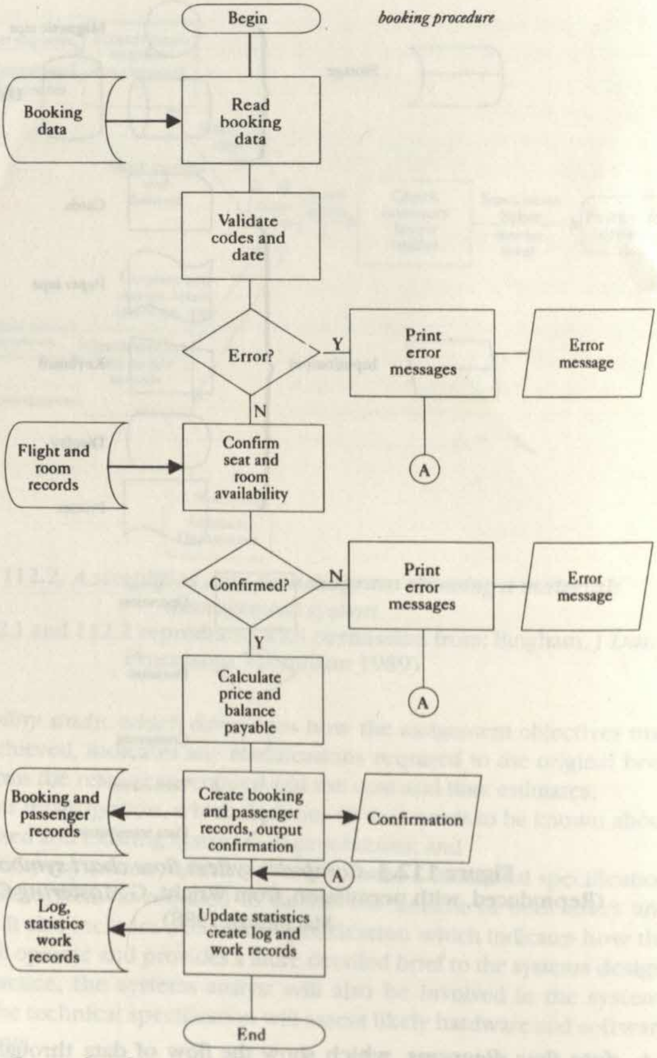

Begin
booking procedure
Booking data
Read booking data
Validate codes and date
Error?
Y
Print error messages
Error message
N
A
Flight and room records
Confirm seat and room availability
Confirmed?
N
Print error messages
Error message
A
Y
Calculate price and balance payable
Booking and passenger records
Create booking and passenger records, output confirmation
Confirmation
A
Log, statistics work records
Update statistics create log and work records
End

Figure 112.4. *Example of a system flow chart (holiday booking procedures)* (Reproduced, with permission, from: Wright, G *Mastering Computers,* Macmillan 1988)

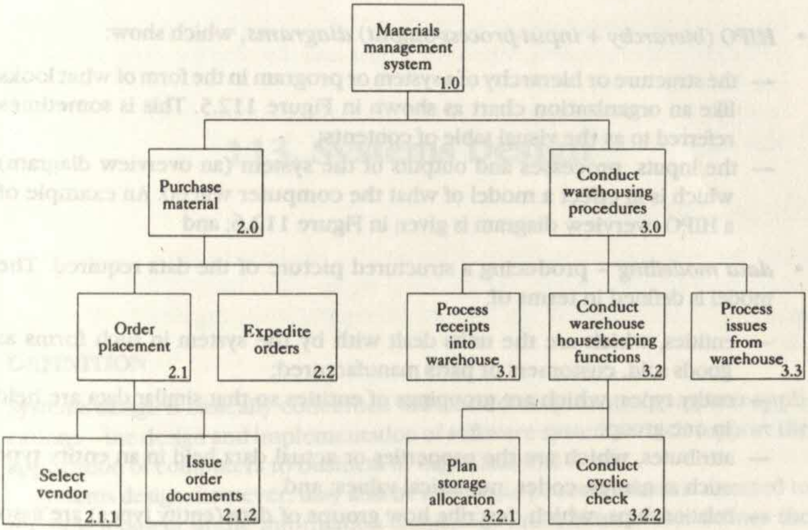

Materials management system 1.0
Purchase material 2.0
Conduct warehousing procedures 3.0
Order placement 2.1
Expedite orders 2.2
Process receipts into warehouse 3.1
Conduct warehouse housekeeping functions 3.2
Process issues from warehouse 3.3
Select vendor 2.1.1
Issue order documents 2.1.2
Plan storage allocation 3.2.1
Conduct cyclic check 3.2.2

Figure 112.5. *A visual table of contents for a materials management system*

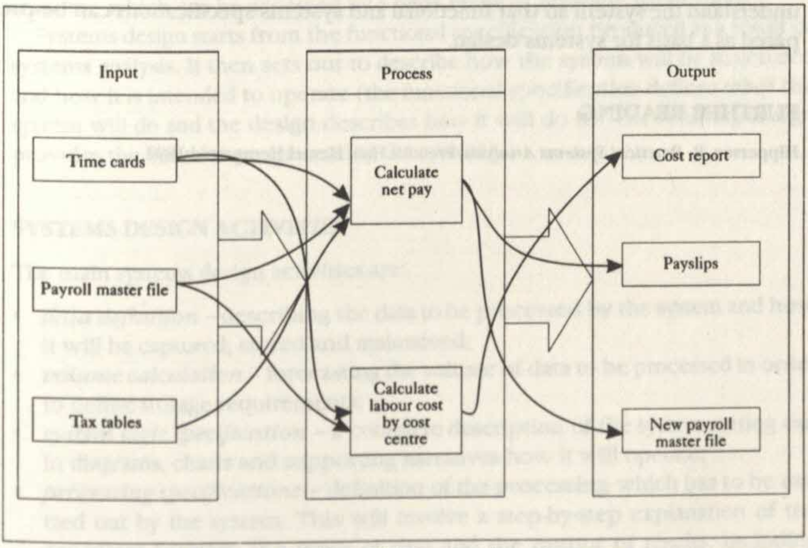


Figure 112.6. *A HIPO overview diagram*

(Figures 112.5 and 112.6 reproduced with permission from: Bingham, J *Data Processing*, Macmillan 1989)

- *HIPO (hierarchy + input-process-output) diagrams*, which show:
  - the structure or hierarchy of a system or program in the form of what looks like an organization chart as shown in Figure 112.5. This is sometimes referred to as the visual table of contents;
  - the inputs, processes and outputs of the system (an overview diagram) which is in effect a model of what the computer will do. An example of a HIPO overview diagram is given in Figure 112.6; and
- *data modelling* - producing a structured picture of the data required. The model is defined in terms of:
  - entities, which are the units dealt with by the system in such forms as goods sold, customers or parts manufactured;
  - entity types, which are groupings of entities so that similar data are held in one group;
  - attributes, which are the properties or actual data held in an entity type such as names, codes, numerical values; and
  - relationships, which describe how groups of data (entity types) are associated with other groups of data.

These techniques are used to provide a basis for both the analyst and the user to understand the system so that functional and systems specifications can be prepared as a basis for systems design.

FURTHER READING

Hipperson, R, *Practical Systems Analysis*, Prentice Hall, Hemel Hempstead 1992.

113. Systems Design

DEFINITION

Systems design is basically concerned with the development of computer applications – the design and implementation of software systems which support the application of computers to business or organizational uses.

Systems design, however, may also be a strategic process which is directed to the development of the information technology architecture. This defines the processing systems and how they interact and the telecommunications or network systems which determine information flows. It also creates an information resource which can be accessed by a wide range of business applications.

Systems design starts from the functional specification produced as a result of systems analysis. It then sets out to describe how the system will be structured and how it is intended to operate (the functional specification defines *what* the system will do and the design describes *how* it will do it). The resulting design provides the basis for programming the system.

SYSTEMS DESIGN ACTIVITIES

The main systems design activities are:

- *data definition* – describing the data to be processed by the system and how it will be captured, stored and maintained;
- *volume calculation* – forecasting the volume of data to be processed in order to define storage requirements;
- *system logic specification* – a complete description of the system setting out in diagrams, charts and supporting narratives how it will operate;
- *processing specifications* – definition of the processing which has to be carried out by the system. This will involve a step-by-step explanation of the processes between the input of data and the output of results, including calculations, comparisons, tests and file amendments;
- *file specification* – a description of the layout and organization of files including the number and content of records, size of files and modes of storage;

- *document (input/output) specifications* - the design of input and output documents. The volumes, source of inputs and distribution of outputs will also be defined; and
- *control procedure specification* - the controls and checks required to minimize errors and to provide security.

SYSTEM APPRAISAL

When the new system has been designed it is appraised against the existing system and the requirements the system is expected to meet as defined in the assignment brief. Modifications are made as required and programming is undertaken.

FURTHER READING

Bingham, J, *Data Processing*, Macmillan, London 1989.

114. Programming

DEFINITION

Programming involves the creation of a formalized sequence of instructions which can be recognized and implemented by a computer in order to carry out a processing task.

BASIC ACTIVITIES

The basic programming activities are:

- preparing a program specification which defines the function of the program – it can be part of an overall systems specification;
- designing the program to meet the needs of the particular application of information technology – this will involve deciding on the structure of the program (how it is to be organized) and on the logic contained within the program (how it will function);
- coding the instructions or statements of the program in a computer language;
- testing and debugging the program to ensure that it is capable of performing the tasks for which it has been designed; and
- preparing the documentation of the program for use by operators.

THE PROGRAM SPECIFICATION

The program specification will detail the function of the program within a total system, describe how the program will operate, provide all the documentation required, define the files used and the inputs and outputs required and indicate the program structure and programming language to be used.

PROGRAM DESIGN

The design stage ensures that the logic of all the processes to be performed by the program have been specified. It is concerned with the development of

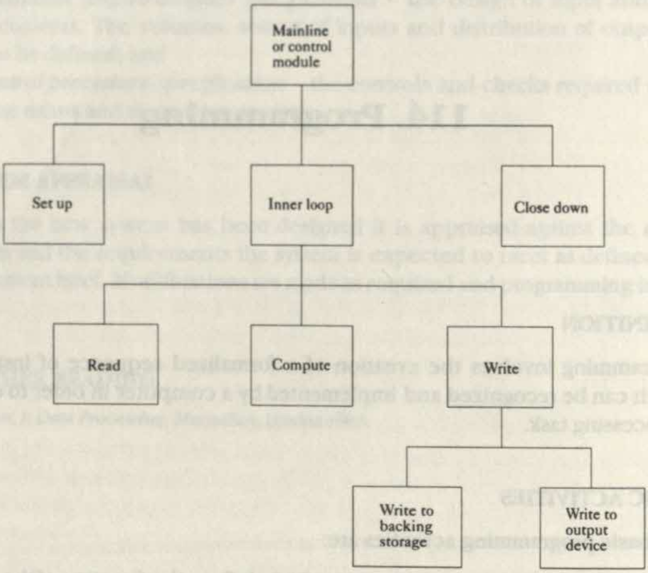


Figure 114.1. *A modular hierarchy*
(Reproduced, with permission, from: Wright, G *Mastering Computers*, Macmillan 1988)

control structures – the means of controlling the sequence in which the statements of a program are executed. There are two basic approaches to the design of large or complex programs:

1. *Modular programming*, in which the program is divided into a number of self-contained logical sections or modules. These are in effect sub-programs, which are initiated by instruction within the main program. Each module is developed and tested separately and then the modules are progressively assembled together until the complete program has been built up. A modular hierarchy is illustrated in Figure 114.1.
2. *Structured programming*, which describes and writes the program systematically using a limited range of control structures. The program may be divided into modules and within each module the simple logical constructions (illustrated in Figure 114.2) of *do while, do until* or *if then else* may be used.

There are two methods of dividing a program into modules and placing them within a logical structure:

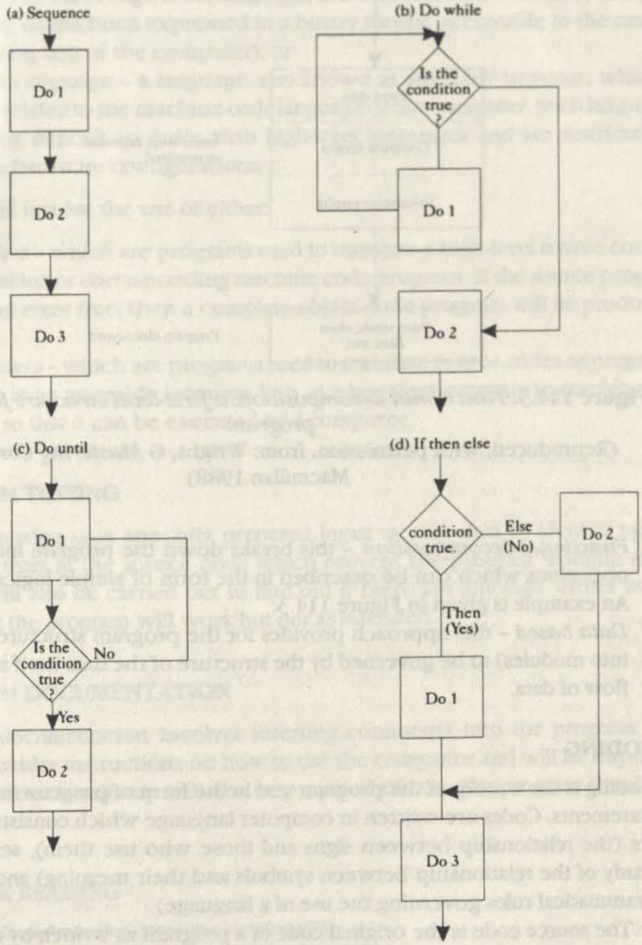


Figure 114.2. *Basic logical structures*
(Reproduced, with permission, from: Bingham, J *Data Processing*, Macmillan 1989)

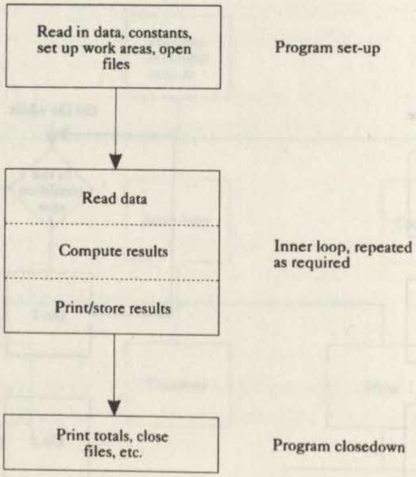

Read in data, constants, set up work areas, open files
Program set-up
Read data
Compute results
Print/store results
Inner loop, repeated as required
Print totals, close files, etc.
Program closedown

Figure 114.3. *Functional decomposition: a first-level structure for a typical program*
(Reproduced, with permission, from: Wright, G *Mastering Computers*, Macmillan 1988)

- *Functional decomposition* – this breaks down the program into a series of operations which can be described in the form of simple logical structures. An example is given in Figure 114.3.
- *Data based* – this approach provides for the program structure (its division into modules) to be governed by the structure of the data itself and/or by the flow of data.

CODING

Coding is the writing of the program text in the form of program instructions or statements. Codes are written in computer language which consists of pragmatics (the relationship between signs and those who use them), semantics (the study of the relationship between symbols and their meaning) and syntax (the grammatical rules governing the use of a language).

The source code is the original code of a program as written by the programmer. It then has to be processed (ie, compiled or assembled, see below) to convert it into an object code (the source code after it has been translated).

The program language contains a set of rules defining the manner in which data structures are formulated and how the processing instructions are written and organized. The language can be either:

- a high-level language, which enables programmers to specify a set of instructions in a form geared to the nature of the problem rather than the detailed operation of the computer – the most widely used high-level languages are COBAL and PL/1. High-level languages are translated into machine code (ie, program instructions expressed in a binary format acceptable to the central processing unit of the computer); or
- low-level language – a language, also known as assembly language, which is closely related to the machine code language of the computer. Such languages are more difficult to write than high-level languages and are restricted to specific hardware configurations.

Coding will involve the use of either:

- *compilers* – which are programs used to translate a high-level source code or program into a corresponding machine code program. If the source program is syntax error free, then a complete object code program will be produced; or
- *assemblers* – which are programs used to translate source codes or programs written in an assembly language into an equivalent program in machine language, so that it can be executed by a computer.

PROGRAM TESTING

Program testing uses specially prepared input or test data to identify syntax errors – errors in the source code which prevent the program working at all. Testing will also be carried out to find out if there are any logic errors which mean that the program will work but not as intended.

PROGRAM DOCUMENTATION

Program documentation involves inserting comments into the program text which provides instructions on how to use the computer and will be displayed on the screen. A write-up will also be prepared of how the program should be operated.

FURTHER READING

Bingham, J, *Data Processing*, Macmillan, London 1989.
Wright, G, *Mastering Computers*, Macmillan, London 1988.

115. Data Management

DEFINITIONS

- *Data*. The material in the form of numbers and codes which is processed by a computer system. Data is input to and stored by computers as raw material rather than meaningful information. It must be processed through a computer program to be decoded before it makes sense to users.

  Data can be described in terms of:

  - *entities* - the objects, events or concepts about which material needs to be stored and processed, for example, the name of an employer;
  - *attributes* - the characteristics of an entity, for example, an employee's home address or salary; and
  - *values* - the dimensions or occurrence of an attribute which may change, for example, home addresses or salary levels.
- *Database*. The information technology platform which provides for data to be held, processed and communicated as information to users. The database consists of systematically organized and interrelated sets of files (collections of records serving as the basic unit of data storage) and allows for combinations of data to be selected as required by different users.
- *Data management*. The collection, storage and preparation of data to ensure that it is available and appropriate for the uses to which it may be applied within an organization. It involves organizing data to suit business needs, ensuring that it can be located and extracted quickly, maintaining and updating it as necessary and providing for the security of the data.
- *Database management system (DBMS)*. A set of programs used to create and maintain a database and to provide the means for the execution of programs for the delivery of information required to run the business.

AIMS

The aims of data management are to:

- ensure that the data resources available to the business are exploited to the full;
- generate information from the pool of data held in the database so that it can be used throughout the organization, bearing in mind that one piece of data can be used in a number of applications;
- support integrated management systems such as computer-integrated manufacturing (CIM), by providing a common database rather than holding data separately for each application; and
- allow easy but controlled access to data by many different users while ensuring that the data is processed quickly and kept secure.

CONSTRUCTING A DATABASE

The construction of a database involves:

1. the identification of data requirements;
2. the development of data structures; and
3. the preparation of a data dictionary.

Identification of data requirements

The identification of data requirements is carried out by means of the following:

- *Business analysis*. The determination of the overall information requirements needed to support the business.
- *Activity modelling*. The analysis and description of activities for which information is required by means of:
  - *context diagrams*, used to determine the scope of a business system by charting the main parts of the system and the data flows to and from and within the system;
  - *activity hierarchy diagrams*, used to show what activities are carried out and the relationships between them;
  - *data flow diagrams*, which show how data flows between the different activities; and
  - *systems analysis*, which provides detailed guidance on the data flows and information appropriate to a particular application or to an integrated system which uses data from a number of different sources.

Data structure development

Data structure development requires the preparation of data structures which represent the data used within an organization as established by analysis. The four structures are as follows:

1. *Hierarchical*, which trace one to many relationships (one parent to many children).
2. *Network*, which trace many to many relationships.
3. *Relational database*, built up from flat files, which are files comprising a collection of records of the same type which do not contain repeating groups, ie, have no physical relationship with other files. Flat files are in effect two-dimensional tables, one dimension consisting of the records and the other of the fields within each record. This collection of flat files or 'relations' can be linked, manipulated and reconfigured by the use of mathematical operations, thus providing a high degree of flexibility in the use of the data.
4. *Data dictionary*, which is, in effect, a database of data about data. It lists the names and structure of data types and is a basic tool of database management.

DATABASE MANAGEMENT SYSTEMS (DBMS)

Database management relies heavily on database management systems which provide for the same information to be accessible to multiple applications by the use of interrelated software tools. The components of a DBMS consist of:

- *data description* – the structure of the database if it is a hierarchy or network;
- *data entry* – facilities for the input of data to the system;
- *data enquiry system* – methods of accessing data;
- *file creation and maintenance* – facilities for creating and maintaining files; and
- *application generation* – facilities for generating the applications systems, ie, programs written for application by specific users.

Relational database management systems can be used to organize data in a way which maximizes the variety of methods it can be combined or 'related'.

THE DATA MANAGEMENT FUNCTION

The data management function develops the database and its data structures, runs the DBMS and carries out the data administration tasks of maintaining the data dictionary, sorting and indexing files, and user/transaction logging. It is also concerned with protecting the database against inadvertent alterations.

BENEFITS OF DATA MANAGEMENT

The benefits of data management are that it:

- provides for the centralized control of company data and information;
- releases latent information from the data stored in the system for application by users;

- provides good access to data requirements across a number of company activities and systems;
- ensures that the best use is made of data; and
- helps to integrate systems by providing each part of the system with interrelated information.

FURTHER READING

Brady, R, *Information Technology in Business*, Stanley Thornes, Cheltenham 1991.

116. Artificial Intelligence

DEFINITION

Artificial intelligence (AI) is the process of developing computer systems which exhibit the characteristics associated with intelligence in human behaviour.

Artificial intelligence (sometimes called machine intelligence) represents knowledge by using symbols rather than numbers and by employing heuristic methods of processing information. A heuristic is a rule-of-thumb which, when applied to a situation, suggests how it should be dealt with.

AI also uses pattern-matching methods which enable relationships to be established between different things, and explain how the various items are linked to one another.

INTELLIGENT BEHAVIOUR

Intelligence is the ability to think and reason. AI aims to reproduce intelligent behaviour in human beings. Such behaviour involves:

- recognizing the importance of different elements in a situation;
- finding similarities in situations despite the differences which may separate them;
- drawing distinctions between situations despite the similarities which may link them;
- responding to a situation flexibly; and
- making sense out of ambiguous or contradictory messages.

The use of intelligence by people requires more than simply processing information, which basically is what computers do. People *understand* information. The goal of AI is to develop an intelligent computer which emulates this type of intelligent behaviour in human beings. The intelligence possessed by the computer, however, is given to it by humans.

AI therefore attempts to simulate intelligent behaviour. This means that it is necessary to explain the workings of human intelligence by using cognitive science - the science of understanding human intelligence. One of the problems is programming this understanding into a computer. It is relatively easy to programme a sequence of procedures or steps in processing data by the use of algorithms (a step-by-step procedure with well-defined starting and ending points, which is guaranteed to reach a solution to a specific problem). It is much more difficult to represent or programme intelligent behaviour, simply because it is very hard to define the mental processes involved which come naturally to people and which cannot be reproduced in a linear or step-by-step way.

DEVELOPING ARTIFICIAL INTELLIGENCE SYSTEMS

AI systems try to model human performance on a computer. To do this it is necessary to use cognitive science to determine the process used by humans to produce a particular type of intelligent behaviour and then create a model of that behaviour so that an attempt can be made to simulate it on a computer.

As explained by Mishkoff,[1] cognitive scientists develop theories of human intelligence which are programmed into computer models by AI researchers. The computer models are then used to test the validity of those theories. The feedback from the computer models allows the cognitive scientists to refine their theories, which can be used to develop better models, and so on. This feedback loop process of AI computer modelling is illustrated in Figure 116.1.

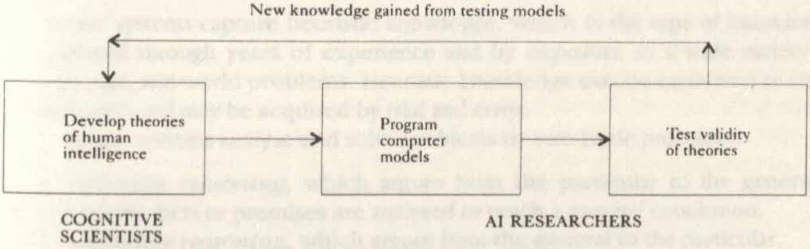

New knowledge gained from testing models
Develop theories of human intelligence
Program computer models
Test validity of theories
COGNITIVE SCIENTISTS
AI RESEARCHERS

Figure 116.1. *The feedback loop process of AI computer modelling*

APPLICATIONS OF AI

AI can be applied in the following ways:

- *Expert systems*, which aim to emulate the reasoning process of an expert in a particular domain (area of expertise).
- *Natural language processing (NLP)*, which aims to enable people and computers to communicate in a 'natural' (human) language, such as English, rather than in a computer language.
- *Speech or voice recognition*, which enables computers to understand and react to human speech.

- *Computer or machine vision*, which aims to build machines capable of simulating human vision.
- *Robotics*, which use AI techniques to develop a sensory apparatus allowing the robot to respond to changes in its environment.
- *Decision support* to collect, analyse and manipulate data in order to model alternatives and explore the consequences of different courses of action.

REFERENCE

1. Mishkoff, H C, *Understanding Artificial Intelligence*, Howard W Sams, Indianapolis, IN 1988.

117. Expert Systems

DEFINITION

Expert systems are designed to represent human expertise in a domain (an area of expertise). They capture and preserve the knowledge of experts in a specific domain and translate it into computer software. This knowledge base allows the expert system to emulate the reasoning processes of human experts. It is designed to help people solve problems by using computers to gain access to expertise they do not possess themselves.

BASIS OF OPERATION

Expert systems capture heuristic knowledge, which is the type of knowledge acquired through years of experience and by exposure to a wide variety of practical, real-world problems. Heuristic knowledge can be expressed as rules of thumb and may be acquired by trial and error.

Expert systems analyse and solve problems by two basic processes:

1. *Inductive reasoning*, which argues from the particular to the general – specific facts or premises are analysed to reach a general conclusion.
2. *Deductive reasoning*, which argues from the general to the particular.

COMPONENTS OF AN EXPERT SYSTEM

The components of an expert system are illustrated in Figure 117.1.

The knowledge base

The knowledge base contains the expertise assembled for the domain. It contains declarative knowledge (facts about objects, events and situations) and procedural knowledge (information about courses of action). Knowledge is represented by means of rules (the knowledge base is sometimes called a rules base). Rules can be heuristic production rules (a heuristic rule is a rule of thumb which tells you how to proceed on an 'if-then' basis); or they can be meta-rules which determine how production rules should be applied.

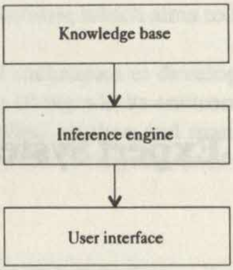


Figure 117.1. *Components of an expert system*

The inference engine

The inference engine, also known as the control structure or the rule interpreter, runs the expert system. It obtains input from the expert system user and searches the knowledge base looking for rules which match the input. It decides what rules are to be invoked, accesses them and compares the input data to either the *if* or *then* portion of rules in the knowledge base. It continues its search until an acceptable solution is found. The rule interpreter within the inference engine determines the sequence in which it examines rules and asks for additional input information if it cannot make a decision on the available facts and rules.

The user interface

The user interface provides a means of producing two-way communications between the user and the computer. The expert system asks questions to which the user replies by typing in answers. The system may request additional information from the user and the user can ask the system to explain its reasoning. The expert system displays an output result to the user which may take the form of a firm conclusion or may indicate that either no conclusion can be reached or that it has to qualify its conclusion with a certainty factor.

FEATURES OF A GOOD EXPERT SYSTEM

The following features of a good expert system were defined by Buchanan and Shortliffe:[1]

- The program should be *useful.*
- The program should be *usable.*
- The program should be *educational when appropriate.*
- The program should be able to *explain its advice.*
- The program should be able to *respond to simple questions.*
- The program should be able to *learn new knowledge.*
- The program's knowledge should be *easily modified.*

DEVELOPING AN EXPERT SYSTEM

The basic approach to expert system development is to identify heuristic (practical) knowledge, extract it from the expert, and represent it in the computer.

Expert systems are developed by knowledge engineers who develop the system on the basis of domain experts who have expertise in the particular subject area or domain to be covered by the system. The five stages of expert system development are illustrated in Figure 117.2.

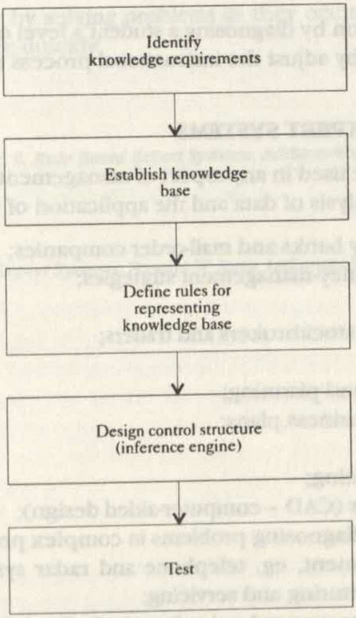

Identify knowledge requirements
Establish knowledge base
Define rules for representing knowledge base
Design control structure (inference engine)
Test

Figure 117.2. *The five stages of expert system development*

TYPES OF EXPERT SYSTEM

Expert systems can be divided into two main categories – inductive systems and deductive systems:

Inductive systems can:

- analyse and interpret data;
- predict future results on the basis of an analysis of input data describing an existing situation, trends or cyclical patterns;
- diagnose problems by analysing input data about the behaviour of a system or device;

- debug complex systems - locating trouble spots and identifying the corrective action required; and
- monitor and control processes and systems by, for example, embodying rules about what should be done if performance is outside an acceptable range.

Deductive systems can:

- help to design products or devices;
- prepare complex plans, properly sequencing actions to achieve a desired end; and
- help with instruction by diagnosing a student's level of knowledge or understanding and thereby adjust the instructional process to the student's needs.

APPLICATION OF EXPERT SYSTEMS

Expert systems can be used in any aspect of management where decisions have to be made by the analysis of data and the application of rules - for example:

- credit evaluation by banks and mail-order companies;
- investment and money-management strategies;
- tax management;
- market analysis for stockbrokers and traders;
- financial planning;
- cash flow analysis and planning;
- the evaluation of business plans;
- risk assessment;
- insurance underwriting;
- engineering designs (CAD - computer-aided design);
- troubleshooting - diagnosing problems in complex process and engineering systems and equipment, eg, telephone and radar systems, machine tools, robots, car manufacturing and servicing;
- designing and setting up production lines including cell-based manufacturing systems;
- assembly of printed circuit boards;
- assembly of complex technical equipment;
- process control in chemical and food plants;
- job evaluation;
- salary administration; and
- intelligent computer-assisted instruction (CAI) which shapes teaching material to fit the learning patterns of individual students.

Expert systems can, in fact, be developed in any field in which expert knowledge can be captured and put to use. But it should be remembered that expert systems can be very expensive to create and the costs/benefits of a proposed system should be evaluated carefully.

BENEFITS OF EXPERT SYSTEMS

Expert systems can:

- speed up decision-making;
- help with the solution of complex problems;
- preserve valuable knowledge and expertise;
- ensure that the best use is made of know-how gained by practical experience; and
- save time and money by solving problems as they occur and enabling decisions to be made more quickly.

REFERENCE

1. Buchanan, B, and Shortliffe, E, *Rule Based Expert Systems*, Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA 1984.

FURTHER READING

Frenzel, L E, *Understanding Expert Systems*, Howard W Sams, Indianapolis, IN 1988.

118. Natural Language Processing

DEFINITION

Natural language processing (NLP) allows computers to understand natural language, ie, human language. The term NLP generally refers to language that is typed or printed rather than spoken. The acceptance by computers of spoken language is covered by the associated artificial intelligence activities of speech recognition and understanding.

NLP involves the acceptance of natural language inputs, their interpretation and understanding and the production of natural language outputs. NLP programs are applications of artificial intelligence (AI) and are made up of a knowledge and an inferencing program like all AI systems. The knowledge base essentially consists of a dictionary of words and methods of analysing relationships between them which the computer understands. When a natural language statement is typed into the computer, the inferencing program examines it to determine whether the words within the input are understood. If they are, the appropriate response is initiated. An NLP system will enable users to ask questions or issue commands in their natural language rather than computer language. If the NLP program does not understand the question it will ask the user to define the term or spell it correctly.

The three components of natural language processing are:

1. natural language understanding
2. natural language generation
3. natural language interface.

NATURAL LANGUAGE UNDERSTANDING

As defined by Mishkoff,[1] natural language understanding interprets natural language by the use of the following techniques:

- *Lexical analysis* – a program which allows access to a lexicon (dictionary) containing symbolic definitions of the words and phrases it is likely to encounter.

- *Keyword analysis* – a pattern-making technique which scans the text, looking for keywords which the program has been designed to recognize. When a keyword is identified the program responds by manipulating the text in a predetermined fashion.
- *Syntactic analysis* enables the computer to understand the function of each word in a sentence as well as its relationship to each of the other words. Syntactic analysis uses a parsing technique to separate sentences into their component parts.
- *Semantic analysis*, which interprets a sentence according to its meaning rather than simply deploying the syntactic analysis technique of interpreting the form of a sentence. Semantic analysis makes use of various types of grammars – formal systems of rules which describe the ways in which sentences can be constructed.
- *Dialogue analysis* clarifies ambiguous sentences by overcoming the linguistic difficulties of ellipsis (the omission of a word or words from a sentence) or anaphora (the abbreviation of a previous word or phrase).
- *Pragmatic analysis*, which relates sentences to one another and their context, and which attempts the difficult task of analysing what a sentence *really* means. This requires a considerable amount of information about the domain (area) under discussion but also about the perceptions of communicators about the situations in which they find themselves.

NATURAL LANGUAGE GENERATION

Natural language generation is concerned with the computer's output when carrying out NLP. The aim is to ensure that the computer knows what to say and how and when to say it in a way that can be easily understood by the user.

NATURAL LANGUAGE INTERFACE

A natural language interface program translates natural language typed on to the screen into a form which the computer can understand and, after the computer has generated information in its own language, translates it back into ordinary English as information on the screen. In theory, a natural language interface should allow any users who know what information is available on a database to find out what they want and display it in a form they can understand and use without knowing anything about the internal structure of the database or having to learn a set of special commands.

OPERATION OF NATURAL LANGUAGE PROCESSING

Natural language processing can be used wherever people want access to information recorded on a database and where it will make life easier for them if they can use natural language commands rather than use an instruction which has to be entered precisely in the language which the computer has been programmed to understand.

NLP can also be used for machine translation or for enabling text to be *understood* as well as recognized. But these applications are still at a relatively early stage of development.

BENEFITS

NLP can enable people to obtain information for problem-solving, decision-making and analytical purposes by communicating with the computer in their own words, thus saving them the time and trouble to learn a special computer language. Potentially this provides for a considerable extension to the 'user friendliness' of computers.

REFERENCE

1. Mishkoff, H C, *Understanding Artificial Intelligence*, Howard W Sams, Indianapolis, IN 1988.

119. Office Automation

DEFINITION

Office automation is concerned with information processing in offices, the collection and distribution of information and the application of computer-based devices to administrative and secretarial tasks.

AIMS

The basic aim of office automation is to integrate office applications of information technology (IT). It makes use of distributed data networks, enabling managers and office staff to obtain information from a wide variety of sources, facilitates communication and provides for the convenient and easily accessible storage of records.

Office automation aims to make the best use of all the IT devices and facilities available, bringing them together into integrated systems. It involves the use in these systems of personal computers, word-processors, desktop publishing, spreadsheets, laser printers and sophisticated telecommunication links (electronic mail and other systems).

In general, the aim is not to produce a 'paperless office' but to reduce the amount of paper-based communications involved. The main applications of IT in automated offices are described below.

INTEGRATED WORK STATIONS

Integrated or multi-functional work stations combine personal computers, computer terminals and various communication devices to enable managers and office workers to carry out more speedily and economically a wider range of administrative and secretarial tasks and to communicate more effectively with colleagues and external contacts.

Integrated systems process and store information locally and exchange information with other systems (micro-computers in different offices can be linked together in a local area network). They provide for document preparation, storage and distribution and ensure that management information is available as, when and where needed. Document files can be stored centrally and accessed via visual display units. Within the work station the system uses word-processors, desktop publishing software and laser printers to draft, edit, raise and print documents. They can also tie in with photo-typesetters.

For managers, an integrated work station will provide such features as a free-form database, form filling, text retrieval, personal organizer, notepad, work-scheduling system, graphic presentation (converting statistical data into a graphical form), calculator, telephone and address list, and aids to developing presentational material. They can gain access to the information they require on their screen which will provide for multiple windows, each of which displays different information such as tabular data and graphic overlays. Documents can be selected from 'folders' and their contents displayed on the screen. Memoranda and reports can be sent direct to other managers via the network.

Spreadsheets can help managers to handle financial information. They will arrange the information logically on a matrix of rows and columns. Formulae are built into the program which enable managers to carry out calculations and manipulate the values. For example, changes in budgetary information can be handled without having to carry out manual calculations. 'What if' situations can be tried out easily and quickly; for example, the impact on profit of an increase in sales turnover accompanied by a reduction in unit costs.

For the office worker, an automated office facilitates the processing and filing of data and the rapid interchange of information, bearing in mind that such workers are primarily 'information exchangers'. They will have easy access to their own locally held files as well as company-wide files, for both reference and updating purposes. Routine filing will be more computer based and office workers will be able to perform a number of functions as distinct from merely one or two tasks. They will also have immediate access to a wide variety of facilities such as word-processing, spreadsheets, electronic mail and local area or wide area networks. The information flows in an automated office (sometimes referred to as an electronic office) can be integrated as illustrated in Figure 119.1.

This example of a system incorporates various forms of telecommunications through a PABX (private automatic branch exchange). Videotext systems are used to transmit 'pages' of information as text or diagrams from a remote computer, either over telephone lines (using the viewdata system), or broadcast by a television station (using the teletext system).

In an integrated office system the linked equipment could include word-processing systems and facsimile (fax) equipment for transmitting text or illustrations, OCR (optical character reading) equipment may be used to read printed or marked documents into word-processors for subsequent printing, and bar-coding devices can similarly be used to process point-of-sale information. Computer information may be transmitted to computer output microfilm (COM) – computer 'printout' generated on microfilm rather than on paper.

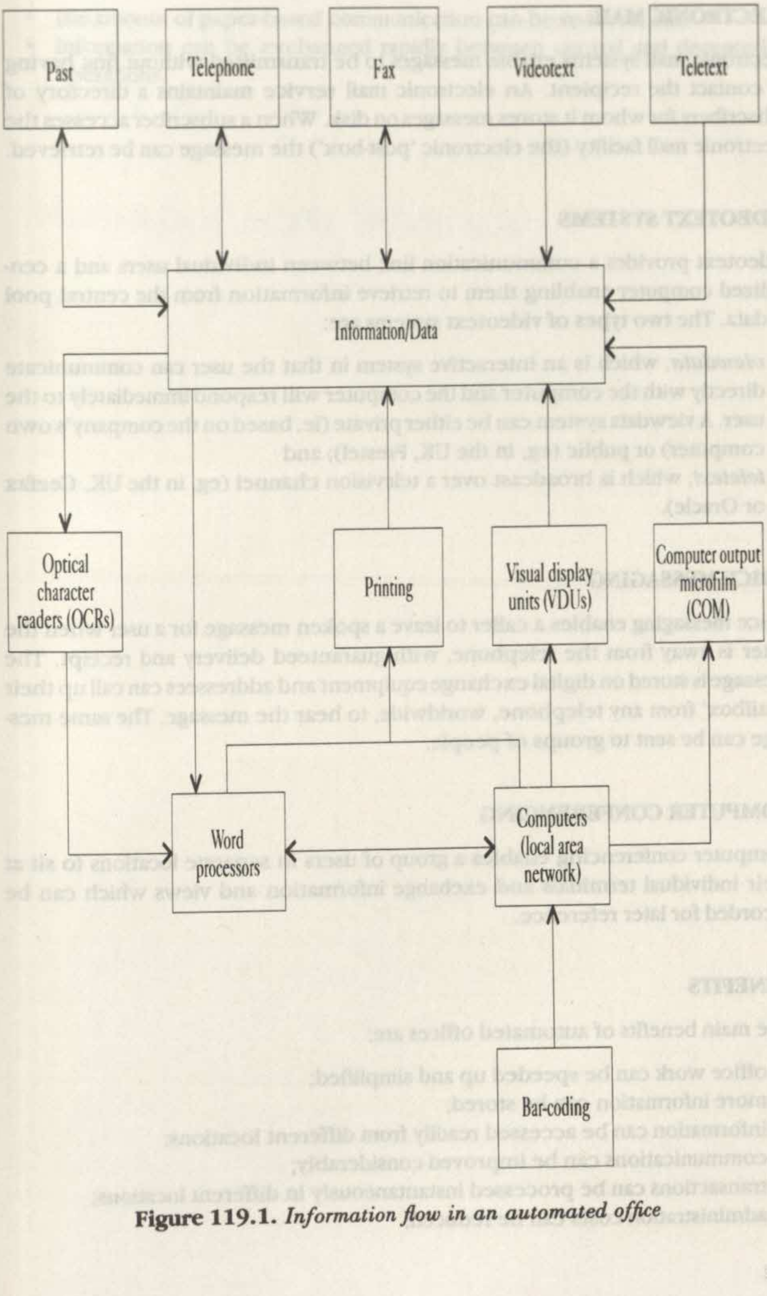

Past
Telephone
Fax
Videotext
Teletext
Information/Data
Optical character readers (OCRs)
Printing
Visual display units (VDUs)
Computer output microfilm (COM)
Word processors
Computers (local area network)
Bar-coding

Figure 119.1. *Information flow in an automated office*

ELECTRONIC MAIL

Electronic mail systems enable messages to be transmitted without first having to contact the recipient. An electronic mail service maintains a directory of subscribers for whom it stores messages on disk. When a subscriber accesses the electronic mail facility (the electronic 'post-box') the message can be retrieved.

VIDEOTEXT SYSTEMS

Videotext provides a communication link between individual users and a centralized computer enabling them to retrieve information from the central pool of data. The two types of videotext systems are:

- *viewdata*, which is an interactive system in that the user can communicate directly with the computer and the computer will respond immediately to the user. A viewdata system can be either private (ie, based on the company's own computer) or public (eg, in the UK, Prestel); and
- *teletext*, which is broadcast over a television channel (eg, in the UK, Ceefax or Oracle).

VOICE MESSAGING

Voice messaging enables a caller to leave a spoken message for a user when the latter is away from the telephone, with guaranteed delivery and receipt. The message is stored on digital exchange equipment and addressees can call up their 'mailbox' from any telephone, worldwide, to hear the message. The same message can be sent to groups of people.

COMPUTER CONFERENCING

Computer conferencing enables a group of users in separate locations to sit at their individual terminals and exchange information and views which can be recorded for later reference.

BENEFITS

The main benefits of automated offices are:

- office work can be speeded up and simplified;
- more information can be stored;
- information can be accessed readily from different locations;
- communications can be improved considerably;
- transactions can be processed instantaneously in different locations;
- administration costs can be reduced;

- the amount of paper-based communication can be reduced; and
- information can be exchanged rapidly between central and decentralized operations.

ELECTRONIC MAIL

[illegible] messages to be transmitted without any need to contact the recipient. An electronic mail service maintains a directory of subscribers for whom it stores messages on disk. When a subscriber accesses the electronic mail facility (the electronic 'post box') the message can be retrieved.

VIDEOTEXT SYSTEMS

Videotext provides a communication link between individual users and a centralised computer, enabling them to retrieve information from the central pool of data. The two types of videotext systems are:

- *viewdata*, which is an interactive system so that the user can communicate directly with the computer and the computer will respond immediately to the user. A viewdata system can be either private (ie, based on the company's own computer) or public (eg, in the UK, Prestel); and
- *teletext*, which is broadcast over a television channel (eg, in the UK, Ceefax or Oracle).

VOICE MESSAGING

Voice messaging enables a caller to leave a spoken message for a user when the latter is away from the telephone, with guaranteed delivery and receipt. The message is stored on digital exchange equipment and addressees can call up their 'mailbox' from any telephone, worldwide, to hear the message. The same message can be sent to groups of people.

COMPUTER CONFERENCING

Computer conferencing enables a group of users in separate locations to sit at their individual terminals and exchange information and views which can be recorded for later reference.

BENEFITS

The main benefits of automated offices are:

- office work can be speeded up and simplified;
- more information can be stored;
- information can be accessed readily from different locations;
- communications can be improved considerably;
- transactions can be processed simultaneously in different locations;
- administrative costs can be reduced.

PART 8

Management Science

120. Operational Research

DEFINITION

Operational research (OR) has been defined by the Operational Research Society of the United Kingdom as follows:

> Operational research is the application of the methods of science to complex problems arising in the direction and management of large systems of men, machines, materials, and money in industry, business, government, and defence. The distinctive approach is to develop a scientific model of the system, incorporating measurements of factors such as chance and risk, with which to predict and compare the outcomes of alternative decisions, strategies, or controls. The purpose is to help management determine its policy and actions scientifically.

OPERATIONAL RESEARCH TECHNIQUES

The main operational techniques are described below.

Decision theory

In one sense, all operational research is about decisions. It is about decision rules, evaluating alternative decisions, optimizing decisions, predicting the outcome of decisions, helping to cope with uncertainty and risk and sorting out the complexity of the situations in which decisions are frequently made so that management can swiftly exercise judgement on what is the best course of action in the circumstances (see Chapter 121).

The techniques available are:

1. the clarification of decision rules: optimistic, pessimistic, opportunity cost or expected value;
2. means-end analysis to clarify a chain of objectives and identify a series of decision points;
3. decision matrix analysis to model relatively simple decisions under uncertainty so as to make explicit the options open to the decision taker;

4. decision trees to assist in making decisions in uncertainty when there is a series of either/or choices;
5. algorithms which set out the logical sequence of deductions required for problem-solving;
6. subjective probability techniques which aim to systemize the process of making intuitive decisions or decisions based largely on personal experience; and
7. Bayesian analysis which aims to translate subjective probabilities into mathematical probability curves, thus providing a clearer analytical framework for the decision.

Modelling

Modelling is a representation of a real situation. It is a fundamental technique of operational research because, by representing a situation in mathematical terms, it increases management's understanding of the circumstances in which decisions have to be made and the possible outcomes of those decisions (see Chapter 122).

Simulation

Simulation is the construction of mathematical models to represent real-life processes or situations as they develop over a period of time. Simulation enables the model to be manipulated so that the dynamics of the system can be reproduced or simulated. One of the most commonly used simulation techniques is the Monte Carlo method which builds into the system the chance elements that will affect outcomes. Simulation enables the likely effects of many decisions on complex situations to be estimated in conditions of uncertainty when chance elements may play an important part (see Chapter 123.)

Linear programming

Linear programming uses a mathematical approach to solving problems where there are many intersecting variables and only limited resources are available. Its aim is the combination of variables that satisfies the constraints in the system and achieves the objectives sought (see Chapter 124).

Queuing theory

Queuing theory uses mathematical techniques to describe the features of queues of people, material, work-in-progress, etc. in order to find the best way to plan the sequence of events so that bottlenecks can be avoided (see Chapter 125).

ABC analysis

ABC analysis classifies items such as stock levels or sales outlets into three groups: A (very important), B (fairly important) and C (unimportant) depending upon their impact on events. Decisions can then be made on how to concentrate on the A items where the best results will be obtained in relation to the effort expanded. ABC analysis is based on Pareto's law, or the 80/20 rule, which describes the tendency for only a small number of items (20 per cent) to be really significant in that they produce 80 per cent of the results (see Chapter 126).

Sensitivity analysis

Sensitivity analysis is a technique, also used frequently in management accounting, to predict the impact on results (eg, profits or contribution) of varying the levels of the parameters which affect those results (see Chapter 127).

Network analysis

Network analysis is a critical path technique for planning and controlling complex projects by recording their component parts and representing them diagrammatically as a network of interrelated activities (see Chapter 129).

Statistical techniques

Operational research, in its use of mathematics to assist in describing the circumstances in which decisions are made, deploys statistical techniques extensively. Because chance and uncertainty play a major part in the sort of decisions OR deals with, probability estimates are important. So are the analysis of distributions of data and the study of the interrelationships or correlations between interacting variables.

APPLICATIONS

The following are examples of the main applications of operational research:

- Decision-making, providing general help in making decisions, especially in complex situations with many interacting variables and in conditions of uncertainty or risk.
- Distribution planning, using statistical analysis, linear programming, simulations or algorithms to solve, with the aid of computers, standard transportation problems of how to achieve the best and cheapest distribution pattern.
- Facility and operation control systems planning, using simulation to enable alternative design concepts to be evaluated and to understand the sensitivity of output to changes in shop configurations and process track speeds.
- Forecasting, where models are developed to predict likely changes in demand or the impact of alternative marketing approaches, including new product development and changes in the marketing mix.
- Inventory control where models and simulations are used to deal with prob-

lems of minimum safety or minimum reorder level, and ABC analysis is used to concentrate thinking on the key decision areas.

- Long-range financial planning, where models are used to predict profit, contribution and sales turnover figures.
- Product mix decisions, where linear programming is used to determine the combination of products which will maximize contribution to profits and fixed costs;
- Production planning, where linear programming is used to decide on what manufacturing facilities are needed and the best way to load these facilities, bearing in mind fluctuations in requirements and uncertainty in demand.
- Profit planning, where sensitivity analysis is used to predict the outcome of alternative assumptions about demand, prices and costs.
- Project planning, where network analysis is used for planning and scheduling and to assist in resource allocation.
- Queuing problems, where queuing theory is used to plan sequences of events in order to optimize service levels to customers and to minimize bottlenecks.
- Resource allocation, where linear programming is used to work out the workforce, material, machine time and other resources needed to complete construction or development projects or to maintain budgeted production schedules.

OPERATIONAL RESEARCH METHOD

OR is based on a sequence of three key tasks:

1. Gain understanding of the system and the relevant factors affecting it, including uncertainty and risk, so that the problem can be defined in useful terms for analysis by means of a mathematical model that represents the system (see also Chapter 122 on modelling).
2. Collect and analyse relevant data using appropriate statistical and other quantitative techniques and, often with the aid of a computer, formulate and test a practical solution. This frequently requires a degree of optimization, ie, obtaining the best answer *in the circumstances* by balancing the parameters and variables.
3. Present proposals for action and assist in implementing decisions.

BENEFITS

1. Its ability to deal in a quantitative manner with conditions of uncertainty, bearing in mind Bertrand Russell's dictum that 'we are not able to predict the future with complete certainty but equally we are not entirely uncertain about the future'.
2. Its use of objective methods to sort out in complex situations what informa-

tion is relevant and what information from past experience has a causal relationship with the situation being examined.

3. Its capacity to illustrate the likely outcomes of alternative courses of action based upon the information analysed (ie, answering 'what if' questions).
4. The assistance it gives to managers in understanding the many interrelated factors affecting their decision.
5. Its provision of various logical approaches to decision-making in complex situations.
6. Its ability to handle masses of data with the help of the computer.

FURTHER READING

Duckworth, W E, Gear, A E, and Lockett, A G, *A Guide to Operational Research*, Chapman & Hall, London 1977.

Littlechild, S C, (ed.), *Operational Research for Managers*, Philip Allan, Deddington 1977.

121. Decision Theory

DEFINITION

Decision theory deals with the process of making decisions, especially in conditions of uncertainty, when a number of alternative courses of action may have to be evaluated before the final decision is made. Decision theory analyses types of decisions, sets out ground rules for making decisions and develops decision-making methods using various kinds of models or procedures.

TYPES OF DECISION

Decisions can be classified according to their purpose, their structure, their complexity, the degree of dependence and influence on other decisions, the extent to which conditions of uncertainty exist, the circumstances in which the decisions are made and the timescale available. Features contained in any of these categories may be present in one decision.

Purpose

Decisions may be either:

- strategic – long term, dealing with wide issues affecting the whole or a major part of the organization; or
- tactical – shorter term, dealing with operational issues which, although they may affect the whole organization, are more likely to make an impact upon a particular function or department.

Structure

Decisions may be either:

- structured and unambiguous in that they are well-defined, the options are clear and explicit, evaluation criteria exist; or
- unstructured and ambiguous in that the circumstances in which the decisions are being made are unclear, the reasons for making the decisions ill-defined,

the options available are not apparent and criteria for judging the outcome of the decisions are not readily available.

Complexity

Decisions may be more or less complex depending on the number of factors that affect them. These may be internal arising from such factors as complex technology or processes, or a multiproduct production line or a complicated distribution network. Alternatively, complexity may arise from the external environment caused by such factors as a highly segmented market, rapid changes in technology and political, social and economic complications.

Degree of dependence and influence

Decisions may be more or less dependent on other decisions - past, current or future. They may also exert a greater or lesser degree of influence over other decisions. The extent to which they are dependent or exert influence has to be taken into account and may increase the complexity of the decision-making process.

Uncertainty

Decisions may be made in conditions of certainty where all the relevant facts are known and all the likely consequences can be reliably forecast. Alternatively, they may be made in conditions of uncertainty, either because the facts are not known or because the outcomes may be affected by the unforeseeable results of human behaviour.

When the uncertainties are inherent in the system, what is termed a stochastic modelling process may be used to describe them. (Stochastic simply means, as defined by the *Oxford English Dictionary*, 'pertaining to conjecture', in other words, guesswork.)

Circumstances

Decisions may be:

1. opportunity decisions made voluntarily to exploit a chance to develop a new product or enter a new market;
2. problem decisions to deal with an immediate but not too critical problem - the decisions may be pro-active in that they aim to anticipate a difficulty, or they may be reactive in that they deal with a problem which has already arisen; or
3. crisis decisions - major problems imposed on management often from outside the company.

Timescale

Decisions have to be made under conditions of greater or lesser urgency, depending upon circumstances.

DECISION RULES

The four basic decision rules are as follows:

1. *Optimistic*. Choose the option which yields the best possible outcome (the maximax rule).
2. *Pessimistic*. Choose the option with the highest value of the lowest possible outcome (called either the maximin rule, revenue rule or the maximax cost rule).
3. *Opportunity cost*. What opportunity is forgone when one course of action is chosen rather than another? This is sometimes called the regret rule and has been formulated as 'If we decide on one particular option, then, with hindsight, how much would we regret not having chosen what turns out to be the best option for a particular set of circumstances?'[1]
4. *Expected value*. Choose the option in accordance with an estimate of the likelihood of a particular situation occurring.

DECISION TECHNIQUES

The decision techniques available which are classified under the broad heading of decision theory are:

- means-ends analysis
- decision matrix
- decision trees
- algorithms
- subjective probability
- Bayesian analysis.

These are considered below.

Other techniques designed to assist in decision-taking, described elsewhere in the handbook, are:

- linear programming (Chapter 124)
- modelling (Chapter 122)
- simulation (Monte Carlo and deterministic) (Chapter 123).

Means-ends analysis

Means-ends analysis as described by Cooke and Slack[1] is a method of clarifying a chain of objectives and thus identifying a series of decision points. The concept

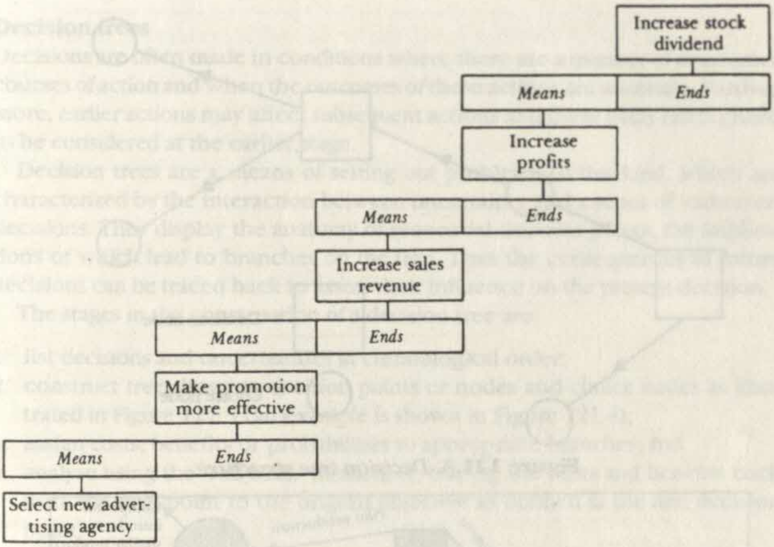


Figure 121.1. *A means-ends chain.* From *Making Management Decisions,* S Cooke and N Slack, Prentice-Hall International, London 1984.

is based on the fact that what is an objective to one decision-maker will be a means of achieving a higher objective to a higher (hierarchically) decision-maker. In other words, one person's means is another person's ends.

Means-ends analysis is carried out by charting a means-ends chain as illustrated in Figure 121.1.

DECISION MATRIX

A decision matrix, as described by Cooke and Slack,[1] is a method of modelling relatively straightforward decisions under uncertainty in such a way as to make explicit the options open to the decision-taker, the factors or 'states of nature' relevant to the decision, and the probable outcomes from a combination of each option with each factor as shown on the matrix. The form in which a decision matrix is constructed is shown in Figure 121.2.

Options →

	Factors		
	F1	F2	F3
C1	011	012	013
C2	021	022	023
C3	031	032	033

← Outcomes

Figure 121.2. *Decision matrix*

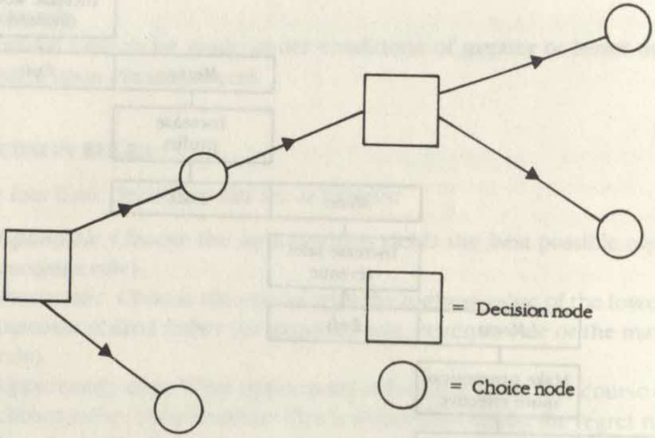


Figure 121.3. *Decision tree structure*

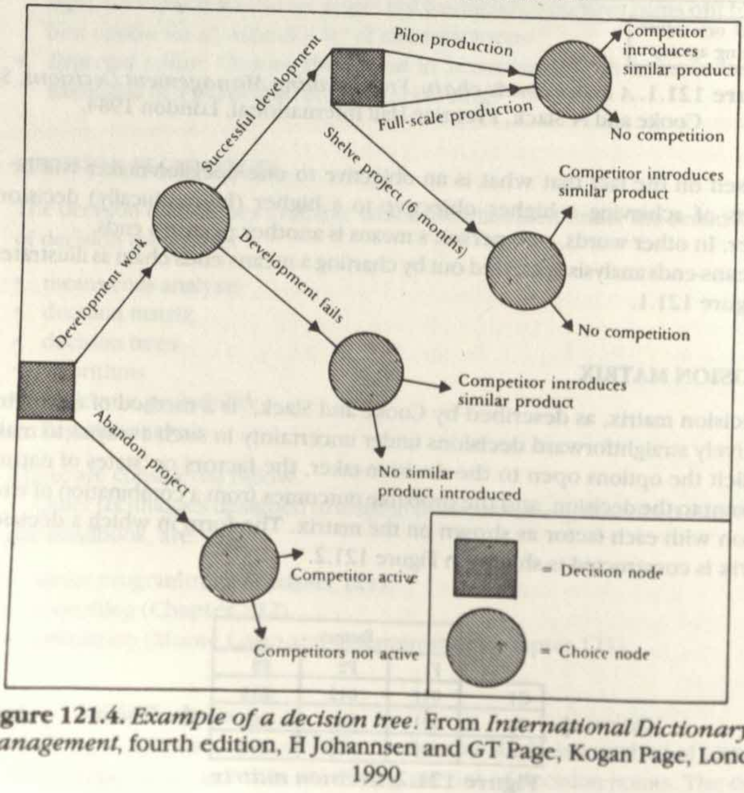


Figure 121.4. *Example of a decision tree*. From *International Dictionary of Management*, fourth edition, H Johannsen and GT Page, Kogan Page, London 1990

Decision trees

Decisions are often made in conditions where there are a number of alternative courses of action and when the outcomes of these actions are uncertain. Furthermore, earlier actions may affect subsequent actions and these likely effects need to be considered at the earlier stage.

Decision trees are a means of setting out problems of this kind, which are characterized by the interaction between uncertainty and a series of 'either/or' decisions. They display the anatomy of sequential decision points, the implications of which lead to branches on the tree. Thus the consequences of future decisions can be traced back to assess their influence on the present decision.

The stages in the construction of a decision tree are:

1. list decisions and uncertainties in chronological order;
2. construct tree showing decision points or nodes and choice nodes as illustrated in Figure 121.3 (an example is shown in Figure 121.4);
3. assign costs, benefits or probabilities to appropriate branches; and
4. analyse using the 'roll-back' method, ie, tracing the costs and benefits back from the final point to the original objective as defined in the first decision point.

Algorithms

Algorithms contain a logical sequence of deductions for problem-solving. They are used to reduce problem-solving tasks to a comparatively simple series of operations which at the same time indicate the order in which the operations are carried out. Illustrations of an instructional and an analytical type of algorithm are given in Figures 121.5 and 121.6 respectively.

Subjective probability

Decisions are frequently made which require a judgement of the probability of an outcome without the aid of objective measures. The subjective perception of the likelihood of an event occurring and the allocation to it of a probability figure (eg, there is a 70 per cent chance that x will happen) is known as subjective probability, and is an expression of the degree of belief in an event happening.

The following generalizations about subjective probability were made by Lindsay and Norman:[2]

1. People tend to overestimate the occurrence of events with low probability and underestimate the occurrence of events with high probability.
2. People tend to adopt the gambler's fallacy of predicting that an event that has not occurred for a while is more likely to occur in the near future.
3. People tend to overestimate the true probability of events that are favourable to them and underestimate those that are unfavourable.

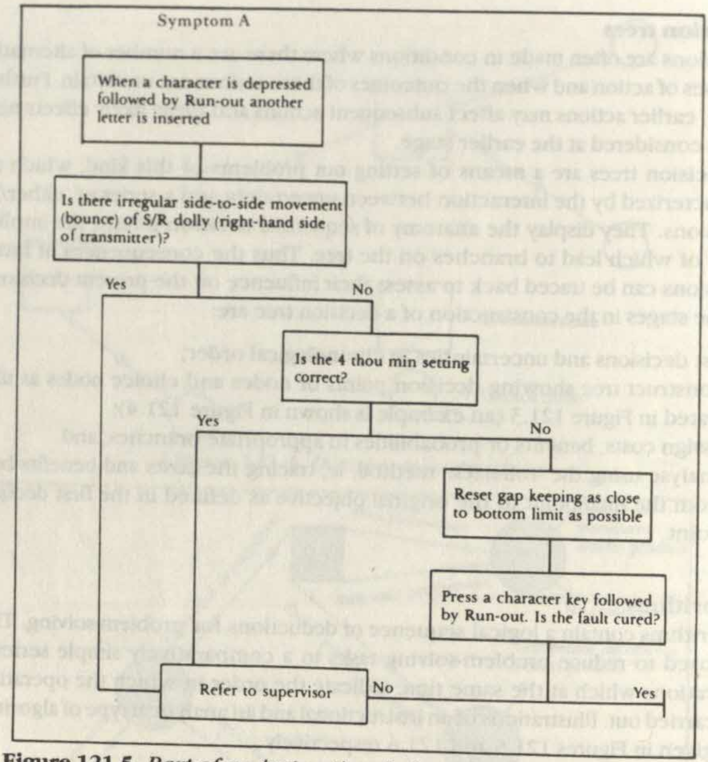

Symptom A
When a character is depressed followed by Run-out another letter is inserted
Is there irregular side-to-side movement (bounce) of S/R dolly (right-hand side of transmitter)?
Yes
No
Is the 4 thou min setting correct?
Yes
No
Reset gap keeping as close to bottom limit as possible
Press a character key followed by Run-out. Is the fault cured?
Refer to supervisor
No
Yes

Figure 121.5. *Part of an instructional algorithm.* From *International Dictionary of Management*, H Johannsen and GT Page, Kogan Page, London 1986

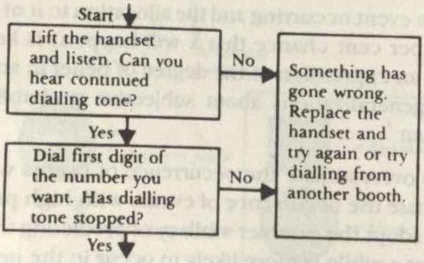

Start
Lift the handset and listen. Can you hear continued dialling tone?
No
Something has gone wrong. Replace the handset and try again or try dialling from another booth.
Yes
Dial first digit of the number you want. Has dialling tone stopped?
No
Yes

Figure 121.6. *An algorithm used for fault analysis.* From *International Dictionary of Management*, fourth edition, H Johannsen and GT Page, Kogan Page, London 1990

The technique of making subjective probability judgements is based on:

- being aware of the tendencies listed above and attempting to minimize them;
- understanding that probability assessments are usually based on experience but that memory can be selective – we tend more easily to recall events that were pleasurable to us or that support the line of reasoning we are adopting; and
- an analytical approach to considering any experience and other evidence available which attempts to increase the objectivity of the judgement by assessing the relevance of each piece of data to the situation.

Bayesian analysis

Bayesian statistical analysis aims to translate subjective forecasts into mathematical probability curves in situations where there are no normal statistical probabilities because alternatives are unknown or have not been tried before. Bayesian statistics use the best estimate of a given circumstance as if it were a firm probability. They enable revisions to be made to probabilities after further information becomes available. The end result of Bayesian analysis depends on the stated prior probabilities. However, although Bayesian statistics can lead to spurious accuracy, like any manipulation of subjective probabilities, they do provide a useful logical structure in making probability revisions as more is learned about the assumptions built into the decision.

BENEFITS

Decision theory provides a method for dealing with complex situations in conditions of uncertainty. The analytical approach ensures that the danger of superficial judgements is minimized and that the alternatives available are properly evaluated.

REFERENCES

1. Cooke, S and Slack, N, *Making Management Decisions*, Prentice-Hall, London 1984.
2. Lindsay, P, and Norman, D, *Human Information Processing*, Academic Press, London 1977.

122. Modelling

DEFINITION

A model is a representation of a real situation. It depicts interrelationships between the relevant factors in that situation and, by structuring and formalizing any information about those factors, presents reality in a simplified form.

USES OF MODELLING

Models can help to:

1. increase the decision-maker's understanding of the situation in which a decision has to be made and the possible outcomes of that decision;
2. stimulate new thinking about problems by, among other things, providing answers to 'what if ' questions (*sensitivity analysis*); and
3. evaluate alternative courses of action.

CHARACTERISTICS OF MODELS

Models have been classified by Cooke and Slack[1] according to the extent to which they are:

1. *concrete or abstract* - scales exist which define the degree of correspondence with reality that a model possesses, ranging from a replication of the original process to a completely synthetic extraction of essential elements of the original situation;
2. *static or dynamic* - the situation can be described by a static model at a particular point in time, while a dynamic model will use time as a major element and will examine phenomena in relation to preceding and succeeding events;
3. *deterministic or stochastic* - deterministic models use single estimates to represent the value of each variable, while stochastic models show ranges of values for variables in the form of probability distributions; and
4. *normative or descriptive*. - normative models are prescriptive in that they

evaluate alternative solutions and indicate what *ought* to be done, while descriptive models simply describe the solutions and make no attempt to evaluate them.

THE PROCESS OF MODELLING

The steps followed in developing a model are as follows:

1. Decide on the objectives of the model by answering the basic questions:
   - What problems is this model meant to solve?
   - What decisions will this model help to make?
2. Consider whether the purpose of the model is to:
   - provide optimal solutions to the problem (linear programming and decision trees come into this category); or
   - provide satisfactory or workable solutions to the problem (corporate models, queuing theory, stock control simulations and heuristic models do this – a heuristic model adopts short cuts in the reasoning and uses rules of thumb or a form of trial and error in its search for a satisfactory solution).
3. Describe in general terms the situation that the model is meant to represent and the factors or variables that impinge on that situation. The extent to which the model will be deterministic (using single estimates for the value of variables) or stochastic (using probability distributions) is considered at this stage. A typical situation will be a long-range profit forecast, and the factors will be the production, marketing and financial resources of the company and the broad strategies developed for their future.
4. Classify the variables, which may be exogenous or endogenous. Exogenous variables are the independent inputs to the model which act on decisions. They can be either controllable or uncontrollable. Endogenous variables are the outputs of the system which are generated from the interaction of the system's inputs or exogenous factors and the structure of the decision itself.
5. Identify the parameters or constants which will be fed into the model and will not vary over the period of time studied or the range of options considered. The rate of interest, for example, may be taken as a constant.
6. Analyse the interactions to determine the influence of one factor on another and therefore the cause-and-effect relationship. From this analysis may be derived a cause-effect model of the situation which can be used as the basis for a mathematical model. An example of a cause-effect model is shown in Figure 122.1.
7. Build a mathematical model containing a set of symbols which describe decision variables and the relationships between them. Computers are used when the model becomes too complex to be used manually. Special modelling

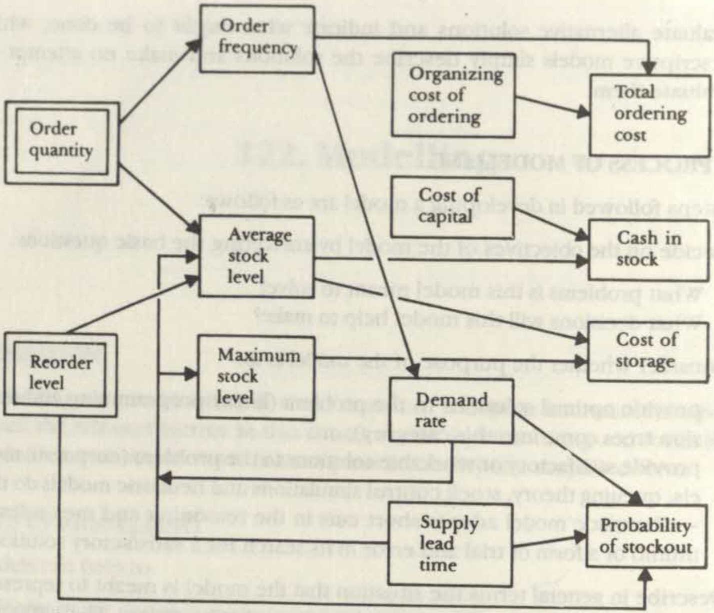


Figure 122.1. *A cause-effect model of a stock control process.* From *Making Management Decisions*, S Cooke and N Slack, Prentice-Hall International, London 1984

systems exist which compile the models directly into computer-readable statements.

SELECTING A MODELLING SYSTEM

When selecting a modelling system the following factors are considered:

1. Is the system interactive?
2. Is the language and command structure easily understood by a non-specialized user?
3. How soon could a novice write and run a simple model for, perhaps, a project approval?
4. What are the processing costs?
5. Has the modelling system the facilities to handle large and complex problems? For example:

- flexibility of data file handling;
- advanced language facilities;

- consolidation facilities to interpret company structures or hierarchies; or
- flexibility of report formats.

APPLICATIONS

Typical modelling applications include:

- budgetary planning models which forecast out-turns, help to allocate resources, determine the optimal product mix and indicate the sensitivity of the budget to changes in key variables during the planning period, eg, the impact of varying rates of inflation, or changes in working capital and cash flow;
- transport and distribution models aimed at increasing the profitability of fleet operations and the scope for economics by better routeing and scheduling techniques;
- production planning models to allocate production to departments and production lines in a way which will maximize throughput, reduce delays and minimize manufacturing, distribution and inventory holding costs; and
- resource allocation models to plan future machine loading and workforce requirements;
- inventory models to optimize stock holding and define minimum safety stock and reorder stock levels

BENEFITS

1. Clarification of all the issues, factors and variables surrounding a decision.
2. The improvement of decision-making by providing information on alternatives and outcomes.
3. The scope to ask 'what if ' questions and therefore to evaluate different opportunities.
4. Bringing data and decision rules into the open so that assumptions can be questioned.
5. Shortening planning cycles by removing much of the manual calculation.
6. Improving the accuracy of forecasts by using the power of the computer.

REFERENCE

Cooke, S, and Slack, N, *Making Management Decisions*, Prentice-Hall, London 1984.

FURTHER READING

Hammond, J S, III, 'Dos and donts of computer models for planning,' *Harvard Business Review*, March-April 1974.

123. Simulation

DEFINITION

Simulation is the construction of mathematical models to represent the operation of real-life processes or situations. The object is to explore the effect of different policies on the model to deduce what might happen in practice without going to the risk of trial and error in the real environment.

Ackott and Sasieni[1] have defined the distinction between modelling and simulation as follows: 'Models represent reality, simulation imitates it. Simulation always involves the manipulation of a model so that it yields a motion picture of reality.'

The distinction between simulation and queuing theory is defined at the end of Chapter 125.

THE PROCESS OF SIMULATION

Simulation makes use of logical models as the basis of its attempts to copy the dynamics of a real situation and, thereafter, to predict actual behaviour. It usually relies on a statement of procedure which underlies the logical relationship between variables. A simulation model takes the form of a logical flow chart which describes this interrelationship. The model is then used to execute the procedure described in the flow chart, and thus the behaviour of the system which is being modelled is simulated. The next step is to transfer the logical model on to the computer and put it to work in an attempt to copy the dynamic operation of the real system.

Because in the real situation events are often triggered off by random or chance influences, simulation sometimes uses techniques such as the so-called Monte Carlo method to represent this random process.

SIMULATION TECHNIQUES

The main simulation techniques are:

1. stochastic digital simulation, usually called the Monte Carlo method, because

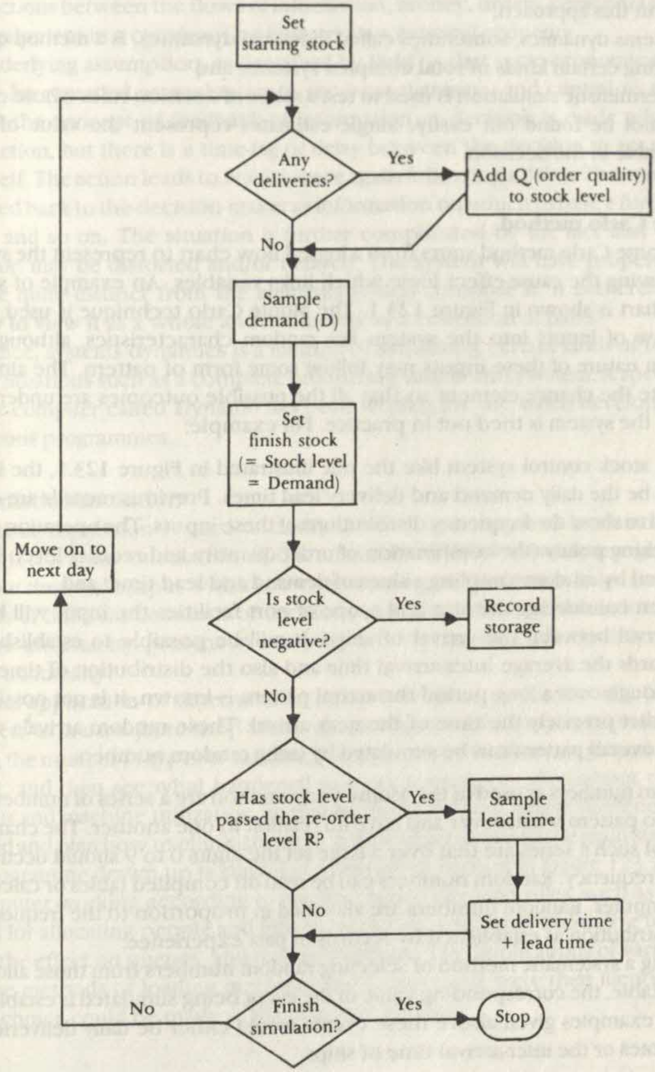


Figure 123.1. *Flow chart describing the procedural logic involved in simulating stock behaviour.* From *Making Management Decisions*, S Cooke and N Slack. Prentice-Hall International, London 1984

early applications used roulette wheels to simulate the chance events inherent in this approach;

2. systems dynamics, sometimes called industrial dynamics, is a method of simulating certain kinds of total complex systems; and
3. deterministic simulation is used to test a series of decision rules whose effects cannot be found out easily. Single estimates represent the value of each variable in the decision.

Monte Carlo method

The Monte Carlo method starts from a logical flow chart to represent the system by showing the cause-effect logic which links variables. An example of such a flow chart is shown in Figure 123.1. The Monte Carlo technique is used when the flow of inputs into the system has random characteristics, although the random nature of these inputs may follow some form of pattern. The aim is to simulate the chance element so that all the possible outcomes are understood before the system is tried out in practice. For example:

- in a stock control system like the one illustrated in Figure 123.1, the inputs will be the daily demand and delivery lead times. Previous records are examined to show the frequency distributions of these inputs. The operation of any stocking policy (the combination of order quantity and reorder level) is simulated by random sampling values of demand and lead time; and
- when considering the size and scope of port facilities the input will be the interval between the arrival of ships. It will be possible to establish from records the average inter-arrival time and also the distribution of times. But although over a long period the arrival pattern is known, it is not possible to predict precisely the time of the next arrival. These random arrivals within the overall pattern can be simulated by using random numbers.

Random numbers as used in the Monte Carlo method are a series of numbers that have no pattern whatsoever and have no relation to one another. The characteristics of such a series are that over a large set the digits 0 to 9 should occur with equal frequency. Random numbers can be read off compiled tables or calculated by computer. Random numbers are allocated in proportion to the frequency in the distribution as established by records of past experience.

Using a systematic method of selecting random numbers from those allocated in the table, the corresponding value of the event being simulated is established. In the examples given above these events would either be daily deliveries and lead times or the inter-arrival time of ships.

Systems dynamics

Systems or industrial dynamics as developed by Forrester[2] studies the complex information feedback characteristics of industrial activity to see how structures, policies and the timing of decisions and actions influence outputs. It simulates the interactions between the flows of information, money, orders, personnel and capital equipment in a company, an industry or a national economy.

The underlying assumption, as described by Pidd[3] is that socio-economic systems may be regarded as analogous to servo-mechanisms, and central to this analogy is the concept of feedback of information. A decision is made which leads to action, but there is a time-lag or delay between the decision to act and the act itself. The action leads to results, once again following a delay. The results are then fed back to the decision-maker as information on which to base a further decision, and so on. The situation is further complicated by the fact that the information may be distorted and/or delayed. The system will have properties which are quite distinct from the elements which compose it. It is therefore necessary to view it as a whole and not merely as a collection of parts.

In essence, systems dynamics is a method of simulating certain kinds of total complex situations such as a complete production distribution system. A special computer compiler called Dynamo has been written for use when developing simultaneous programmes.

Deterministic simulation

Deterministic simulation is used to clarify the decisions required in situations such as the accurate calculation of the resources needed to achieve a given throughput time and output with a known level of input. Simulation helps to test the effects of different decisions or decision rules. Deterministic simulation excludes the uncertainty present in everyday life for the sake of convenience, clarity or tractability.

A typical application of deterministic simulation given by Duckworth, Gear and Lockett[4] is in a machine shop where the manager wanted to experiment by changing the number of types of machine, the number of workers employed and the input, and then see what happened to work-in-progress, throughput time and labour and machine utilization, so that he could find out where bottlenecks developed and plan how to eliminate them. A flow chart showing the main stages of the programme drawn up is shown in a simplified version in Figure 123.2.

A computer working according to predetermined decision rules, such as the priorities for allocating people and jobs to machines, simulated alternative loadings and the effect on queues, and throughput time. The implications of various alternative methods of loading machines and progressing were then identified so that a choice could be made of the optimum method.

BENEFITS

Simulation enables the likely effects of many decisions in complex situations to be estimated so that harmful consequences can be avoided and more beneficial methods introduced.

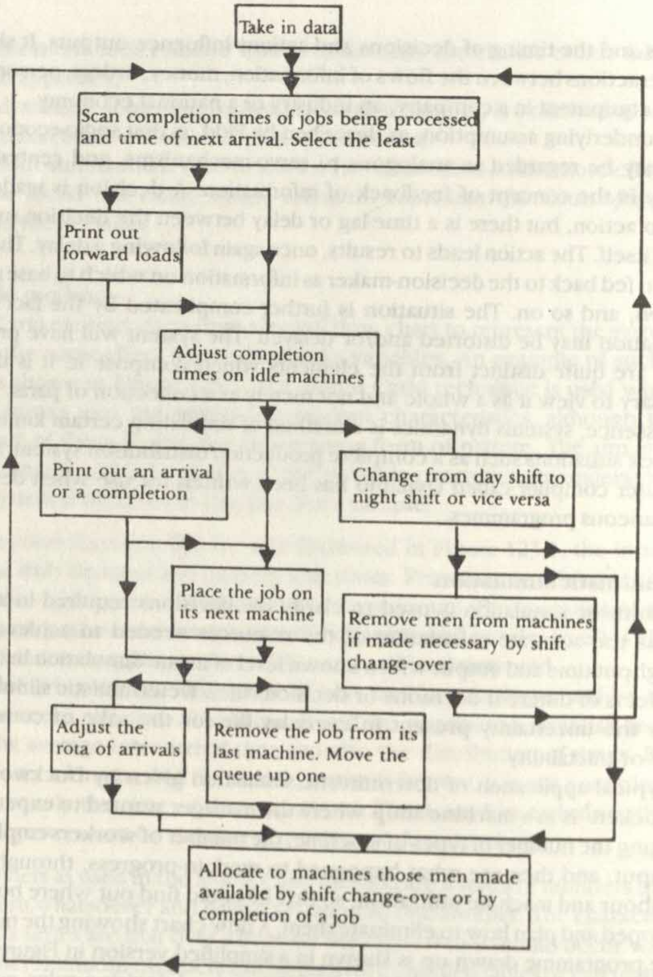

Take in data
Scan completion times of jobs being processed and time of next arrival. Select the least
Print out forward loads
Adjust completion times on idle machines
Print out an arrival or a completion
Change from day shift to night shift or vice versa
Place the job on its next machine
Remove men from machines if made necessary by shift change-over
Adjust the rota of arrivals
Remove the job from its last machine. Move the queue up one
Allocate to machines those men made available by shift change-over or by completion of a job

Figure 123.2. *Simplified flow chart*. From *A Guide to Operational Research*, W E Duckworth, A E Gear and A G Lockett, Chapman & Hall, London 1977

REFERENCES

1. Ackott, R L, and Sasieni, M W, *Fundamentals of Operational Research*, Wiley, New York 1986.
2. Forrester, J, *Industrial Dynamics*, Wiley, New York 1961.
3. Pidd, M, 'Computer simulation models,' in *Operational Research for Managers*, Littlechild, S G, (ed.), Philip Allan, Deddington 1977.
4. Duckworth, W E, Gear, A E, and Lockett, A G, *A Guide to Operational Research*, Chapman & Hall, London 1977.

124. Linear Programming

DEFINITION

Linear programming is a mathematical approach to solving business problems where there are many interacting variables and it is necessary to combine limited resources to obtain an optimized result. It is a decision model under conditions of certainty where constraints affect the allocation of resources among competing uses. The model analyses a list of actions whose outcomes are known with certainty and chooses the combination of actions that will maximize profit or minimize cost.

THE BASIC TECHNIQUE

The aim of linear programming is to find the specific combination of variables that satisfies all constraints and achieves the objectives sought.

The technique is based on simultaneous linear equations. A linear equation is simply $x + 3 = 9$. Simultaneous equations have two or three unknowns and become progressively more difficult to solve. Linear programming:

- constructs a set of simultaneous linear equations, which represent the model of the problem and which include many variables; and
- solves the equations with the help of a digital computer.

The formulation of the equations – the building of the model – is the most difficult part. The computer does the rest.

The term linear is used because when the relationships between two variables are plotted on a graph they are represented by a straight line.

THE LINEAR PROGRAMMING METHOD

The linear programming approach can be divided into four steps:

1. *Formulate the objectives* (called the objective function). This is usually to maximize profit or minimize cost.

2. *Determine the basic relationships* (particularly the constraints). For example, in a manufacturing application the constraints may be the production capacity of various machines.
3. *Determine the feasible alternatives.* If the simplex method is used (the most common approach), a step-by-step process is followed. This begins with one feasible solution and tests it algebraically, by substitution, to see if it can be improved.
4. *Compute the optimum solution.* The simplex method goes on substituting feasible solutions until further improvement is impossible, given the constraints. The optimum solution is therefore achieved.

APPLICATIONS

Linear programming can be used to provide solutions to problems such as follows:

1. Production planning where the requirement is to maximize production with the optimum use of resources yet there are numerous constraints on the use of those resources, eg, machine capacity, storage space, labour availability. The solution to a production planning problem may contain decisions on the production levels at each plant, the machine capacity required, stock levels, raw material inputs and transportation resources.
2. Product mix decisions where the objective is to determine the combination of products which maximizes the total contribution towards fixed costs and profit. The variables will be marginal cost, marginal revenue, units sold and price per unit. The constraints will include production capacity and the level of demand expected for each product at different prices. A product mix problem of this kind may involve the substitution of resources. This is not simply a matter of comparing margins per unit of product and assuming that the production of the product with the greatest margin per unit should be maximized. Such substitutions are a matter of trading a given contribution margin of a limiting factor (ie, a critical resource) for some other contribution margin of a limiting factor.
3. The blending of materials to satisfy technical requirements and capacity constraints while maximizing profits.
4. The formulation of animal feed products to ensure that the cheapest combination of raw material is used which meets the required nutritional specifications.
5. Human resource planning to decide how many people are required in different occupations and with different skills to meet future needs, taking into account growth in the business, availability of staff from within the company, promotions, natural wastage and retirements.

BENEFITS

Linear programming can help to produce optimal decisions where there are a number of predictable variables and constraints. It is particularly useful in sorting out production planning and product mix problems. Linear programming is a good technique for combining materials, labour and facilities to best advantage when all the relationships are linear, where outcomes are known with certainty and where many combinations are possible.

125. Queuing Theory

DEFINITION

Queuing theory uses mathematical techniques to describe the characteristics of queues of people, material, work-in-progress, etc., in order to find the best way to plan the sequence of events so that bottlenecks can be avoided.

USES

Queuing theory deals with problems such as congestion in telephone systems, airports and harbours, machines out of action waiting for repair or materials (machine interference problems) and the design of production schedules.

QUEUING SYSTEMS

As described by Littlechild,[1] queuing systems have three characteristics:

1. *The arrival of items or customers*. The arrival pattern may be known or deterministic, as in an appointment system, or random, as in a supermarket. Such arrival patterns are described by means of probability distributions. Units may arrive singly or in bulk and arrival time may be constant or may vary over time.
2. *Queue discipline*. Items or customers may be dealt with strictly in turn and service may be on a first-in first-out (FIFO) basis, a last-in first-out (LIFO) basis, or on a random basis. There may be several queues and queue jumping may take place. Constraints in the system may limit queue size.
3. *Service mechanism*. There may be any number of servers or service points and they may differ in respect of the speed at which they work and the type of customer or item they can handle. Speed of operation may vary or be constant.

AIM

The aim of queuing theory is to optimize service levels in relation to the demands placed on the service department or facility.

Optimization means minimizing delays, and therefore queues, while still operating at an acceptable level of costs. It is necessary to bear in mind the physical as well as the cost constraints that might restrict the capacity of the system to speed up the rate at which queues are processed.

SOLVING QUEUING PROBLEMS

The basic information required to solve a queuing problem is traffic intensity. This is demand divided by capacity or, in other words, the mean service time divided by the mean interval between successive arrivals. Traffic intensity is given the Greek symbol ρ.

Traffic intensity is calculated by measuring the time intervals between the arrival of jobs or customers and computing the average of these intervals. Thus a frequency distribution is built up and calculations are made of the mean or average arrival rate and the variance or standard deviation of that rate. The average service time is found in a similar way.

Queuing problems arise when jobs or customers arrive at random so that the probability of an arrival in a particular interval of time depends on the length of the interval and not on the time of day or the number of previous arrivals. In these circumstances it can be shown mathematically that the probable number of arrivals in any time interval is given by the Poisson probability distribution. This describes the occurrence of isolated events in a continuum. If the average number of occurrences of a particular event is known, and is constant, Poisson probability paper can be used to calculate the probabilities of all the various possible frequencies with which the event might occur. (For a full description of the use of this graph paper, refer to M J Moroney, *Facts from Figures*, Penguin, pp. 104–5.[2])

In a Poisson probability distribution, the number of items or users is very large and the chance of any one item occurring or any request originating from a particular individual is small. But because the population of items or users is so large, the average occurrence or usage can still be high. An example of Poisson distribution is that of telephone subscribers using long-distance lines. The chance that any one subscriber will require a long-distance line in a given short period of, say, one minute, is very small. Yet there are a large number of subscribers to any exchange, so the average number of long distance calls over the same short period may be considerable.

If the arrival pattern follows a Poisson distribution, it can be shown mathematically that the probability distribution of time intervals between successive arrivals is described by what is termed the negative exponential function. A property

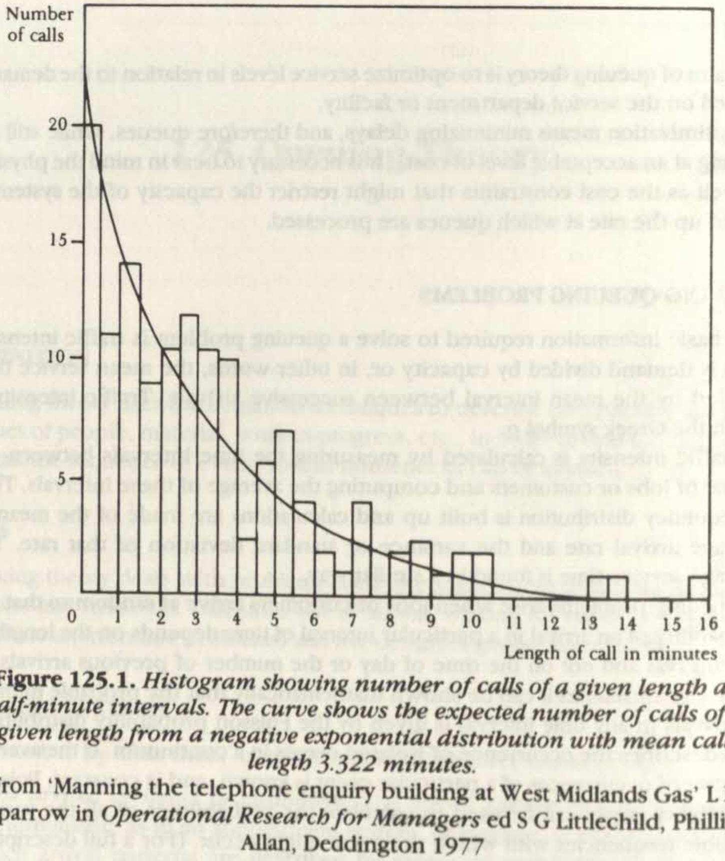


Figure 125.1. *Histogram showing number of calls of a given length at half-minute intervals. The curve shows the expected number of calls of a given length from a negative exponential distribution with mean call length 3.322 minutes.*
From 'Manning the telephone enquiry building at West Midlands Gas' L B Sparrow in *Operational Research for Managers* ed S G Littlechild, Phillip Allan, Deddington 1977

of this function is that the probability of arrivals happening at a particular time is not related to the time already elapsed since the previous arrival.

An application of queuing theory in manning a telephone enquiry bureau was described by Sparrow[1] as follows:

> It was assumed that calls arrived at random from an infinite number of sources, so that the inter-arrival times had a negative exponential distribution and the number of calls within a given time interval had a Poisson distribution. This was a reasonable assumption, since there was a large number of customers acting independently of each other, as long as the grade of service achieved was good enough to ensure few repeated calls.
>
> The service time was assumed to be negatively exponentially distributed, ie, the probability of a call finishing at any time is independent of the

duration of the call up to that time. Figure 125.1 illustrates the nature of this assumption. The histogram was drawn from data on call durations taken at an off-peak time. The exponential fit is a good one. At peak times the exponential fit is not so good, but there is still a long tail to the distribution and the average call duration is not significantly different.

Starting from this point, the average calling and service rates were calculated, to determine the traffic intensity, ie, the average service time. Grades of service (ie, the proportion of calls which are lost) and waiting time (ie, the length of time callers are kept waiting) were then assessed. Finally a model was produced to show how increasing the number of operators improves both the grade of service and the waiting time, thus indicating the staff required at various times of the day to meet different levels of service.

The costs of providing service and of queuing can then be added to produce the total cost, which can be recalculated for various values of the average service time so that a decision can be made on the optimum service arrangements. A typical relationship between total costs and average service times is shown in Figure 125.2.

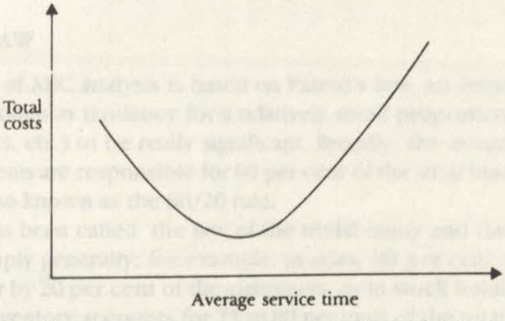


Figure 125.2. *Total servicing costs as a function of average service time*

BENEFITS

By employing the mathematics of queuing theory, the probable efficiency of a system can be assessed in terms of its service levels and productive capacity and plans can be made to eliminate undue and over-costly delays and bottlenecks.

There is a limit, however, to the extent to which queuing theory can deal with highly complex problems in dynamic situations with many variables. In these circumstances simulation techniques may be used as described in Chapter 123.

Littlechild has explained succinctly that:[1]

> The difference between simulation and queuing theory is that the former involves the repeated trial of a particular system, under different patterns of

customer arrivals or service performance, until one has built up an adequate picture of how the system behaves. Queuing theory gives an explicit picture, generally in the form of a mathematical function or graph, relating behaviour to certain system parameters. In this case, one may see immediately how the system would respond to changes in these parameters, whereas with simulation one would have to repeat a whole exercise. Simulation allows one to test out ideas for different system designs but does not, of itself, lead to a 'best' design. Queuing theory thus has a distinct advantage in the limited number of situations where it can be applied, but simulation is a more flexible technique.

REFERENCES

1. Littlechild, S G, (ed.), *Operational Research for Managers*, Philip Allan, Deddington 1977.
2. Moroney, M J, *Facts from Figures*, Penguin, Harmondsworth 1984.

126. ABC Analysis

DEFINITION

ABC analysis, also known as concentration or Pareto analysis, is the classification of a range of items such as stock levels, customers or sales territories into three groups: A = very important; B = fairly important; and C = marginal significance. The aim is to identify these groups so that they can be handled in different ways.

PARETO'S LAW

The concept of ABC analysis is based on Pareto's law, an empirical law which describes a common tendency for a relatively small proportion of items (sales, stocks, outlets, etc.) to be really significant. Broadly, the assumption is that 20 per cent of items are responsible for 80 per cent of the total business or activity. This law is also known as the 80/20 rule.

The law has been called 'the law of the trivial many and the critical few'. It appears to apply generally; for example, in sales, 80 per cent of the volume is accounted for by 20 per cent of the customers, or in stock holding, 15 to 20 per cent of the inventory accounts for 75 to 80 per cent of the total value.

USES

ABC analysis identifies the crucial 20 per cent – the area on which management should concentrate to improve efficiency and performance (hence concentration analysis).

The identification and analysis of the remaining 80 per cent into the only relatively important B category and the marginal C category enables management to adopt different policies in these areas.

METHOD

The first stage of ABC analysis is quite straightforward. It is simply necessary to analyse the distribution of items according to the profits or sales volume they

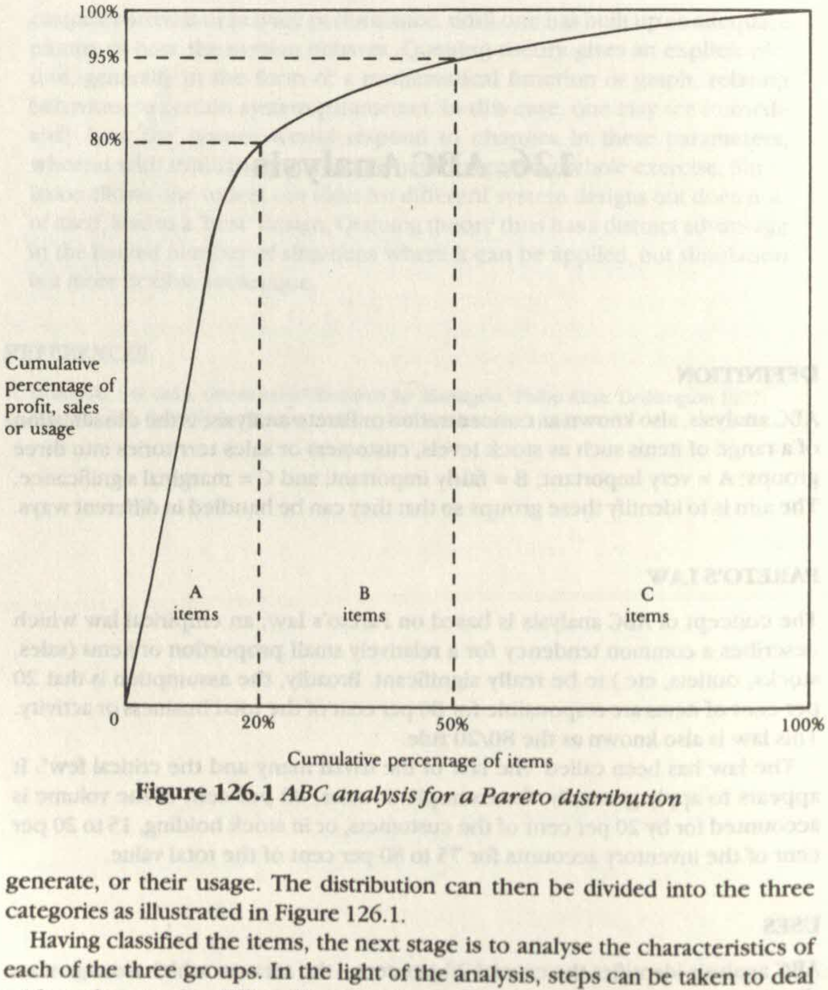


Figure 126.1 *ABC analysis for a Pareto distribution*

generate, or their usage. The distribution can then be divided into the three categories as illustrated in Figure 126.1.

Having classified the items, the next stage is to analyse the characteristics of each of the three groups. In the light of the analysis, steps can be taken to deal with each category differently according to their relative significance. If, for example, the distribution referred to sales per outlet, management would first concentrate on exploiting the sales potential of the A category; second, take steps to improve the performance in outlets in category B; and third, prepare plans for discontinuing unprofitable outlets in category C and reducing the costs of servicing the marginal units. ABC analysis is used extensively in controlling inventory as described in Chapter 44.

BENEFITS

As its alternative name implies, ABC analysis encourages management to concentrate its energies on the areas where the return is likely to be highest. By so doing, time is not wasted introducing over-elaborate procedures or chasing illusory improvements where the benefits from so doing are likely to be insignificant.

127. Sensitivity Analysis

DEFINITION

Sensitivity analysis is the study of the key assumptions or calculations on which a management decision is based in order to predict alternative outcomes of that decision if different assumptions are adopted. It is a 'what if' technique that measures how the expected values in a decision model will be affected by changes in the data.

METHOD

1. List the key factors or parameters. For example, when estimating the likely profitability of a project the factors may be market growth rate, market share, selling price, and the costs of direct labour and direct material.
2. Attach the most likely values to each of these parameters, and from these predict the most likely level of profits.
3. Calculate the effect of varying the values of all or a selected few of these parameters. This may be done by working out what the impact would be if all the values varied equally by, say, 1, 3 or 5 per cent. Different incidences of variation between the values may be calculated if appropriate.
4. List the outcomes of the alternative assumptions and make a subjective assessment of their likelihood.
5. Draw conclusions on any actions required which would make the achievement of the better outcomes more likely.

An example of part of a sensitivity analysis is shown in Table 127.1. The likely level of profits was forecast at £380,000 and the effect on this figure is calculated for a change of 1 per cent in a number of factors.

Table 127.1. *Example of sensitivity analysis*

A difference of 1%	Will change profits by £
Market growth rate	10,000
Market share	12,600
Selling price	190,000
Direct labour	1,200
Direct material	4,500

BENEFITS

Sensitivity analysis helps to prevent rash predictions about the outcome of plans by ensuring that the assumptions on which the plans are based are examined and that the effect of changes in these assumptions is gauged. This process may involve challenging the original assumptions and could result in a rethink about the project. Sensitivity analysis can indicate areas where improvements are likely to have the greatest impact on results. In presenting a range of possible outcomes, sensitivity analysis facilitates the development of alternative or contingency plans if the basic assumptions have to be changed.

128. Cybernetics

DEFINITION

Cybernetics is the study of control systems in humans and machines and the relations between them. In the words of Stafford Beer:[1] 'Cybernetic systems are complex, interacting, probabilistic networks...How are such systems organized? They seem to be cohesive, self-regulating, and stable, yet adaptive to change and capable of learning from experience.'

BASIC PRINCIPLES

Cybernetics involves three control principles: the most basic are error-actuated feedback and homoeostasis; the third is that of the Black Box.

Error-actuated feedback

In error-actuated feedback the difference or error between what is required and what actually happens is transmitted (fed back) to whoever is involved so that a correction can be made. Feedback systems may only operate effectively if overcorrection is avoided by making the correction somewhat less than the error.

Homoeostasis

Homoeostasis is the property that all living organisms have of making use of error-actuated feedback to adjust their metabolism to changing environmental conditions so that certain essential parameters remain constant. The homoeostatic mechanism is one that itself responds to the error-actuated feedback instead of relying on an outside agent.

The Black Box

In cybernetics, a Black Box is a system too complex to understand fully in the existing state of knowledge. In macro terms, the economic system of a country is a Black Box. In micro terms, in a complex department run by a number of interacting human beings, it may never be possible to find out exactly how inputs to the department are transformed into outputs. But it may not matter too much. The most important task in any manufacturing or processing system is to transform inputs into outputs as economically as possible. If this is achieved satisfactorily, it may be a futile exercise to try to find out precisely what is going on.

The Black Box principle states that the behaviour of a complex system is discovered merely by studying the relationship between the input and output, and not by considering what happens inside the box.

APPLICATIONS

Cybernetics can be applied to the design of manufacturing processes. Comprehensive feedback mechanisms can be built into the system. Some of these can automatically initiate corrections on the principle of homeostasis. Others use a systematic procedure for producing control information for process operators who have clearly defined rules on what action they take in response either to the information or to their observations in order to restore the system to normal.

Cybernetics applied to management ensures that feedback on performance is available so that corrections can be made. It is the basic principle behind budgetary control and management by objectives, but cybernetics aims to introduce much more comprehensive information systems which will enable corrections to be made more swiftly and without having any drastic effect.

The Black Box principle can be used to control systems that are highly complex. An example given by Duckworth, Gear and Lockett[2] is of a production controller with the problem of scheduling a tool room. The operations in the tool room were so complex that three or four clerks would be required to record all the necessary information. But on the basis of an analysis of inputs and outputs it was established that an input of 40 jobs per week would keep the tool room fully occupied and ensure an output of 40 jobs per week. Without worrying too much about what precisely was happening inside the tool room, it was possible to schedule work to it on the basis of an output of 40 jobs and keep production flowing smoothly and economically.

REFERENCES

1. Beer, S, *Cybernetics and Management*, EUP, London 1959.
2. Duckworth, W E, Gear, A E, and Lockett, A G, *A Guide to Operational Research*, Chapman & Hall, London 1977.

PART 9

Planning and Resource Allocation

129. Network Analysis

DEFINITION

Network analysis is a technique for planning and controlling complex projects and for scheduling the resources required on such products. It achieves this aim by analysing the component parts of a project and assessing the sequential relationships between each event. The results of this analysis are represented diagrammatically as a network of interrelated activities.

BASIC TECHNIQUE

Networks are built up from the following basic elements:

1. *Events*. These are stages reached in a project at which all preceding activities have been completed and from which succeeding activities start.
2. *Nodes*. These are circles used to represent an event, ie, the start or completion of a task, at a point in time.
3. *Activities*. These are arrows which link up events and indicate the time or resources which will be used in completing the task.

The basic sequence shown in a network is illustrated in Figure 129.1, where the two circles represent project events and the arrow joining them denotes the activity which must take place in order to progress from the first event to the second.

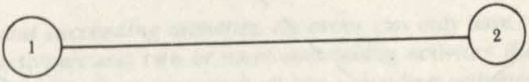


Figure 129.1. *Basic network sequence*

Rules for constructing networks

The rules for constructing networks are as follows:

1. *No dangling activities*. All activities must be connected to the end event. They must not be allowed to appear in isolation as in Figure 129.2.

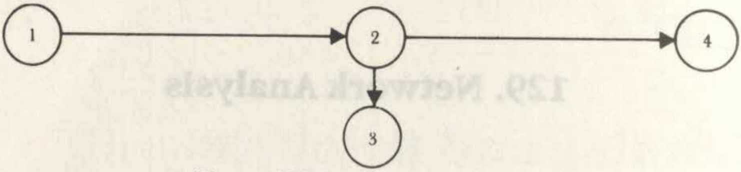


Figure 129.2. *A dangling activity*

Activity 3 is 'dangling'. Either it is not a real part of the project or it must be linked directly to 4 with an activity which does not consume time or resources. This type of activity is known as a 'dummy' and is represented by a broken line, as shown in Figure 129.3.

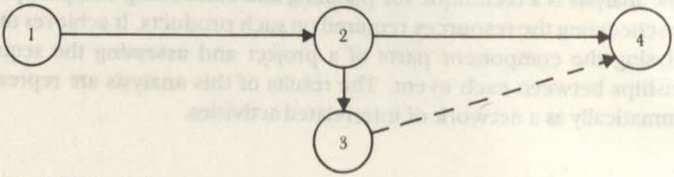


Figure 129.3. *A dummy activity introduced to avoid a dangling activity*

2. *Dummy activities* are constructed not only to prevent dangling but also to link events which are interdependent, even though no time or resources are consumed because of this link. This is illustrated in Figure 129.4, which is a miniature network. There are three routes from 1 to 6. One of these lies directly from event 1 through events 2 and 3. The second also lies directly

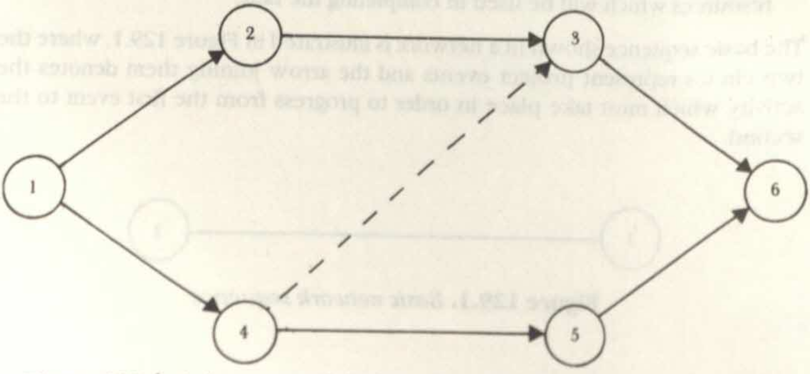


Figure 129.4. *A dummy activity introduced to show the dependence of activity 3 to 6 on the completion of activity 1 to 4*

from 1 through events 4 and 5. But activity 3 to 6 cannot start until activity 1 to 4 is completed. The broken line from 4 to 3 is the third route, a dummy activity for which no time or resources are consumed but which indicates that activity 3 to 6 is dependent on the completion of 1 to 4.

3. *Parallel activities* cannot have the same start and end events, as shown in Figure 129.5, because this leads to confusion. To avoid this happening a dummy activity is inserted as shown in Figure 129.6.

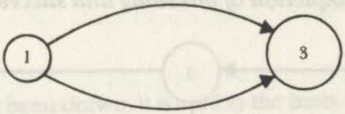


Figure 129.5. *Incorrectly drawn parallel activities*

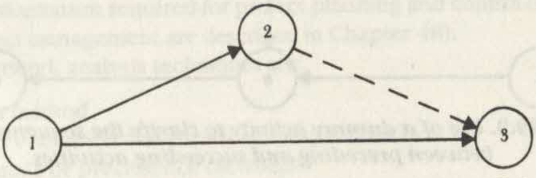


Figure 129.6. *A dummy activity introduced to avoid parallel activities having the same start and end events*

4. *Closed loops* are not allowed. The activities must take the project forwards. A situation like the one shown in Figure 129.7 is a cyclical activity between events 1 and 2 and is fully described by the arrow drawn between those two events.

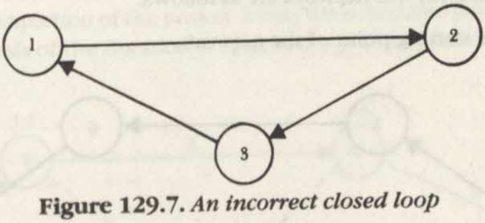


Figure 129.7. *An incorrect closed loop*

5. *Preceding and succeeding activities.* An event can only have two or more preceding activities and two or more succeeding activities if *none* of the succeeding activities can start until all the preceding activities have been completed. This is illustrated in Figure 129.8 where neither activities 3 to 4 nor 3 to 5 can begin until both activities 1 to 3 and 2 to 3 have finished. If the start of 3 to 5 depends on the completion of 2 to 3 and not 1 to 3 as well, then an additional event (6) and a dummy activity (3 to 6) are needed as shown in Figure 129.9.

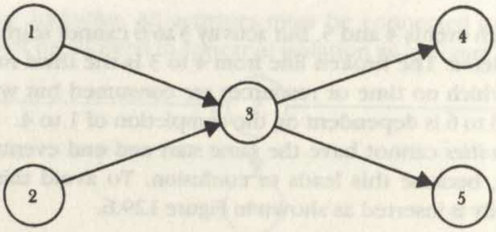


Figure 129.8. *Completion of preceding and succeeding activities*

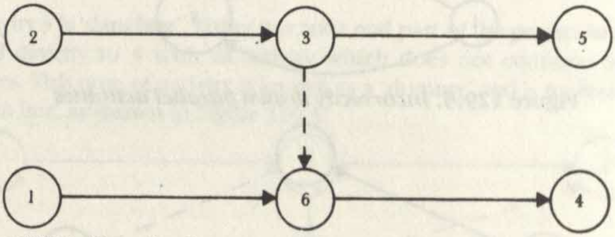


Figure 129.9. *Use of a dummy activity to clarify the sequence of events between preceding and succeeding activities*

THE COMPLETE NETWORK

An example of a complete network is shown in Figure 129.10. This network follows the convention of treating time as increasing from left to right. Events or nodes are numbered and activities are shown by arrows and defined by the events at each end.

The relationships in this network are as follows:

- Event 1 is the starting point of the network.

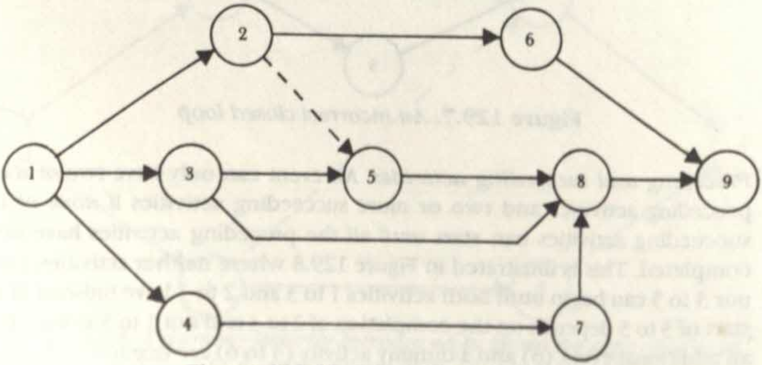


Figure 129.10. *A complete network*

- Activities 2 to 6, 3 to 5, 4 to 7 cannot start until, respectively, activities 1 to 2, 1 to 3 and 1 to 4 have been completed.
- Activity 2 to 5 is a dummy activity and activity 5 to 8 therefore cannot start until both activities 3 to 5 and 1 to 2 have been completed.
- Activities 6 to 9 and 7 to 8 cannot start until, respectively, activities 2 to 6 and 4 to 7 have been completed.
- Activity 8 to 9 cannot start until activities 3 to 8, 5 to 8 and 7 to 8 have been completed.

TECHNIQUES

When the network has been drawn, it is used as the basis for timing the duration of each activity in order to determine the duration of the whole project. It then provides the information required for project planning and control (these techniques of project management are described in Chapter 48).

The main network analysis techniques are:

1. critical path method
2. programme, evaluation and review technique (PERT)
3. activity-on-node or precedence networks
4. resource allocation.

CRITICAL PATH METHOD

Basic construction

The critical path method aims to determine those activities which are critical for the successful completion of the project within the scheduled timescale. It starts with a time analysis of the duration of each activity. The start time of event 1 is

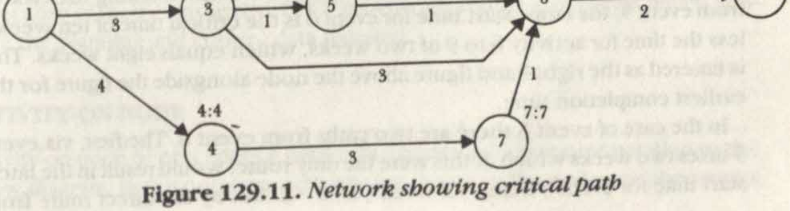


Figure 129.11. *Network showing critical path*

set at zero, and the start times of subsequent events are determined by adding the activity times, working through the network until the end event is reached. This process is illustrated in Figure 129.11.

Working out the critical path

The timings on the network are determined by taking the following steps:

1. The estimated time for each activity is entered against the activity arrow. For example, in Figure 129.11 activity 1 to 2 takes one week and activity 3 to 8 takes three weeks.
2. The earliest completion times for each activity are obtained by taking each path and adding the times of all the activities that form that path from left to right along the network. This figure is the first one entered above the event circle or node. For example, the earliest time to reach event 6 is the time for activity 1 to 2 (one week) plus the time for activity 2 to 6 (three weeks), making four weeks in all.

   When there is a choice of paths the longest route is taken to work out the earliest completion time. For example, event 8 can be reached via activities 1 to 3, 3 to 5 and 5 to 8 making a total of five weeks. It can also be reached via activities 1 to 3 and 1 to 8 with a combined time of six weeks. But the longest path is formed by activities 1 to 4, 4 to 7 and 7 to 8, and following this route will delay the earliest possible completion time to eight weeks, which is the figure entered above the node for event 8.
3. The shortest or critical time to complete the project as planned, which is the earliest completion time of the end event, is established by working sequentially through the network, as described in step 2, to find the longest path. In the example, this is ten weeks, which is the sum of the times for activities 1 to 4, 4 to 7, 7 to 8 and 8 to 9, ie, 4 + 3 + 1 + 2 = 10.
4. The critical path is determined by following the route formed by the activities leading to the shortest or critical time. In the example, the activities listed in step 3 (1 to 4, 4 to 7, 7 to 8 and 8 to 9) are the critical activities and the critical path they form is denoted by a double bar on the network.
5. The latest start times of each event in the network, if the critical time is not to be exceeded, are determined by starting at the end event and working backwards to the start event. The latest time of the end event is equal to the critical time for the project, in this example ten weeks. Working backwards from event 9, the latest start time for event 6 is the critical time of ten weeks, less the time for activity 6 to 9 of two weeks, which equals eight weeks. This is entered as the right-hand figure above the node alongside the figure for the earliest completion time.

   In the case of event 3 there are two paths from event 8. The first, via event 5 takes two weeks which, if this were the only route, would result in the latest start time for event 3 being six weeks, ie, 8 – 2. But by the direct route from

8 to 3, the latest start time for event 3 becomes five weeks (ie, 8 – 3) and, clearly, this event must be reached within five weeks, not six if the project is not to be delayed.

6. The 'float' time, which is the extra time that can be taken over an activity without delaying the start of another activity, is calculated by deducting at each event the earliest start time from the latest start time. For example, in Figure 129.11, there is four weeks' float available to complete activity 1 to 2 (5 – 1). By definition, there is no float available for the activities forming the critical path.

Uses

The critical path method is used to determine:

- the latest start times for each activity;
- the amount of float or leeway in completing non-critical activities without delaying the completion of the project on time. The *total float* will be the maximum increase in activity duration which can occur without increasing the project duration. The *free float* will be the maximum increase in activity duration which can occur without altering the floats available to subsequent activities; and
- the critical activities along the critical path where there is no float and where any delay in carrying them out will delay the project. These are the activities to which most attention must be paid, although this should not lead to the neglect of other activities, especially where float is limited.

PERT

The programme evaluation and review technique (PERT) considers activity durations in the network as uncertain. Instead of a single estimate of each activity time, three estimates are used as follows:

m = the most likely duration of the activity
a = the optimistic estimate of the activity duration (the shortest)
b = the pessimistic estimate of the activity duration (the longest).

PERT is frequently used in construction projects where jobs may be delayed by unfavourable weather, etc.

Because of their complexity, PERT systems are run on computers which generate the planning and control data required.

ACTIVITY-ON-NODE

Activity-on-node or precedence networks provide an alternative notation to the arrow diagram. In this notation, activities are shown in the nodes and the arrows

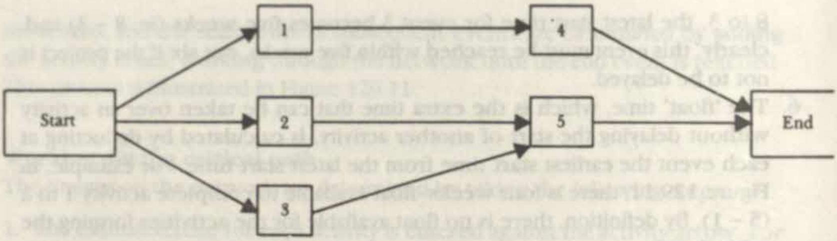


Figure 129.12. *Activity-on-node network*

simply show logical precedence and do not denote activities. Its format is shown in Figure 129.12 where the numbers within the nodes refer to an activity.

When two or more arrows terminate at an activity, all must be followed before the activity can begin. When two or more arrows leave an activity, all may be pursued as soon as the activity is complete.

No dummy activities are required in precedence networks but it is not so easy to draw them against a timescale. They do, however, allow more general dependencies between the activities to be represented.

RESOURCE ALLOCATION

The time analysis provided by the network can be used as the basis for defining resource requirements such as labour. The number of people needed for each activity is sometimes entered on the network alongside the time estimate. This can then be transferred to a Gantt or bar chart showing against each activity the resource requirements for the different types of labour required. This visual picture forms the basis for any rescheduling of the programme which is needed, if possible within the critical time, to maintain a steady level of resource usage and to contain resource requirements within presented limits.

BENEFITS

The main benefit of network analysis is that it takes into account the interrelationship of all the activities comprising a major project. Bar charts can be used successfully to show the starting and finishing times of different activities but they do not reveal dependencies and they cannot highlight the critical activities or the leeways allowed in completing non-critical activities (float) as the critical path or PERT can.

FURTHER READING

Battersby, A, *Network Analysis for Planning and Scheduling Studies in Management*, Macmillan, London 1978.

Lockyer, K G, *Critical Path Analysis*, Pitman, London 1991.

130. Line of Balance

DEFINITION

The line of balance technique is used in production scheduling and control to determine, at a review date, not only how many items should have been completed by that date but also how many items should have passed through the previous operations by this time so as to ensure completion of the required quantity of items in later weeks.

METHOD

The five stages required in the line of balance technique are:

1. prepare operation programme;
2. prepare completion schedule;
3. construct line of balance;
4. prepare programme progress chart; and
5. analyse progress.

These stages are illustrated in the simplified example that follows.

STAGE 1. OPERATION PROGRAMME

The operation programme shows the 'lead time' of each operation, ie, the length of time prior to the completion of the final operation by which intermediate operations must be completed. Figure 130.1 illustrates an operation programme chart. The final delivery date is zero and the timescale runs from right to left. The programme shows that purchased part A must be combined with item B in operation 4 three days before completion. Item B, prior to this combination, has undergone a conversion operation which has to be finished five days before completion. The longest lead time is ten days which is when the purchased part for item B must be available.

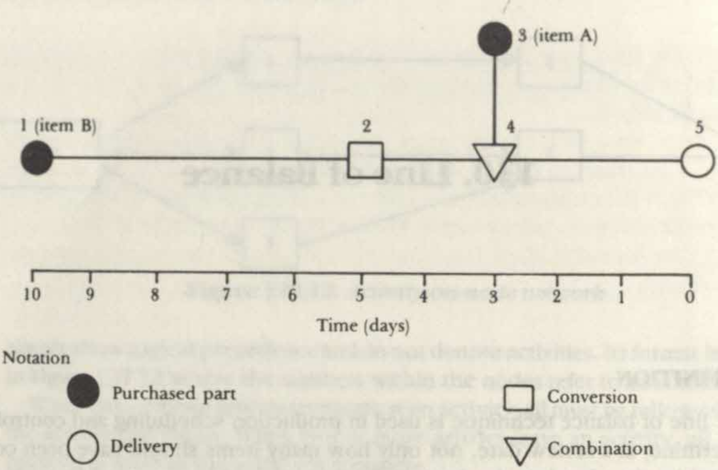


Figure 130.1. *Operation programme*

STAGE 2. COMPLETION SCHEDULE

The completion schedule simply lists how many items have to be completed week by week and cumulatively, as shown in Table 130.1.

Table 130.1. *Completion schedule*

Week No	*Completed items*	*Cumulative items*
0	0	0
1	5	5
2	10	15
3	10	25
4	10	35
5	15	50

The completion schedule can be shown graphically, as in Figure 130.2, where the scheduled, cumulative completions week by week can be compared with actual completion.

STAGE 3. CONSTRUCT LINE OF BALANCE

The line of balance shows the numbers of items of each operation that should have been finished in a particular week to meet the completion schedule. It can be prepared analytically or graphically, as illustrated in Figure 130.3.

The steps required to construct the line of balance graphically are as follows:

1. Graph the completion schedule as the cumulative number of units to be completed each week (A on Figure 130.3).

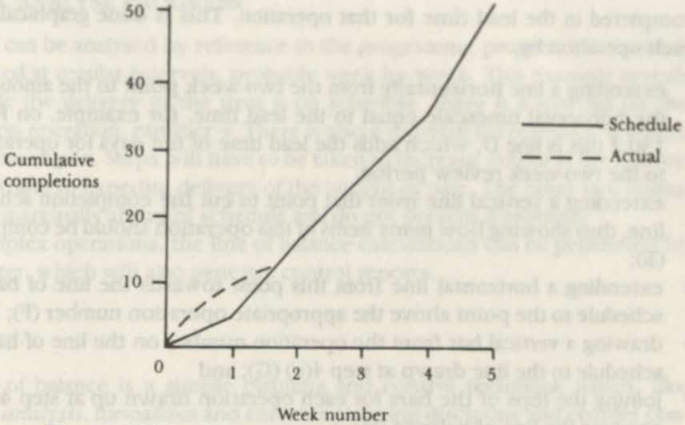
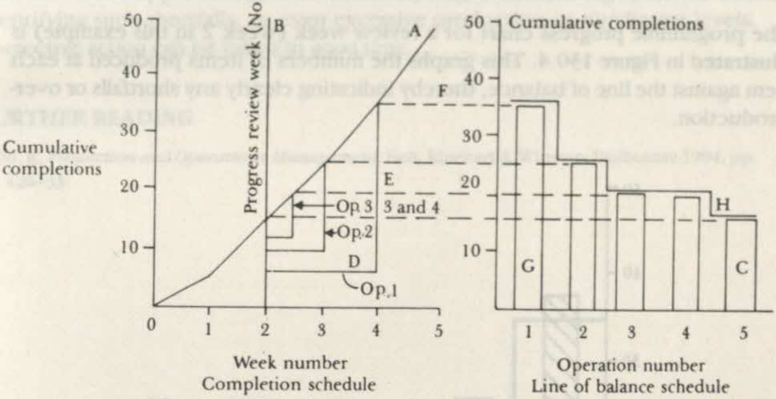


Figure 130.2. *Completion schedule (graphical version)*



Completion schedule

Line of balance schedule

Figure 130.3. *Construction of a line of balance*

2. Draw a vertical line on the completion schedule at the week in which the review is to take place (B).
3. Show by means of a vertical bar on the line of balance schedule (the right-hand graph) how many items have been completed for delivery (operation 5) by the review week (week 2). In this example, production is on schedule at 15 items (C).
4. For each of the other operations find out how many should have been completed by week 2. This will be the total of not only the requirements for the completed item by the two-week review date but also the number to be

completed in the lead time for that operation. This is done graphically for each operation by:

- extending a line horizontally from the two-week point to the amount on the horizontal timescale equal to the lead time, for example, on Figure 130.2 this is line D, which adds the lead time of ten days for operation 1 to the two-week review period;
- extending a vertical line from that point to cut the completion schedule line, thus showing how many items of this operation should be completed (E);
- extending a horizontal line from this point towards the line of balance schedule to the point above the appropriate operation number (F);
- drawing a vertical bar from the operation number on the line of balance schedule to the line drawn at step 4(c) (G); and
- joining the tops of the bars for each operation drawn up at step 4(d) to produce the line of balance (H).

STAGE 4. PROGRAMME PROGRESS CHART

The programme progress chart for a review week (week 2 in this example) is illustrated in Figure 130.4. This graphs the numbers of items produced at each item against the line of balance, thereby indicating clearly any shortfalls or overproduction.

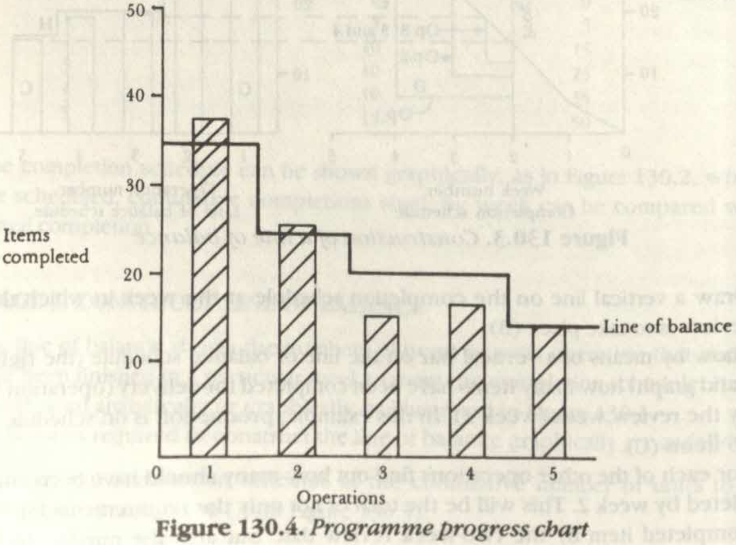


Figure 130.4. *Programme progress chart*

STAGE 5. ANALYSE PROGRESS

Progress can be analysed by reference to the programme progress chart which is prepared at regular intervals, probably week by week. This example reveals that while the delivery of the item is on schedule, there is a shortfall on the conversion operation, number 4. There is also a shortfall for operation 3 which is a purchased part. Steps will have to be taken to increase output at the conversion stage and to expedite delivery of the bought-in part. The other two operations are marginally ahead of schedule and do not present a problem.

In complex operations, the line of balance calculations can be performed by a computer, which will also generate control reports.

BENEFITS

The line of balance is a simple planning and control technique which, like *network analysis*, formalizes and enforces planning discipline and enables control to be exercised at each stage of the production line. It prevents any feeling of false security which might be engendered if the delivery of an item is on schedule but unappreciated shortfalls at early stages are building up trouble. By identifying such shortfalls, or even excessive production or purchasing levels, corrective action can be taken in good time.

FURTHER READING

Wild, R, *Production and Operations Management*, Holt, Rinehart & Winston, Eastbourne 1984, pp. 426–33.

completed in the lead time for that operation. This is done graphically for [illegible]

[illegible]

- extending a horizontal line from this point towards the line of balance schedule to the point above the appropriate operation number (ii);
- drawing a vertical line from the operation number on the line of balance schedule to the line drawn at step (ii); and

[illegible]

The programme progress chart [illegible] is illustrated in Figure 130.4. This graphs the numbers of items produced at each item against the line of balance, thereby indicating clearly any shortfalls or over-production.

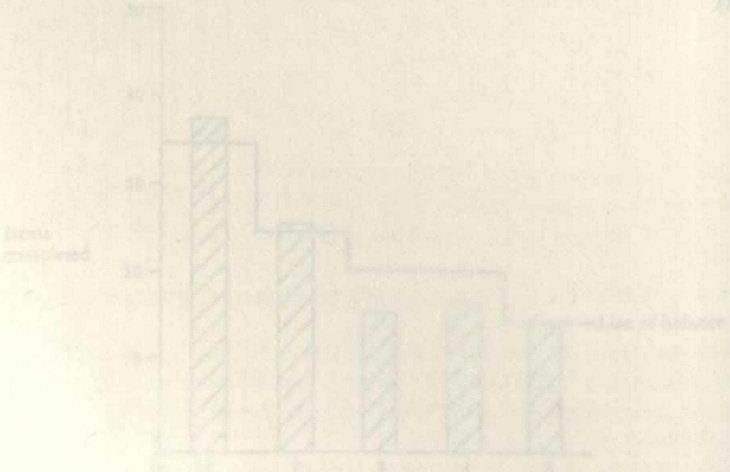


Figure 130.4. *Programme progress chart*

PART 10

Efficiency and Effectiveness

131. Business Process Re-engineering

DEFINITION

Business process re-engineering (BPR), also known as process innovation and core process re-design, is the search for, and implementation of, radical changes in business processes to achieve breakthrough results in terms of major gains in levels of performance and reductions in unnecessary costs.

BACKGROUND

The concept of business process re-engineering was originally formulated in 1990 by Michael Hammer[1] in a seminal *Harvard Business Review* article. He contended that:

> In a time of rapidly changing technologies and ever-shorter product life cycles, product development often proceeds at a glacial pace. In an age of the customer, order fulfillment has high error rates and customer enquiries go unanswered for weeks. In a period when asset utilization is critical, inventory levels exceed many months of demand. The usual methods of boosting performance - process rationalization and automation - haven't yielded the dramatic improvements companies need. In particular, heavy investments in information technology have delivered disappointing results - largely because companies tend to use technology to mechanize old ways of doing business. They leave the existing processes intact and use computers simply to speed them up.

The advocates of business process re-engineering claim that in the past, consultancy studies and O&M reviews tended to take place within the confines of functional boundaries. The emphasis has been on streamlining the way things are done now rather than re-evaluating from scratch what is being done and why.

THE ESSENCE OF BUSINESS PROCESS RE-ENGINEERING

The chief tool of business process re-engineering is a clean sheet of paper. Re-engineers start from the future and work backwards. They are unconstrained by existing methods, people or departments. In effect, they ask 'If we were a new company, how would we run the place?' Then they take what are usually drastic steps to make the company conform to the vision.

As Michael Hammer points out: 'At the heart of re-engineering is the notion of discontinuous thinking – of recognizing and breaking away from the outdated rules and fundamental assumptions that underlie operations.'

Re-engineering looks at the fundamental processes of a business from a cross-functional perspective. Its aim is to achieve integration. It breaks away from conventional wisdom and the constraints of organizational boundaries. It uses information technology not to automate an existing process but to facilitate a new one. Expert systems, for example, are employed to enable people to use accumulated and systematized knowledge to make decisions on the spot without having to refer to higher authority or bring in specialists.

Re-engineers ask two fundamental questions: 'Why?' and 'What if?' and only when they receive a satisfactory answer do they explore better (ie, quicker, less costly, more efficient) ways of doing it. The critical examination questions they ask are:

- What is done? Why do it?
- How is it done? Why do it that way?
- Where is it done? Why do it there?
- When is it done? Why do it then?
- Who does it? Why that person?

The difference between a traditional and often very effective approach and BPR is that the latter carries out an even more fundamental look at business processes across the organization. This examination is driven by top management as a means of achieving radical change affecting the whole business or a major part of it. Method study tended to be more piecemeal and not integrated with a business strategy for comprehensive change and improvement. Another significant difference is that BPR is much more concerned with exploiting the power of information technology. Again, however, systems design in BPR cuts across functional boundaries and, in contrast to the traditional approach to systems analysis, is focused on producing new and fully integrated solutions.

APPROACHES TO BUSINESS PROCESS RE-ENGINEERING

The basic approaches to business process re-engineering as suggested by Michael Hammer, Thomas Stewart[2] and others are described below.

- Get the strategy straight first.

- Lead from the top.
- Create a sense of urgency.
- Design from the outside in.

Methodology

Business process re-engineering cannot be planned meticulously and accomplished in small and cautious steps. It tends to be an all-or-nothing proposition, often with an uncertain result. It is therefore a high-risk undertaking and not worth attempting unless these is a pressing need to rethink what the organization is doing overall or in a major area.

Process re-engineering should not spend too much time studying existing work flows but should aim to identify points of leverage where new thinking will provide the greatest benefit. BPR can be combined with activity-based costing (see Chapter 63), the philosophy of which is that costs can be controlled more effectively by focusing directly on managing the forces that cause the activities - the 'cost drivers' - rather than the costs themselves.

- Organize around outcomes, not tasks.
- Get those who use the output of the process to perform the process.
- Get operating departments to process as well as produce information.
- Treat geographically dispersed resources as if they were centralized.
- Link parallel activities instead of integrating their results.
- Put the decision point where the work is performed and build control into the process.
- Capture information once and at the source.

APPLICATIONS

Business process re-engineering can be used to carry out a complete and fundamental review of the organization's strategy, structure and business processes as in the case of Barr and Stroud, a Glasgow engineering firm that had to introduce radical changes in response to new business conditions and demands. The changes included focusing on core competences, reducing management layers from nine to four and the establishment of multi-disciplinary teams with the remit to strip time and waste out of the system.

BPR is not a relevant approach in discrete functions. In the United States, for example, Ford established that there was no point in re-engineering only one function such as accounts payable. It was only a viable proposition if fundamental processes of the business were looked at from a cross-functional perspective. Ford therefore re-engineered the whole accounts payable process, covering the separate functions of purchasing, material control and accounts, with the result that they introduced a system of invoiceless processing which achieved a 75 per cent reduction in headcount.

BENEFITS

If re-engineering is done well it can deliver impressive gains in speed, productivity and profitability. For example, in the United States, Union Carbide eliminated $400 million of fixed costs in just three years, GTE expects to double revenues and halve costs in its telephone operations, Mutual Benefit Life reduced its turnaround of customer applications from 5 to 25 days to an average of 2 to 5 days and eliminated 100 field office positions, IBM Credit cut their time for preparing quotes from 7 days to 1 and Bell Atlantic cut its delivery times from 15 days to just 1.

It is claimed that BPR can deliver tenfold improvements in performance but only when it works well, and that is not easy. A large proportion of companies do not achieve good results because they fail to think the process through first (functions must be simplified before IT is brought in), do not engage hearts and minds sufficiently, or simply act on bad advice.

REFERENCES

1. Hammer, M, 'Re-engineering work: don't automate, obliterate', *Harvard Business Review*, July-August 1990.
2. Stewart, T, 'Business process re-engineering: the hot new managing tool', *Fortune*, 23 August 1993.

FURTHER READING

Hammer, M, and Champy, J, *Re-engineering the Corporation*. Nicholas Brearley, London 1993.

132. Ratio Analysis

DEFINITION

Ratio analysis studies and compares financial ratios which identify relationships between quantifiable aspects of a company's activities. The object is to reveal factors and trends affecting performance so that action can be taken.

TYPES OF RATIOS

Ratios cover the following areas:

1. profitability
2. performance
3. cost
4. liquidity
5. capital structure
6. financial risk
7. efficiency – debtors, creditors, inventory
8. productivity.

PROFITABILITY

The profitability ratios are as follows:

1. *Return on equity*

$$\frac{\text{Profit after interest and dividends but before tax and extraordinary items}}{\text{Average ordinary share capital, reserves and retained profit for the period}}$$

2. *Return on capital employed*

$$\frac{\text{Trading or operating profit}}{\text{Total assets (fixed assets and current assets)}}$$

or

$$\frac{\text{Trading or operating profit}}{\text{Net total assets (fixed and current assets − current liabilities)}}$$

3. *Earnings per share*

$$\frac{\text{Profit after interest, taxation and ordinary dividends but before extraordinary items}}{\text{The number of ordinary shares issued by the company}}$$

4. *Price/earnings (P/E) ratio*

$$\frac{\text{Market price of ordinary shares}}{\text{Earnings per share}}$$

These profitability ratios are discussed in more detail in Chapter 53.

PERFORMANCE

The main performance ratios are as follows:

1. *Return on sales or profit margin ratio*

$$\frac{\text{Trading or operating profit}}{\text{Total sales}} \times 100$$

2. *Asset turnover ratio*

$$\frac{\text{Total sales}}{\text{Assets}}$$

These two ratios are discussed in Chapter 53.

The asset turnover ratio can be divided into:

1. $\frac{\text{Sales}}{\text{Fixed assets}}$ which is subdivided into:
   (a) $\frac{\text{Sales}}{\text{Land and buildings}}$
   (b) $\frac{\text{Sales}}{\text{Plant and machinery}}$
   (c) $\frac{\text{Sales}}{\text{Vehicles}}$
2. $\frac{\text{Sales}}{\text{Current assets}}$ which is subdivided into:
   (a) $\frac{\text{Sales}}{\text{Material stocks}}$
   (b) $\frac{\text{Sales}}{\text{Work-in-progress}}$
   (c) $\frac{\text{Sales}}{\text{Finished stocks}}$

(d) $\frac{\text{Sales}}{\text{Debtors}}$

COST

Overheads

The key overall cost ratio is:

$$\frac{\text{Overheads}}{\text{Sales}} \times 100$$

Functional or departmental cost ratios

The main functional or departmental cost ratios are:

1. $\frac{\text{Production cost of sales}}{\text{Sales}} \times 100$, which is subdivided into:
   (a) $\frac{\text{Cost of materials}}{\text{Sales value of production}} \times 100$
   (b) $\frac{\text{Works labour cost}}{\text{Sales value of production}} \times 100$
   (c) $\frac{\text{Other production costs}}{\text{Sales value of production}} \times 100$
2. $\frac{\text{Distribution and marketing costs}}{\text{Sales}} \times 100$
3. $\frac{\text{Administration costs}}{\text{Sales}} \times 100$
4. $\frac{\text{Payroll costs}}{\text{Sales}} \times 100$

Cost per unit of output

Where it is possible to measure outputs in units, the cost per unit of output provides a long measure of productivity as well as cost control.

The formula is:

$$\frac{\text{Production costs}}{\text{Output in units}}$$

The relationships between the profitability, performance and cost ratios referred to above are shown in Figure 132.1.

LIQUIDITY

The two main liquidity ratios, which establish that the company has sufficient cash resources to meet its obligations, are as follows:

1. *The working capital ratio (current ratio)*

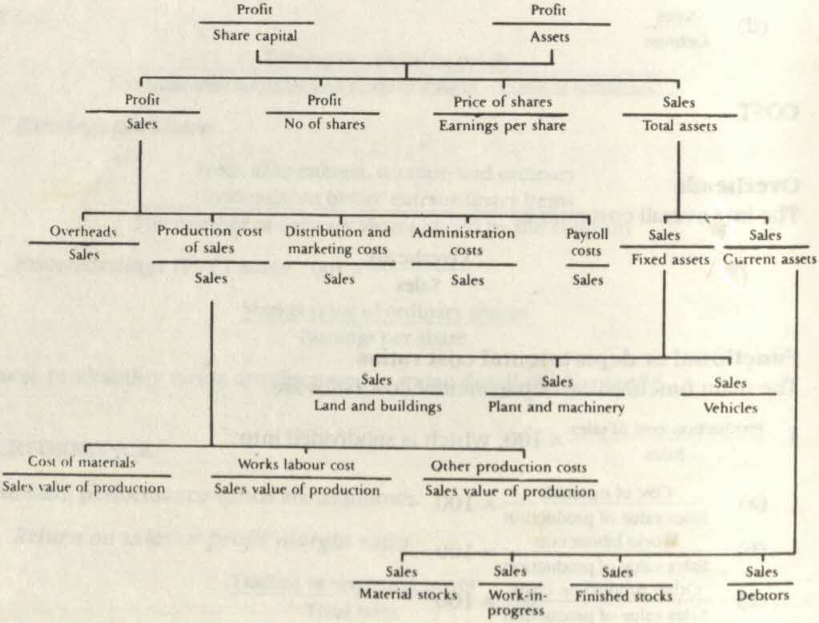

Profit / Share capital
Profit / Assets
Profit / Sales
Profit / No of shares
Price of shares / Earnings per share
Sales / Total assets
Overheads / Sales
Production cost of sales / Sales
Distribution and marketing costs / Sales
Administration costs / Sales
Payroll costs / Sales
Sales / Fixed assets
Sales / Current assets
Sales / Land and buildings
Sales / Plant and machinery
Sales / Vehicles
Cost of materials / Sales value of production
Works labour cost / Sales value of production
Other production costs / Sales value of production
Sales / Material stocks
Sales / Work-in-progress
Sales / Finished stocks
Sales / Debtors

Figure 132.1. *Relationship between ratios*

$$\frac{\text{Current assets}}{\text{Current liabilities}}$$

2. *The quick ratio (acid-test ratio)*

$$\frac{\text{Current assets minus stocks}}{\text{Current liabilities}}$$

CAPITAL STRUCTURE

The key capital structure ratios are as follows:

1. *The long-term debt to equity ratio (the gearing ratio)*

$$\frac{\text{Long-term loans plus preference shares}}{\text{Ordinary shareholders' funds}} \times 100$$

2. *Long-term debt to long-term finance ratio*

$$\frac{\text{Long-term loans plus preference shares}}{\text{long-term loans plus preference shares plus ordinary shareholders' funds}} \times 100$$

3. *Total debt to total assets ratio*

$$\frac{\text{Long-term loans plus short-term loans}}{\text{Total assets}}$$

The liquidity and capital structure ratios referred to above are examined in more detail in Chapter 52.

FINANCIAL RISK

Financial risk ratios measure, primarily for the benefit of shareholders and investors, the risk of dividends or interest payments not being adequately covered by the earnings of the company.

The main risk ratios are as follows:

1. *Interest cover*. Interest cover ratios focus attention on the relationship between interest payment liabilities and the profits or cash flow available for making these payments, thus providing an alternative way of analysing gearing. They show the number of times interest is 'covered' by profits or cash flow and therefore indicate the risk of non-payment of interest.

   Interest cover ratios exist in two forms:

   (a) $\dfrac{\text{Profit before interest and tax}}{\text{Gross interest payable}}$

   (b) $\dfrac{\text{Cash flow operations before interest and tax}}{\text{Gross interest payable}}$

   Profit provides the overall measure of ability to pay, but as interest has to be paid out of cash, the cash flow ratio is perhaps more significant.

   There are no optimum ratios which are generally applicable. It depends on the circumstances of the company although any company would be in a really bad way if it could not cover interest by profits or even cash. The more profits or cash flows fluctuate, the higher the ratio should be. For profits, a two times cover is fairly satisfactory in stable conditions. For cash flows, a four times cover is quite healthy.

2. *Dividend cover*. The dividend cover ratio examines the amount by which profits could fall before leading to a reduction in the current level of dividends. The dividends ratio is calculated as:

$$\frac{\text{Profits available for paying ordinary dividends}}{\text{Ordinary dividends}}$$

If ordinary dividends are covered, say, three times (a reasonably safe position), this means that profits could be three times less than they were before there would be insufficient current profits to pay the dividend.

EFFICIENCY

Debtors

The three main debtor ratios are as follows:

1. *Debtor turnover*, which measures whether the amount of resources tied up in debtors is reasonable and whether the company has been efficient in converting debtors into cash. The formula is:

   $$\frac{\text{Sales}}{\text{Debtors}}$$

   The higher the ratio the better.
2. *Average collection period*, which measures how long it takes to collect amounts from debtors. The formula is:

   $$\text{Average collection period in days} = \frac{\text{Debtors}}{\text{Sales}} \times 365$$

   The actual collection period can be compared with the stated credit terms of the company. If it is longer than those terms, then this indicates some inefficiency in the procedures for collecting debts.
3. *Bad debt*, which measures the proportion of bad debts to sales:

   $$\frac{\text{Bad debts}}{\text{Sales}}$$

   This ratio indicates the efficiency of the credit control procedures of the company. Its level will depend on the type of business. Mail-order companies have to accept a fairly high level of bad debts, while retailing organizations should maintain very low levels or, if they do not allow credit accounts, none at all. The actual ratio is compared with the target or norm to decide whether or not it is acceptable.

Creditors

The measurement of the creditor turnover period shows the average time taken to pay for goods and services purchased by the company. The formula is:

$$\text{Creditor turnover period in days} = \frac{\text{Creditors}}{\text{Purchases}} \times 365$$

In general the longer the credit period achieved the better, because delays in payment mean that the operations of the company are being financed interest free by suppliers' funds. But there will be a point beyond which delays in payment will damage relationships with suppliers which, if they are operating in a seller's market, may harm the company. If too long a period is taken to pay creditors, the credit rating of the company may suffer, thereby making it more difficult to obtain suppliers in the future.

Inventory

A considerable amount of a company's capital may be tied up in the financing of raw materials, work-in-progress and finished goods. It is important to ensure that the level of stocks is kept as low as possible, consistent with the need to fulfil customers' orders in time.

The two stock turnover ratios are:

1. *Stock turnover rate*

$$\frac{\text{Cost of sales}}{\text{Stock}}$$

2. *Stock turnover period*

$$\frac{\text{Sales}}{\text{Cost of sales}} \times 365$$

The higher the stock turnover rate or the lower the stock turnover period the better, although the ratios will vary between companies. For example, the stock turnover rate in a food retailing company must be higher than the rate in a manufacturing concern.

The level of inventory in a company may be assessed by the use of the *inventory ratio*, which measures how much has been tied up in inventory. The formula is:

$$\frac{\text{Inventory}}{\text{Current assets}}$$

PRODUCTIVITY

Productivity ratios measure how efficiently the company is using its workforce. The main ratios are as follows:

1. *Profits per employee*

$$\frac{\text{Trading profit}}{\text{Number of employees}}$$

2. *Sales per employee*

$$\frac{\text{Sales}}{\text{Number of employees}}$$

3. *Output per employee*

$$\frac{\text{Units produced or processed}}{\text{Number of employees}}$$

4. *Added value per employee*

$$\frac{\text{Added value (sales revenue minus cost of sales)}}{\text{Number of employees}}$$

USE OF RATIOS

Ratios by themselves mean nothing. They must always be compared with:

- a norm or a target;
- previous ratios in order to assess trends; and
- the ratios achieved in other comparable companies (intercompany comparisons).

Caution has to be exercised in using ratios. The following limitations must be taken into account:

1. Ratios are calculated from financial statements which are affected by the financial bases and policies adopted on such matters as depreciation and the valuation of stocks.
2. Financial statements do not represent a complete picture of the business, but merely a collection of facts which can be expressed in monetary terms. These may not refer to other factors which affect performance.
3. Overuse of ratios as controls on managers could be dangerous in that management might concentrate more on simply improving the ratio than on dealing with the significant issues. For example, the return on capital employed can be improved by reducing assets rather than increasing profits.
4. A ratio is a comparison of two figures, a numerator and a denominator. In comparing ratios it may be difficult to determine whether differences are due to changes in the numerator, or in the denominator or in both.
5. Ratios, as the chart shown in Figure 132.1 demonstrates, are interconnected. They should not be treated in isolation. The effective use of ratios therefore depends on being aware of all these limitations and ensuring that, following comparative analysis, they are used as a trigger point for investigation and corrective action rather than being treated as meaningful in themselves.

BENEFITS

The analysis of management ratios clarifies trends and weaknesses in performance as a guide to action as long as proper comparisons are made and the reasons for adverse trends or deviations from the norm are investigated thoroughly.

FURTHER READING

Pendlebury, M, and Groves, R, *Company Accounts*, (2nd edition), Unwin Hyman, London 1990.

133. Profit Improvement

DEFINITION

A profit improvement programme uses a range of management techniques in various disciplines to analyse the existing profitability of the company and to develop ways of improving it.

BACKGROUND

Robert Heller[1] wrote that 'businesses and managers don't earn profits, they earn money. Profit is an abstraction from the true, underlying movement of cash in and cash out.' It can be argued that profit is the result, not the objective, of efficient management.

On its own, profit, as shown on the balance sheet, is not necessarily an accurate measure of success in business. Profit figures can be 'influenced' by factors quite distinct from the trading performance of the company. These include how research and development is treated in the accounts, how stocks and work-in-progress are valued and how the flow of funds resulting from investments and realization of investments is dealt with.

Profit improvement is about increasing the flow of money into the business and reducing the flow of money out. It is not about maximizing an abstraction called 'profit' which is subject to so many extraneous influences.

FACTORS AFFECTING PROFIT MANAGEMENT

The three key factors are sales, costs and effectiveness.

Sales

The maximization of sales revenue depends first on good marketing. There are two approaches to marketing.

One is to assess the market in terms of what existing and potential customers will buy. This means an analysis of existing wants and buying patterns along with possible future needs. The other is to assess the scope for creating wants which do not exist at the moment, by developing and offering new products or services.

A company can maximize its market penetration by moving into market development (new markets for existing products), product development (improved or new products for existing markets), and diversification (new products for new markets).

Good marketing ensures that the company and its products are presented to customers by advertising, merchandising and public relations in a way which will best promote sales.

Finally, good marketing ensures that prices match what customers can be persuaded to pay, with the objective of maximizing contribution to profits and direct overheads. Maximizing profit means getting the right balance between high margins and high sales volume.

Sales depend on good marketing but do not necessarily follow from it. A well-trained, well-motivated and well-controlled sales force is essential.

The final, but often neglected, ingredient is distribution. Effective marketing and selling will be wasted if order processing is inefficient, if the turnround of customer orders takes too long, if the wrong distribution channels are used from the point of view of speed, reliability and cost, or if customer queries and complaints are not dealt with properly.

Costs

One of the many wise things Peter Drucker[2] has said is that: 'Cost, after all, does not exist by itself. It is always incurred - in intent at least - for the sake of a result. What matters therefore is not the absolute cost level but the rates between efforts and their results.' The approach to cost reduction should therefore be to distinguish between those costs which are producing results and those which are not. Indiscriminate attacks on all costs - the 10-per-cent slash approach - are counterproductive. On a selective basis, it may be better to cut something out altogether than to try to make a series of marginal cost reductions. As Drucker says: 'There is little point in trying to do cheaply what should not be done at all.'[3]

Effectiveness

The objective should be effectiveness rather than just efficiency: to do the right things rather than merely to do things right.

Effectiveness should be aimed for in the following areas:

- *Productivity*. Getting more for less, whether it is the workforce (output per head), capital (return on investment) or equipment (output per unit).
- *Finance*. Tightening credit policies, cracking down on bad debts, controlling quantity and settlement discounts, optimizing cash holdings while gaining

maximum interest on surplus cash, and reducing interest payments on bank overdrafts to a minimum.

- *Inventory*. Keeping the amount tied up in working capital to the minimum consistent with the need to satisfy customer demand.
- *Buying*. Using suppliers' warehouse space by 'calling off' at specified intervals, ensuring that competitive bids are obtained for all new or renewed contracts, specifying to buyers how they should use 'clout' to get good terms, resisting the temptation to over-order, having clearly laid-down policies on mark-ups.

METHOD

Profit improvement is a continuous exercise. It is not something that should be forced on a company because of a crisis. The approach to profit improvement should be to:

1. analyse continually the present situations using the *management audit* techniques referred to in Chapter 131;
2. *using product life-cycle analysis* techniques (Chapter 15), look at the whole product range for each market and assess the relative profitability and potential of all products and markets. Identify those which are fading and the up-and-coming ones. For fading products or markets consider whether remedial or surgical treatment is necessary. For the up-and-coming products or markets, work out how their progress can be assured and, possibly, accelerated;
3. use *ABC analysis* (the 80/20 rule of Pareto's Law, Chapter 126) to identify the 20 per cent of products or markets which generate 80 per cent of the profits. Concentrate on maximizing the effectiveness of the 20 per cent of areas where impact will be greatest;
4. identify those factors within the business which are restraining its potential and, in Drucker's words, 'convert into opportunity what everybody else considers dangers'.[3] Build on strengths rather than weaknesses;
5. look ahead. Project trends, anticipate problems and, where appropriate, innovate so that you can challenge the future rather than being overwhelmed by it; and
6. above all, bear in mind the results of the following highly pertinent research carried out by William Hall.[4] Hall looked at 64 companies in depth to determine which had the best hopes of surviving in a hostile environment. Writing in the *Harvard Business Review* he identified two key factors. The best business survivors are, first, those which can deliver their products at the lowest cost and/or second, those which have the 'highest differentiated position'. This means having the product which the customers perceive most clearly as being different and, in important respects, rather better than the competition.

BENEFITS

The benefits of a systematic approach to profit improvement are obvious. But they will only arise if the programme is continuous and driven from the top.

REFERENCES

1. Heller, R, *The Naked Manager*, Barrie & Jenkins, London 1982.
2. Drucker, P, *The Practice of Management*, Heinemann, London 1955.
3. Drucker, P, *The Effective Executive*, Heinemann, London 1962.
4. Hall, W K, 'Survival strategies in a hostile environment', *Harvard Business Review*, September-October 1980.

134. Cost Reduction

DEFINITION

Cost reduction is a planned campaign aimed at cutting costs and overheads by a specified amount.

OVERALL APPROACH

A cost reduction exercise is carried out in three stages:

1. Set targets.
2. Decide how to cut costs.
3. Decide how to improve productivity and efficiency.

SETTING TARGETS

Targets for cost reduction are set after a study of the factors which make a specific exercise necessary. These will be related either to profitability or to cash flow problems. The cause or causes may be one or other of falling sales, fierce price competition, empty order books, worsening bad debt ratios, delays in payments, unduly high inventory levels, or excessive costs, especially labour and material costs. Note that labour costs are often 50 per cent or more of the total costs of the company so that a cost-cutting exercise may well be primarily directed at controlling the costs of the workforce.

Targets can be general, eg, reduce the ratio of overheads to turnover from 26 per cent to 21 per cent or cut labour costs by 10 per cent. But there are dangers in adopting an indiscriminate approach. Within any broad targets that may be set, selective targets need to be determined, concentrating on areas where costs are excessive, and avoiding doing damage to the ability of the company to earn profits in the shorter and longer term.

Targets can be set for reducing the costs of materials, services, consumable items, inventory and paperwork. Or they may refer specifically to the major area of labour costs or, more positively, to the scope for increasing productivity, as described below.

Labour costs

Targets for reducing labour costs can be expressed in various ways, for example:

1. Reduce total number of employees from 2,000 to 1,800 (ie, by 10 per cent). This would be an overall reduction to deal with a general crisis.
2. Reduce number of employees in department A from 100 to 90 (10 per cent), department B from 200 to 170 (15 per cent) and department C from 150 to 138 (8 per cent). This would be a selective reduction related to the forward production programmes of each department.
3. Reduce the number of direct workers by 10 per cent from 1,200 to 1,080, and the number of indirect workers by 15 per cent from 800 to 680. This would be a selective reduction based on the reasonable assumption either that there is more fat to be cut out of indirects than directs, or that it is more important to retain direct workers than indirects.
4. Reduce number of indirect workers by 20 per cent from 800 to 640. This is a limited, selective reduction based on the assumption that saving in indirects can be achieved without undue disruption when the productive labour force must be retained to fulfil orders, current or future.
5. Reduce labour cost ratio from 11 per cent to 10 per cent of turnover.

Productivity targets

Productivity targets expressed in financial terms, such as 'reduce cost per unit of output by 3 per cent', may be less immediate, but they could usefully be incorporated into a set of cost reduction targets to indicate longer-term objectives. Increases in productivity can be achieved by reducing costs in relation to output, or by increasing output in relation to costs or, preferably, by both reducing costs and increasing output.

HOW TO CUT COSTS

The steps required are:

1. allocate responsibility for conducting the cost reduction exercise;
2. prepare the cost reduction programme; and
3. implement the programme by taking appropriate action in each of the main cost reduction areas.

HOW TO IMPROVE

Productivity

The approach to conducting productivity improvement programmes is described in Chapter 135.

Efficiency

The methods used to achieve greater efficiency are:

1. use quick, short doses of method study (see Chapter 136) to identify areas where efficiency can be improved. Basic flow charting of procedures is used to identify bottlenecks, unnecessary activities and poor allocation of workloads;
2. challenge all paperwork routines and eliminate unnecessary forms, pointless duplicates, superfluous checking procedures and unnecessarily wide distribution of copies;
3. review all work flows to see if they can be speeded up, redirected or streamlined;
4. examine any bottlenecks or delays to identify causes and suggest remedies; and
5. systematically review all systems, procedures and operations to identify the scope for cost savings through mechanization or automation. Give priority to labour-intensive areas.

BENEFITS

The benefits of a cost reduction exercise are, as in the case of profit improvement, obvious. But true benefits will only arise if the reduction of costs is carried out selectively, discriminating against any 'slashes' in costs which will damage the ability of the company to generate sales and profits.

135. Productivity Planning

DEFINITION

Productivity planning is the use of the technique of a productivity audit to prepare productivity improvement programmes.

Productivity is the relationship between the input and output of a good or service. The productivity index can be formulated as a series of ratios:

$$\text{Productivity index} = \frac{\text{Output obtained}}{\text{Input expected}} = \frac{\text{Performance achieved}}{\text{Resources consumed}} = \frac{\text{Effectiveness}}{\text{Efficiency}}$$

High productivity reflects the full (ie, effective and efficient) use of resources.

MEASURING PRODUCTIVITY

Productivity is not simply performance and not simply the economic use of resources, but a combination of both. Its measurement is carried out by means of ratios which cover:

1. *input variables* - payroll costs, the associated costs of employment, the number of people employed and the number of hours worked or time taken; and
2. *output variables* - units produced, products sold, tasks completed, revenues obtained, value added, responsibilities met and standards reached (including standard hours produced).

A wide variety of productivity ratios can be derived from these input and output variables and these can be analysed and added to under the following headings:

1. *Output ratios*

   (a) $\frac{\text{Units produced or processed}}{\text{Number of employees}}$

   (b) $\frac{\text{Sales turnover}}{\text{Number of employees}}$

(c) $\dfrac{\text{Added value}}{\text{Number of employees}}$

(d) $\dfrac{\text{Standard hours produced}}{\text{Number of employees}}$

2. *Cost ratios*

(a) $\dfrac{\text{Wages cost}}{\text{Units produced}}$

(b) $\dfrac{\text{Sales turnover}}{\text{Payroll/employment costs}}$

(c) $\dfrac{\text{Added value}}{\text{Payroll/employment costs}}$

(d) $\dfrac{\text{Actual labour cost per standard hour}}{\text{Target cost per standard hour}}$

(e) $\dfrac{\text{Standard hours produced}}{\text{Labour costs}}$

3. *Performance ratios*

(a) $\dfrac{\text{Standard hours produced}}{\text{Actual hours worked}}$

(b) $\dfrac{\text{Actual performance}}{\text{Target performance}}$

The choice is ample and one or more can be selected to suit individual circumstances. There are very few occasions, however, when the basic index of

$$\frac{\text{Results}}{\text{Resources}} \text{ ie } \frac{\text{Sales}}{\text{Employees}}$$

will not prove to be the most useful of all.

THE PRODUCTIVITY AUDIT

The productivity audit examines performance as revealed by the productivity ratios. It considers, first of all, actual performance compared with company standards and trends and what other organizations achieve. It then explores the reasons for unsatisfactory performance with the help of checklists under the following headings:

- Poor planning, budgeting and control procedures.
- Inefficient methods or systems of work.
- Inadequate use of work measurement.
- Insufficient mechanization or inadequate plant and machinery.
- Poor management.
- Poorly motivated employees.

- Badly paid employees.
- Too many restrictive practices.
- Inadequate training.
- Excessive waste.

THE PRODUCTIVITY PLAN

The productivity plan incorporates improvement programmes in one or more of the following areas:

1. *Work simplification*. Eliminating unnecessary operations, movements and paperwork.
2. *Mechanization*. Introducing new tools or equipment to speed up processing.
3. *Automation*. Replacing human labour with machines or electronic equipment.
4. *Facilities improvement*. Providing more efficient services; improving the availability of materials, manufactured parts, small tools; improving the working environment through better layouts and ergonomic studies.
5. *The more effective use of human resources*. Employing fewer but more highly qualified or trained people; improving the skills of existing staff; improving the quality of management and supervision.
6. *Better planning and scheduling of work*.
7. *Productivity bargaining*. Negotiating with unions to get their agreement t changes in working practices which will improve productivity as a *quid pro quo* for a pay increase.

BENEFITS

Improvements in productivity do not just happen. They have to be worked for. Productivity plans based upon a systematic audit provide the foundation for successful productivity improvement campaigns.

136. Method Study

DEFINITION

Method study is the systematic recording and critical examination of existing and proposed ways of doing work as a means of developing and applying easier and more effective methods and reducing costs.

Method study and work measurement are the two main branches of work study.

TECHNIQUES

Flow processing

The sequence of activities carried out by individuals can be recorded by flow process charts. The standard ASME (American Society of Mechanical Engineers) symbols are:

○ = Operation
⇨ = Transportation
□ = Inspection
D = Delay
▽ = Storage or file

Flow charts (see Figure 136.1) are prepared as follows:

1. *Main sequence of activity*. Each activity is described in terms of one of the ASME symbols. The sequence of activities is shown by setting out these symbols vertically in the order of their occurrence and joining them by a vertical line.

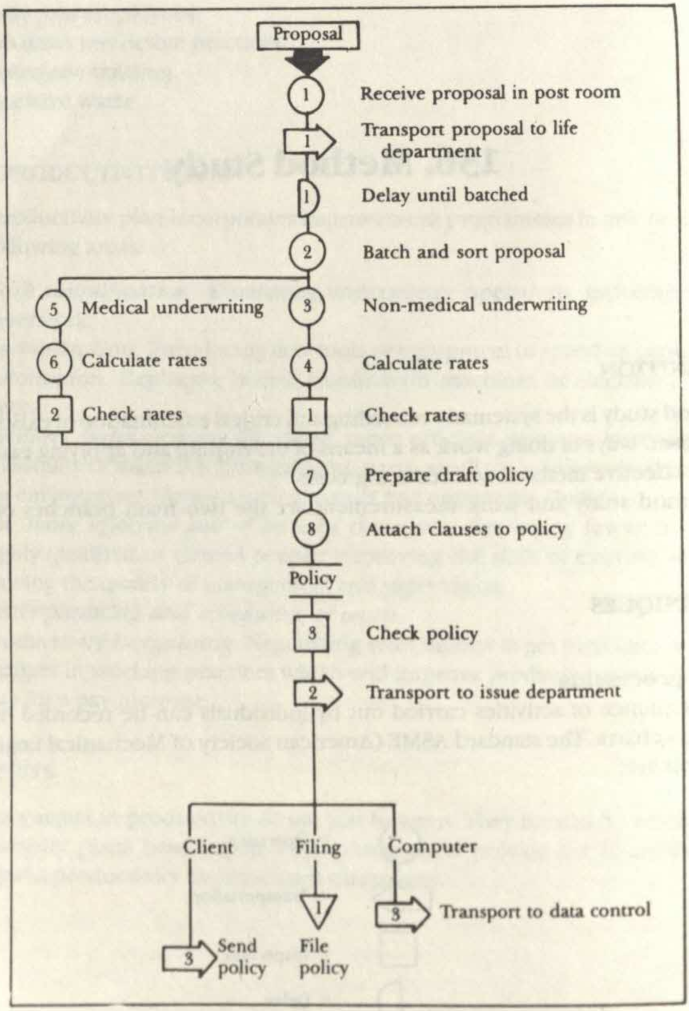


Figure 136.1. *Life policy – underwriting flow chart*

2. *Subsidiary activities or alternative routes*. The main sequence is shown on the right-hand side. Subsidiary activities or alternative routes are represented on the left as a vertical sequence of activities joined to the main stream by a horizontal line at the appropriate place.
3. *Reference numbers*. Each activity symbol is numbered separately so that a reference can be made when conducting the critical examination. Number-

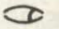
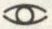
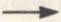
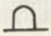
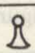
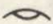
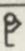
SYMBOL	NAME	COLOUR CODING
	search	black
	find	grey
	select	light grey
	grasp	red
	hold	gold ochre
	transport load	green
	position	blue
	assemble	violet
	use	purple
	disassemble	light violet
	inspect	burnt ochre
	pre-position	pale blue
	release load	carmine red
	transport empty	olive green
	rest for over-coming fatigue	orange
	unavoidable delay	yellow
	avoidable delay	lemon yellow
	plan	brown

Figure 136.2. *Therblig symbols*

ing starts at the head of the main sequence, continues to the entry of a subsidiary activity, then to the top of the subsidiary, and back to the main sequence to the foot of the chart.

4. *Repeats and changes*. Shown by breaking the chart with a double horizontal line immediately below the activity to be repeated or the point when the article being processed changes significantly.
5. *Identification*. Data are included on the chart to identify the method or the job, when the process starts and finishes and who did the charting. A summary of the activities charted may also be included.

Individual work analysis

An individual's work can be analysed by the use of therblig charts (see Figure 136.2). Each therblig is identified by a symbol, a name, a definition, an abbreviation and a colour for charting purposes. The sequence of operations, activities or events are charted vertically. Therblig charts are only used when highly detailed studies are required.

Procedure charting

Procedure charting uses the same symbols and conventions as individual activity charting. The documents are identified in boxes at the beginning of each sequence and their distribution is shown in the same way as alternative routes in process charting (see Figure 136.1).

Recording group activities

Group activities can be recorded by multiple activity charts which show the activities of each member of a group linked to a timescale (see Figure 136.3).

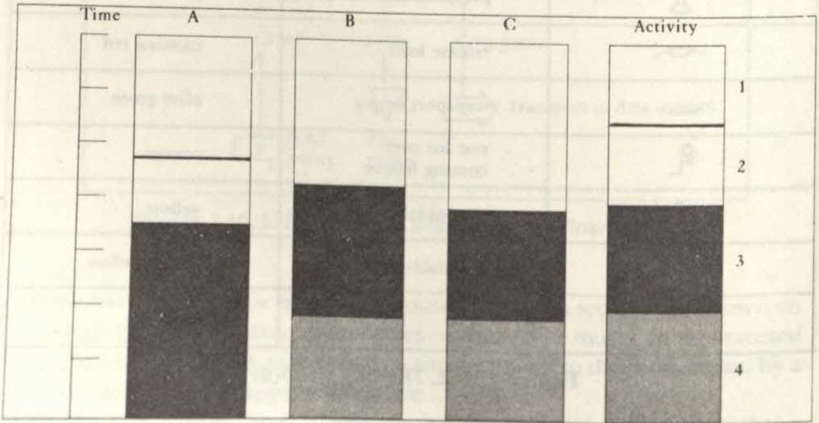


Figure 136.3. *Multiple activity chart*

Recording movements

The main techniques for recording movements round a workshop, office, room or site are as follows:

1. *String diagrams*, which record the movements of an operator by tracing them with a reel of cotton routed round pins placed on a plan at the points where there is a change of direction. String diagrams give a vivid picture of how movements take place and can quickly reveal unnecessary, unnecessarily long or duplicated movements.
2. *Flow diagrams*, which are a representation of a flow chart on a plan so that the physical movements are traced by a line between the different activities.

Critical examination

Critical examination uses the questioning approach to find out what, how,

	Current facts	Reasons	Possible alternatives	Review purpose
WHAT?	What is done now?	Why is it done?	What *else* could be done?	What *should* be done?
HOW?	How is it done?	Why in that way?	How *else* could it be done?	How *should* it be done?
WHEN?	When is it done?	Why at that time?	When *else* could it be done?	When *should* it be done?
WHERE?	Where is it done?	Why in that place?	Who *should* do it?	Where *should* it be done?
WHO?	Who does it?	Why that person(s)?	Who *else* could do it?	Who *should* do it?

Figure 136.4. *Questioning approach*

when, where and, most importantly, why an activity is carried out, and who does it. From this analysis two fundamental questions are posed:

1. Does the activity need to be done at all? If so:
2. Are there any better ways of doing it?

The questioning approach is set out in more detail in Figure 136.4.

BENEFITS

The main benefits resulting from method study are:

1. work simplification – eliminating unnecessary operations, movements and paperwork;
2. facilities improvement – providing more efficient transportation and procurement services, speeding up the flow of paperwork and materials, speeding up processing activities;
3. the more effective use of the workforce and
4. better planning and scheduling of work.

137. Work Measurement

DEFINITION

Work measurement is the application of techniques designed to establish the work content of a specified task and the time for a qualified worker to carry out that job at a defined level of performance.

Work measurement and method study are the two main branches of work study.

USES

The uses of work measurement are to:

1. *provide the basis for incentive schemes* which relate pay to performance as measured by the ratio between standard and actual hours;
2. *monitor performance* – by providing the common denominator of standard hours, work measurement enables the performance of different units and a single unit over time to be compared. Actuals can be compared with targets to indicate where corrective action may be required;
3. *assist in budget preparation*. The time standards can be used to convert forecast volumes into the total number of working hours required, which can in turn be converted by the application of hourly rates into the cost of labour;
4. *determine current workforce levels*. By objectively providing an indication of 'should take' time, work measurement gives management the ability to compare the amount of time actually spent with the amount of time that should have been spent. When current workforce levels are in excess of what time standards show to be required, reductions can be achieved. When the reverse applies, the current level can be increased; and
5. *determine future workforce needs*. By defining the time required to perform specific tasks, work measurement makes it possible to translate forecast activity levels into anticipated workforce requirements.

TECHNIQUES

Time study

Time study employs stopwatches to determine the standard time for completing a job. The process starts by analysing the job into its basic elements. This stage permits the critical appraisal of the method of performing the job and then the improvement of the method wherever possible.

The next stage is to time each element of the revised procedure so that the time for the total job is built up.

Finally, a rating adjustment is made to take account of the speed and effectiveness of the operator, and a relaxation allowance is calculated to provide for the effect of fatigue over a longer period. The relaxation allowance varies according to the job, but is typically 10 to 15 per cent.

The end result is the time for the task defined in standard minutes, which is the time the experienced worker of average ability should take to do the task while taking the normal amount of rest from fatigue and for personal needs. Such a worker should produce at an average rate of 60 standard minutes per 60 clock minutes over the whole day or shift without undue strain or fatigue. On the British Standards Institute scale this is called a 100 rating (ie, 60/60 × 100) and is referred to as standard performance. A worker who takes 80 clock minutes to do 60 standard minutes work will be working at a 75 rating, ie, 60/80 × 100.

Synthesis

Synthesis is used by work study departments who over the years have built up a library of 'synthetics', ie, standard times for doing common tasks which can be applied to any of these tasks as they exist in a job. The use of synthetics saves repetitive timing, leaving the time study engineer only the unusual elements to measure with his or her stopwatch.

Predetermined motion time systems (PMTS)

Predetermined motion time systems (PMTS) are libraries of standard synthetics which are based on the concept that human work of a physical kind consists of combinations of basic motions of the hands, arms, trunk, legs, head and eyes. The time required to perform each basic motion differs only in the smallest degree between different workers, so that by studying a series of basic motions a sufficient number of times, tables of standard performance times can be prepared for each motion pattern. Standard times for a task can then be calculated by adding up the PMTS times for each motion, and these standards can be used for planning and control purposes in exactly the same way as those resulting from time studies. PMTS systems are also used in *clerical work measurement programmes.*

Analytical estimating

Analytical estimating builds up standard times partly from synthetics and partly on values estimated by experienced workers who have been trained in rating. It is not as accurate as the other two systems and is generally used when the non-routine nature of the job makes it difficult to prepare time-studied data, as in maintenance work.

DEFINING WORK STANDARDS

Work measurement produces standard times for each job expressed in standard minutes. For rated work, a standard of 100 is expected when there is an individual incentive scheme. If there is no incentive scheme, a standard of 83 is expected from experienced and reasonably well-motivated workers.

Individual performance

Individual performance is measured by the number of standard minutes of work produced, expressed as a percentage of the actual time taken to produce them. The number of standard minutes of work produced is calculated by multiplying the number of units produced by the standard minute value per unit. Actual production time is the time spent on measured work excluding lost time (diverted and waiting time). The formula is therefore:

$$\frac{\text{Number of units produced} \times \text{standard minute values per unit}}{\text{Time taken to produce the units in minutes}} \times 100$$

Thus, if the number of standard minutes per unit is 15 and in 360 minutes an operator produces 20 units, his or her individual performance will be:

$$\frac{20 \text{ units} \times 15 \text{ standard minutes per unit}}{360 \text{ minutes on measured work}} \times 100 = 83$$

Overall performance

Individual performance measures the rate of working while actually doing the job. The rate of working for the whole period while the operator is at work (attendance hours/minutes) is termed overall performance. It is measured by the following formula:

$$\frac{\text{Number of standard minutes of work produced}}{\text{Total attendance time in minutes}} \times 100$$

Overall performance is usually about ten units below individual operator performance. It is useful to monitor the difference between individual and overall performance as this is directly controlled by supervision through minimizing lost time, especially waiting time.

USING WORK STANDARDS

Workforce budgeting

Workforce budgets can be built up from the overall performance figures as follows:

- Calculate number of standard minutes to be produced by multiplying output required (say 430 units a day) by standard minutes per unit (say 15) = 6,450.
- Take overall performance rate (say 80) and calculate attendance minutes required to achieve this rate given the standard minutes to be produced.

$$\frac{\text{Standard minutes of work produced (6,450)}}{\text{Attendance minutes (8,100)}} \times 100 = 80$$

- Divide attendance minutes by minutes attended per person per day (say 450) to give number of staff.

$$\frac{8100}{450} = 18$$

Workforce costs

Standard labour costs can be calculated by multiplying the standard minutes per unit (assuming 100 performance where an incentive scheme operates) by the hourly rate at 100 performance. The actual cost per standard hour will be the gross wages divided by the number of standard hours worked.

Workforce controls

The control information supplied by work standards will be:

- actual individual performance: planned individual performance;
- actual overall performance: planned overall performance;
- actual individual performance: planned overall performance; and
- planned cost per standard hour: actual cost per standard hour.

In addition to comparing actuals with planned performance, this control information can be used to compare trends between different periods of time. Adverse variances can then be picked up and analysed.

BENEFITS

Work measurement provides an analytical basis for incentive schemes, for budgeting and controlling workforce costs and for increasing productivity by providing standards against which performance can be planned, monitored and improved.

FURTHER READING

Barnes, R, *Motion and Time Study*, Wiley, New York 1969; London 1980.
Currie, R M, *Work Study*, Pitman, London 1977.

138. Clerical Work Measurement

DEFINITION

Clerical work measurement (CWM) is the systematic analysis of clerical work in order to determine the amount of time it should take to perform the work assigned to an individual clerk, a group of clerical staff or an office. As a result of office automation this technique is not so important as it used to be, but there are still situations where it may be applied usefully.

OBJECTIVES

The two main objectives of CWM are:

1. *cost control* – achieved by relating departmental staff requirements to the workload; and
2. *operational control* – achieved by supplying management and supervision with the means to control the completion of work programmes within their budgeted workforce levels.

CWM programmes consist of the following elements:

1. work measurement
2. staff budgeting
3. control systems.

WORK MEASUREMENT

Work measurement analyses the current actual time taken by individuals or groups to complete each task. From this is determined the 'should take' time which includes normal relaxation allowances. Because it is sometimes difficult in clerical work to fix a standard by means of time study, this 'should take' time is often expressed as a target, which is the rate at which employees have demonstrated their ability to perform the work. The main work measurement techniques used in CWM are described below.

Time study

Time study uses stopwatches to measure the actual time taken to carry out tasks. Its use in CWM is relatively limited because of the small proportion of purely repetitive tasks in most clerical jobs.

Predetermined motion time systems (PMTS)

Predetermined motion time systems, as described on page 582, can be applied to common clerical tasks. Synthetics may save specific time studies, but, like such studies, have limited use in clerical work measurement. The techniques mentioned below are the ones most commonly used.

Self-recording systems

These systems require the staff to participate actively in maintaining work logs or diaries recording the nature of the work they perform throughout the day, provision being made for non-productive time. At the same time, records of the volume of work are completed and by comparing these with the hours spent on each category of work, the average time for each task can be calculated.

Activity sampling

Activity or work sampling is the process of observing staff periodically and recording the activities on which they are engaged at the moment of observation. It is based on statistical sampling techniques which use the mathematical laws of probability to deduce information concerning the characteristics of a total population from data obtained by an examination of a sample of the total population. Observations are carried out over a given period to ensure that provision is made for cyclical or seasonal work. The size of the sample is usually determined by a pilot study which establishes the standard deviation present for each activity and so calculates the acceptable error margin.

Activity sampling is particularly suitable for office work and avoids the pitfalls of self-recording systems – the observers are not biased and staff need not waste time in completing forms. Observers need not be exceptionally skilled and it is feasible to analyse work under about 40 headings. The studies have to be controlled and analysed by a specialist who understands the statistical concepts on which the technique is based.

Batch control

Batch control or short interval scheduling provides a means of establishing the time required to perform a unit of work wherever work can be grouped into readily identifiable units.

Work is issued in controlled batches which take about 30 minutes to complete. The number of items in each batch and the time of issue and completion are recorded over several batches so that an average time per unit or group of units can be calculated.

This technique is particularly suitable for routine clerical work where large masses of similar documents or letters have to be processed.

STAFF BUDGETING

Staff budgets are prepared by calculating the following:

1. Standard hours required = target volume of work or standard.
2. Available hours = normal attendance hours per person per period allowing for holidays, absenteeism and meal or tea breaks.
3. Number of staff = standard hours required divided by available hours per person.

The standard hours required figure has to be calculated by reference to forecast activity levels and will have to be flexed to meet peak loads. With the information on standard times it should be possible to anticipate peaks which cannot be smoothed by other means and plan overtime and the use of temporary staff.

CONTROL SYSTEMS

The control reports generated by CWM are as follows:

1. Total hours worked (basic plus overtime).
2. Hours available for measured work (total hours minus hours spent on unmeasured work).
3. Volume of work in units or batches of units.
4. Standard hours/minutes per unit of work.
5. Standard hours of work completed (volume in units × standard time per unit).
6. Percentage performance:

$$\frac{\text{Standard hours completed}}{\text{Hours available for measured work}} \times 100$$

The performance percentage is the key figure to be compared period by period and against the standard expected. Variances can then be analysed to show where corrective action needs to be taken.

OTHER VERSIONS OF CWM

There are two other versions of CWM which are packages using a combination of the techniques described above.

1. Variable factor programming

This is a straightforward system for increasing clerical productivity using work study and budgetary control techniques.

2. Group capacity assessment

This is a CWM method developed by Arthur Young & Company which defines standard times for the work of groups of clerks by the use of techniques such as synthetic data, time study, multi-minute measurement and high-frequency work sampling. The aim is to develop an office workforce planning and control system which is based on the ability to equate time requirements with work outputs.

BENEFITS

A properly planned and maintained programme can provide a continuing control system to assist in relating staff numbers to varying workloads, to provide for rational programming of work and to establish a sound basis for determining the staffing implications of new tasks.

139. Value Analysis

DEFINITION

Value analysis is a cost reduction technique which uses organized procedures for the identification of unnecessary cost elements in a component or product by the analysis of its function (function being defined as that property of the product which makes it work or sell) and design.

Value can be classified as either *use value* (the ability of the item to achieve its function) or *esteem value* (the status or regard associated with ownership). For value analysis purposes, value is the sum of these two, use value normally being the principal component.

The objective of value analysis is to improve the value-cost relationship, which means a product which provides the necessary function with the essential qualities at minimum cost.

METHOD

Value analysis is carried out in the following stages:

1. *Select the products to be analysed*. Those that give the greatest return for the costs incurred in the analysis itself. Criteria for choice include:
   - a multiplicity of parts
   - a large usage
   - a small difference between use value and cost value
   - a long-designed product.
2. *Define the function of the product*. This means answering the following questions:
   - What is its purpose?
   - What does it do?
   - What do customers expect from it?

The function is best described in two words, a verb and a noun, for example: 'supports weight' for a beam; 'transmits force' for a shaft.

3. *Record the number of components*. The more there are, the greater the chance of cost reduction.
4. *Extract existing costs*. The actual or marginal cost of making each component and the product as a whole.
5. *Develop alternatives*. These will include changes in design, specification or manufacturing methods which will reduce costs without affecting the function of the product. The fundamental questions to be answered are as follows:

   - Is this component needed? If so:
   - Why is it manufactured this way?
   - Is there a cost-effective substitute or alternative method of making it?

   These questions may be dealt with by using brainstorming techniques (the generation of ideas by groups) which are eventually distilled into a list of practical suggestions. The aim of this key stage is to identify the scope to:

   (a) eliminate or simplify parts or operations;
   (b) substitute alternative materials;
   (c) use standard parts;
   (d) eliminate unnecessary design features;
   (e) substitute low-cost manufacturing processes;
   (f) change design to facilitate manufacture;
   (g) buy rather than make, if this is cheaper; and
   (h) relax manufacturing tolerances.

6. *Evaluate alternatives*. The ideas generated are evaluated from the point of view of the cost savings they will achieve and the extent to which this can be done without seriously affecting the ability of the product to fulfil its function and retain its value in use and esteem value. Recommendations for implementation are then made.

BENEFITS

Value analysis is a common-sense but systematic method of reducing costs by taking each part of the product and looking in detail at its function. It ensures that every feature, tolerance, hole, degree of finish, piece of material or part of the service is vetted to ensure that none of these is adding to the total cost without serving a necessary purpose.

140. Variety Reduction

DEFINITION

Variety reduction is the analysis of the range of products or components manufactured by a company with a view to minimizing the variety of products, parts, materials or processes.

AIMS

The overall aims of variety reduction are to increase efficiency and reduce costs. To achieve these aims, variety reduction:

1. *simplifies* – reduces unnecessary variety;
2. *standardizes* – controls necessary variety; and
3. *specializes* – concentrates effort on undertakings where special expertise or resources are available.

METHODS

Product variety reduction

Product variety reduction is conducted in four stages:

1. *Product analysis*. Products are listed in order of sales turnover or contribution (ie, selling price less variable costs). Following Pareto's law, it might well be the case that 20 per cent of the products account for 80 per cent of the turnover or total contribution. This is known as the 80/20 rule (see also *ABC analysis*).
2. *Trend analysis*. The relative performance of the items generating less income are scrutinized to check recent trends in turnover.
3. *Action plan*. Any lower income items for which sales are static or declining are examined in more detail to see if their contribution can be increased by such actions as reducing variable costs and/or increasing the selling price.

4. *Final decision*. The final decision on whether or not to phase out a product for which the action plan has not improved its performance will be affected by two considerations. The first will be the opportunity costs of concentrating on other, more profitable, products, ie what would be gained by transferring production to them. The second will be the economies that will result from discontinuing the product. If, in the short term, they are less than the contribution made by the product, it might be worth retaining it until it can be replaced by an improved version.

Component variety reduction

Component variety reduction examines every component in the final production to find out if there is any scope for standardization, amalgamation or eliminating unnecessary items. If a new component becomes necessary, an effective coding system for existing components will indicate if one is already available. Rather than making the component, it might be more economical to buy it from an outside supplier.

BENEFITS

1. Production runs will be longer and ancillary time for setting up and breaking down will be reduced.
2. Inventory levels will be reduced.
3. Planning and production control will be simplified.
4. Potential savings will be achieved in plant and equipment requirements.
5. Activity can be concentrated more in development and design, marketing and sales and after sales service.

Index

ABC analysis
  benefits of 529
  definition of 498–9, 527
  method 527–8
  uses 527, 567
Absorption costing
  advantages of 296
  comparison with marginal costing 304
  definition 283, 291, 295
  disadvantages of 296–7
  of overheads 295–6
  full absorption 296
Acceptance credits 274–5
Acceptance sampling 194
Accident control 442–3
Accountancy standards 278
Accounting *see* Financial accounting *and* Management accounting
Accounting policies 249
Accounting rate of return
  definition of 346, 350
  method 350
  uses 350–51
Accruals
  definition of 248
  manipulation of 280, 281
  principle of 247–8
Acid-test ratio 252
Ackott, R 514
Action learning 420
Activities in network planning 537, 538, 539
Activity-based costing (ABC)
  aim of 298
  basis of 291
  benefits of 302
  definition of 299
  philosophy of 300–301
  rationale 299–300
  system development 301–2
Activity diagrams 475
Activity hierarchy diagrams 475
Activity modelling 475
Activity-on-node (network planning) 543–4
Activity sampling 587
Actual cost 247
Adaptive Planning and Control Sequence (APACS) 51
A/D convertors 454
Added value, *see* Value added
Adjustments, financial 248
Administration budget 328
Aggregate planning
  aim of 123, 140
  and batch production 167
  definition of 139
  and job production 166
AI, *see* Artificial intelligence
Algorithms 507
Analysis 15
Analytical estimating 583
Andersen, Arthur & Co 177
Applications, computers 448
Applications development 449
Applications generation 476
Applications packages 456
Applications programs 456

Architecture, information technology 448, 460
Area marketing test evaluation system 69
Artificial intelligence (AI)
  applications of 479-80
  definition of 478
  intelligent behaviour 478-9
  systems development 479
Assembler language 456
Assemblers 473
Assessment centres 389
Asset turnover ratio 258, 558
Assets
  claims on 246
  current (short-term) 251
  to debts ratio 253
  fixed (long-term) 250
  net current 251
Assignment brief 461-2
Attainment tests 384
Attitude scaling 77
Attribute, systems analysis 464
Attribute analysis 160
Attribute control 194
Attrition, salary 411
Auditors 248
Automated manufacturing cells 179, 180
Automated production systems 172; *see also* Flexible manufacturing system *and* Robotics
Automated quality control 179
Automation 128, 448, 450
Autonomy, manufacturing 179

Balance sheet
  components 250
  make-up 250-51
  relationship with profit and loss account 245
Balance sheet analysis
  capital structure analysis 252-3
  definition 250
  liquidity analysis 251-2
Bar-codes 453, 490
BASIC 457
Batch control 587-8
Batch processing 455
Batch production 166-8
Bayesian analysis 509
Bill finance 274-5
Bill of materials (BOM) 142-3, 145
Binary code 456
Binary digit (bit) 454
Binary format 472
Bit 454
Black box, the 532-3
Boston Consulting Group 31, 32-3
Bottlenecks 147, 148
Bottom line 114
Brainstorming 160
Branding 61
Break-even analysis
  and cost-volume-profit analysis 315
  definition of 283, 320
  and margin of safety 315
  and pricing 99-101
  use of break-even chart 321-2
Break-even charts 99-100, 316, 320, 321-2
British Standards Institute 582
BS5750 195-6, 199
Buchanan, B 482
Budgetary control
  application of 336-7
  benefits of 337
  definition of 284, 336
  principles of 336-7
Budgets
  administration 328
  capital expenditure 329
  capital expenditure cash 263-4
  cash 329
  creditors' 329
  debtors' 329
  finance 262-3, 264, 329
  guidelines 329
  marketing 57
  master 329, 330
  media 67-8
  operating cash 263
  production 328
  purchases 329
  research and development 328
  revenue 329
  salary 410-11

  sales 328
  staff 588
Budgeting
  capital 284
  long range 243
  staff 588
Buffer stock 212-13
Burden rates 299
Business analysis 475
Business generation 22
Business process re-engineering 553-6
Bytes 454

CAD, *see* Computer-aided design
CADCAM systems
  definition of 126-7
  use of 132-3, 135, 449
CAE, *see* Computer-aided engineering
CAM, *see* Computer-aided manufacturing
Capacity planning
  and aggregate planning 139
  aim of 140
  applications of 140
  definition of 139
  and job production 166
  and MRPII 146
  and production planning 123
Capital 246, 270
Capital appraisal
  definition of 241-2
Capital budgeting
  benefits of 347
  comparing returns with investment 345
  definition of 284, 344
  factors 344-5
  investment appraisal techniques 346
  and opportunity cost 345
  programme 346-7
Capital employed, return on 256-7, 557-8
Capital expenditure budget 329
Capital expenditure cash budget 263-4
Capital expenditure control 347
Capital structure
  analysis of 252-3
  and gearing 273-4
CAPP, *see* Computer-aided process planning
Career planning 437
Cash budget 329
Cash flow forecasting 243
Cash flow statement 265
Cash holding, manipulation of 280
Cash management
  benefits of 266
  budgets 263-4
  cash flow statement 265
  definition 261
  funds flow management 266
  purpose 261
Cause-and-effect analysis 159
Cells
  and cellular manufacturing 179
  characteristics of 180-81
  and flexible manufacturing systems 172
Cellular manufacturing
  benefits of 182
  characteristics of a manufacturing cell 180-81
  definition of 179
  and flexible manufacturing systems 180, 181
  human implications of 181-2
  implementation of 181-2
  and just-in-time (JIT) systems 180
  and group technology 179
Change management
  definition of 41
  guidelines for 41-2
Checklists 555
Chip 454
Chryssolouris, G 130
CIM, *see* Computer-integrated manufacturing
Claims, financial 246
Clerical work measurement
  benefits of 589
  control systems 588
  definition of 586
  objectives 586
  work measurement 586-8
COBAL 457, 472
Coding, programming 472-3
Cognitive science 478-9
Collard, R 201
Communication networks 169

Communications technology 448
Compa-ratio 411–12
Competitive advantage 25
Competitor-related pricing 103–4
Compiler programs 457
Compilers 473
Component variety reduction 593
Computer-aided design
  applications 131–2
  benefits of 133
  computer graphics 132
  and computer-integrated manufacturing 189
  definition of 125, 131
  drawings 131
  and layout planning 164
  manufacturing data 132
  modelling 132
  operation of 131
  simulations 132
Computer-aided engineering (CAE) 126, 135, 449
Computer-aided manufacturing
  benefits of 135
  and CADCAM 135
  and computer-integrated manufacturing 189
  computer process monitoring 134
  definition of 125–6, 134
  direct computer control 134–5
  manufacturing support 135
Computer-aided process planning
  approaches to 126
  and computer-integrated manufacturing 189
  definition of 126
Computer-automated process planning 135
Computer-based systems 447
Computer-based training 431
Computer conferencing 492
Computer control 180, *see also* Computer numerical control
Computer generated work standards 135
Computer graphics 132
Computer-integrated manufacturing
  aims of 187–8
  benefits of 190–91
  and CADCAM 135, 187
  components of 189
  definition of 126, 187, 449
  and flexible manufacturing systems 18 188
  implementation of 189–90
Computer kinetics 132
Computer modelling 148, *see also* Modelling
Computer numerical control (CNC)
  benefits of 170–71
  definition of 134, 169
  and FMS 172
  operation 170
  use of 179
  work organization 170
Computer output microfilm (COM) 492
Computer process monitoring 134
Computer support to operations 449
Computer vision 480
Computerization 128
Computerized database 176
Computerized layout planning 164
Computerized production planning and control systems (CPPC)
  and computer-integrated manufacturi 189
  description of 126–7
  and production planning 123
Computers
  and activity-based costing 300
  arithmetic logic unit 454–5
  basic configuration 453–5
  central processing unit (CPU) 454–45
  and flexible manufacturing systems 1
  input devices 453–4
  integrated systems 449–50
  and inventory control 214
  memory 454
  and natural language processing 487
  operational control unit (OCU) 454
  output 455
  peripherals 456
  processing 455
  programming languages 456–7
  and project management 238

  random access memory (RAM) 454
  read only memory (ROM) 454
  software 456
  storage/memory 454
  types of 455
Concentrated marketing 94
Concept development 62
Context diagrams 475
Continuous processing 135
Contract-based flexibility 40
Contribution
  analysis 305
  definition of 114, 304, 323
  and marginal costing 304
  and profit planning 57
  and sales mix analysis 323, 324
Contribution analysis 113
Control
  areas of 23
  by attributes 194
  of capital expenditure 347
  principles of 336
  project 236–8
  of rate of return 347
  reports, clerical work measurement 588
  by variables 194
Control charts 160, 194
Controlling 21–2
Control procedure specification 468
Convertibles 276
Cooke, S 505, 510
Cooper, R 299
Corporate plan 326
Cost accounting
  benefits of 293
  definition of 283, 286
  objectives 286
  techniques 286–93
Cost analysis
  benefits 293–4
  definition of 283
  differential costing 293
  marginal costs 292
  marketing 113–14
  opportunity costs 293
  product and period costs 292
  relevance 293
  total costs 292
Cost-benefit analysis
  aim 364
  background 364–5
  benefits 366
  definition of 364
  method 365–6
  and programme budgeting 359
  in project management 230
Cost centre 340
Cost classification
  by behaviour 288–9
  by location 289–90
  by product, order or job 290
  by type of expense 287–8
Cost control 336, 340–43
Cost-effectiveness analysis
  aims 367
  benefits 368
  definition 367
  method 367–8
Costing
  absorption 283, 291, 295–8
  activity-based 291
  cost measurement 290
  differential 293, 315
  full 296, 304
  marginal 283, 291, 303–6
  overhead recovery 290–91
  standard 283, 291
  use of 290
Cost per unit of output 559
Cost-plus-profit pricing 99
Cost ratios 559
Cost reduction 566, 569–71
Cost-related pricing 98–102
Costs
  actual 247
  current 271
  direct labour 289
  fixed 288, 289, 297
  historical 247, 268, 270
  indirect 287
  manufacturing 130
  marginal 283, 291, 303–6
  measurement of 290
  non-variable 288, 289

  opportunity 293
  period 292
  prime 287
  product 292
  replacement 271
  semi-variable 288, 289
  stepped 289
  sunk 306
  total 289, 292
  total product 287
  variable 288, 289
Cost-volume-profit (CVP) analysis
  and absorption costing 297
  benefit of 316
  concepts and techniques 314–15
  definition of 283, 314
  and marginal costing 305
  method 315–16
  and sales mix analysis 323
  uses 314
Cover of interest costs 274
CPPC, *see* Computerized production planning and control systems
Creative accounting 278–82
Creditor turnover period 562
Creditors' budget 329
Critical examination 554, 579–80
Critical path method of network planning 234, 541–2
Crosby, P 200
Cross charting 164
Culture, definition of 37
Culture management
  analysis and diagnosis 38
  definition of 37
  techniques of 38
Current assets 251, 279–80
Current cost accounting (CCA) 271
Current liabilities 251
Current purchasing power accounting (CPP) 270–71
Current ratio 251
Current revenues 271
Customer service and satisfaction
  and relationship marketing 106–7
  and total quality management 199–200
Customer supply profile 218
CVP analysis, *see* Cost-volume-profit analysis
CWM, *see* Clerical work measurement
Cybernetics
  applications 533
  definition of 532
  principles 532–3

Data, definition of 474
Database, definition of 474
Database management
  and fourth generation languages 457
  relational databased management systems 476
  system (DBMS) 474, 476
Database marketing
  applications 108–9
  benefits 110
  definition 108
  developing a database 109–10
  objective 108
Data based programming 472
Data definition 467
Data description 476
Data dictionary 476
Data enquiry system 476
Data entry 476
Dataflow diagramming 461–3, 475
Data management
  aims of 474–5
  benefits of 476–7
  database construction 475–6
  database management systems (DBMS) 476
  definition of 448–9, 474
  function 476
Data modelling 466
Data processing
  benefits 457
  computer peripherals 456
  computers, basic configuration 453–5
  computers, types of 455
  definition of 452
  essence of 452–3
  and information technology 448
  programming languages 456–7
  software 456
Data structure development 475–6

Debt 253, 562
Debt capital 273
Debtors' budget 329
Debtors' manipulation of figures 279
Debtor turnover 562
Debugging 469
Decision matrix 505
Decision rules 497, 504
Decision support systems
  and artificial intelligence 480
  and computer-integrated manufacturing 189
  and information technology 450
Decision theory
  benefits of 509
  definition of 502
  and operational research 497–8
  techniques 504–9
  types of decision 502–4
Decision trees 498, 506–7
Declarative knowledge 481
Decomposition analysis 84
Deductive reasoning 481
Deductive system (expert systems) 484
Delphi technique 85
Demand forecasting (human resources) 375–7
Demand forecasting (sales) 139, 189, 211
Demand satisfaction 22
Deming, W 200
Demographic data 110
Demographic variables 93–4
Departmental budgets 328–9
Dependent activity demand situation 124
Dependent events 147
Depreciation
  and creative accounting 279
  definition 267
  and inflation 268
  methods 267–8
  reason for 267
  treatment of 247
  and useful economic life 278
Descriptive models 510–11
Desk research 73–4
Deterministic models 510
Deterministic simulation 517
Dialogue analysis 487
Differential costing 293, 315
Differentiated marketing 94
Dignam, L 27
Direct computer control
  applications 134–5
  definition of 134
Direct costing, *see* Marginal costing
Direct expenses 287
Direct labour costs 287, 299
Direct labour standards 308
Direct labour variance 311–12
Direct materials cost 287
Direct materials standards 308
Direct materials variance 312
Direct numerical control (DNC)
  benefits of 171
  definition of 171
  and FMS 171, 172
  operation 171
Directing 21
Discounted cash flow (DCF)
  definition of 346
Discounting 345
Discount pricing 103
Discounted cash flow (DCF)
  basis of 352
  benefits of 354–5
  definition of 352
  and project management 229
  technique 353–4
Discrete parts manufacturing 135
Disks, computer 456
Distinctive competence 25
Distributed data processing
  benefits 459
  definition of 455, 458
  design of systems 459
  types of systems 458–9
Distribution 128
Distribution management
  aim 217
  benefits of 220
  criteria 217
  definition 217
  techniques 217–20
Distribution planning

  definition of 221
  process of 221-3
  techniques 223-8
DNC, *see* Direct numerical control
Document specification 468
Domain 481
Drucker, P 566
Duckworth, W 517, 533

80/20 rule 67, 211, 527
Earnings per share 257, 274, 281, 558
Econometric models 377
Economic order quantity 213
Effectiveness 566-7
Electronic mail 492
Electronic office, *see* Office automation
Empowerment 387
Encounter points 106
Entities 464
Environmental scanning 26, 27
Equity 252-3
Equity capital 276-7
Equity finance 273
Equity, return on 255, 557
Events in network planning 537
Exceptional items of expense 281
Exception reporting 343
Executable code 457
Expected value forecast 357
Expediting 218-19
Expenses
  direct 287
  indirect 287
  manipulation of 281
Expert systems
  applications of 484
  and artificial intelligence 479
  basis of operation 481
  benefits of 485
  components of 481-2
  definition of 481
  development of 483
  features of 482
  types of 483-4
Exploratory forecasting 86
Exponential smoothing 84
Exponential trends 83
External memory, computer 454
Extraordinary items of expense 281

Factoring 275
Factory overheads 287
Factory-wide incentive schemes 420
Faults analysis 428
Fax, R 147
Feasibility study 462
Feedback mechanisms 533
Field research 75-7
Field sales assessment 85
Field sales control 115-17
Field study 73
File specification 467
Fill rates 219
Finance budget
  definition of 262-3, 329
  preparation of 264
Financial accounting
  bases 249
  definition of 241, 244
  policies 249
  purpose of 244
Financial accounts
  format of 244-5
  influence of 269
Financial analysis 241
Financial budgeting
  benefits of 330
  definition of 284, 326
  procedure 329-30
  process of 326-9
  purpose 326
Financial capital 246
Financial capital maintenance 270
Financial management
  components of 241
  definition of 17, 241
Financial planning
  activities
  definition of 241, 243
  in project management 235-6
Financial principles 245-8
Financial resources, *see* Capital
Fishbone diagram 159
Fixed assets 250, 278
Fixed costs 288, 289, 297, 305, 315, 331
Flat files 476

Flexible budgets
  benefits of 333
  control of 332–3
  definition 331
  preparation of 332
  reason for 284, 331–2
Flexibility
  and computer-integrated manufacturing 188
  contract-based 40
  and flexible manufacturing systems (FMS) 172–5
  job (functional)-based 41
  and layout planning 163
  and manufacturing 130
  and production planning 123
  skill-based 41
  time-based 40
Flexibility management
  need for 40
  techniques of 40–41
Flexible manufacturing system (FMS)
  benefits of 175
  and cellular manufacturing 180
  components of 173–4
  definition of 172, 180
  design of 174–5
  and DNC 171
  objectives of 172–3
Float 234–5
Flow charting 464, 555
Flow processing 575–8
Flow production 168
FMS, *see* Flexible manufacturing system
Forecasting
  demand 139
  sales *see* Sales forecasting
Forrester, J 516
FORTRAN 457
Forward scheduling 124
Fourth generation languages (4GL) 457
Frequency distribution charting 159
Full costing, 296, 304, *see also* Absorption costing
Functional decomposition 470, 473
Functional flexibility 41
Functional layout 157
Functional specification 467
Funds flow management 266

Gantt chart 233–4
Gap analysis 60, 71
Gear, A 517, 533
Gearing 273–4
General management
  definition of 17, 21
  functions of 22–3
  processes of 21–2
  techniques 23
Generative process planning 126
Global overhead recovery 291, 299
Going concern 246–7
Goldratt, E 147
Graded salary structures 404–5
Graphic tablets 454
Gross profit 254
Gross requirements 142
Group capacity assessment 589
Group incentive schemes 419
Group technology (GT)
  applications 176–7
  benefits of 177
  and cellular manufacturing 179
  definition of 176
  development of 176
  implementation of 177
  and layout planning 162
Group dynamics 432–4
Growth/share matrix, Boston Consulting Group 32–3
GT, *see* Group technology

Hall, W 567
Heller, R 47, 565
Hernandez, A 152
Heuristic rule 481
Heuristics 478
Hierarchical database 476
Hierarchy + input-process-output (HIPO) diagrams 464, 465
High-level language 457, 472
HIPO diagrams, 465, 466
Hire purchase 275
Historical costs 247, 268, 270, 297, 306
Homeostasis 532

Host computer 173
HRM, *see* Human resource management
Human asset accounting 247
Human implications of cellular manufacturing 181–2
Human resource management (HRM)
  activities 373–4
  aims 372
  benefits 374
  characteristic features 372–3
  definition of 17, 371
  philosophy 371
Human resource planning
  benefits of 378
  definition of 375
  demand forecasting 375–7
  and linear programming 520
  process of 375
  supply forecasting 377–8

Income 270, 280–81
Incremental cash flow 346
Incremental costs 306
Independent-activity demand situation 124
Indirect costs 287
Indirect expenses 287
Indirect fixed expenses 297
Indirect labour costs 287
Indirect materials cost 287
Inductive reasoning 481
Inductive system (expert systems) 483–4
Industrial automation 450
Inference engine 482
Inflation accounting
  benefits of 272
  definition of 269
  reason for 269–70
  techniques 270–71
  use of 271–2
Inflation adjusted accounting 270
Inflation and depreciation 268
Information requirements 475
Information technology
  applications 448
  benefits of 451
  computer-based systems 447
  definition of 18, 447
  fundamental concepts 447
  and organization 36
  uses of 448–51
Inspection 195
Integrated business systems 450
Integrated CAD systems 132–3
Integrated work stations 489–92
Intelligence tests 383–4
Intelligent behaviour 478
Interactive skills training 433
Interest cover 561
Internal memory, computer 454
Internal rate of return 354
Interpreters 457
Inventory
  and FMS 175
  dependent items 210
  independent items 210
  ratio 563
  types of 209–10
Inventory control
  aim of 127, 209, 567
  benefits of 214
  buffer stock 212–13
  categorization of inventory 211
  components of 127–8
  computers, use of 214
  cost control 210
  definition of 209
  demand forecasting 211
  economic order quantity 213
  and JIT 150, 151,
  and MRPII 146, 214
  reordering systems 212–14
  service levels 210
Investment centre 340
Ishikawa diagram 159
ISO 9000 *see* BS5750
IT, *see* Information technology
IT architecture 448

Jameson, M 278
JIT, *see* Just-in-time
Job analysis 393–6
Job-based flexibility 41
Job classification 398
Job descriptions 394–5
Job design 381–2

Job enrichment 379-80
Job evaluation
  benefits of 400
  definition of 397
  programme 399-400
  techniques 397
  types of 397-9
Job instruction 431
Job production 166
Job ranking 398
Job reporting systems 141
Johnson, K 147
Juran, J 200
Just-in-time
  aims 150
  benefits of 156-7
  and cellular manufacture 154, 180
  definition of 141, 150
  features 150-51
  introduction of 155-6
  kanban system 152-3
  lot sizes 151
  material handling systems 155
  paced production systems 155-6
  process capability 154
  processing time 152
  pull and push systems 151
  set-up time 152
  and suppliers 155
  and TQM 154-5

Kanban system 152-3
Kaplan, R 299
Kelly repertory grid 80
Keyword analysis 487
Kilobytes (K) 454
Knowledge base (expert system) 481
Knowledge engineer 483
Kotler, P 46, 54

Labour costs 570
Labour efficiency variance 311
Labour idle time variance 312
Labour mix variance 311-12
Labour rate variance 311
LAN, *see* Local area network
Languages, computer programming 456-7
Layout planning
  in batch production 167
  benefits of 166
  criteria for a good layout 162-3
  definition of 127, 152
  techniques 163-5
  types of layout 162
Lead-lag method of sales forecasting 81
Learning organization 35
Leasing 275
Leverage 273-4
Levitt, T 47, 105
Lexical analysis 486
Liabilities 246, 280
Life-style analysis 94
Likert scales 77
Limiting factor
  decisions 305-6
  and sales mix analysis 325
Linear programming
  aim 519
  applications 520
  benefits of 521
  definition of 498, 519
  and distribution planning 226
  methods 519-20
  and sales mix analysis 325
Linear trends 82
Line activities 22
Line of balance technique
  benefits of 545
  definition of 124-5, 545
  method 545-9
  and project planning 235
Liquidity analysis 251-2
Littlechild, S 525-6
Loan capital 276
Loans 251
Local area network (LAN) 459
Lockett, A 517, 533
Lockyer, K 162
Long-term assets 250
Long-term debt 252-3
Long-term finance 253
Long-term loans 251
Loss control 443-4
Lot size 151
Low-level languages 456, 473

Luggen, W 175

Machine intelligence, *see* Artificial intelligence
Machine language, computers 456
Machine tools 181, 450 *see also* Numerical control, Computer numerical control *and* Direct numerical control
Machine translation 488
Magnetic ink character recognition (MICR) 453
Mainframe computers 455
Mair, G 186
Make or buy decisions 44, 215–16, 305
Management accounting
  benefits of 285
  definition of 241, 283
  principles of 284–5
  techniques 283–4
  uses 284–5
Management by exception 342
Management development
  benefits of 437
  definition of 435
  process 436
  techniques 435–7
Management information systems 449
Management, process of 21–2
Management science
  definition of 18
  use of 23
Management succession planning 437
Management techniques
  applications of 17–18
  benefits 18
  characteristics of 15–17
  definition of 15
  and general management 23
Managerial skills 15
Managing change, *see* Change management
Manual date input (CNCs) 169
Manufacturing 127, 129—30, 189
Manufacturing cells, *see* Cells *and* Cellular manufacturing
Manufacturing resource planning (MRPII)
  aim of 144
  benefits of 146
  definition of 140, 144
  elements of 144–6
  evolution of 144
Manufacturing systems
  components of 127
  decision areas 130
  definition of 123, 129
  process of 129–30
Margin of safety ratio 315
Marginal costing
  advantages 306
  background 303
  comparison with full or absorption costing 304–5
  definition of 291, 303
  disadvantages 306
  make-up 304
  and total costs 292
  uses 305–6
  and value/price decisions 298
Marginal costs 292, 304
Marginal pricing 101
Marginal theory 403
Market penetration 55, 114
Market position 55
Market price 257
Market-related pricing 102–3
Market research, *see* Marketing research
Market saturation 114
Market segmentation 61, 93–4
Market share 32, 55, 95, 114
Market targeting 94–5
Marketing
  budget 57
  objectives 55
  policies 55–6
  plans 56
  strategies 56
Marketing control
  benefits of 114
  definition of 111
  elements of 111
  process of 111
Marketing management
  benefits of 49
  concept of 46–7

  context of 45-6
  definition of 17, 45
  process of 47-9
Marketing mix
  definition of 56, 96
  factors affecting 96-7
  ingredients of 96
  significance of 97
  and target marketing 95
Marketing planning
  analysis 53-4
  decisions 55-6
  definition of 48, 51
  process of 51-2
  threats and opportunities, assessment of 54-5
  use of 48
Marketing research
  areas of 70-71
  benefits 71
  definition of 70
  desk research 73-4
  field research 75-7
  and media planning 69
  and product planning 62
  qualitative research 79-80
  techniques 71
Marketing Science Institute 51
Master budget 329
Master production schedule (MPS)
  definition of 140
  and MRPII 145
Master production scheduling 140
Material control 125
Material handling systems 153
Materials price variance 312
Materials requirement planning (MRPI)
  aims 142
  benefits 143
  and computers 135
  definition of 124, 140, 142
  information provided 143
  and MRPII 144, 145-6
  method of operation 142-3
Materials usage variance 312
Materials yield variance 312
Mathematical models *see* Models
Matrix analysis (decisions) 497
Matsushita 155
Mean (average) 154
Means-end analysis 497, 504-5
Measured day work 419
Media planning
  benefits of 69
  budgeting 67-8
  definition of 67
  factors affecting 67
  process of 68-9
Meta-rules 481
Method study
  benefits of 580
  critical examination 579-80
  definition of 575
  flow processing 575-8
  individual work analysis 578
  multiple activity chart 578
  procedure charting 578
  recording group activities 578
  recording movements 579
  techniques 575-80
  therblig symbols 577-8
Microcomputers 171, 455
Mintzberg, H 27
Mishkoff, H 479
Mission 24
Mission statement 38
Modelling
  activity 475
  applications 513
  benefits 513
  computer 148
  definition of 498, 510
  process of 511
  selecting a system 512-13
  use of CAD 132
  uses of 16-17, 510
Models
  characteristics of 510-11
  definition of 16
  distribution planning 223-5
  econometric 377
  marketing 85
  network flow distribution 227
Modems 454

Modular programming 470
Monte Carlo method of simulation 514–15
Moroney, M 523
Morphological research 86
Morse, P 208
Moving averages 84
MPS, *see* Master production schedule
MRPI, *see* Material requirement planning
MRPII, *see* Manufacturing resource planning
Multiple activity chart 578
Multiple regression analysis 84
Multi-skilling 41, 123, 175
Multi-tasking (computers) 455
Multi-threading (computers) 455

Natural language processing (NLP)
  and artificial intelligence 486
  benefits of 488
  definition of 486
  natural language generation 487
  natural language interface 487
  natural language understanding 486–7
  operation of 487–8
  use of 454, 479
NC, *see* Numerical control
Net present value (NPV)
  definition of 346
  technique 353–4
Net profit
  definition 114, 254
  and marketing control 114
Networks (computer)
  backbone network 458
  local area network (LAN) 459
  value added network (VAN) 459
  wide area network (WAN) 459
Network analysis
  activity-on-node 543-4
  benefits of 544
  critical path method 541–3
  definition of 124, 499, 537
  and distribution planning 226
  PERT 543
  and resource allocation 544
  techniques 537–41
Network flow models 227–8
Network planning
  and job production 166
  and project management 234–5
New product development 61–3
New technology 448
Newson-Smith, N 73
NLP, *see* Natural language processing
Nodes, in network planning 537
Non-variable costs 288
Normative forecasting 86
Normative models 510–11
Normative relevance tree 86
Numerical control (NC) 134, 169
Numerically controlled machine tools 169, 180–81

Object code 457
Objectives
  and performance management 387
  and responsibility accounting 340
OCR, *see* Optical character recognition
Off-balance sheet liabilities 280
Office automation
  aims 489
  benefits of 492–3
  computer conferencing 492
  definition of 450, 489
  electronic mail 492
  integrated work stations 489–92
  videotext 492
  voice messaging 492
OMR, *see* Optical mark reading
Operating cash budget 263
Operating leverage 297
Operating profit 254
Operating profit variance 310
Operating software 456
Operating statement 333
Operational research
  applications 499–500
  benefits of 500–501
  definition of 487
  method 500
  techniques 497–9
Operations management
  activities 122–8
  aims 121
  definition of 17, 121
  integration of 121–2

Operator interface 173
Opportunity costs 293, 306
OPT, *see* Optimized production technology
Optical character recognition (OCR) 453
Optical mark reading (OMR) 453
Optimized production technology (OPT)
  aim 147
  benefits of 149
  definition of 140, 147
  development of 148
  features of 147–8
  operation of 148–9
Organization design 35–7
Organization management
  and change management 41–2
  and culture management 37–8
  definition of 34
  and flexibility management 40–41
  objective of 34
  and team management 38–40
Organization structure 35, 36
Organizational effectiveness 34–5
Organizing 210
Overhead
  absorption 295–6, 297
  allocation 295–6, 299
  apportionment 296
  control 338–9
  recovery 290–91, 295–6, 297–8
  variance 313
Overhead accounting
  benefits of 339
  definition of 338
  principles of 338
  purpose of 284
Overheads
  factory 287
  other 287–8
  and standard costing 309
Overtrading 261
Owner's claims 246

Paced production systems 153–4
Packaging 61
Paired comparisons 160
Parameters 86
Pareto analysis 159, 211
Pareto's law 527
Parts design 176
Parts families 179
Payback method of capital appraisal
  calculation 348
  definition of 346, 348
  purpose 348–9
Payment by results
  benefits of 420
  definition of 418
  factory-wide incentive schemes 420
  group incentive schemes 419
  measured day work 419
  piecework 418–19
PC, *see* Personal computer
P/E ratio 257, 281
Penetration pricing 104
Perceived value pricing 102
Performance data analysis 112
Performance management
  aim 386
  benefits of 388
  conditions for success 388
  definition of 386
  features of 387
  philosophy 386–7
Performance-related pay
  benefits of 417
  criteria for effectiveness 416–17
  definition of 415
  schemes 415–16
Performance specification 231
Period costs 292, 305
Peripherals, computer 456
Personal computer 454, 455
Personality tests 385
PERT 543
Physical capital maintenance 246–7, 270
Physical distribution management, *see* Distribution management
Pidd, M 517, 518
Piecework 418–19
PL/1 (program language) 472
Planned maintenance
  benefits 208
  definition of 128, 205
  method 205–8

Planned order release 142
Planning
  areas of 23
  definition of 21
  layout 127
  marketing 51-7
  media 67-9
  process 123, 126, 139
  production 137-41, 520
  profit 57
  sales 64-6
Planning, programming, budgeting
  system (PPBS) 358
PMTS, *see* Predetermined motion time
  systems
Point-of-sale data capture systems 449-50
Points rating, job evaluation 398-99
Poisson distribution 523
Policies, marketing 55
Porter, M 45-6
Portfolio planning
  benefits of 33
  definition of 31
  growth/share matrix 32
  objective of 31
  and strategic business units 31-3
  techniques of 31-3
Positioning, *see* Product positioning
PPCS, *see* Production planning and
  control systems
Pragmatic analysis 487
Predetermined motion time systems 582,
  587
Preference shares 276
Prepayments 248
Price-earnings ratio 257, 281
Price-volume (P/V) chart 323-4
Pricing
  break-even analysis 99-101
  competitive pricing 103
  competitor-related pricing 103-4
  cost-plus-profit pricing 99
  cost-related pricing 98-102
  and current-cost accounting 271
  decisions using marginal costs 306
  definition 98
  discount pricing 103
  marginal pricing 101
  market-related pricing 102-3
  penetration pricing 104
  perceived value pricing 102
  strategies for 104
  and profit-volume charts 318-19
  promotional pricing 102-3
  psychological pricing 102
  skimming 103
  standard cost pricing 98-9
  target profit-pricing 100-101
Prime costs 287, 288
Procedural knowledge 481
Procedure charting 462, 555, 578
Procedures 15
Process analysis 159-60
Process capability analysis 154, 158, 160
Process centres 173
Process control
  benefits of 161
  definition of 158
  and real-time processing 455
  techniques of 158-61
  use of 450
Process definition 158-9
Process flow charting 159
Process planning
  computer-aided (PPCS) 126, 139
  definition of 123
  generative process planning 126
  and group technology 176
  variant process planning 126
Process specification 158-9
Processing specification 467
Processing time 152
Product costs 292
Product development 61-3
Product life-cycle
  analysis 60, 83, 88, 90-92, 567
  concept 88-9
  forms of 89-90
  and targeting 94
Product line analysis 60
Product mix
  analysis of 57, 60-61
  definition 60
  and linear programming 520

  and the marketing mix 97
Product mix variance 112
Product planning
  components of 60-63
  definition of 59
  reasons for 59
Product positioning 62, 95
Product research 71
Product variety reduction 592-3
Production budget 328
Production control
  definition of 124
  and job production 166
  see also Production planning and control systems
Production cost budget 328
Production engineering
  activities 123-5
  definition of 123
Production planning
  computerised production planning and control (CPPC) 123
  definition of 123
  and linear programming 520
  and MRPII 145
  see also Production planning and control systems
Production planning and control and group technology 176-7
Production planning and control systems (PPCS)
  activities 138-41
  benefits of 141
  definition of 137
  model of 137-8
Production scheduling
  computerized 135, 140-41
  definition of 124
  forward scheduling 124
  reverse scheduling 124
  techniques of 124-5
Productivity
  ratios 563-4
  targets 57
Productivity planning
  benefits of 574
  definition 572
  measuring productivity 572-3
  productivity audit 573-5
  productivity plan 574
Profit before taxation 254
Profit centre 340
Profit and dividend planning 243
Profit forecasting 243
Profit improvement
  background 565
  benefits of 568
  definition of 565
  factors affecting 565-7
  method 567-8
Profit and loss account 255
Profit margin ratio 258
Profit planning 57
Profitability analysis
  definition 254
  measurement 255-8
  profitability comparisons 323-5
Profits
  classification of 254
  and fixed costs 305
  manipulation of figures (creative accounting) 278-82
  and marginal pricing 306
  per employee 563
  presentation of 255
  purpose 254
Profit-volume (P/V) charts
  benefits of 319
  description 317-18
  uses 318-19
Profit-volume ratio 315
Program languages 456-7, 472-3
Programme budgeting
  approach to 361
  benefits of 361, 363
  concept 358-9
  definition 358
  process of 361
Programming
  basic activities 469
  coding 472-3
  definition of 453, 469
  languages 456-7, 472-3
  modular 470

  program design 469–72
  program documentation 473
  program specification 469
  program testing 469, 473
  structured 470
Programs
  application 456
  and software 452
  see also Programming
Progress control 125, 166
Project management
  contract negotiation 232-3
  control 236–8
  definition of 128, 229
  planning 231
  project plan 233
  sequence of 229–30
Projected available balance 142
Promotional pricing 102
Provisions, financial 248, 281
Psychographics 94, 110
Psychological pricing 102
Pull and push systems (JIT) 151, 156
Punched paper tape 169
Purchase control 145
Purchases budget 329
Purchasing
  and computer-integrated manufacturing 189
  and group technology 177
  make or buy decisions 215–16
P/V charts, *see* Price-volume charts

Queuing theory
  aim 522
  benefits of 525–6
  definition of 498, 522
  problems 523–5
  systems 522
  uses 522
Qualitative research 79–80
Quality
  and manufacturing 130
  and relationship marketing 106
Quality assurance
  BS5750 195–6
  and computer-integrated manufacturing 189
  definition of 194
  and management audits 556
  statistical process control 194–5
Quality circles 198, 438–9
Quality control
  definition 193
  inspection 193
  statistical quality control 193–4
  total quality control 196, 198
  see also Total quality management
Quality management
  aim of 127
  approaches to 197
  see also Total quality management
Quality systems and processes
  definition 192
  types of 192
Quantitative techniques 16–17
Quick ratio 252
Quota sampling 76

Rackham, N 433
Raising finance
  capital structure 273
  definition of 243, 273
  gearing 273–4
  sources of finance 274–7
Ranky, P 180
Ratio analysis 556, 557, 564
Ratios
  acid-test 252, 560
  added value 564
  asset turnover 258, 558-9
  average collection period 562
  bad debt 562
  capital structure 560-61
  cost 573
  cost per unit of output 559
  creditor turnover period 562–3
  current 251
  debtor turnover 562
  departmental cost 559
  dividend cover 561
  earnings per share 257, 558
  efficiency 562–3
  financial risk 561
  interest cover 561
  inventory 563

[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
  [illegible]
  [illegible]
  [illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
  [illegible]
  [illegible]
  definition of [illegible]
  [illegible]
  [illegible]
  sequence of [illegible]
[illegible]
Promotional pricing [illegible]
Provisions, financial [illegible]
Psychographics [illegible]
Psychological pricing [illegible]
Pull and push systems [illegible]
Punched paper tape [illegible]
Purchase control [illegible]
Purchases budget [illegible]
Purchasing
  and computer integrated manufacturing [illegible]
  and group technology [illegible]
  make or buy decisions [illegible]
[illegible]

Queuing theory
  [illegible]
  [illegible]
  definition of [illegible]
  problems [illegible]
  [illegible]
  [illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
  [illegible]
  [illegible]
[illegible]

  definition of [illegible]
  and [illegible]
  statistical process control [illegible]
Quality circles [illegible]
Quality control
  definition [illegible]
  [illegible]
  statistical quality control [illegible]
  [illegible]
  see also Total quality management
[illegible]
  [illegible]
  [illegible]
  see also Total quality management
[illegible]
  [illegible]
  [illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]

[illegible]
[illegible]
  [illegible]
  [illegible]
  [illegible]
  [illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
  [illegible]
  [illegible]
  [illegible]
  [illegible]
  [illegible]
  [illegible]
  [illegible]
  [illegible]
  [illegible]
  [illegible]
  [illegible]
  [illegible]
  [illegible]
  [illegible]
  [illegible]
  [illegible]
  [illegible]
  [illegible]
  [illegible]

liquidity 559–60
  long-term debt to equity 253
  long-term debt to long-term finance 253
  margin of safety 335
  gearing 252–3
  output per employee 563
  overheads 559
  performance 575
  price/earnings (P/E) 253, 558
  productivity 563–4, 575–6
  profit margin 258
  profits per employee 564
  profit volume 315, 577
  quick 253, 560
  return on capital employed 256–7, 557–8
  return on equity 256, 55[illegible]
  return on profit margin 558
  return on sales 258, 558
  sales per employee 563
  stock turnover period 560
  stock turnover rate 560
  total debt to total assets 253
  working capital 251, 559–60
Regressional analysis 176
Re-order procedure 480, 485
Recovery of overheads 280–84, 295–6, 297–8, 305
Reducing balance depreciation method 260
Relational database 479
Relationship charting 166
Relationship matrices 165–7
Relevance in management accounting 285
Replacement costs 272
Research and development budget 339
Reserves 251
Resource allocation
  definition of 18
  and [illegible] models 324–5
  and job production 105
  and network planning 544
  and project planning 33[illegible]
  and strategy 27
  use of 25
Resource development 25
Resource planning 145
Responsibility accounting
  basis of 580–82
  benefits of 589
  application in 580, 589
  method 585
  and [illegible] 580–81
  in history 582
Return on capital employed 256–7, 556
Return on equity 256, 557
Return on sales 258, 558
Revenue budget 342
Reverse [illegible] 174
Reward and recognition systems
  aims 590
  benefits of 592
  components of 590
  definition of 589
  development 592–3
Right first time 159
Risk analysis
  benefits of 557
  definition of 284, 556
  need for 556
  techniques 556–7
Robots
  applying 196
  benefits of 196
  and cellular manufacture 181
  and FMS 172
  parts of 195
  types of 194
  uses of 195
Robotics
  applications of 189
  and artificial intelligence 490
  definition 194
Rough-cut capacity planning 140, 145
Rules-based expert system 481

Sales [illegible]
  aims of 610
  ideas of 613
  [illegible] 311–12
  principles of 310
  [illegible] promotion 61[illegible]
  [illegible] 312–13
  [illegible] budget 339–41
Sales [illegible] 309–[illegible]
Sales [illegible]

liquidity 559–60
long-term debt to equity 252
long-term debt to long-term finance 253
margin of safety 315
output 572–3
output per employee 563
overhead 559
performance 573
price-earnings (P/E) 257, 558
productivity 563–4, 572–3
profit margin 258
profits per employee 563
profit-volume 315, 317
quick 252, 560
return of capital employed 256–7, 557–8
return on equity 256, 557
return on profit margin 558
return on sales 258, 558
sales per employee 563
stock turnover period 563
stock turnover rate 563
total debt to total assets 253
working capital 251, 559–60
Ratio-trend analysis 376
Real-time processing 450, 455
Recovery of overheads 290–91, 295–6, 297–8, 305
Reducing balance depreciation method 268
Relational database 476
Relationship charting 164
Relationship marketing 105–7
Relevance in management accounting 285
Replacement costs 271
Research and development budget 328
Reserves 251
Resource allocation
  definition of 18
  and distribution models 223–5
  and job production 166
  and network planning 544
  and project planning 235
  and strategy 27
  use of 23
Resource development 23
Resource planning 145
Responsibility accounting
  basis of 340–42
  benefits of 343
  definition of 284, 340
  method 343
  and overhead control 339
  structure 342
Return on capital employed 256–7, 557
Return on equity 255, 557
Return on sales 258, 558
Revenue budget 329
Reverse scheduling 124
Reward management systems
  aims 391
  benefits of 392
  components of 390
  definition of 390
  development 391–2
Right first time 154
Risk analysis
  benefits of 357
  definition of 284, 356
  need for 356
  techniques 356–7
Robots
  applying 186
  benefits of 186
  and cellular manufacture 181
  and FMS 172
  parts of 185
  types of 184
  uses of 185
Robotics
  application of 185
  and artificial intelligence 480
  definition 184
Rough-cut capacity planning 140, 145
Rules base, expert system 481

Salary control systems
  basis of 410
  benefits 413
  compa-ratio 411–12
  definition of 410
  salary attrition 411
  salary audit 412–13
  salary budget 410–11
Salary surveys 401–2
Salary structure design

  benefits of 409
  definition of 403
  graded salary structures 404-5
  structure design 405-9
Sales analysis 112-13
Sales budget 328
Sales control 115
Sales effort control 115-17
Sales, field control, *see* Field sales control
Sales forecasting
  benefits 86-7
  decomposition analysis 84
  definition of 81
  Delphi technique 85
  derived demand 81
  and financial budgeting 326, 327
  marketing models 85
  and production scheduling 124
  smoothing 84
  statistical demand analysis 84
  subjective methods 85-6
  technological forecasting 86
  time series analysis 82-4
  trend fitting 82-3
  uses 81
Sales mix analysis
  benefits of 325
  definition 283, 323
  and cost-volume-profit analysis 315, 323
  and limiting factors 325
  and marginal costing 305
  method 323-5
Sales mix variance 311
Sales planning
  benefits of 65-6
  definition of 64
  process of 64-5
Sales price variance 112, 311
Sales quantity variance 311
Sales revenue 283, 565-6
Sales targets 64
Sales variance 311
Sales volume variance 112, 311
Sampling 75-6, 193, 194
Sasieni, M 514
Scatter diagrams 159
Scenario writing 86
Scheduled receipts 142
Scheduling, *see* Production scheduling
Scheduling technology group 147
Segmentation, *see* Market segmentation
Selection testing 383-5
Self-recording systems 587
Selling costs budget 328
Semantic analysis 487
Semantic differential technique 77
Semi-variable costs 288
Sensitivity analysis
  benefits 531
  and cost-volume-profit analysis 316
  definition of 499, 530
  method 530-31
Service activities 22
Service delivery system 106
Service levels, inventory control 210
Set-up time 152
Share capital 251
Shigeo Shingo 152
Shipping 220
Shopfloor control 146, 149
Shopfloor data collection systems (SFDC) 141
Shop loading 125
Shortliffe, E 482
Short-term borrowing 274-5
Simulation
  benefits of 517
  definition 498, 514
  and modelling 514
  process 514
  and queuing theory 525-6
  techniques 514-17
  use of 16-17
Skimming 103
Skill-based flexibility 41
Skills analysis
  benefits 429
  definition of 426
  faults analysis 428
  job breakdown 427
  manual skills analysis 427-8
  training specification 426
Slack, N 505, 510
SMED system 152

Smith, Adam 46
Smith, T 282
Smoothing 84
Socio-economic group classification 93-4
Software
  categories of 456
  definition of 456
  for OPT 148
Sources of capital 251
Span of control 36
Sparrow, L 524-5
Speech recognition systems 454, 479
S shaped curves 83
Staff activities 22-3
Standard costing
  benefits of 309
  definition of 291, 307
  method 307-8
  use of 307
Standard cost pricing 98-9
Standard costs 307
Standard deviation 154, 160
Standard hours/minutes 584
Standard labour costs 584
Standard transportation problem 225-7
Standard unit costs 308-9
Statistical demand analysis 84
Statistical methods/techniques 16, 499
Statistical process control (SPC) 160-61, 194-5
Statistical quality control
  definition of 193
  techniques of 194
Stochastic digital simulation 514-15
Stochastic models 510
Stock control 515, 516, 563
  see also Inventory control
Stockholding models 513
Stock turnover period 563
Stock turnover rate 563
Stocks, manipulation of 279
Straight-line depreciation method 267-8
Strategic business unit (SBU) 31-2
Strategic management
  benefits of 29
  concepts of 25-7
  definition of 24-5
Strategic planning 25, 243
Strategic plans
  formulation of 27-9
  planning process 29
Strategy, definition of 24
Structured programming 470
Subjective methods of sales forecasting 85-6
Subjective probability assessment 85, 507, 509
Sunk costs 306, *see also* Historical costs
Suppliers and JIT 155
Supply forecasting 377
SWOT analysis 26, 27, 51
Synergy 26
Syntactic analysis 487
Synthesis 582
Synthetics 582
Systematic training 421-3
Systems analysis
  aims 460
  and computer-integrated manufacturing 190
  and data management 475
  definition of 460
  process of 460-62
  stages of 462-4
  and systems design 467
  techniques of 464-6
Systems appraisal 468
Systems capability evaluation 146
Systems design
  activities 467-8
  and computer-integrated manufacturing 190
  definition of 467
Systems dynamics 516-17
Systems flow charting 463, 464
Systems investigation 462
Systems logic specification 467
Systems network architecture 448
Systems software 456
Systems specification 462

Taguchi methodology 198
Target marketing
  benefits 95
  definition of 49, 93

- market segmentation 93–4
- market targeting 94–5
- product positioning 95

Target-profit pricing 100–101
Task analysis 428
Taxation 345
Team briefing 440–41
Team management 38–9
Teamwork 39–40
Techniques *see* Management techniques
Technological forecasting 86
Technological trend extrapolation 86
Teleprocessing 455
Term loans 275
Test marketing 63
T-group training 432–3
Therblig symbols 577–8
Thurstone's comparative judgement technique 77
Tied indicator method of sales forecasting 81
Time-based flexibility 40
Time series analysis 82–4
Time study 582, 587
Total costs 289, 292, 331
Total factory expense 287
Total loss control
- accident control 442–3
- benefits of 444
- definition of 442
- loss control 443–4

Total product cost 287
Total quality control
- definition 196
- quality circles 198
- Taguchi methodology 198
- zero defects programmes 196, 198

Total quality management (TQM)
- approach to 199
- basic concepts 199–200
- benefits of 203–4
- definition of 198, 199
- evolution 200
- introduction 200–203
- and just-in-time 154–5

Toyota 155
TQM, *see* Total quality management
Trade credit 274
Trading account 255
Trading profit 254
Training 421–3
Training needs identification 424–5
Training techniques 430–31
Transducers 454
Transportation tableau 226
Trend fitting 82–3

Undifferentiated marketing 94
Useful economic life 278
User interface 482

Value added 259
Value added network 459
Value added ratio 564
Value added statement 259–60
Value analysis 590–91
Value chain 26, 106
Variable costs 288, 314, 331
Variable factor programming 589
Variance analysis
- benefits of 312
- classification of variances 310
- definition of 283, 310
- direct labour variance 311–12
- direct materials variance 312
- interrelationships between variances 312
- and marketing control 112–13
- operating profit variance 310
- overhead variance 312
- sales variance 311
- and standard costing 309

Variant process planning 126
Variety reduction 592–3
VDU, *see* Visual display unit
Venture capital 277
Videotext system 492
Visual display unit (VDU) 455
Voice messaging 492
Volume variance 305

Wall, T 170
Wickens, P 199
Wide area network (WAN) 459
Wild, R 207

Willsmer, R 47
Work analysis 578
Work centres 173
Working capital cycle 261-2
Working capital ratio 251-2
Work measurement
  analytical estimating 583
  benefits of 584
  clerical work measurement 586-8
  definition of 581
  predetermined motion time systems (PMTS) 582
  synthesis 582
  time study 582
  uses 581
  work standards 583-4
Work organization (CNC) 170
Work standards 583-4
Work stations 174
Work study 376-7, 581, 582

Z chart 112, 113
Zero-based budgeting
  basis 334
  benefits 335
  definition of 284, 334
  method 334-5

S.C.E.R.T. Library Calcutta

Michael Armstrong is a management consultant and author. He graduated from the London School of Economics and is a fellow of the Institute of Personnel Management and the Institute of Management Consultants; he has a wealth of experience as a practising manager. His many books include *How to be an Even Better Manager* and *Human Resource Management: Strategy and Action*.

Of related interest:

Dear Boss: 52 Ways to Develop Your Staff
—*Trish Nicholson*

Management Skills in Marketing
—*Stephen Morse*

The Selection Maze
—*Tony Bray*

The How to Manage Handbook

The Effective Office: A Handbook of Modern Office Management
—*Lionel G. Titman*

Total Quality Management: Implementing Continuous Improvement
—*Joseph* and *Susan Berk*

Power: Creating it Using it
—*Helga Drummond*

Restructuring to Change

EXCEL
BOOKS

ISBN: 81-7446-025-x
Rs. 345